CUPRA FORMENTOR

OWNER'S MANUAL

Vehicle identification data

Model:
Vehicle Registration:
Vehicle identification number:
Date of vehicle registration or vehicle delivery:
SEAT Official Service/CUPRA authorised service:
Service advisor:
Telephone:

Confirmation of receipt of documentation and vehicle keys

The following items were delivered with the vehicle:	**YES**	**NO**
On-board documentation	☐	☐
First key	☐	☐
Second key	☐	☐
Correct working order of all keys was checked	☐	☐
Location: Date:		
Signature of owner:		

Thank you for your confidence

With your new CUPRA, you will be able to enjoy a vehicle with state-of-the-art technology and top quality features.

We recommend reading this Instruction Manual carefully to learn more about your vehicle so you can enjoy all its benefits in your daily driving.

Information about handling is complemented with instructions regarding the operation and maintenance of the vehicle in order to ensure its safety and maintain its value. Moreover, we want to give you valuable advice and tips for driving your vehicle in an efficient and environmentally friendly manner.

We wish you safe and enjoyable motoring.

CUPRA

⚠ WARNING

Read and always observe safety information concerning the front passenger airbag

››› page 63, *Fitting and using child seats*.

Table of Contents

About this instruction manual 4

General views of the vehicle 6
Front exterior view 6
Rear exterior view 7
Interior view 8
Overview (left hand drive) 9
Overview (right hand drive) 10

Driver information 11
Control lamps 11
Instrument cluster 15
Drowsiness monitor 26
Driver attention monitor 28
Road signs detection system 30
Instrument cluster operation 33
Infotainment system operation and displays . 35

Safety 42
Safe driving 42
Correct sitting position of vehicle occupants 43
Seat belts 45
PreCrash system 51
Airbag system 53
Transporting children safely 61
In case of emergency 72

High-voltage battery 78
Safety instructions 78
Conservation of the high-voltage battery 80
Charging the high-voltage battery 81
Charging settings 89
Charging cable 94

Opening and closing 98
Set of vehicle keys 98
Keyless Access system 101
Central locking 104
Anti-theft alarm 108
Doors 109
Rear lid 112
Window controls 116
Sunroof 119

Steering wheel 122
Multifunction steering wheel 122

Seats and headrests 124
Front seats 124
Rear seats 125
Headrest 126
Seat functions 129

Lights 132
Vehicle lighting 132
Interior lights 138

Visibility 141
Windscreen wiper and rear window wiper systems 141
Mirrors 143
Sun protection 146

Air conditioning 148
Heating, ventilation and cooling 148
Auxiliary heating (additional heating) 158
Stationary air conditioning 161

Driving 164
Driving indications 164
Starting and stopping the engine. 169
Driving with electric drive 174
Start-Stop system 179
Manual gearbox 182
DSG automatic transmission 183
Driving on slopes 188
Steering 189
Drive Profiles 190
Braking system 193
Brake assist systems 194

Assistant systems 199
General notes 199
Drive assist sensors and cameras 200
Cruise control system 204
Speed limiter 205
Speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment 207
Eco Assist 208
ACC - Adaptive Cruise Control 209
Predictive speed adjustment 214
Emergency brake assistance system (Front Assist) 217
Lane Assist system 221
Travel Assist 223
Emergency Assist 228
Lane departure warning (Side Assist) 229

Parking and manoeuvring 233
Park the vehicle 233
Electronic parking brake 234
General information on parking systems 237
Park Distance Control Plus (Park Pilot) 239
Rear park assist 242
Intelligent Park Assist (IPA) automatic parking system 243
Reverse Assist (Rear View Camera) 248
Peripheral view system (Top View Camera) .. 251
Trailer Assist 253

Rear Cross Traffic Alert ... 256
Exit Warning ... 257

Practical equipment ... 259
Storage compartment ... 259
Power sockets ... 261

Data transmissions ... 264
Over-the-air update ... 264
CUPRA CONNECT ... 266
Privacy mode ... 270
User administration ... 271
WLAN access point ... 272
Full Link ... 273
Wired and wireless connections ... 276

Infotainment system ... 278
First steps ... 278
Overview and controls ... 281
General instructions for use ... 282
CUPRA Assistant ... 287
Radio mode ... 290
Media Mode ... 294
Navigation ... 297
Telephone interface ... 304

Storing objects ... 311
Positioning the luggage and cargo ... 311
Luggage compartment ... 312
Luggage compartment equipment ... 314
Roof carrier ... 317
Trailer mode ... 319

Fuel and exhaust gas cleaning ... 330
Refuelling ... 330
Fuel types ... 332
AdBlue® ... 333
Engine management and emissions control system ... 335

Miscellaneous situations ... 338
Vehicle tool kit ... 338
Changing the windscreen wiper blades ... 338
Jump start ... 340
Towing the vehicle ... 343
Fuses ... 348
Changing bulbs ... 351

Checking and refilling levels ... 352
Engine compartment ... 352
Fluids and consumables ... 355
Cooling system ... 355
Brake fluid ... 360
Windscreen washer reservoir ... 361
Engine oil ... 362
12-volt battery ... 366
48-volt battery ... 371
Energy management ... 373

Wheels and tyres ... 375
Important information about wheels and tyres ... 375
Changing a wheel ... 381
Tyre pressure monitor system ... 386
Tyre repair ... 388

Maintenance ... 392
Service ... 392
Additional service offers ... 394
Vehicle upkeep and cleaning ... 395
Accessories, spare parts and repair work ... 400

User information ... 402
Warranty ... 402
Information stored by the control units ... 402
Vehicle antennas ... 403
Fluids in the air conditioning system ... 403
Information on the EU chemicals regulation REACH ... 404
Materials and recycling information ... 404
Third-party copyright information ... 406
Return and scrapping of end-of-life vehicles 406
Declaration of conformity ... 407
Radioelectrical equipment ... 407

Technical data ... 412
Indications about the technical data ... 412
Engine specifications ... 414
Dimensions. ... 417

Index ... 419

About this instruction manual

This instruction manual is valid for all variants and versions of your CUPRA model. It describes all equipment and models without specifying whether their features are optional equipment of model variants. As a result, equipment not fitted to your vehicle or only available in certain countries may be described. Find out about your vehicle's equipment in the documentation supplied with it and please contact your CUPRA Specialised Service or SEAT Official Service if you require more detailed information.

All information provided in this instruction manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press. As the vehicle is under continuous development, it may have differences to the data included in this manual. For this reason, no claims can be made in the event of mismatching data, illustrations and descriptions.

Ensure that the on-board documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times if you sell it or lend it to third parties. In addition, CUPRA recommends resetting the infotainment system to factory settings to delete all personal data.

Some details on the **drawings** may be different to your vehicle and they should be interpreted as a standard representation.

The **direction indicators** (left, right, forwards, backwards) in this manual refer to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless otherwise stated.

This instruction manual has been written for **left-hand drive vehicles**. In right-hand drive vehicles, the arrangement of the controls differs partly from that shown in the illustrations or described in the texts.

Technical modifications to the vehicle or safety-critical issues that have arisen since the time of going to press will be included in a supplement to the on-board documentation.

® **Trademarks** are marked with ®. The absence of this symbol does not guarantee that the term is not a trademark.

You can access the information in this manual using:

- Thematic table of contents that follows the manual's general chapter structure.
- Visual table of contents that uses graphics to indicate the pages containing "essential" information, which is detailed in the corresponding chapters.
- Alphabetical index with many terms and synonyms to help you find information.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in minor or moderate injury.

For the sake of the environment

Texts after this symbol contain information on environmental protection.

Note

Texts after this symbol contain additional information.

Owner's manual and explanatory videos of some functionalities

On the official CUPRA website, you can download the relevant version of the owner's manual and view explanatory videos on how to operate certain vehicle functions.

- Scan the QR code or enter the following address in your web browser and select your vehicle:

https://www.cupraofficial.com/owners/cupra-manuals

Note

The vehicle simulations shown in the videos are for illustrative purposes only and are subject to change. Likewise, the functions described in the videos are continuously evolving, and there may be differences and/or significant changes between different vehicle updates. These videos do not replace the instruction manual in the corresponding vehicle edition, which has the complete information and warnings.

Note

The explanatory videos of certain functionalities are only available in some languages.

Digital Manual in the Infotainment System [1)]

When a factory settings reset is performed, the Digital Manual is uninstalled from the infotainment system.

Proceed as follows to reinstall the Digital Manual:

- Press the notifications icon located on the top bar of the infotainment system. A pop-up window will then appear.
- Press OK to begin the installation process.

If in any doubts, please contact your SEAT Official Service or specialised workshop.

Note

It is only possible to update the Digital Manual when the vehicle is in Online >>> page 271 **mode. In Offline mode the content may not be up to date.**

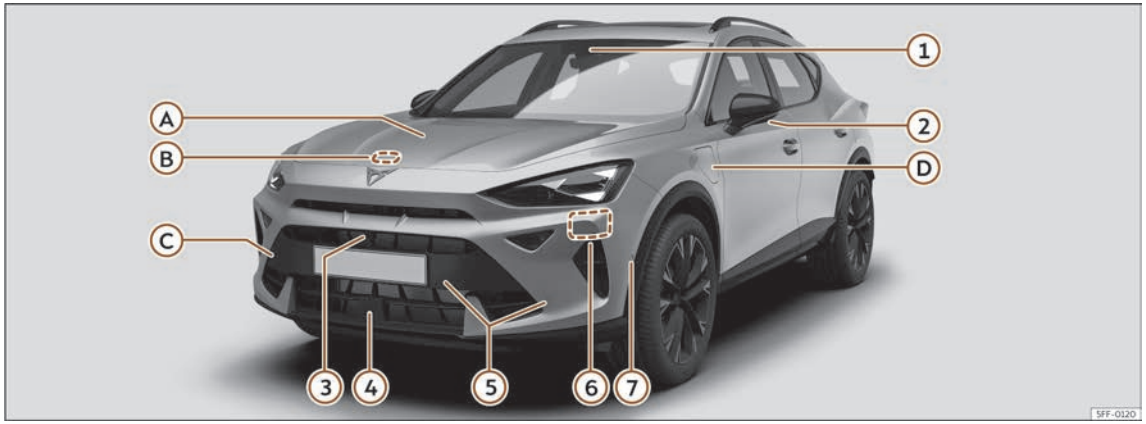
Valid for the Dutch market

Only CUPRA Specialized Services can repair CUPRA vehicles and provide services under warranty.

[1)] Depending on the version.

General views of the vehicle

Front exterior view



Driving assistance sensors ››› page 199

1. Front multifunction camera
2. "Top View Camera" mirror cameras
3. "Top View Camera" front camera
4. Front radar
5. Park distance control sensors
6. Side radars
7. Park assist sensor

Ⓐ **Levels control**

Oil ››› page 362

Brake fluid ››› page 360

Battery ››› page 366

Ⓑ **Bonnet**

Unlocking lever ››› page 354

Open/close ››› page 354

Ⓒ **Towing the vehicle**

Tow start ››› page 345

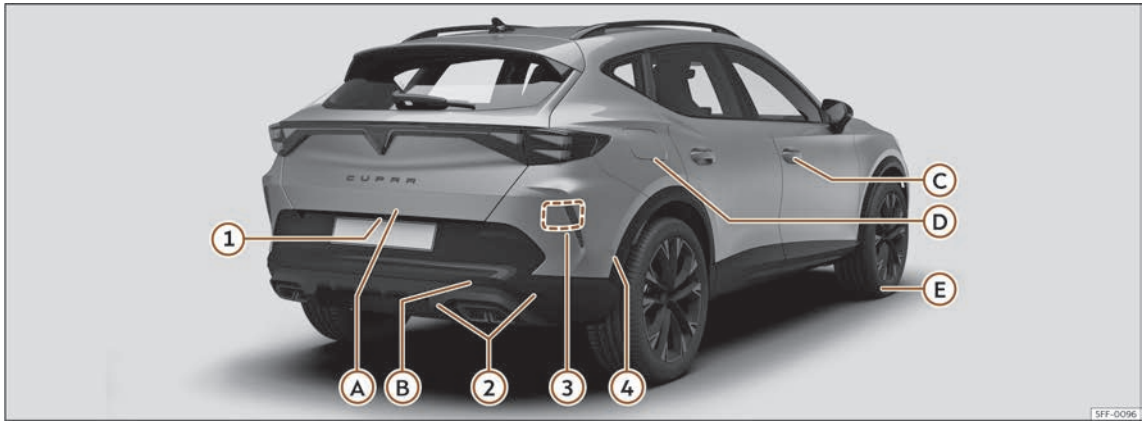
Towline anchorage ››› page 346

Ⓓ **Charging socket** (hybrid vehicles)

Charging process display ››› page 86

Emergency unlocking ››› page 89

Rear exterior view



Driving assistance sensors ››› page 199

1. Rear view camera
2. Park distance control sensors
3. Rear radars
4. Park assist sensor

Ⓐ **Rear lid**

Opening from outside ››› page 112

Emergency opening ››› page 116

Ⓑ **Towing the vehicle**

Tow-start ››› page 345

Towline anchorage ››› page 347

Ⓒ **Opening and closing**

Doors ››› page 109

Central locking ››› page 104

Emergency lock ››› page 111

Ⓓ **Fuel tank**

Fuel capacity ››› page 412

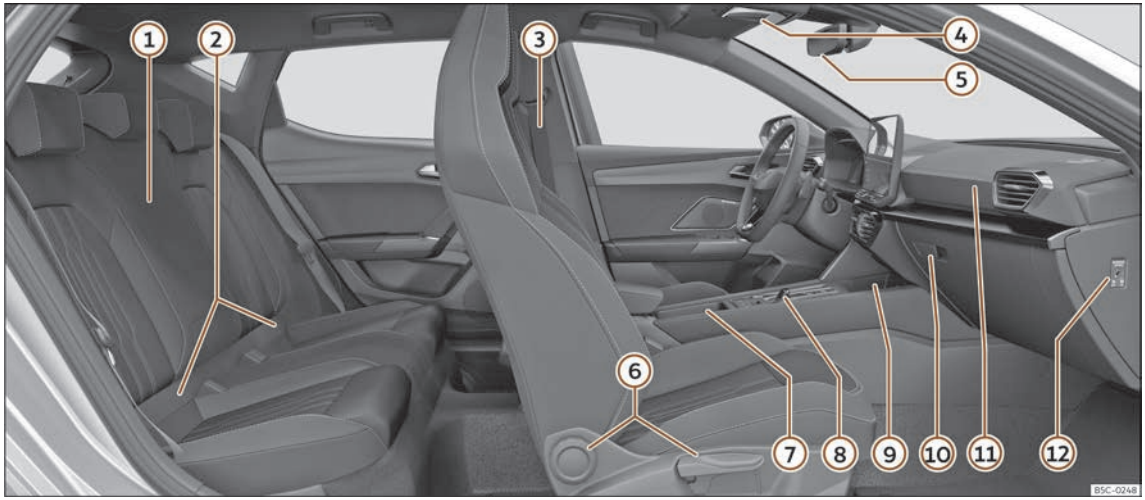
Open/Close cap ››› page 331

Ⓔ **Action in the event of a puncture**

Tyre mobility system ››› page 388

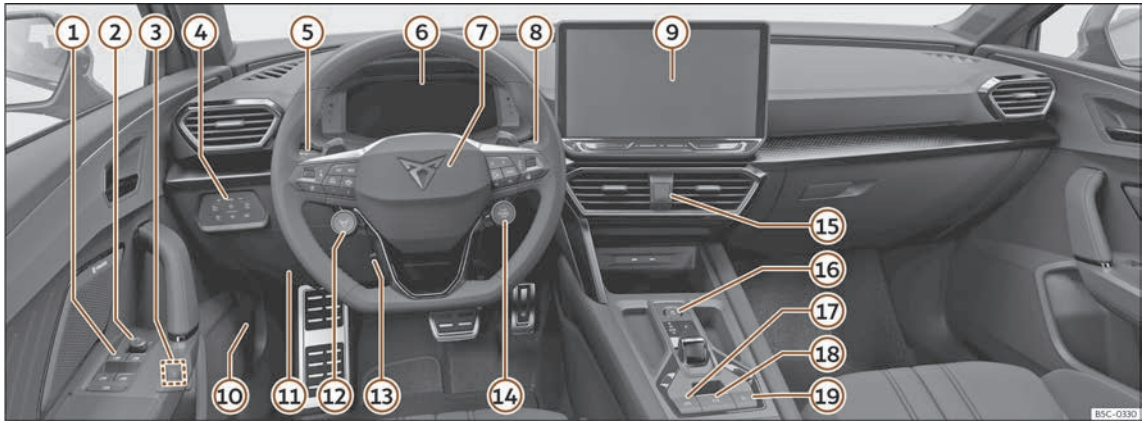
Wheel change ››› page 381

Interior view



1. Armrest ››› page 130
2. Isofix anchors ››› page 64
3. Seat belts ››› page 46
4. Sunroof ››› page 119
5. Interior mirror ››› page 144
6. Seat adjustment ››› page 124
7. Emergency start ››› page 173
8. DSG automatic transmission ››› page 183 / Manual gearbox ››› page 182
9. Connectivity Box / Wireless Charger ››› page 309
10. Glove compartment ››› page 259
11. Front passenger airbag ››› page 56
12. Disconnecting the front passenger airbag ››› page 57

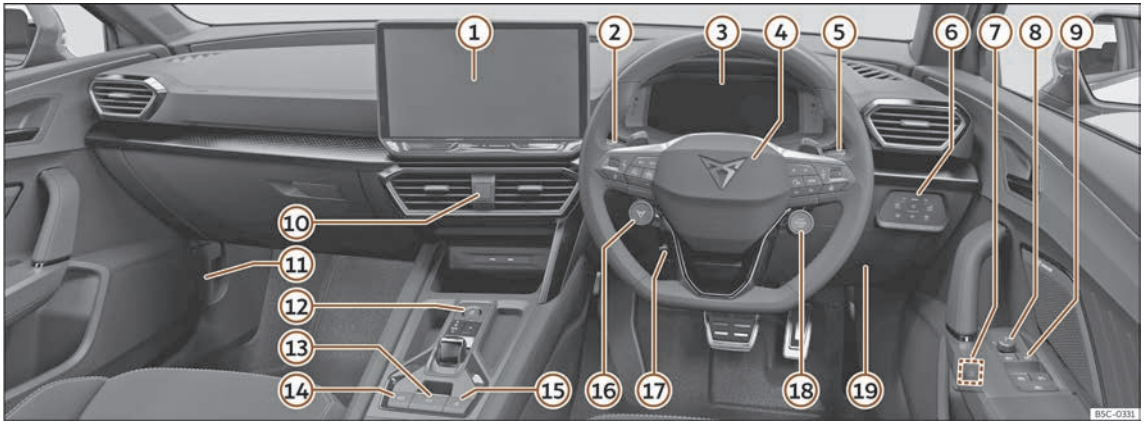
Overview (left hand drive)



1. Power windows >>> page 116
2. Exterior mirror adjustment >>> page 145
3. Button to open and close the rear lid >>> page 113
4. Control for lighting and demisting windows >>> page 132
5. Turn signal and main beam lever >>> page 134
6. Digital Cockpit >>> page 16

   Control lamps >>> page 11
7. Steering wheel with horn / Driver's airbag >>> page 56 / Multifunction controls >>> page 122 / Gear shift paddles for the Tiptronic >>> page 184
8. Wipers and rear window wiper >>> page 141
9. Infotainment system >>> page 35, >>> page 278
10. Open bonnet lever >>> page 354
11. Fuses >>> page 348
12. Drive profiles >>> page 190
13. Steering wheel adjustment >>> page 123
14. Start button >>> page 169
15. Hazard warning lights >>> page 72
16. ESC >>> page 169 start stop button >>> page 196.
17. Auto Hold >>> page 236
18. Electronic parking brake >>> page 234
19. Central locking >>> page 104

Overview (right hand drive)



1. Infotainment system >>> page 35, >>> page 278
2. Turn signal and main beam lever >>> page 134
3. Digital Cockpit >>> page 16

   Control lamps >>> page 11
4. Steering wheel with horn / Driver's airbag >>> page 56 / Multifunction controls >>> page 122 / Gear shift paddles for the Tiptronic >>> page 184
5. Wipers and rear window wiper >>> page 141
6. Control for lighting and demisting windows >>> page 132
7. Button to open and close the rear lid >>> page 113
8. Exterior mirror adjustment >>> page 145
9. Power windows >>> page 116
10. Hazard warning lights >>> page 72
11. Open bonnet lever >>> page 354
12. ESC >>> page 169 start stop button >>> page 196.
13. Electronic parking brake >>> page 234
14. Auto Hold >>> page 236
15. Central locking >>> page 104
16. Drive profiles >>> page 190
17. Steering wheel adjustment >>> page 123
18. Start button >>> page 169
19. Fuses >>> page 348

Driver information

Control lamps

Control and warning lamps

The warning and control lights can be lit individually or in combination and serve as a warning, to indicate the presence of an anomaly or to warn of the activation of certain functions. Some turn on when the ignition is switched on and must turn off after a certain period of time.

Depending on the model, additional text messages may be viewed on the instrument panel display. These may be purely informative or they may be advising of the need for action.

Warning with priority 1:

- The red central warning lamp lights up or flashes, possibly accompanied by additional audio warnings or symbols. **Stop driving! Danger!** Check the faulty function. Seek specialist assistance as soon as possible.

Warning with priority 2:

- The yellow central warning lamp lights up or flashes, possibly accompanied by additional audio warnings or symbols. Operating faults or the lack of operating fluids can cause damage to the vehicle or a fault. Check the faulty function as soon as possible and, if necessary, contact a specialist workshop immediately.

CUPRA recommends visiting an Official CUPRA Service.

Lamps with other colours:

- Green, blue, white and grey: Information on other systems.

Depending upon the equipment fitted in the vehicle, instead of a warning lamp, sometimes a symbol may be displayed on the instrument panel.

The control lamps that light up on the light control are explained in chapter >>> page 132, *Lights*.

WARNING

If the warning lamps and messages are ignored, faults may occur in the vehicle, it may stall in traffic, or accidents and serious injuries may occur.

- **Never ignore warning lamps or text messages.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe place.**

Note

If there are several warnings, the corresponding symbols will light up for a few seconds and remain lit until the cause is eliminated.

If when switching on the ignition warnings are shown about existing faults, it might not be possible to change the settings or show the information as described. If the fault continues, consult a specialised workshop.

CUPRA recommends visiting an Official CUPRA Service.

Symbol	Meaning
	Stop driving! Central warning lamp >>> page 24
	Fasten your seat belt >>> page 46
	Electronic parking brake on >>> page 234
	Deep discharge of the high-voltage battery >>> page 88

Symbol	Meaning
	Stop driving! Fault in the brake system >>> page 194
	Stop driving Brake fluid level low >>> page 360
	Stop driving! The electromechanical brake servo is not working >>> page 197
	Take control of the vehicle and be ready to brake! >>> page 210
	Stop driving Fault in the motor coolant fluid system >>> page 20
	Stop driving Fault in the high-voltage system coolant fluid system >>> page 20
	Engine oil pressure >>> page 365
	Engine oil level very low >>> page 365
	Stop driving! Steering anomaly >>> page 190

Symbol	Meaning
	Stop driving! Fault in the high voltage system >>> page 87
	Stop driving! Fault in the electric drive system >>> page 178
	Stop driving! 12 volt battery >>> page 370
	Stop driving! 48 volt battery >>> page 372
	Collision warning >>> page 217
	Take control of the steering immediately >>> page 227
	AdBlue level® too low, OR fault in the SCR system >>> page 335, >>> page 335
SOS	Emergency Assist active with lane guidance >>> page 228
SOS	Emergency Assist active without lane guidance >>> page 228
	Central warning lamp >>> page 24

Symbol	Meaning
SOS	Emergency call restricted >>> page 77
	Error_ emergency call >>> page 77
	Fault in the airbag system or the seat belt tensioners >>> page 55
	Range calculation failure >>> page 88
OFF	Front passenger airbag off >>> page 55
ON	Front passenger airbag on >>> page 55
	Please check brake pad >>> page 194
	Lights up: fault in the electronic stability control (ESC) >>> page 198
	Flashing: Electronic stability control (ESC) or Traction Control (TCS) regulating >>> page 198
OFF	TCS switched off manually, ESC in Sport mode or ESC turned off manually >>> page 196
ESC OFF	ESC disconnected >>> page 197
ABS	ABS fault >>> page 197

Symbol	Meaning
	Fault in the electronic parking brake >>> page 235
	Fault in the electromechanical brake servo >>> page 197
	Lane departure warning not available >>> page 227
	Travel Assist not available >>> page 227
	Fault in the vehicle's lighting >>> page 138
	Fault in the emissions control system >>> page 337
	Particulate filter clogged >>> page 337
	Diesel engine preheating; OR diesel engine management fault >>> page 337
	Rear fog light on >>> page 132
	Fuel tank almost empty >>> page 19
	Engine oil level >>> page 366
	Presence of water in diesel. >>> page 19

Symbol	Meaning
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low >>> page 143
	Steering anomaly >>> page 190
	Fault in the tyre pressure loss indicator >>> page 388
	STOP Stop driving! Low tyre pressure >>> page 388
	Fault in the electric drive system >>> page 178
	Petrol engine management fault >>> page 337
	Electric drive system power limited >>> page 179
	Electronic engine sound fault >>> page 178
	Front Assist not available or with limitations >>> page 220
OFF	Front Assist deactivated >>> page 220
	Cruise control fault (GRA) >>> page 205
! LIM	Speed limiter not available >>> page 206

Symbol	Meaning
	Gearbox fault >>> page 187, >>> page 188
	Adaptive cruise control (ACC) not available >>> page 214
SOS	Emergency Assist unavailable >>> page 229
	Lane Assist not available >>> page 223
	Limited driver assistance now. Front sensors without visibility >>> page 223
	Lane Assist (lane keeping system) regulating >>> page 222
OFF	Lane Assist deactivated >>> page 222
	Drowsiness monitor limited or unavailable >>> page 28
	Driver attention monitor unavailable >>> page 30
	Fault in the driver attention monitor >>> page 30
	Exit Warning not available >>> page 202
	Side Assist (lane change assistance system) not available >>> page 202

Symbol	Meaning
	Road sign recognition limited or not available ››› page 33
	Rear Cross Traffic Alert not available ››› page 202
	Battery / 12V power supply ››› page 370
	Battery / 48V power supply ››› page 372
	Low state of charge of the high voltage battery ››› page 88
	High voltage battery discharged ››› page 88
	Engine RPM limitation ››› page 18
	AdBlue level® low, OR fault in the SCR system ››› page 335, ››› page 335
AUTO HOLD	Auto Hold active ››› page 236
	Turn signals ››› page 138
	Trailer turn signals ››› page 138
	Cruise control (GRA) ››› page 204
LIM	Speed limiter active ››› page 206

Symbol	Meaning
	Lane Assist (lane keeping system) active. ››› page 222
	Press the brake pedal ››› page 187
	Travel Assist active ››› page 224
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) regulating, no vehicle detected ahead ››› page 211
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) regulating, vehicle detected ahead ››› page 211
	Vehicle charging ››› page 87
	Adjustment due to the road layout ››› page 216
	Adjustment due to a roundabout ››› page 216
	Adjustment due to a junction ››› page 216
	Adjustment due to a speed limit ››› page 216
km/h	Adjustment due to a speed limit ››› page 216
	Main beam on or flasher on ››› page 134

Symbol	Meaning
	Main beam assist active ››› page 135
AUTO HOLD	Auto Hold function on ››› page 236
	The cruise control system is switched on, but regulation is not active ››› page 204
LIM	The speed limiter is not active ››› page 206
	Lane Assist not ready to regulate ››› page 222
	Start-Stop system activated ››› page 179
	Start-Stop system unavailable ››› page 179
	Travel Assist active, adaptive cruise control (ACC) active and adaptive lane guidance function passive. ››› page 224
	Hill Descent Control (HDC) ››› page 189
	Exterior temperature below +4 °C (+39 °F) ››› page 22
	Main beam assist on ››› page 135

Symbol	Meaning
	Take control of the steering >>> page 227
OFF	Speed warning system partially deactivated >>> page 33
	Front Assist connecting >>> page 219
	Distance warning >>> page 217
	Electric mode driving not available >>> page 179
	Reference to information in the on-board documentation >>> page 24
	Service intervals display >>> page 25

⚠ WARNING

Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury.

- **Do not operate the instrument cluster controls when driving.**
- **To reduce the risk of accident and injury, only make adjustments to the instructions on the instrument cluster display and to the instructions on the Infotainment system display when the vehicle is stationary.**

Instrument cluster

Introduction

After switching the engine on with a 12-volt battery that is heavily discharged or newly replaced, some system settings (such as the time, the date, the personalised comfort settings and the programming) might be altered or deleted. Check and correct these settings once the battery is sufficiently charged.

Digital Cockpit

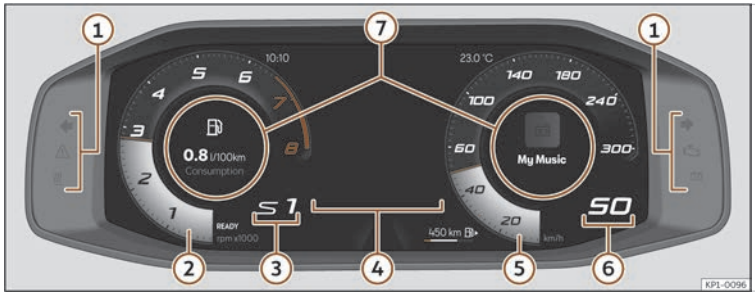


Fig. 1 Digital Cockpit on the instrument cluster (classic view).

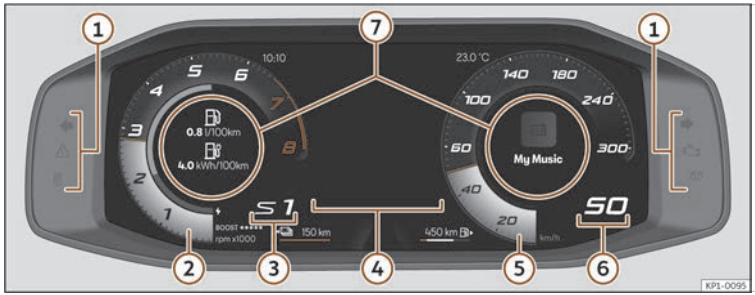


Fig. 2 Hybrid vehicles: Digital Cockpit on the instrument cluster (classic view).

1. Control and warning lamps ››› page 11.
2. Rev counter ››› page 18.
   Powermeter (hybrid vehicles) ››› page 20.
3. Gear engaged or selector lever position ››› page 183.
4. Screen displays ››› page 21.
5. Speedometer.
6. Digital speed display.
7. Information profiles ››› page 17.

The Digital Cockpit is a digital instrument cluster with a high-resolution TFT colour screen. It has a 4 views accessible using the button VIEW of the multifunction steering wheel.

By selecting different information profiles, indications other than the classic circular instruments can be displayed, such as navigation data, multimedia information or travel data.

The 4 views are:

- Classic
- Dynamic
- Navigation
- CUPRA

All views will display information on the screen about audio, phone, travel data, vehicle status, navigation [1] and driving aids[1].

Information profiles

The ◁ / ▷ buttons on the multifunction steering wheel can be used to browse through the different Digital Cockpit information.

Information on the vehicle status, travel data and odometer will be displayed on the left side.

On the right side information will be displayed on: audio, telephone, compass, navigation manoeuvres and the G-force meter.

Depending on the view in the **middle** of the Digital Cockpit information about the following will be displayed:

- *Classic View and Dynamic View:* Initial data, date, distance travelled and range. Turning the right thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel: navigation map, driving data (pressing OK switches between the different memories).
- *Navigation View:* By pressing the button OK on the multifunction steering wheel and then turning the thumbwheel you can zoom into or out of the map. If you press the button OK again, the map returns to automatic scale.
- *CUPRA view:* The revolutions tube is displayed in the centre.

Classic and Dynamic View:

The revolutions per minute and speedometer needles appear in full length if you press and hold the button VIEW on the multifunction steering wheel, regardless of the menu displayed in the central area >>> **Fig. 1** , >>> **Fig. 2**.

Pressing and holding the VIEWbutton again returns the display to the previous view.

Or look in the instrument cluster menu for the ✕ **Close** option using the right hand thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel, and then press OK.

Information that may be displayed in the central area of the Digital Cockpit speedometer

- Audio
- Telephone
- Compass
- Navigation indications (the most recent destinations are displayed by pressing the arrow on the right of the multifunction steering wheel)
- G-force meter.
- ✕ > OK (close classic view).

Information that may be displayed in the central area of the Digital Cockpit rev counter

- Consumption and average consumption. By pressing the arrow on the left of the multifunction steering wheel, you can switch between the different travel data memories.
- Range (fuel tank level).
- Lubricating oil and coolant temperature
- Average speed. By pressing the arrow on the left of the multifunction steering wheel, you can switch between the different travel data memories.

[1] Depending on the version.

- Other travel data: km travelled and driving time. By pressing the arrow on the left of the multifunction steering wheel, you can switch between the different travel data memories.
- Assist systems.
- Engine power and torque.
- ✕ > OK (close classic view).

CUPRA view

Turning the right hand thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel scrolls through the following information displayed in the middle of the rev counter:

- Speed and gears.
- Lap timer.

The following information is displayed outside the rev counter circle:

- Right-hand area: G-force meter.
- Left-hand area: engine power and torque.

Rev counter

The rev counter indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Together with the gear-change indicator, use the rev counter to make sure you are running your vehicle's engine at a suitable speed.

The beginning of the red zone of the rev counter indicates the maximum speed in any gear after running-in and with the engine hot. However, it is advisable to move the selector lever to **D** or lift your foot off the accelerator before the needle reaches the red zone ››› ⓘ.

We recommend that you avoid high revs and that you follow the recommendations on the gear-change indicator. See the additional information in ››› **page 164**, ***Selecting the optimal gear***.

Speed limiter[1)]

If the indicator light turns on, the engine will be automatically limited to the speed shown on the instrument cluster. This protects the engine components in situations such as a cold start or against overheating.

The engine speed limiter is released as soon as the engine reaches normal operating temperature and the driver takes his/her foot off the accelerator.

If the engine speed limit is caused by an engine management fault, the indicator lamp also lights up. Make sure the displayed RPM is not exceeded (for example, by reducing it). Go immediately to a specialised workshop to have the fault repaired.

Flashing indicator[1)2)]

The flashing indicator warns the driver that the engine RPM limit has been reached.

The flashing indication is displayed in the upper areas of the rev counter by green, yellow and red areas.

When the RPM approaches the limit, the flashing indicator flashes red. Shift up a gear at the right time.

NOTICE

- **To prevent damage to the engine, the rev counter needle should only remain in the red zone for a short period of time.**
- **When the engine is cold, avoid high revs and heavy acceleration and do not make the engine work hard.**

For the sake of the environment

Changing up a gear early will help you to save fuel and minimise emissions and engine noise.

---

1) Depending on version.

2) Only in the CUPRA view on the instrument cluster.

Fuel gauge

Fig. 3 Fuel gauge located in different positions depending on the view.

① Reserve

② Fuel level

Control lamps

Lights up yellow. Fuel tank almost empty. The fuel reserve level has been reached ››› ⚠. Refuel as soon as you have the opportunity.

Lights up yellow. Presence of water in diesel. Turn off the engine and seek professional assistance.

The display only works when the ignition is switched on.

The fuel range is displayed on the instrument cluster.

You can consult the tank capacity of your vehicle in ››› page 412.

⚠ WARNING

When driving with low fuel, the vehicle may stall in traffic and cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **If the fuel tank level is too low, fuel could reach the engine irregularly, particularly when driving up or down slopes.**
- **The steering system and the assistant systems and brakes do not work when the engine is running irregularly or switches off due to lack of fuel or an irregular fuel supply.**
- **CUPRA recommends always refuelling when the tank is approximately one quarter full, to prevent the vehicle from stopping due to a lack of fuel.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Never run the fuel tank completely dry. An irregular fuel supply can cause misfiring and unburnt fuel could enter the exhaust system. The catalytic converter or the particulate filter may get damaged!

ⓘ Note

The small arrow on the fuel gauge next to the fuel pump symbol points towards the side of the vehicle with the fuel tank flap.

Battery level indicator

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles

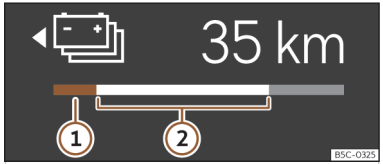


Fig. 4 Digital instrument cluster: battery level indicator.

① Reserve

② Battery level

The small arrow next to the battery symbol on the fuel gauge indicates which side of the vehicle the charging cover is on.

ⓘ NOTICE

- **Never drive with the tank completely empty. Under certain circumstances, the energy stored in the high-voltage battery may not be sufficient to reach the nearest service station.**
- **When the outside temperature is very low, and therefore the high-voltage battery is very cold, you may have difficulty starting the internal combustion engine and the range in electric driving mode may be reduced.**

Coolant temperature indicator.

The coolant temperature view can be selected in the corresponding menu >>> page 16.

Control and warning lamps

Fault in the engine coolant system

The LED flashes red.

Engine coolant

The lamp lights up red.

The motor coolant temperature is too high or the motor coolant level is too low.

- **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle at the first opportunity and in a safe place.
- Switch off the engine and let it cool down.
- Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank >>> page 357.

If the warning lamp does not go out even though the motor coolant level is correct, do not continue to drive or leave the engine running. Seek specialist assistance.

Control and warning lamps (valid for hybrid vehicles)

together with

Fault in the high-voltage cooling circuit

The warning lamps flash red.

Engine coolant

The lamp lights up red.

Engine or high-voltage system coolant level too low, engine or high-voltage system coolant temperature too high.

- **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle at the first opportunity and in a safe place.
- Switch off the engine and let it cool down.
- Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank >>> page 357.
- Check the coolant level in the high-voltage cooling circuit >>> page 357. If the level is too low **DO NOT add coolant**. Seek specialist assistance immediately.

If the warning lamp does not go out even though the motor coolant level is correct, do not continue to drive or leave the engine running. Seek specialist assistance.

NOTICE

- **To ensure a long useful life for the engine, avoid high revs, driving at high speed and making the engine work hard for approximately the first 15 minutes when the engine is cold. The engine's warming-up phase also depends on the outside temperature. If necessary, use the engine oil temperature as a guide** **>>> page 23**.
- **The system's cooling capacity is reduced if an accessory restricts the air inlet or could damage any cooling-system component. Seek specialist assistance.**

Power meter

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles

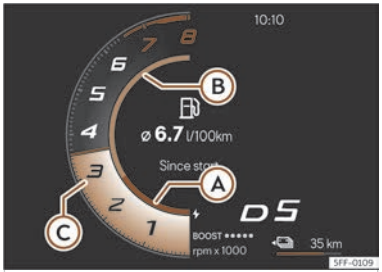


Fig. 5 Digital instrument cluster: Power meter

The following displays can be seen on the Power meter: >>> Fig. 5.

Ⓐ **Green zone** (*Charge*). The vehicle recovers electrical energy.

Ⓑ **Blue zone** (*Power %*). Driving in **Electric Mode**. Indicates the percentage of power used and the maximum amount of power currently available.

Ⓒ Revolutions per minute of the combustion engine when in operation.

The power meter shows the usage level of the electric drive. The power meter bar shows the current usage level.

A finer coloured border indicates how much the propulsion can currently be used. Depending on the selected driving program and the current availability of electrical power, the boundaries of the different colours can vary.

Availability of Boost on screen

When the engine is started, the "READY" warning light goes out and the instrument cluster displays Boost availability indications with information about the additional power available at that time.

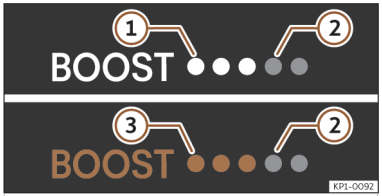


Fig. 6 In the digital instrument cluster: Boost availability display

① Additional power available.

② Additional power not available.

③ Boost additional power activated.

If rapid acceleration is requested (e.g. by Kick-Down) the Boost function will be activated and the vehicle will drive for a short period of time with maximum power from the electric motor and combustion engine. This is indicated by the area below the RPM indicator turning blue.

Note

The Boost function consumes a large amount of energy and is therefore only available for a short period of time.

⚠ WARNING

When the electrical system has a reduced performance capability, it can cause a change in the vehicle's handling, such as a different acceleration response. This can cause accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- **Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions, as well as the charge level of the high-voltage battery.**
- **Make sure that the high-voltage battery is sufficiently charged.**

Status display

Possible indications on the instrument cluster display

The instrument cluster can display a variety of information, superimposed according to the vehicle's equipment:

- Doors, bonnet and rear lid open
- Warning and information messages
- Odometer
- Time >>> page 24
- Indications of the radio and navigation system
- Phone indications
- Outside temperature

- Compass indication
- Selector lever positions
- Gear-change recommendation
- Combined range (hybrid vehicles)
- Display of travel data (multifunction display) and menus for different settings ››› page 23
- Service interval indicator ››› page 25
- Speed warning
- Speed warning for winter tyres
- Start-Stop system status display ››› page 179
- Signs detected by the road signs detection system and warning that the speed limit has been exceeded
- Indication of active cylinder management status (ACT®) ››› page 164
- Low consumption driving
- Driver assist systems display

Doors, bonnet and rear lid open

When the vehicle is unlocked and while driving, the instrument cluster display shows if any of the doors, the bonnet or rear lid are opened and. In some cases this is also indicated by an audible warning.

Selector lever positions

The current position of the selector lever is shown on the side of the control and on the instrument cluster display. When the control is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position, in some cases, the gear engaged in each case is shown on the instrument cluster display .

Outside temperature indicator

If the outside temperature is lower than approximately +4 °C (+39 °F), the “ice crystal symbol” ❄ also lights up on the outside temperature indicator. This symbol remains lit until the outside temperature exceeds +6 °C (+43 °F) ››› ⚠.

In the following situations, the displayed outside temperature may be higher than the actual temperature due to the heat emitted by the motor:

- When the vehicle is stationary
- When driving very slowly

Gear-change recommendation

While driving, the instrument cluster of certain vehicles may indicate a gear recommendation for saving fuel ››› page 164.

Odometer

The *odometer* registers the total distance travelled by the car.

Speed warning for winter tyres

If the maximum set speed is exceeded, this is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

The speed warning can be set in the infotainment system ››› page 38.

Low consumption driving

Depending on the equipment, when driving, the display appears on the instrument cluster when the vehicle is in low consumption status due to active cylinder management (ACT®) ››› page 164.

⚠ WARNING

Even when the outside temperature is higher than freezing, some roads and bridges could be frozen.

- **The “ice crystal symbol” indicates that there may be a risk of freezing.**
- **At outside temperatures above +4 °C (+39 °F), there may be ice even when the “ice crystal symbol” is not on.**
- **The outside temperature sensor takes a guideline measurement.**

Note

- **There are different instrument clusters and therefore the versions and instructions on the display may vary. In the case of displays without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by the control warning lamps.**

- **Some indications on the instrument cluster display may be concealed by a sudden event, e.g. an incoming call.**
- **Depending on the equipment, some settings and instructions can be changed or displayed on the infotainment system as well.**
- **If there are several warnings at the same time, the symbols will be displayed one after the other for a few seconds. The symbols will stay on until you remove the cause.**
- **If warnings are shown about existing faults when the ignition is switched on, it might not be possible to change the settings or display the information as described. In this case, go to a specialised workshop and request a repair.**

Driving data display

The driving data display shows a range of driving data and consumption values.

Change from one display to another

- Turn the right thumbwheel of the multifunction steering wheel ››› page 34.

Changing memory

- Depending on the view, select **Driving data** and press the left arrow or the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

– **Since start:** The memory is deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours.

– **Since refuel:** Display and storage of the journey data and the consumption values collected. When refuelling, the memory is deleted.

– **Long-term:** This memory contains travel data up to a maximum of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes, or up to a maximum of 1999.9 km or 9999.9 km. When one of these values is exceeded (varies depending on the version of the instrument cluster), the memory is deleted.

Delete journey data presets

- Select the memory you want to delete - either "**Since start**" or "**Long-term**". The "**Since refuelling**" memory is only cleared when refuelling.
- Press and hold the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel for approximately 2 seconds.

Select the instructions

On the instrument cluster, it is selected manually using the ◁ button on the multifunction steering wheel. To access the contents of the tube, rotate the right hand thumbwheel up/down.

– **Current consumption:** The current fuel consumption display operates throughout the journey, in litres/100 km; and with the engine running and the vehicle stopped, in litres/hour.

– **Average consumption:** The average fuel consumption is displayed after driving for approximately 300 metres.

– **Travelling time:** This indicates the hours (h) and minutes (min) since the ignition was switched on.

– **Range:** Approximate distance in km that can still be travelled if the same driving style is maintained.

– **AdBlue range or** ⛽**:** Approximate distance in km that can still be travelled with the current level of the AdBlue® tank with the same driving style. The indication appears from a range of less than 2400 km and cannot be deactivated.[1)]

– **Distance travelled:** Distance covered in km (miles) after switching on the ignition.

– **Average speed:** The average speed will be shown after driving for approximately 100 metres.

– **Boost/Torque:** Indicates the power and torque of the combustion engine (does not indicate electric mode).

---

1) Not available in all countries.

Oil temperature display

The engine reaches its operating temperature when, under normal driving conditions, the oil temperature is between **80°C** (176°F) and **120°C** (248°F). If a great effort is required from the engine and the outside temperature is high, the engine oil temperature may increase. This is not a problem as long as the warning lamps or >>> page 365 do not appear on the display.

Warning and information messages

The system runs a check on certain components and functions when the ignition is switched on and while the vehicle is moving. Faults are displayed on the instrument cluster display as red and yellow warning symbols >>> page 11 accompanied by messages and, depending on the case, even an audible warning. The representation of the messages and symbols may vary depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

Existing faults can also be checked manually. To do this, open the **Vehicle status** >>> page 33 menu.

Priority 1 warning (in red)

The symbol lights up or flashes (sometimes accompanied by audible warnings). **Stop driving!** Danger! Check the fault and eliminate the cause. If necessary, seek professional assistance.

Priority 2 warning (in yellow)

The symbol lights up or flashes (sometimes accompanied by audible warnings). Operating faults or the lack of operating fluids can cause damage to the vehicle or a fault. Check the faulty function as soon as possible. If necessary, seek professional assistance.

Reference to information in the owner's manual

Further information on any warnings can be found in the owner's manual.

Information message

It provides information about processes in the vehicle.

Accessing warnings and information

Existing faults can also be checked in the infotainment system:

- Press > **Vehicle** > **Vehicle status** >>> page 40.

Date and time

Setting the time on the infotainment system

- Press > **Settings** >>> page 35.
- Select the menu option **Date and time**.
- **OR** set the date and time in the instrument cluster's **Service** menu.

Service Menu

In the Service menu various settings can be adjusted depending on the features.

Open the Service menu

- While in **Classic View**, go to the circle on the left and select the odometer, then press the button OK on the multifunction steering wheel for around 5 seconds and then release it.
- Next, the **Configuration list** menu is displayed, where you can choose between the **Service menu** or **View selection** from where the instrument cluster views can be switched on and off.

Restart the service interval indicator

Select the **Service** menu and follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Reset the oil service

Select the **Reset Oil service** menu and follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Identifying letters on engine (LDM)

Select the menu **Engine code**. The identifying letters of the engine will be shown on the instrument cluster display.

Next Service

This specifies when the next workshop inspection is scheduled.

Setting the date and time

Select the Service menu and follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Service intervals

The service interval indicator appears on the instrument cluster display and in the infotainment system.

There are different versions of instrument clusters and infotainment systems, so the versions and instructions on the screens may vary.

CUPRA distinguishes between services with engine oil change (e.g. Oil change service) and services without engine oil change (e.g. Inspection).

In vehicles with **Services established by time or mileage**, the service intervals are already pre-defined.

In vehicles with **LongLife Service**, the intervals are determined individually. Thanks to technological progress, maintenance work has been greatly reduced. The oil only needs to be changed when the vehicle requires it. To calculate this change (max. 2 years), the vehicle's usage conditions and individual driving styles are considered. The advance warning first appears 20 days before the date established for the corresponding service. The kilometres (miles) remaining until the next service are always rounded up to the nearest 100 km (miles) and the time is given in complete days. The current service message cannot be viewed until 500 km after the last service. Prior to this, only lines are visible on the display.

Inspection reminder

If a service or an inspection has to be carried out soon, a **service reminder** will be displayed when the ignition is switched on.

The figure shows the kilometres that can still be travelled or the time until the next service.

Service due

When **the time for a service** or an **inspection** comes, an audible warning will be emitted when the ignition is switched on and the fixed key symbol may appear on the instrument cluster for a few seconds, along with one of the following messages:

- **Service now!**
- **Please have your vehicle inspected**
- **Oil change service due!**
- **Oil change service and inspection due!**

Consult a service notification

With the ignition switched on, the engine off and the vehicle at a standstill, the current service notification can be read:

Check the date of the current service on the infotainment system:

- Press the function button **Vehicle > Vehicle status > Service**.

Checking the date on the digital instrument cluster:

- The date of the service can only be read through the **Service** >>> page 24 menu.

Resetting the service interval indicator

If the service was **not** carried out by a specialised CUPRA dealer or any dealer in the SEAT network, the display can be reset as follows:

- The service interval indicator can only be reset through the **Service** >>> page 24 menu.

Do not restart the indicator between the service intervals, otherwise the information displayed will be incorrect.

If the oil change service is reset manually, the service interval indicator changes to a fixed service interval, also in vehicles with **Flexible oil change service**.

Note

- **The service message disappears after a few seconds, when the engine is started or when the OK button is pressed on the multifunction steering wheel.**
- **In vehicles with the LongLife system in which the battery has been disconnected for a long period of time, it is not possible to calculate the date of the next service. Therefore the service interval indicator may not be correct. In this case, bear in mind the maximum permitted service intervals** >>> page 392.
- **If you reset the display manually, the next service interval will be indicated as in vehicles with fixed service intervals. For this reason we recommend that the service interval indicator be reset by an authorised dealer.**

Drowsiness monitor

Introduction

Fig. 7 On the instrument cluster display: Drowsiness monitor symbol.

The drowsiness monitor informs the driver whether his or her driving behaviour is indicative of fatigue.

The drowsiness monitor determines the driver's driving behaviour and uses this information to assess driver fatigue. If the system detects that the driver is tired, it indicates this visually on the instrument cluster display by means of a control or warning lamp in combination with a supplementary text message. It also issues an audible warning >>> page 27. The text message on the instrument cluster display is displayed for 4 to 6 seconds.

Operating conditions

The drowsiness monitor will only display warnings at speeds above 70 km/h.

⚠ WARNING

The drowsiness monitor is no substitute for the driver's attention and only works within the limits of the system. Therefore, the drowsiness monitor may not detect that the driver is tired in all situations and may not give a warning or may give a delayed or unintended warning. There is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- **Always pay proper attention and do not rely solely on the system. The driver is responsible for his or her fitness to drive at all times.**
- **Note the limits of the system** >>> page 26.
- **Never drive a vehicle when you are tired.**
- **During long journeys, take regular and sufficient breaks.**
- **Follow the information on the instrument cluster display and respond as prompted** >>> page 27.

System limits affecting the drowsiness monitor

The drowsiness monitor has system-related limitations. The following conditions may limit the drowsiness monitor's operation, or prevent it from operating at all:

- Speeds below 60 km/h.
- Speeds over 130 km/h.
- Roads with many curves.

- Roads in poor condition.
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Roadworks.
- Sporty driving style.
- Towing a heavy or very long trailer
››› page 319.
- The driver is distracted.

Note

The drowsiness monitor has been developed for use only when driving on motorways and main roads in good condition.

Restarting the drowsiness monitor

The drowsiness monitor restarts in the following situations:

- If the ignition is switched off.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- The vehicle has been stopped for more than 30 minutes.

Driving with the drowsiness monitor

Connection and disconnection

Depending on the country, the drowsiness monitor is activated whenever the vehicle's drive system is activated. In this case, the infotainment system displays an overview of the individual systems and automatically activated functions in the input menu.

If desired, you can switch off the drowsiness monitor manually in the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Switch the drowsiness monitor on or off in the corresponding submenu ››› page 38..

Sensitivity adjustment

You can manually adjust the sensitivity of the drowsiness monitor and therefore influence how quickly the system reacts to your driving behaviour.

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Open **Drowsiness Monitor**.
3. Select the sensitivity in the **Sensitivity** submenu››› page 38.

Concealing messages via the multi-function steering wheel

1. Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Drowsiness monitor warning levels

If the system detects that the driver is tired, it indicates this visually on the instrument cluster display by means of a control or warning lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and an audible warning. The warning is issued at three levels.

Drowsiness monitor warning - Level 1

The system has detected that the driver is becoming tired. An audible signal sounds. A white control lamp and a text message are shown on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break.

Drowsiness monitor warning - Level 2

The system has detected that the driver is becoming increasingly tired. An audible signal sounds. A red warning lamp is shown on the instrument cluster display together with a text message. Consider taking a break soon.

Drowsiness monitor warning - Level 3

Serious risk identified. An audible signal sounds. A red warning lamp is shown on the instrument cluster display together with a text message. Serious traffic risk. Stop driving as soon as possible and proceed urgently to the nearest place where you can take a break.

Time-related information

The drowsiness monitor detects that the driver has been driving for 4.5 hours without a break and without any recognised

fatigue. A white control lamp and a text message are shown on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break.

Troubleshooting

Availability of the drowsiness monitor is restricted

An audible signal sounds. A yellow control light appears along with a text message on the instrument cluster screen. The availability of the drowsiness monitor is restricted.

- Fault or malfunction. Deactivate and reactivate the vehicle drive system.
- If the problem persists, visit a duly qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

The drowsiness monitor is not available

An audible signal sounds. A yellow control lamp appears in combination with the yellow centre lamp. A text message is also shown on the instrument cluster display and in the **vehicle status** menu.

- Fault or malfunction. Deactivate and reactivate the vehicle drive system. Check the drowsiness monitor settings in the infotainment system >>> page 38.
- The system limits have been exceeded.
- If the problem persists, visit a duly qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

Driver attention monitor

Introduction

Fig. 8 On the instrument cluster display: Driver attention monitor symbol.

The driver attention monitor informs the driver whether his or her driving behaviour is indicative of a lack of attention, based on where they are looking and the vehicle's operating inputs.

The driver attention monitor assesses the vehicle's operating inputs to determine whether the driver is distracted. In addition, an interior camera fitted to the rear view mirror continuously monitor's the driver's state and actions, as well as where they are looking.

If the system detects that the driver is distracted, it indicates this on the instrument cluster display by a control or warning lamp in combination with a supplementary text message. Depending on the configuration, it also emits an audible warning >>> page 29. The text message on the instrument cluster display is displayed for 4 to 6 seconds.

Note

Depending on the country, the vehicle may include an interior rear-view-mirror camera that supplies additional data to the function >>> page 201. The camera records and stores only the data required for closed-loop system operation. Therefore, no information is sent outside the vehicle system. No personal data are processed.

Operating conditions

Driving behaviour is only assessed when the speed is higher than 20 km/h.

WARNING

The driver attention monitor cannot be a substitute for the driver's attention and only works within the limits of the system. Therefore, the driver attention monitor may not be able to detect whether the driver is paying attention in all situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an unwanted manner. There is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- **Always pay proper attention and do not rely solely on the system. The driver is responsible for his or her fitness to drive at all times.**
- **Note the limits of the system** >>> page 29.
- **Avoid distractions while driving.**
- **Adjust the vehicle's personal settings before starting the journey.**
- **Follow the information on the instrument cluster display and respond as prompted** >>> page 29.

Note

In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

System limits affecting the driver attention monitor

The driver attention monitor has system related limitations. The following conditions may limit the operation of the driver attention monitor or prevent it from operating at all:

- Speeds below 20 km/h.
- Severe driver distraction due to external influences such as traffic.
- Severe driver distraction due to actions not related to the vehicle (for example, using a mobile device).
- Insufficient facial recognition.
- Complex driving situations requiring rapid eye movement (junctions, merging onto motorways, etc.)
- Restrictions to the view of the interior camera (on the rear view mirror) towards the driver - particularly the driver's eyes and head. This can be due to darkening caused by peaked caps, scarves, glasses (particularly glasses that block IR rays) or the sun visor.
- If the interior camera on the rear view mirror is dazzled, e.g. by sunlight.
- If the rear view mirror is incorrectly adjusted.
- If the interior rear view mirror glass is fogged, dirty or damaged.
- If the driver is in an unsuitable sitting position.
- If the driver has physical limitations (e.g. eye movement disorders).

Driving with the driver attention monitor

Connection and disconnection

You can switch the driver attention monitor on and off manually.

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Switch the driver attention monitor on or off in the corresponding submenu >>> page 38.
3. **OR:** Via the quick access menu using the scroll bar >>> page 35.

Note

Depending on the country, the function is always switched on when the ignition is switched on.

Concealing messages via the multi-function steering wheel

1. Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Driver attention monitor symbol.

If the system detects that the driver is distracted, it indicates this on the instrument cluster display by a control or warning lamp in combination with a supplementary text message. Depending on the configuration, it also emits an audible warning.

Distraction detected.

Depending on the configuration, an audible warning may be issued. A white control lamp and a text message are shown on the instrument cluster display. “Pay attention to traffic”.

Troubleshooting

The availability of the driver attention monitor is restricted

An audible warning is issued. A yellow control light appears along with a text message on the instrument cluster display. The availability of the driver attention monitor is restricted.

- Fault or malfunction. Deactivate and reactivate the vehicle drive system.
- If the problem persists, visit a duly qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

The driver attention monitor is unavailable

An audible warning is issued. The yellow warning lamp lights up in the instrument cluster in combination with the central yellow lamp. A text message is also shown on the instrument cluster screen and in the **vehicle status** menu.

- Check the causes and corrective measures described in the information in the driver attention monitor ››› page 38.
- Fault or malfunction. Deactivate and reactivate the vehicle drive system. Check the settings of the driver attention monitor in the infotainment system ››› page 38.
- The system limits have been exceeded.
- If the problem persists, visit a duly qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

Road signs detection system

Introduction

The dynamic road sign display system records standard traffic signs by means of a camera located in the upper central area of the windscreen, housed in the compartment at the base of the interior mirror, and reports any speed restrictions, overtaking prohibitions and warning signs that it recognises[1].

Within its limitations, the system also displays a additional sign to indicate aspects such as temporary prohibitions. Even on routes without signs, the system can, if necessary, display the applicable speed limits.

Road sign recognition does not work in all countries. Keep this in mind when travelling abroad.

The dynamic road sign display system is activated whenever the ignition is switched on.

Shown on the display

In Germany, on motorways and normal roads for vehicles, besides speed limits and overtaking provisions the system also displays end of restriction signs. In all other countries the currently valid speed limit is displayed instead.

The road signs detected by the system are displayed on the instrument cluster display and, depending on the navigation system fitted in the vehicle, in the infotainment system as well .

Display of road signs

After checking and evaluating the information from the camera, the infotainment system and actual vehicle data, the system displays up to two current road signs, and an additional sign:

- **First**: The sign that is currently valid for the driver is displayed on the left hand side of the screen, e.g. a prohibition of driving at over 130 km/h (80 mph).
- **Second**: Another road sign, such as a warning sign, can be displayed in second place.
- **Additional sign**: If an additional sign is detected, e.g. for temporary limits, it is shown below the valid road sign.

[1] Not available in all markets.

No entry sign

The road sign recognition system gives a warning on the instrument cluster when a no entry sign is passed on a one-way road or an entrance to a motorway or highway.

⚠ WARNING

The technology in the road sign detection system cannot change the limits imposed by the laws of physics and only works within the system's limits. The increased convenience provided by the dynamic road sign display system should not lead you to take any risks. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Poor visibility, darkness, snow, rain and fog may result in the system not displaying road signs, or not displaying them correctly.**
- **If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the operation of the system may be affected.**

⚠ WARNING

The driving recommendations and traffic indications shown on the road sign detection system may differ from the actual current traffic situation.

- **The system cannot recognise or display all road signs correctly.**
- **Road signs and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the system.**

Limited operation

The road sign detection system has certain limitations. The following cases may cause the system to function in a limited way or not at all:

- Poor visibility, e.g. in snow, rain, fog or intense mist.
- Dazzling, e.g. caused by head-on traffic or by the sun.
- Driving at high speed.
- If the camera is covered or dirty.
- If the road signs are partially or totally obstructed, e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles.
- Non-compliant road signs.
- Damaged or bent road signs.
- Variable message signs on signalling gantries (variable indication of road signs by LEDs or other lighting units).
- If outdated maps are used in the navigation system.
- Adhesives affixed to vehicles that depict road signs, e.g. speed limits on lorries.

Driving with the speed warning function

Operating conditions

The speed warning function gives warnings at speeds above 20 km/h.

Connection and disconnection

Depending on the country, the speed warning function is always activated when the ignition is switched on.

If desired, you can deactivate the speed warning manually in the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Switch the speed warning on or off in the corresponding submenu.

OR: from the multifunction steering wheel:

1. Open the assistants menu by pressing button ( ).
2. Select and switch off the **Speed warning**.

Activating and deactivating the audible warning

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Open the **Speed Warning**.
3. Activate or deactivate the audible warning under the corresponding option ››› page 38.

> **Note**
>
> **The audible warning is activated whenever the ignition is switched on.**

Adjusting the warning thresholds

You can manually adjust the warning thresholds of the speed warning function.

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Open the **Speed Warning**.
3. To select the level of the warning thresholds, tap ∨ in the **Overtaking warning** ››› page 38 menu option.

> **Note**
>
> **When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the warning thresholds for the speed warning are always reset to the default value.**

Activation and deactivation of the speed change warning tone

The speed change warning tone provides the driver with audible information about a change in the speed limits. If desired, you can manually switch off the change tone.

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Open the **Speed Warning**.
3. Activate or deactivate the change tone under the corresponding option ››› page 38.

Concealing fault messages via the multifunction steering wheel

1. Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Trailer mode

For vehicles with a factory-installed towbar and a trailer with electrical connection to the vehicle, the recognition of traffic signs that may apply to the vehicle when towing a trailer, for example applicable speed limits and no overtaking signs, can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle settings menu in the infotainment system.

In trailer mode, the recognition of valid speed limits can be adjusted to suit the type of trailer and country-specific legal requirements.

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Open **Trailer detection**.
3. To adapt the warning threshold to the trailer mode, tap on ∨ in the **Overtaking warning** menu option.

Speed warning function warning levels

If the system detects that the speed limit has been exceeded, it will indicate this visually on the instrument cluster display by flashing the speed limit detected by the system and, depending on the configuration, will also issue an audible warning. A warning is issued at two levels.

Fig. 9 On the instrument cluster display: violation of the detected speed limit (illustration).

Speed warning - Level 1

Speed limit violation detected. The speed limit detected by the system flashes continuously on the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, on the front display ››› Fig. 9.

Speed warning - Level 2

Progressive violation of the speed limit has been detected.

An audible signal sounds. The speed limit detected by the system flashes continuously on the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, on the front display ››› Fig. 9.

Note

- **The second warning level is activated if the speed remains above the limit.**
- **The second warning level is cancelled again when the driver actively reduces the speed.**

Troubleshooting

Advanced road sign recognition is not available

A yellow control lamp appears on the instrument cluster display in combination with the central yellow lamp. A text message is also shown on the instrument cluster display and in the **vehicle status** menu.

Road sign detection system messages:

- **"Dynamic road sign assist: please clean the windscreen."**
  - The windscreen is dirty in the area of the camera or the camera view is impaired by weather conditions. Clean the windscreen ››› page 395.
  - The camera's view is impaired by added parts or stickers. Keep the area around the camera clear ››› page 199.
  - The camera has been moved or damaged, for example due to damage to the windscreen. Check whether the damage can be seen.
- **"Error: dynamic road sign assist"**
  - There is a fault in the system. Have the system checked by a specialised workshop.
- **"Speed warning is currently unavailable"**
  - The speed warning function of the road sign detection system is faulty. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a specialised workshop.
- **"Dynamic road sign assist currently restricted"**
  - The navigation system is not transmitting data. Check if the navigation system has updated maps.
  - **OR:** the vehicle is in a region not included on the navigation system's map.

  If the problem persists, have the system checked by a specialised workshop.

Outside the operating region for advanced road signs recognition

A message appears on the instrument cluster display with the following text **"Road sign assist: outside the usage area"**.

- No data available for this region. The advanced road signs recognition system is not supported in the country you are currently driving in.

OFF Speed warning system partially deactivated

A white control lamp is shown on the instrument cluster display. The default configuration of the speed warning has been changed:

- Check whether the speed warning is switched off ››› page 31.
- Check if the audible warning is activated ››› page 31.
- Check if the default warning threshold has been changed ››› page 31.

Instrument cluster operation

Introduction

With the ignition switched on, it is possible to read the different functions of the display by scrolling through the menus.

In vehicles with multifunction steering wheel, the multifunction display can only be operated with the steering wheel buttons.

Some menu options can only be read when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Instrument panel menus

The number of menus and information items available will depend on the vehicle's electronics and features.

- Vehicle status >>> page 24.
- Driving data >>> page 23.
- Assist systems.
  - Front Assist On/Off >>> page 217
  - ACC (only display) >>> page 209
  - Lane Assist On/Off >>> page 221
  - Travel Assist >>> page 223
  - Side Assist On/Off >>> page 229
  - Speed warning On/Off >>> page 31
- Navigation.
- Audio.
- Telephone.

⚠ WARNING

Distracting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries.

- **Never use the menus on the instrument panel display while the vehicle is in motion.**

ⓘ NOTICE

After charging or changing the 12-volt battery, check the system settings. If the power supply is interrupted, the system settings might be incorrect or deleted.

Operation using the multifunction steering wheel

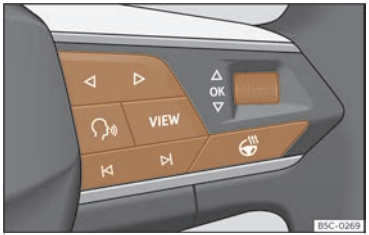


Fig. 10 Right side of multifunction steering wheel: buttons to the menus and informative indications on the instrument panel (depending on the version).

As long as a priority 1 >>> page 24 warning is active, it will not be possible to access any menu. Some warnings can be confirmed and hidden with the OK button of the multifunction steering wheel >>> Fig. 10.

Select a menu or an informative display

- Switch the ignition on.
- If a message or vehicle symbol is displayed, press the OK button >>> Fig. 10; several times if necessary.
- To change menus, use ◁ or ▷ buttons.
- To open the menu or the information displayed, press the OK button or wait a few seconds until the menu or the informative display opens automatically.

Changing menu settings

- In the menu displayed, turn the right thumbwheel of the multifunction steering wheel until the desired option of the menu is highlighted. The option appears framed.
- Press the OK button to make the required modifications. A mark indicates that the system or function is activated.

Back to menu selection

- Press the ◁ or ▷ button.

Infotainment system operation and displays

Introduction

The infotainment system brings together important vehicle functions and systems into a single central control unit, e.g. air conditioning, menu settings, radio equipment and the navigation system.

The actual number of menus available and the name of the various options will depend on the vehicle's electronics and equipment.

General operating information

General information on the operation of the infotainment system, as well as on the warning and safety instructions that must be taken into account, is found in ››› page 278.

How to move through the different menus and select them

- Switch the ignition on.
- If the infotainment system is off, switch it on.
- The different menus are selected directly on the touch screen using texts, icons or buttons.

If the box is checked ✓, the function is activated.

Pressing the menu button ❮ will always take you to the last menu used.

Any changes made using the settings menus are automatically saved on closing those menus

Scroll bar: Some menus and functions show more content above or below those displayed on the screen at that time, for example, long lists of settings. Press on the scroll bar and drag up or down.

Tutorial

The first time you connect the Infotainment system, a system tutorial will open with a brief description of the main functions and how to use it.

Help

In the **Help** menu can be found more information and tips for using the infotainment system.

⚠ WARNING

Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury. Operating the Infotainment system while driving could distract you from traffic.

Note

After starting the engine with a 12-volt battery that is heavily discharged or recently replaced, some system settings such as time, date, personalised comfort settings, programming and user accounts might be altered or deleted. Check and correct these settings when the battery is sufficiently charged.

Explanation of the function buttons

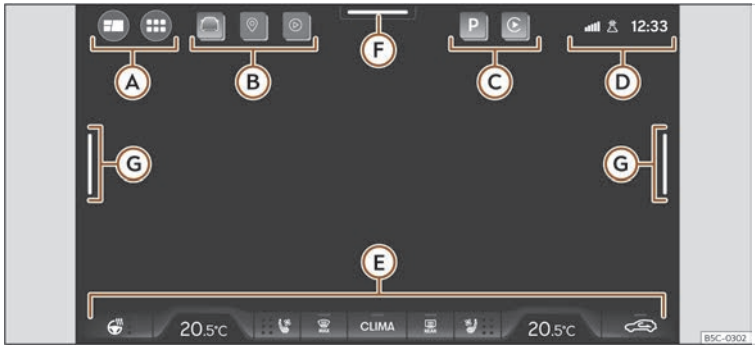


Fig. 11 Schematic representation: Overview of the possible function buttons on the screen.

Top part of the screen

Ⓐ Main menu display mode:
: main menu with widget views.
: main menu in tile mode (functions of the Infotainment system).

Ⓑ Shortcuts to infotainment system functions with the option of adding or removing functions.

Ⓒ Active functions that do not appear in zone Ⓑ.

Ⓓ **Status bar**. Information bar showing the system status, such as: time, phone coverage, phone charge level, Qi charger status, user privacy mode.

Bottom part of the screen

Ⓔ **Climabar** ››› page 150.

Segments

Ⓕ Scroll down to view the control centre and system notifications.

Ⓖ Change the display of the active function on the home screen. For example, under **Navigation** switch from Map to Information on route guidance; or under **Assisted parking** switch from Rear camera display to Manoeuvring status.

Initial configuration wizard

Fig. 12 Schematic representation: Initial configuration wizard.

The initial configuration wizard will help you to set up your Infotainment system the first time you switch it on.

Whenever you switch on the infotainment system, the initial setup screen will be displayed ››› **Fig. 12** if any parameters have not been set (marked with "✓") or if the **Don't show again** function button has not been pressed.

Configuration options:

Ⓐ Tap it to access the basic configuration menu of the infotainment system such as navigation to home, mobile connection, radio stations, etc.

Ⓑ Tap to access the infotainment system's advanced configuration menu.

Don't show again Disables the possibility of changing the settings of the Infotainment system. If you wish to perform the initial settings, you will need to access via **Settings**.

End Once one or more settings have been applied, press to finalise the setup in the main menu of the wizard.

Assistance systems and vehicle settings

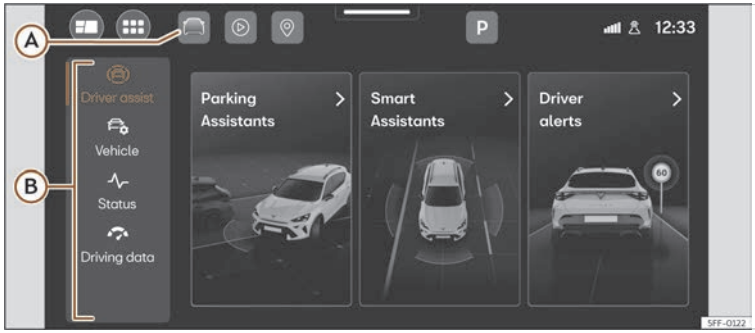


Fig. 13 Schematic representation: Assist systems and vehicle settings

Press ››› **Fig. 13** Ⓐ, or **Vehicle** in the main menu to open the assistants and vehicle settings menu. Next, clicking on any of the menus located in the left area Ⓑ, displays the settings menu or the selected assist systems on the display.

The number of assistance systems and settings depend on the version and the country in question.

Assistants

- **Parking**
  - Automatic parking brake activation ››› **page 234**.
  - Park assist ››› **page 239**.
  - Trailer Assist ››› **page 253**
  - Rear Cross Traffic Alert ››› **page 256**.
- **Smart Assistants**
  - Activate/deactivate ESC, stabilisation systems and brake assist ››› **page 194**.
  - Switch the Start-Stop system on/off ››› **page 179**
  - Speed limiter ››› **page 205**
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) ››› **page 209**.
  - Lane Assist ››› **page 221**.
  - Emergency braking assistance system Front Assist ››› **page 217**.
  - Driving assistant (Travel Assist) ››› **page 223**
  - Emergency Assist ››› **page 228**
  - Hill Descent Control (HDC) ››› **page 189**.
  - Predictive speed adjustment ››› **page 214**.
  - Auto Hold ››› **page 236**.
  - Eco Assist ››› **page 208**.
- **Driver alerts**
  - Drowsiness monitor ››› **page 26**.
  - Speed warning ››› **page 30**.
  - Side Assist ››› **page 229**.
  - Door opening warning ››› **page 257**.

- Trailer detection ››› page 326.
- Traffic hazard alert ››› page 214.
- Attention monitor ››› page 28.

Vehicle

- Instrument cluster ››› page 21.
- Lighting ››› page 138.
- Mirrors ››› page 143.
- Closing ››› page 98.
- Lights ››› page 132.
- Windows ››› page 143.
- Tyres ››› page 386.
- Windscreen wipers ››› page 141
- Electric drive (PHEV hybrid vehicles) .
››› page 174
- Seats ››› page 124

Vehicle information

Fig. 14 Schematic representation: Vehicle information and status.

Pressing **Vehicle** in the main menu opens the **Vehicle** menu with the following submenus:

Vehicle assistants ››› page 38

Vehicle settings ››› page 38

Vehicle status
The warnings regarding faults, incidents, memorisation of the tyre pressure or information about the next inspection service are displayed.

Driving data
The average consumption, average speed, distance travelled, trip duration and range are shown. It has 3 memories: “Since start”, “Long-term” and “Since refuelling”.

The “Since start” and “Long-term” memories can be reset by pressing button .

Departure menu

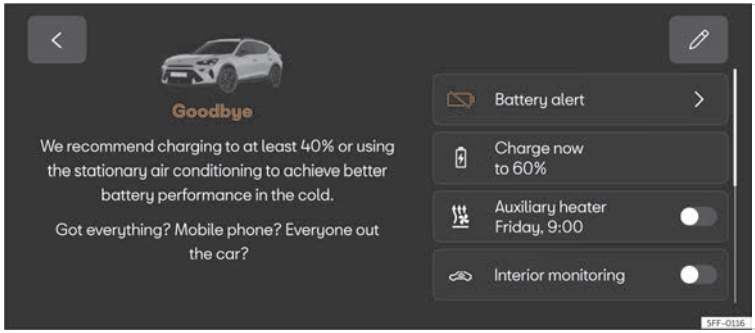


Fig. 15 Schematic representation: departure menu.

In the departure menu you can set some functions before leaving the vehicle. When you switch off the ignition, the departure menu is displayed on the infotainment system.

The inputs that are displayed depend on the equipment and, if applicable, are only available under certain conditions. Examples of adjustable functions are:

- Charging the high-voltage battery
- Stationary air conditioning or heating
- Interior monitoring
- Save parking process

Hide

When you leave the vehicle, the departure menu is hidden automatically. Depending on the equipment, it is also hidden after a certain amount of time.

- Press < to manually hide the departure menu.

Adjust

You can adjust the order of the displayed inputs.

- Press ✎.
- Sort the inputs according to your preferences.
- Press ✎ again.

Safety

Safe driving

Safety first!

⚠ WARNING

- **This manual contains important information about the operation of the vehicle, both for the driver and the passengers. The other sections of the on-board documentation also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the on-board documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times. This is especially important when lending or selling the vehicle to another person.**

Before driving

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

- Make sure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals are working properly.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.
- Make sure all luggage is secured ››› page 311.
- Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.
- Adjust front seat, headrest and mirrors properly according to your size.
- Ensure that the passengers in the rear seats always have the headrests in the in-use position ››› page 126.
- Instruct passengers to adjust the headrests according to their height.
- Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly fastened seat belts ››› page 61.
- Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position ››› page 43.
- Fasten your seat belt securely. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly ››› page 45.

Factors influencing safety

As a driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers.

- Always pay attention to traffic and do not get distracted by passengers or telephone calls.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs).
- Observe traffic laws and speed limits.
- Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions.
- When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.
- If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication or narcotics may result in severe accidents and even loss of life.

- **Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics may significantly alter perception, affect reaction times and safety while driving, which could result in the loss of control of the vehicle.**

Safety equipment

Never put your safety or the safety of your passengers in danger. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment may reduce the risk of injury. The following points cover part of the safety equipment in your CUPRA[1]:

- Optimised seat belts for all seats.
- Seat belt tensioners on the driver, front passenger and rear side seats.
- Seat belt force limiters on the driver, front passenger and rear side seats.

[1] Depending on the version/market.

- Red warning lamp and, if applicable, seat belt status indication.
- Front airbags for driver and passenger.
- Side airbags for driver and passenger.
- Side airbags for the rear seats.
- Head airbags on both sides of the vehicle.
- Central airbag between the driver and front passenger.
- Knee airbag.
- Yellow airbag control lamp .
- Yellow warning lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF on the roof console.
- Yellow warning lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG ON on the roof console.
- Control units and sensors.
- Optimised and height-adjustable headrests[1].
- Adjustable steering column.
- ISOFIX/i-Size anchor points for child seats.
- Child seat top tether attachment points.

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in the event of an accident. However, these safety systems can only be effective if you and your passengers are sitting in a correct position and use this equipment properly.

Safety is everybody's business.

Correct sitting position of vehicle occupants

Correct position on the seat

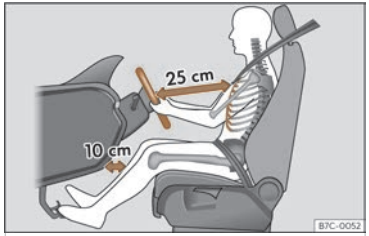


Fig. 16 The correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel must be at least 25 cm (10 inches).

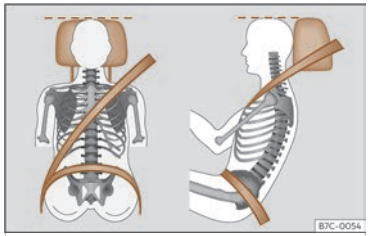


Fig. 17 Correct belt web and headrest positions

The correct sitting positions for the driver and passengers are shown below.

If your physical condition prevents you from maintaining the correct sitting position, contact a specialised workshop for help with any special devices. The seat belt and airbag can only provide optimum protection if a correct sitting position is adopted. CUPRA recommends taking your car in for technical service.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking or manoeuvre, CUPRA recommends the following positions:

[1] The front seats with built-in headrests do not require adjustment.

Valid for all vehicle occupants:

- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is, as far as possible, at the same level as the top of your head, as close to eye level as possible[1] >>> page 126. Keep the back of your neck as close as possible to the headrest >>> Fig. 17.
- Short people must fully lower the headrest[2], even if your head is below its upper edge.
- Tall people must fully raise the headrest[1].
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten your seat belt correctly >>> page 45.

The following also applies to the driver:

- Move the seat backrest to an almost upright position so that your back rests completely against it.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that it is at a distance of at least 25 cm (10 inches) from the sternum >>> Fig. 16 and you can hold it with both hands on the sides, on the outside, with your arms slightly flexed.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the chest and never towards the face.
- Adjust the seat lengthwise so that you can press the pedals fully down with your knees slightly bent and there is a distance between the knee area and the dash panel of at least 10 cm (4 inches) >>> Fig. 17.
- Adjust the height of the seat so that you can reach the top of the steering wheel.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.

For the passenger, the following applies:

- Move the seat backrest to an almost upright position so that your back rests completely against it.
- Move the seat as far back as possible (minimum 25 cm between the chest and the instrument cluster). If you are sitting closer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.

Number of seats

The vehicle has **5** seats, 2 in the front and 3 in the rear. All seats are fitted with a safety belt.

Check the official documentation for the number of occupants approved for your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting in an incorrect position may increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of sudden braking or manoeuvring, in case of collision or accident and if the airbags deploy.

- **Before starting the car, all passengers must be sitting in a correct position and stay like that for the entire journey. This also applies to a correct use of the seat belt.**
- **The maximum number of people in the vehicle is the same as the number of seats with seat belts.**
- **For children, always use a protection system that is approved and suited for their weight and height** **>>> page 61**.
- **While driving, always keep your feet in the footwell. Never place them on the seat or the dash panel, for example, or outside the window. Otherwise the airbag and seat belt may offer insufficient protection and also increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident.**

Risks of sitting in an incorrect position

If seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. Seat belts can provide optimal protection only if the belt web is properly worn. Incorrect sit-

[1] On seats with adjustable headrests.

ting positions substantially reduce the protective function of seat belts and, therefore, increase the risk of severe or even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially heightened when a deploying airbag strikes a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all people, particularly children, inside the vehicle.

The following list contains examples of incorrect sitting positions that could be dangerous for all vehicle occupants.

When the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt your seat backrest too far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear seats.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never place your feet on the bench or on the backrest of the seat.
- Never travel in a footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never travel without wearing the seat belt.
- Never travel in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting in an incorrect position increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of accidents and sudden braking or manoeuvres.

- **All occupants must sit correctly during the journey and wear the seat belt correctly.**
- **Vehicle occupants that are not sitting correctly, not wearing the seat belt or are not at a proper distance of the airbag risk suffering very serious or fatal injuries, especially if the airbags deploy and strike them.**

Seat belts

Introduction

Fig. 18 Drivers with properly worn seat belts will not be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.

Properly worn seat belts hold the occupants in the proper position. They also help prevent uncontrolled movements that may result in serious injury and reduce the risk of being thrown out of the vehicle in case of an accident.

Vehicle occupants wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. In addition, the front part of your vehicle and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are designed to absorb the kinetic energy released in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the released kinetic energy and conse-

quently, the risk of injury. This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown that wearing seat belts is an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival when involved in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some cases of head-on collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor head-on or side collisions, rear-end collisions, overturns or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold value in the control unit is not exceeded.

Important safety instructions for the use of seat belts

- Always wear the seat belt as described in this section.
- Ensure that the seat belts can be fastened at all times and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- **If seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. The optimal protection from seat belts can be achieved only if you use them properly.**
- **Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt.**
- **Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **The seat belt should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.**
- **Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.**
- **Bulky and unfastened clothing (such as an overcoat over a sweater) impairs the proper fit and function of the seat belts, reducing their ability to protect.**
- **The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging securely.**
- **Never use seat belt clips, fastening rings or similar items to alter the position of the belt webbing.**
- **Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.**
- **Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and have been stretched must be replaced by a specialised workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.**
- **Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.**
- **The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly.**

Seat belt buckled indication

Lights up red
The driver or one of the passengers have not fastened their seat belts.

The control lamp lights up to remind the driver to fasten their seat belt.

Before starting the vehicle:

- Fasten your seat belt securely.
- Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.
- Protect children by using a child seat according to the child's height and weight >>> page 61.

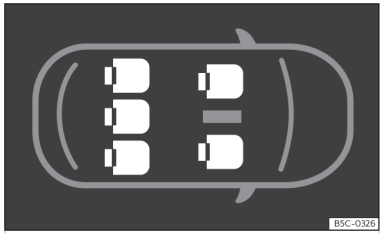


Fig. 19 Instrument cluster: indication of the status of the rear seat seat belts.

When the ignition is switched on, the seatbelt status display ››› **Fig. 19** on the instrument cluster display informs the driver whether the occupants of the rear seats have their seat belts fastened.

Depending on seat occupancy and the status of the seat belts, the vehicle's seats will light up in different colours:

- A white light indicates that the corresponding seat is not occupied.
- A green light indicates that the seat's occupant is wearing the seat belt.
- A red light indicates that the seat is occupied and the occupant is not wearing the seat belt.

If a speed of 25 km/h (15 mph) is exceeded after moving off without the driver or a front passenger seatbelt being fastened, or if the seatbelt is unfastened while driving, an audible signal will sound for 126 seconds. In addition, the warning lamp on the instrument cluster display flashes.

The lamp goes out when the ignition is on and all occupants have fastened their seat belts.

Head-on collisions and the laws of physics

Fig. 20 A driver not wearing a seat belt may be thrown forward violently.

Fig. 21 Any rear seat occupants not wearing a seat belt may be thrown forward violently, hitting the driver who is wearing the seat belt.

The effects of the laws of physics in the case of a head-on collision are easy to explain: the moment a vehicle starts moving, a type of energy called “kinetic energy” starts acting on both the vehicle and its passengers.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and on the weight of the vehicle and of its passengers. The taller they are, the more energy there is to be “absorbed” in the event of an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h (15 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, the corresponding kinetic energy is multiplied by four.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

Vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a head-on collision, they will move forward at the same speed their vehicle was travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to head-on collisions, but to all accidents and collisions.

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In the event of a head-on collision, vehicle occupants not wearing a seat belt will be thrown uncontrollably forward and will collide, for example, against the steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen ››› **Fig. 20**.

It is also important for rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently through the vehicle interior in an accident. If a rear seat occupant is not wearing a seat belt, they are not only endangering themselves but also the occupants of the front seats ››› **Fig. 21**.

Fastening and unfastening the seat belt

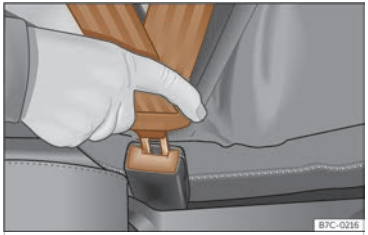


Fig. 22 Insert the latch plate of the seat belt into the buckle.

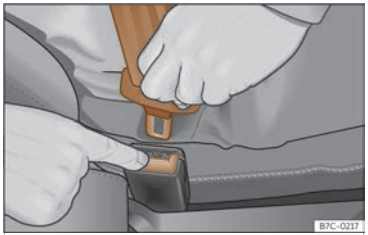


Fig. 23 Release the seat belt's latch plate.

Properly worn seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the position that best protects them in the event of an accident or sudden braking ››› ⚠.

Fastening the seat belt

Fasten your seat belt before each trip.

- Adjust the front seat and headrest correctly ››› **page 43**.
- Engage the seat backrest of the rear seat in an upright position ››› ⚠.
- Pull the latch plate and place the belt webbing evenly across your chest and lap. Do **not** twist the seat belt when doing so ››› ⚠.
- Insert the buckle plate in the buckle of the correct seat ››› **Fig. 22**.
- Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

Releasing the seat belt

Only unfasten the seat belt when the vehicle has come to a standstill ››› ⚠.

- Press the red button on the buckle ››› **Fig. 23**. The latch plate is released from the buckle.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and does not damage the trim.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belt cannot offer its full protection unless the seat backrest is in an upright position and the seat belt is worn correctly, according to your size.**
- **Unbuckling your seat belt while the vehicle is in motion can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking.**
- **The seat belt itself, or a loose seat belt, can cause severe injuries if the belt moves from hard areas of the body to soft areas (e.g. the stomach).**

Correct position of the seat belt

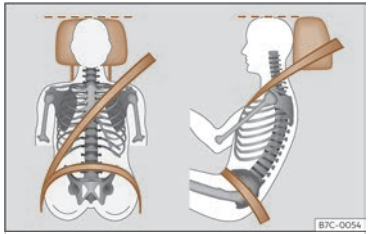


Fig. 24 Correct seat belt and headrest positions, viewed from front and the side.

Fig. 25 Position of seat belt during pregnancy.

Seat belts offer their maximum protection in the event of an accident and reduce the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries only when they are properly positioned. Furthermore, if the webbing is correctly positioned, the seat belt will hold the vehicle occupants in the optimum position to ensure the airbag provides the maximum protection. The seat belt must therefore always be worn and the webbing correctly positioned.

Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause severe or even fatal injuries ››› page 43, *Correct sitting position of vehicle occupants*.

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck or the arm, under the arm or behind the back.
- The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.
- The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.

In the case of **pregnant women**, the seat belt should pass uniformly over the chest and as low as possible over the pelvic area with the strap flat so it does not press down on the abdomen; in addition, it must be used throughout the entire pregnancy ››› **Fig. 25**.

Adapting the position of the belt webbing to your size

The position of the seat belt can be adapted by adjusting the height of the front seats.

⚠ WARNING

An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never under the arm or across the neck.**
- **The seatbelt must lie flat and fit comfortably across the upper body.**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably on the pelvis. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.**

- **In the case of pregnant women, the abdominal strap of the seat belt should pass as low as possible across the pelvic area, resting flat and "surrounding" the abdomen** >>> Fig. 25.
- **Do not twist the seat belt while it is fastened.**
- **Once the seat belt is positioned correctly, don't pull it away from your body with your hand.**
- **Do not lie the seat belt across rigid or fragile objects, e.g. glasses, pens or keys.**
- **Never use seat belt clips, securing rings or similar instruments to alter the position of the belt webbing.**

Note

If your physical condition prevents you from maintaining the correct position of the belt webbing, contact a specialised workshop for help with any special devices to ensure the optimum protection of the seat belt and airbag. CUPRA recommends taking your car in for technical service.

Automatic retractor, tensioner and belt force limiter

Vehicle seat belts are part of the vehicle's safety system >>> page 43. This system has the following important functions:

Automatic belt retractor

The seat belt shoulder straps on the driver's and front passenger seats, as well as those on the rear side seats (and, depending on equipment, also the seat belt of the central rear seat) are fitted with automatic retractors. This device ensures complete freedom of movement when the shoulder strap is pulled gently or during normal driving. However, during sudden braking, when driving in the mountains, around bends and when accelerating, the retractor locks the seat belt if it extends rapidly.

In critical driving situations, e.g. in the event of emergency braking or in the case of oversteer and understeer, the proactive occupant protection can tension the front seat belts automatically if they are worn[1]. The two belts are loosened again if an accident does not happen or when the critical situation passes. Proactive occupant protection is ready to operate again >>> page 51.

Seat belt tensioner

The seat belts on the front seats and, depending on the equipment, side rear seats are fitted with tensioners.

The tensioners are activated by sensors in the event of severe head-on, side and rear collisions (in hybrid vehicles they are also activated in the event of a roll-over), and they tension the seat belts in a direction opposite their extension.

If the seat belt is slack, the tensioner tightens it. This cushions the forward movement of occupants towards the impact.

The belt pre-tensioners work in combination with the airbag system. The belt pre-tensioners activate in combination with some of the airbags, depending on the collision type.

When activated, a fine powder may be released. This is completely normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

WARNING

The seatbelt pre-tensioners are only activated once and the system must be replaced if they are triggered.

- **Have any triggered pretensioners and affected parts of the system replaced immediately with new parts approved by CUPRA for this vehicle.**

[1] Only if fitted with the PreCrash System.

- Repairs and modifications to the vehicle should only be made by qualified specialist workshops. They have the necessary diagnostic equipment, repair information and tools, as well as qualified personnel. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA dealership.
- Never fit belt pretensioner parts removed from vehicles at the end of their useful life, or pretensioners from recycling plants to the vehicle.
- Never modify any component of the belt pretensioners.

Reversible belt tensioning (proactive occupant protection)

A reversible tensioning of the seat belts may occur in certain driving situations >>> page 51. For example:

- in the event of sudden braking
- in the event of oversteering or understeering
- in the event of minor collisions

Belt force limiter

Depending on the equipment and the country in question, in the event of an accident, the seat belt force limiter reduces the force the seat belt exerts on the body.

Note

- After certain driving situations, the reversible belt tensioners may be left permanently tensioned[1]. In this case, to loosen the belt, it must be removed manually while the vehicle is stationary and then replaced correctly.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed if the vehicle or any components of the system are to be scrapped. Specialised workshops are aware of these requirements.

Maintenance and disposal of seat belt tensioners

The belt tensioners are components of the seat belts that are installed in the seats of your vehicle. If you work on the belt tensioners or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, the seat belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tensioners function incorrectly or may not function at all.

Regulations, which are known to the specialised workshops, must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the seat belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution.

WARNING

Improper handling and home repairs to seat belts, automatic retractors and belt tensioners may increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries. The tensioners may not activate, even though they should, or they may activate unexpectedly.

- Never repair, adjust, or disassemble and reassemble seat belt components or tensioners. Always have this work carried out by a specialist workshop.
- Seat belts, tensioners and their automatic retractors cannot be repaired and have to be replaced.

For the sake of the environment

Airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain perchlorate.

Observe the legal requirements for their disposal.

PreCrash system

How it works

The PreCrash system is an assistance system that actives a series of measures to protect the vehicle occupants in potentially risky situations, but which cannot prevent a collision.

[1] Only if fitted with the PreCrash System.

It only works completely if no special drive profile is selected and if there are no operating anomalies.

Basic features

Depending on the legal provisions of the country and the features of the vehicle, in critical situations (e.g. in certain cases of emergency braking or loss of control of the vehicle by the driver) the following functions can be activated separately or at the same time when the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

- Reversible tensioning of front seat belts that are fastened.
- Operation of the hazard warning lights.
- Automatic closing of the windows until they are just cracked open and, depending on the equipment, of the sunroof.
- In the event of overturning, depending on the equipment, activation of the belt tensioners.

Depending on how critical the driving situation is, the belts are either tightened individually, or both belts at the same time.

In addition to Front Assist

In vehicles with Front Assist ››› page 217, within the limits of the system, information is assessed on the risk of collision with the vehicle in front. The functions of the PreCrash system may also be activated if there is a high likelihood of a rear-end collision, or during the activation of Front Assist.

In addition to Side Assist

In vehicles with Side Assist,››› page 229, within the limitations of this system, information is assessed on the risk of collision with traffic to the rear of the vehicle. If a rear-end collision is highly likely, the functions of the PreCrash system may also be activated. In this situation, the hazard warning lights are turned on with a higher frequency of flashes.

In addition to the Emergency Assist system

In vehicles with emergency assist, driver status information is assessed within the limitations of this system. The following PreCrash systems may be activated if a lack of activity is detected:

- Reversible seat belt tensioning of the driver's seat belt.
- Automatic closing of the windows until they are just cracked open and, depending on the equipment, of the sunroof.

Activating the PreCrash system

The PreCrash system can be partially deactivated by deactivating the traction and/or stability control, depending on the equipment. When these vehicle safety controls are switched on (by default, every time the ignition is turned on), the system is fully activated.

Drive profile selection settings

In vehicles with drive profile selection, PreCrash adapts to suit the special vehicle configuration of the corresponding profile ››› page 190.

Limited operation

The PreCrash system is not available or only has limited availability in the following situations:

- When the TCS and/or ESC is off.
- When driving in reverse.
- When the airbag control unit is not operating properly.
- When there is a fault in the system itself, in the ESC or in Front Assist.

Troubleshooting

If the PreCrash is not working correctly, the message **System unavailable** or **System with limited functions** is shown permanently on the instrument cluster display. Go to a specialized CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service and ask for the system to be checked.

⚠ WARNING

The PreCrash system cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics; it only works within the limits of the system. Risks that compromise safety are never justified by the use of this system. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness and cannot prevent a collision.

- **Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **The system is not always able to recognise objects.**
- **The system may not react to people or animals or objects crossing the path of the vehicle or that are hard to detect.**
- **Metallic objects (e.g. fences) or other elements of the public road or adverse weather conditions can hinder its operation and thus its ability to detect collision risk.**
- **Never ignore the warning lamps that light up or the messages shown on the dashboard.**

⚠ WARNING

Distracting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries.

- **Never change settings on the Infotainment System while driving.**

Airbag system

Why is it so important to wear a seat belt and to sit correctly?

For the inflating airbags to achieve the best protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly and the correct sitting position must be assumed.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the headrests properly. Therefore, it is most important to properly wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety ››› page 45, *Seat belts*.

The airbag inflates in a matter of seconds, so if you are not properly seated when the airbag is triggered, you may sustain fatal injuries. Therefore, it is essential that all vehicle occupants assume a correct sitting position while travelling.

Sharp braking before an accident may cause a passenger not wearing a seat belt to be thrown forward into the area of the deploying airbag. In this case, the inflating airbag may inflict critical or fatal injuries on the occupant. This also applies to children.

Always maintain the greatest possible distance between yourself and the front airbag. This way, the front airbags can completely deploy when triggered, providing their maximum protection.

The most important factors for triggering the airbag are the type of accident, the angle of impact and the vehicle speed.

Whether or not the airbags are activated depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision and detected by the control unit. If the vehicle deceleration occurring during the collision and measured by the control unit remains below the specified reference values, the front, side and/or curtain airbags will not be triggered. Take into account that the visible damage in a vehicle involved in an accident, no matter how serious, is not a factor that determines whether or not the airbags are activated.

⚠ WARNING

Wearing the seat belt incorrectly or assuming an incorrect sitting position can lead to critical or fatal injuries

- **All vehicle occupants, including children, who are not properly strapped in can sustain critical or fatal injuries if the airbag is triggered. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat. Never transport children in the vehicle if they are not restrained or the restraint system is not appropriate for their age, size or weight.**

- **To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, always wear the seat belt properly** >>> page 45.

Description of the airbag system

The airbag system offers additional protection for the occupants in combination with the seat belts.

The airbag system comprises the following modules (depending on the vehicle equipment):

- Electronic control unit
- Front airbags for driver and passenger
- Knee airbag for the driver
- Side airbags
- Central airbag for the driver
- Head airbag
- Airbag control lamp on the instrument cluster >>> page 55
- Key-operated switch for front passenger airbag
- Control lamp for disabled/enabled status of the front passenger airbag.

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically. The airbag control lamp will illuminate for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

There is a fault in the system if the control lamp :

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on >>> page 55,
- turns off after 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on,
- illuminates or flashes while the vehicle is moving.

The airbag system is not triggered if:

- the ignition is switched off
- there is a minor frontal collision
- there is a minor side collision
- there is a rear-end collision
- in the event of the vehicle overturning if the dynamic characteristics measured by the control unit are too low,
- the impact speed is lower than the reference value programmed in the control unit.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly** >>> page 43.
- **If a fault has occurred in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.**

Airbag activation

The airbags deploy extremely rapidly, within thousandths of a second, to provide additional protection in the event of an accident. A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system is only ready to function when the ignition is on.

In special accidents instances, several airbags may activate at the same time.

In the event of minor head-on and side collisions, rear-end collisions, overturning or rollover of the vehicle, airbags **do not activate**.

Airbags only activate if the vehicle overturns in the hybrid plug-in version of the vehicle.

Activation factors

The conditions that lead to the airbag system activating in each situation cannot be generalised. Some factors play an important role, such as the properties of the object the vehicle hits (hard/soft), angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.

Deceleration trajectory is key for airbag activation.

The control unit analyses the collision trajectory and activates the respective restraint system.

If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car.

The following airbags are triggered in serious head-on collisions:

- Driver airbag.
- Front passenger airbag
- Knee airbag for the driver.
- Head airbags.

In the event of serious side collisions, some (or all) of the following airbags can be activated (depending on the severity of the collision):

- Curtain (head) airbag on the side of the accident.
- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Central airbag.

In an accident with airbag activation:

- the interior lights switch on (if the interior light switch is in the courtesy light position);
- the hazard warning lights turn on;
- all doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is cut;
- in hybrid vehicles, the high voltage system is switched off;
- an emergency call is started.

Airbag system control lamps

Lights up on the instrument cluster
Fault in the airbag system and seat belt tensioners. Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

OFF **Lights up on the roof console**
Front passenger airbag deactivated. Check if the airbag should be kept deactivated.

ON **Lights up on the roof console**
Front passenger airbag activated. The control lamp turns off automatically 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

If the airbag and seat belt tensioner system control lamp remains on or flashes, it indicates a malfunction in the airbag and seat belt tensioner system ››› ⚠ . Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

If the front passenger airbag has been deactivated, the warning lamp OFF remains lit on the roof console to remind you that the airbag is deactivated. If, with the front passenger airbag deactivated, this lamp **does not remain lit** or if it is lit along with the control lamp on the instrument cluster, there is a fault in the airbag system ››› ⚠. If the control lamp is flashing, there is a fault in the disabling of the airbag system ››› ⚠. Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a fault in the airbag and seat belt tensioner system, the airbags and seat belts may not trigger correctly, may fail to trigger or may even trigger unexpectedly.

- **The vehicle occupants run the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries. Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.**
- **Do not mount a child seat in the front passenger seat or remove the mounted child seat! The front passenger airbag may deploy during an accident in spite of the fault.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Always pay attention to any lit control lamps and to the corresponding descriptions and instructions to avoid damage to the vehicle or harm to the occupants.

Front airbags

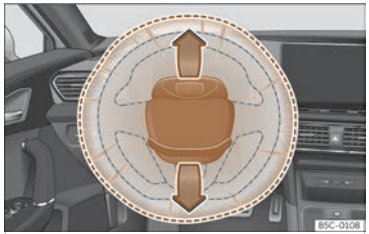


Fig. 26 Driver's airbag in the steering wheel.

Fig. 27 Front passenger airbag located in the dash panel.

The driver's front airbag is housed in the steering wheel and that of the front passenger, on the dash panel. Airbags are identified by the word "AIRBAG".

The airbag covers open and remain attached to the steering wheel and dash panel when the driver and front passenger airbags are triggered, respectively ››› **Fig. 26** , ››› **Fig. 27**.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision ››› ⚠.

In addition, in certain head-on collisions, the head airbag is triggered on both sides of the vehicle.

Their special design allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and chest are protected by the airbag. After the collision, the airbag deflates sufficiently to allow visibility.

⚠ WARNING

- **The deployment space between the front passengers and the airbags must not in any case be occupied by other passengers, pets and objects.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **It is also important not to attach any objects such as drink holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**

Activate and deactivate front passenger airbag

Fig. 28 Switch for activating and deactivating the front passenger airbag.

Fig. 29 On the roof console: passenger airbag deactivation control lamp.

Deactivate the front passenger airbag only if you have to use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat.

CUPRA recommends fitting the child seat in the rear seat to avoid having to deactivate the front passenger airbag.

When the front passenger airbag is **deactivated**, this means that only the front passenger airbag is deactivated. All the other airbags in the vehicle remain activated.

Deactivate and activate the front passenger airbag[1)]

- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the passenger side door.
- Remove the key blade from the vehicle key.
- Insert the key blade into the slot provided in the front passenger airbag disconnection switch ››› **Fig. 28**. About 3/4 of the key should enter; this is as far as it will go.
- Turn the key gently to change its position to OFF (deactivate) or to ON (activate). If you have difficulty, ensure that you have inserted the key as far as it will go.
- Close the front passenger door.
- When deactivating the airbag, switch the ignition on and check that the control lamp OFF remains lit ››› **Fig. 29**.
- When reactivating the airbag, check that when the ignition is switched on, the OFF control lamp does not light up and the ON lamp lights up for 60 seconds and then turns off.

⚠ DANGER

Always switch off the ignition before disabling the front passenger airbag! Failure to do so could result in a fault in the airbag deactivation system.

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver of the vehicle is responsible for disabling or switching on the airbag.**
- **Never leave the key in the airbag disabling switch as it could get damaged or enable or disable the airbag during driving.**
- **If for any reason an airbag is deactivated, reactivate it as soon as possible so that it can fulfil its protective function.**

1) Not available in all markets.

Central airbag

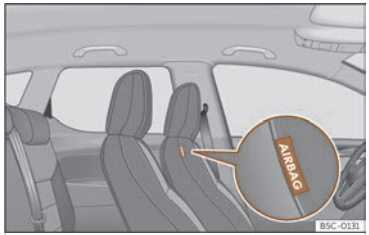


Fig. 30 In the inner padding of the driver's seat backrest: central airbag.

Fig. 31 Fully inflated central airbag (deployment zone).

The central airbag is installed for the front seats and is located in the inner padding of the driver's seat backrest (according to the version/finish).

The location of the central airbag is indicated by the inscription "AIRBAG" ››› **Fig. 30**.

When triggered, the central airbag fills the marked zone (deployment zone) ››› **Fig. 31**. For this reason, never place or fix objects in this zone ››› ⚠.

The central airbag triggers in the case of a side collision or if the vehicle overturns, reducing the risk of vehicle occupants suffering injuries.

⚠ WARNING

When triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed in milliseconds.

- **Always keep the central airbag deployment zone clear.**
- **Never attach objects to the central airbag cover or the deployment zone.**
- **Do not allow other people, animals or objects to get between the occupants of the front seats and the airbag deployment zone. Make sure that all vehicle occupants, including children, follow this rule.**
- **Never use upholstery or seat covers that have not been explicitly authorised for the seats of the vehicle. Otherwise, the central airbag will not be able to deploy if triggered.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper manipulation of the driver and front passenger seats can prevent the central airbag from operating correctly and cause serious injuries.

- **Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or modify their components.**
- **If the backrest side bolsters are subjected to a lot of force, the central airbag may not trigger correctly,it may not trigger at all or if may trigger unexpectedly.**
- **Have a specialised repair shop immediately repair any damage to the original seat upholstery or seams in the area of the central airbag module.**

Side airbags

Fig. 32 Driver's seat and passenger seat side airbags.

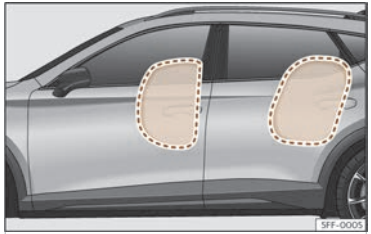


Fig. 33 Illustration of completely inflated side airbags on the left side of the vehicle.

The side airbags are located in the backrests of the front seats and in the sides of the rear seat (according to the version/finish) depending on the vehicle's configuration ››› **Fig. 32**, ››› **Fig. 33**.

Their locations are marked with the word "AIRBAG" on the upper part of the back of the seats or on the lower coverings with the word AIRBAG in relief.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body in the event of a severe side collision ››› ⚠.

In a side collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers to the areas of the body facing the impact. In addition to their normal protection, the seat belts also hold the passengers in the event of a side collision; this is how these airbags provide maximum protection.

⚠ WARNING

- **If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at a greater risk of injury if the side airbag system is triggered in an accident.**
- **In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **In a side-on collision the side airbags will not work if the sensors do not correctly measure the pressure increase on the interior of the doors, due to air escaping through the areas with holes or openings in the door panel.**
- **Never drive if the interior door panels have been removed or if the panels have not been correctly fitted.**
- **Occupants of the outer seats must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position. It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as drink holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.**
- **Ensure that children are correctly seated in their seats and that their heads are not in the deployment zone of the side airbags ››› Fig. 33, as deploying airbags could hit them and cause serious injury.**
- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.**
- **The backrest bolster must not be hit or kicked hard, as this could damage the system. In this case, the side airbags would not be triggered.**
- **Under no circumstances should protective covers be fitted over seats with side airbags unless the covers have been approved for use in your vehicle. Because the airbag deploys from the side of the backrest, the use of conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag, seriously reducing the airbag's effectiveness.**
- **Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a specialised workshop.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **Any work on the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the front seat) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.**

Head-protection airbags

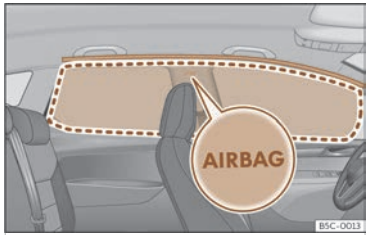


Fig. 34 Location of head-protection airbags.

Head-protection airbags are on both sides of the vehicle interior, above the doors ››› **Fig. 34** and their location is indicated with the word "AIRBAG".

In combination with the seat belts, the Side Curtain Protection® airbags provide additional protection for the upper part of the body of vehicle occupants in the event of serious side collisions or the vehicle overturning ››› ⚠.

The framed area is covered by the head-protection airbag when it is deployed (deployment area) ››› **Fig. 34**. Therefore, objects should never be placed or mounted in this area ››› ⚠.

In the event of a side collision the curtain airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle.

The head-protection airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers in the front and rear side seats facing the impact.

⚠ WARNING

- **In order for the head-protection airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **For safety reasons, the curtain airbag must be disabled in those vehicles fitted with a screen dividing the interior of the vehicle. See your technical service to make this adjustment.**
- **There must be no other persons, animals or objects between the occupants of the outer seats and the deployment space of the head-protection airbags so that the head-protection airbag can deploy completely without restriction and provide the greatest possible protection. Therefore, sun blinds which have not been expressly approved for use in your vehicle may not be attached to the side windows.**
- **Ensure that children are correctly seated in their seats and that their heads are not in the deployment zone of the head airbags ››› Fig. 34, as deploying airbags could hit them and cause serious injury.**
- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Please, do not hang clothes on coat hangers.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **Any work on the head-protection airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the roof lining) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.**
- **The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct operation of the side and curtain airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be done in a specialised workshop.**

Knee airbag

Fig. 35 On the driver side: location of the knee airbag.

Fig. 36 On the driver side: action radius of the knee airbag.

The knee airbag is located on the driver side below the dash panel >>> **Fig. 35**. Its location is indicated by the word "AIRBAG" (according to the version/finish).

The dashed area (deployment area) >>> **Fig. 36** is covered by the knee airbag when it is deployed. Objects should never be placed or mounted in this area.

⚠ WARNING

- **The knee airbag is deployed in front of the driver's knees. Always keep the deployment areas of the knee airbags free.**
- **Never fix objects to the cover or in the deployment area of the knee airbag.**
- **Adjust the driver's seat so that there is a distance of at least 10 cm (4 inches) between your knees and the location of this airbag. If your physical condition prevents you from meeting these requirements, make sure you contact a specialised workshop.**

Transporting children safely

Introduction

For safety reasons, as we have learned from accident statistics, we recommend that children under 12 years of age travel in the rear seats. Depending on their age, height and weight, children travelling in rear seats must use a child seat or a seat belt. For safety reasons, the child seat should be installed in the rear seat, behind the front passenger seat or in the centre back seat.

The laws of physics involved and the forces acting in a collision also apply to children >>> **page 47**. But unlike adults, children do not have fully developed muscle and bone structures. This means that children are subject to a greater risk of injury.

To reduce the risk of injuries, children must always use special child restraint systems when travelling in the vehicle.

We recommend the use of child safety products from the Genuine Accessories Catalogue, which includes systems for all ages (see www.cupraaccessories.com).

These systems have been especially designed and approved and comply with the UN ECE R129 (i-Size) regulation.

CUPRA recommends securing the child seats shown on the website as described below:

- Rear facing child seat (**group 0+ / child height 40-83 cm**):
  - ISOFIX and support leg (Britax Römer Baby-Safe 3 i-SIZE + Flex Base i-SENSE).
- Rear facing child seat **(group 1 / child height 76-105 cm**):
  - ISOFIX AND Top Tether (Britax Römer TRI-FIX 2 i-Size).
- Forward facing child seat (**group 2 / child height 100-135 cm**):
  - Seat belt and ISOFIX (Britax Römer KIDFIX i-Size).

You must also use the seat's "Secure-Guard" seatbelt connection point and adjust the side impact protection system "SICT" (available on certain models), located in the seat backrest. Adjust only the "SICT" closest to the door. Please follow the child seat manufacturer's usage instructions.

- Forward facing child seat (**group 3 / child height 125-150 cm**):
  - Seat belt and ISOFIX (Britax Römer KIDFIX i-Size).

  Group 3 can use the seat with backrest or only the seat base without the backrest (booster). The backrest of the child seat has an adult seat belt guide and a headrest, meaning that the seat with the backrest offers better protection than boosters without backrests. CUPRA recommends the use of child seats with backrests.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats. Always read and note >>> page 63.

We recommend you always carry the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

Classification of child seats

Fig. 37 Examples of child seats.

Use only child seats that are officially approved and suitable for the child.

These seats are subject to the ECE-R44 or ECE-R129 standards. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe Regulation.

Child seats by weight group as per ECE-R44 and height as per ECE-R129

The child seats are grouped into 5 categories:

Group as per ECE-R44	
Group 0	Up to 10 kg
Group 0+	Up to 13 kg
Group 1	From 9 to 18 kg
Group 2	From 15 to 25 kg
Group 3	From 22 to 36 kg

Child height as per ECE-R129	
45-75 cm	From birth to approx. 12 months.
45-87 cm	From birth to approx. 4 years.
61-105 cm	approx. 4 months to 4 years
100-135 cm	approx. 4 to 8 years
125-150 cm	approx. 4 years to 12 years

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R44 or ECE-R129 standards bear the ECE-R44 or ECE-R129 test marks on the seat (the letter E in a circle with the test number below it).

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend that you always include the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

CUPRA recommends you use child seats from the **Original Accessories Catalogue**. These child seats have been designed and tested for

use in our vehicles. You can find the right child seat for your model and age group at our dealers.

Child seats by approval category

Child seats may have the approval category of universal, semi-universal, vehicle specific (all according to the ECE-R44 standard) or i-Size (according to the ECE-R129 standard).

- **Universal**: child seats with universal approval can be installed in all vehicles. There is no need to consult any list of models. In the case of universal approval for ISOFIX, the child seat is additionally provided with a Top Tether belt.
- **Semi-universal**: semi-universal approval, in addition to the standard requirements of universal approval, requires safety devices to lock the child seat, which require additional testing. Child seats with semi-universal approval include a list of vehicle models for which they can be installed.
- **Vehicle-specific**: vehicle-specific approval requires a dynamic test of the child seat for each vehicle model separately. Child seats with vehicle-specific approval also include a list of vehicle models for which they can be installed.
- **i-Size**: child seats with i-Size approval must meet the requirements prescribed in the ECE-R 129 standard in relation to installation and safety. Child seat manufacturers can tell you which seats have i-Size approval for this vehicle.

Fitting and using child seats

Fig. 38 Airbag sticker: on the passenger side sunshade blind.

Fig. 39 Airbag sticker: on the rear frame of the passenger side door.

Warnings about fitting a child seat

Take the following general warnings into account if you are going to fit a child seat. They are valid for all child seats regardless of their attachment system.

- Please read and follow the child seat manufacturer's operating instructions.
- The child seat should preferably be fitted to the rear seat behind the front passenger seat so that the child can exit the vehicle on the pavement side.
- Set the height of the seat belt such that it adapts to the child seat naturally, without twisting. The lowest position of the seat belt height regulator must be used with rear-facing child seats.
- To correctly use a child seat in the back, the front backrest must be adjusted so that there is no contact with the child seat in the back if it is rear facing. In the case of forward-facing restraint systems, the front backrest must be adjusted so that there is no contact with the child's feet.
- For a correct assembly of the child's seat on the rear seats, adjust or dismount the headrest, in order to prevent contact with the seat.
- If a semi-universal type seat is to be installed, in which the method of attachment to the car is through the seat belt and support bracket, it should never be installed in the central rear seat as the ground clearance is lower than in other places and the support bracket will not allow the seat to remain sufficiently stable.

Important information about the front passenger airbag

A sticker with important information about the passenger airbag is located on the passenger's sunshade blind and/or on the passenger side door frame ››› Fig. 38.

Read and always observe the safety information included in the following chapters:

- Safety distance with respect to the passenger airbag ››› page 53.
- Objects between the passenger and the passenger side airbag ››› ⚠ in *Front airbags* on page 56.

The passenger side front airbag, when enabled, is a serious risk for a rear-facing child since the airbag can strike the seat with such force that it can cause serious or fatal injuries. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat.

Therefore we strongly recommend that you transport children on the rear seats. This is the safest location in the vehicle. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch ››› page 57. When transporting children, use a child seat suitable for the age and size of each child ››› page 62.

⚠ DANGER

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the child seat and throw it with great force against the door, the roof or the backrest.**
- **Never install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. Risk of potentially fatal injuries to the child! However, if necessary, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated››› page 57.**
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to deactivate the airbag, the vehicle must be taken to a technical service. Do not forget to reconnect the airbag when an adult wants to sit in the front passenger seat.**
- **Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be flung through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and to the other vehicle occupants.**
- **Never leave a child alone in the child seat or in the vehicle.**
- **Children shorter than 1.50 m must not use the vehicle seat belts unless seated in a child seat, as sudden braking or an accident could cause abdominal and neck injuries.**

- **When a child seat is mounted in the rear seats, the door's child lock should be activated ››› page 111.**

Attachment systems

Depending on the country, different attachment systems are used for safely installing child seats.

Attachment systems overview

- **ISOFIX**: ISOFIX is a standardised attachment system allowing quick and safe attachment of child seats in the vehicle. ISOFIX attachment establishes a rigid connection between the child seat and the car body.

The child seat has two rigid attachment clips, called connectors. These connectors are fitted into the ISOFIX attachment rings found between the seat cushion and the backrest of the vehicle's back seat (on the sides). ISOFIX attachment systems are used mainly in Europe ››› page 65. If necessary, ISOFIX attachment may have to be supplemented with a Top Tether belt or a support bracket.

- **Automatic three-point seat belt**. Whenever possible, it is preferable to attach the child seats with the ISOFIX system rather than attaching them with an automatic three-point seat belt ››› page 71.

Additional attachment:

- **Top Tether**: the Top Tether belt is guided over the back of the rear seat and attached to an anchor point with a hook. Anchor points are located at the back of the rear seat backrest on the luggage compartment side ››› page 68. The rings for retaining the Top Tether belt are marked with an anchor symbol.
- **Support bracket**: some child seats rest on the floor of the vehicle with a support bracket. The support bracket prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of impact. Child seats fitted with a support bracket should only be used in the passenger seat and side rear seats ››› ⚠. For the assembly of this type of seat you should also consult the list of approved vehicles for this assembly, available in the instructions for child restraint systems.

Recommended systems for attaching child seats

CUPRA recommends attaching child seats as follows:

- **Baby carriers or rear facing child seats**: ISOFIX and support bracket or i-Size.
- **Forward-facing child seats**: ISOFIX and Top Tether.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the support bracket can cause serious or fatal injury.

- **Make sure the support bracket is correctly and safely installed.**
- **When the child seat base is supporting the weight of the child, the support leg must not be in the air or propped up with objects. Also ensure that the base of the child seat rests permanently on the surface of the vehicle's seat. The support leg of the child seat must not lift the base of the child seat off the surface of the vehicle's seat.**

Securing a child seat with the ISOFIX or i-Size system

The marking of ISOFIX or i-Size anchor points depends on the equipment and the country in question.

To understand the compatibility of the ISOFIX or i-Size systems in the vehicle, check the table below.

Vehicle ISOFIX/i-Size positions

Child seat	Child seat orientation	Size class / ISOFIX class	Front passenger seat		Rear side seat	Rear central seat
			airbag enabled[a)]	airbag disabled[b)]		
Group 0: up to 10 kg	Rear facing	E / R1	X	IL	IL	X
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	Rear facing	E / R1	X	IL	IL	X
		D / R2	X	IL	IL	X
		C / R3	X	IL	IL	X
Group I: 9 to 18 kg	Rear facing	D / R2	X	IL	IL	X
		C / R3	X	IL	IL	X
	Forward-facing	B / F2	IL, IUF	X	IL, IUF	X
		B1 / F2X	IL, IUF	X	IL, IUF	X
		A / F3	IL, IUF	X	IL, IUF	X
Group II: 15 to 25 kg[c)]	Forward-facing	-- / --	IL	X	IL	X
Group III: 22 to 36 kg[c)]	Forward-facing	-- / --	IL	X	IL	X
i-Size child seat	Rear facing	-- / R2	X	IUF	IUF	X
	Forward-facing	-- / B2, F2X	IUF	X	IUF	X
Booster	Forward-facing	-- / B2, B3	IB	X	IB	X

[a)] For forward-facing child seats with the airbag activated, the passenger seat must be positioned as far away from the airbag as possible, while ensuring that the upper attachment point of the vehicle seatbelt is behind the child seat.
[b)] For rear-facing child seats with the airbag deactivated, seats without height adjustment should be moved to their rearmost position, and seats with height adjustment should be moved to their rearmost and lowest position.
[c)] Installation in front seats requires reclining the backrest.

- **Size class:** The indication of class according to size corresponds to the authorised body weight for the child seat. In child seats with universal or semi-universal approval, the class according to size is indicated on the ECE approval label. The indication of class according to size is stated on the corresponding child seat.

- **IUF:** Suitable for ISOFIX / i-Size child restraint systems with “universal” approval, approved for use in this weight group.
- **IL:** Suitable for certain ISOFIX child restraint systems that can be for the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories. Take the child seat manufacturer's vehicle list into account.
- **IB:** Seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX forward-facing group 2/3 booster seat as well as an i-size forward-facing child seat for children with a height of 100 to 150 cm.
- **X:** Position not suitable for ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint systems in this weight group or size class.

Securing the child seat with the ISOFIX or i-Size system

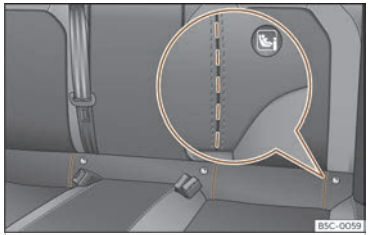


Fig. 40 Rear seat: pre-punched slots to access the ISOFIX/iSize securing rings.

Fig. 41 Front passenger seat: location of the i-Size securing rings.

Fig. 42 Rear seats: fitting a child seat with the ISOFIX system.

You must follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

The location of the ISOFIX or i-Size anchor points is indicated by a symbol ››› **Fig. 40** , ››› **Fig. 41**[1]. In some vehicles, the rings are secured to the seat frame and, in others, they are secured to the rear floor.

- First, by hand, open the cut-out section behind the marked grooves to access the securing rings ››› **Fig. 40**.

[1] Not available in all markets.

- Press the child seat onto the ISOFIX or iSize securing rings until it is heard to engage securely >>> Fig. 42. If the child seat is equipped with Top Tether anchor points, secure it to the corresponding ring >>> page 68. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
- Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is properly anchored.

Child seats with the ISOFIX or i-Size and Top Tether attachment system can be purchased from technical services.

⚠ WARNING

The securing rings are designed only for use with ISOFIX or i-Size and Top Tether system child seats.

- **Never secure other child seats that do not have ISOFIX, i-Size or Top Tether systems, or safety belts or any other objects to the securing rings – as this can result in potentially fatal injuries.**
- **Ensure that the child seat is correctly secured to the ISOFIX or i-Size rings and the Top Tether.**

Top Tether securing belts

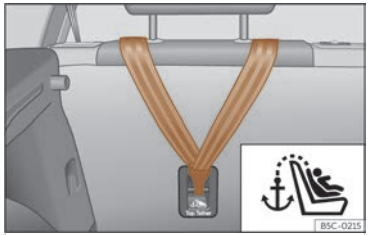


Fig. 43 Rear part of the rear seats: Top Tether belt anchor.

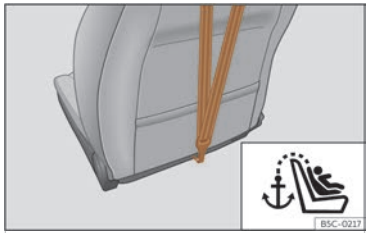


Fig. 44 Rear of front passenger seat backrest: Top Tether belt anchor (not available in all markets/versions).

Child seats with a Top Tether system are fitted with an additional belt for fastening to an anchor point in the vehicle. This anchor point is located on the rear of the rear seat backrest and of the front passenger seat backrest[1] (identified with the symbol) and provides better retention >>> Fig. 43, >>> Fig. 44.

The objective of this system is to reduce forward movements of the child seat in a head-on collision, to reduce the risk of injuries that may be caused to the child's head by impacting against any element of the inside of the vehicle.

Use of Top Tether on rear-facing child restraints

Currently, there are very few rear-facing child restraints with Top Tether. The car seat manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the Top Tether should be read carefully and followed.

[1] Not available in all markets/versions.

Locking the tether belt

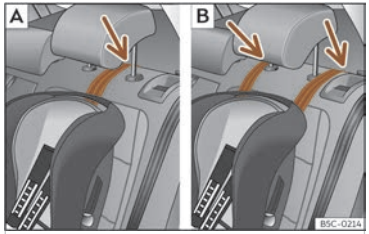


Fig. 45 Rear seats: adjustment and assembly according to the Top Tether belt.

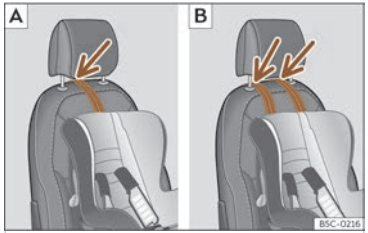


Fig. 46 Front passenger seat: adjustment and assembly according to the Top Tether belt.

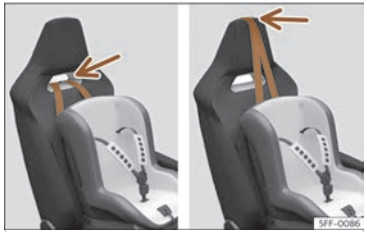


Fig. 47 Front passenger seat: adjustment and assembly according to the Top Tether belt.

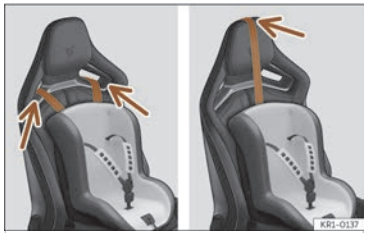


Fig. 48 Front passenger seat: adjustment and assembly according to the Top Tether belt.

- Deploy the Top Tether belt according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
- Position the belt under the headrest (according to the instructions of the seat itself, lift or remove the headrest if necessary) ››› **Fig. 45**, ››› **Fig. 46**.

For vehicles with integrated headrests, pass the Top Tether belt over the headrest or through the headrest recess as shown in the image ››› **Fig. 47**, ››› **Fig. 48**.

- Slide the belt and secure it properly with the anchor on the rear seat backrest ››› **Fig. 43** , ››› **Fig. 44**.
- Tighten the belt securely according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Release the tether belt

- Loosen the belt according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Press the lock and release it from the anchor bracket.

⚠ WARNING

Installing safety seats incorrectly will increase the risk of injury in the event of a collision.

- **Never attach the tether belt to a fastening hook in the luggage compartment.**
- **Never attach or secure luggage or other items to the lower anchor points (ISOFIX) or Top Tether anchor points.**

⚠ WARNING

Child restraint anchors are designed to support the loads of properly adjusted child restraint systems. Under no circumstances should they be used to attach adult seat belts, harnesses or other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Fitting a child seat using the seat belt

If you want to fit a universal approval category (U) child seat in your vehicle, you must check that the seat is approved for your vehicle.

You will find any necessary information on the child seat's orange ECE approval label.

The following table shows the different fitting options:

Child seat	Child seat orientation	Front passenger seat		Rear side seat	Rear central seat[a)]
		Airbag enabled[b)]	Airbag deactivated[c)]		
Group 0 up to 10 kg	Rear facing	X	U	U	U
Group 0+ up to 13 kg	Rear facing	X	U	U	U
Group I 9 to 18 kg	Rear facing	X	U	U	U
	Forward-facing	U	X	U	U
Group II 15 to 25 kg	Forward-facing	U	X	U	U
Group III 22 to 36 kg	Forward-facing	U	X	U	U
Child seats as per ECE-R129	Rear facing	X	U	U	U
	Forward-facing	U	X	U	U

X: Position not compatible for the installation of seats in this configuration.

U: Position suitable for the installation of seats in this configuration.

[a)] Do not use semi-universal seats that use the vehicle's seat belt and a support leg as a securing system on the centre rear seat.

[b)] Move the front passenger seat as far as possible from the airbag. Ensure that the upper attachment point of the vehicle's seat belt remains behind the child seat.

[c)] Seats **without** height adjustment should be placed in their rearmost position. Seats **with** height adjustment should be placed in their rearmost and highest position.

Fitting a child seat using the seat belt

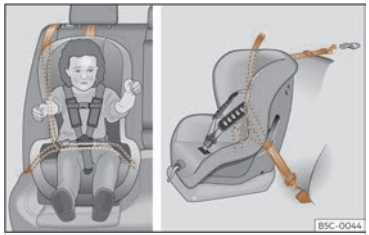


Fig. 49 On rear seats: installing a child seat.

- Put the seat belt in place and pass it through the child seat according to the instructions of the child seat manufacturer.
- Make sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Insert the latch plate into the seat's buckle until you hear the engagement click.

⚠ WARNING

When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a restraint system suitable for age, weight and size.

- **Always read and observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats** **>>> page 63.**

In case of emergency

Hazard warning lights

Fig. 50 Dashboard: hazard warning lights button.

The hazard warning lights are used to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle in emergencies.

If your vehicle is stationary:

1. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from road traffic.
2. Press the button to switch on the hazard warning lights >>> ⚠.
3. Apply the electronic parking brake.
4. Stop the engine.
5. *Manual gearbox:*

   Put it in 1st gear.

   Automatic gearbox:

   Press the parking lock button **P**.
6. Follow the legal provisions of each country (reflective vest, warning triangles, light beacon, etc.).
7. Always carry the key with you when leaving the vehicle.

All turn signals flash simultaneously when the hazard warning lights are switched on. The two turn signal lamps ⬅➡ and the turn signal lamp in the switch ⚠ will flash at the same time. The simultaneous hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

While the hazard warning lights are on, you can signal a direction or lane change, e.g. during towing, by operating the turn signal lever. The hazard warning lights remain switched off during this time.

Emergency braking warning

If the vehicle brakes suddenly and continuously at a speed of more than 80 km/h (50 mph), the brake light flashes several times per second to warn the vehicles driving behind. If you continue braking, the hazard warning lights will come on automatically when the vehicle comes to a standstill. They switch off automatically when the vehicle starts to move again.

⚠ WARNING

- The risk of an accident increases if your vehicle breaks down. Always use the hazard warning lights and a warning triangle (or light beacon, depending on the country) to draw the attention of other road users to your stationary vehicle.
- Never leave anybody inside the vehicle, particularly children or anybody who may need help. This is especially important when the doors are locked. Individuals locked in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.
- Due to the high temperatures that the catalytic converter can reach, never park in an area where the catalytic converter could come into contact with highly inflammable materials, for example dry grass or spilt petrol. This could start a fire.

Note

- The 12-volt vehicle battery will run down if the hazard warning lights are left on for a long time (even if the ignition is switched off).
- The use of the hazard warning lights described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements.

Behaviour in the event of an accident or fire

Actions to take in the event of a fire or accident

For your own safety and that of other passengers, the following points should be observed in the order given ››› ⚠:

- Switch off the engine.
- If possible, switch on the hazard warning lights ››› page 72.
- Follow the legal provisions of each country (reflective vest, warning triangles, light beacon, etc.).
- If necessary, get any people out of the hazard area and apply first aid.
- Notify the emergency services.
- Wait at a safe distance from the scene of the accident for the emergency services to arrive.
- In case of fire, do not attempt to extinguish the fire yourself or remain near the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

For your own safety, do not ignore this important check list, otherwise accidents and serious injuries could occur.

- Always complete the operations on the check list and always bear in mind the general safety measures.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of fire, an explosion may occur and substances harmful to health may be released, which can cause serious injury.

- Never stay near the burning vehicle.

Information call, Assistance call and Emergency call service

Fig. 51 On the roof console: controls for voice services.

Fig. 52 Emergency call button.

Depending on the equipment, an emergency call system may be located on the roof console.

The following voice services can be run by pressing the buttons ℹ , ✂ and SOS ››› **Fig. 51**:

- Information call.
- Assistance call.
- Emergency call service.

A built-in control unit establishes the connection.

When a voice service is activated, a connection is established with a phone line.

Control lamp.

There is a control lamp on the control ››› **Fig. 51** (arrow). It shows the following statuses:

- **Off:** the eCall service is not available.
- **Flashes in red, approx. 20 seconds after switching on the ignition:** the eCall service is deactivated.
- **Lights up red:** system failure. The eCall service is available with certain restrictions. CUPRA suggests going to a specialised workshop.
- **Lights up green:** the eCall service is available. The system is ready to work in the vehicle.
- **Flashes green:** There is an ongoing voice connection.

✂ Assistance call

With the breakdown call you can directly request specialised help in the event of a breakdown.

Parallel to the voice call, some vehicle data is transmitted, e.g. your current location.

ℹ Information call

With an information call, a call is placed to CUPRA S.A. customer care service.

Note

Breakdown service and information calls can incur an additional cost on your telephone bill.

SOS Types of emergency call

- **Public** mandatory by law): emergency call made to the emergency services of the country you are driving in, in the language of that country. ››› **page 76**.
- **Private:** an emergency call that is made to a "CUPRA call centre", which offers improved customer service, such as service in the language selected in the infotainment system. At any time, the user can choose to cancel the *private emergency call* in order to be attended by the country's emergency services.

Private emergency call

If the private emergency call service is available in the vehicle's service portfolio, the emergency call service is activated by default for a limited period of time.

- The emergency call service can be used to organise help as quickly as possible in an emergency situation.
- When the emergency call service is activated, a connection is made to the CUPRA emergency call centre.
- If an emergency call is made manually or, in the event of an accident, when the airbag or seatbelt pretensioner is triggered, the data relevant to the emergency call will be transmitted automatically, for example, the current location of the vehicle ››› **page 402**.

- The telephone contact person communicates in the language set in the vehicle's Infotainment system. If this language is not available at the location where the emergency call is currently being made, English will be used.
- Additional components such as emergency call microphone, an emergency loudspeaker and an integrated battery which is separate from the integrated power supply, are installed to ensure operation even after a serious accident.
- The emergency call service can be deactivated permanently by a qualified specialist. CUPRA recommends that you contact an official CUPRA service or a SEAT official service.
- If the public emergency call system is available in the vehicle, the private emergency call service can be deactivated via the web or app, or by preventing data transmission in the Infotainment system, via the privacy mode ››› page 270.

Starting an emergency call manually

1. Briefly press the button cover SOS and open the cover ››› Fig. 51.
2. Press and hold the emergency call button for a few seconds ››› Fig. 52 ①.

   The emergency call is activated and a voice connection is established with the emergency coordination centre.

The emergency call can also be activated manually via the Infotainment system ››› page 304.

If you press the emergency call button inadvertently, hang up the call immediately:

1. Press the emergency call button again until the control light stays green.

Note

Only press the emergency call button ››› Fig. 52 in the event of an emergency.

Automatic activation of an emergency call

The automatic emergency call is only activated if the ignition is switched on.

The connection to the CUPRA emergency centre is automatically established in the following situations:

- Immediately after the airbags are triggered.
- Immediately after activation of the seatbelt pretensioner.
- Depending on equipment, in the event of intervention of the Emergency Assist system.

The automatic emergency call cannot be interrupted by pressing the emergency call button ››› Fig. 52.

If enquiries from the CUPRA emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are dispatched automatically.

Integrated battery

The integrated battery ensures that the emergency call system remains available for some time even if the 12-volt battery has been disconnected or has failed.

If the integrated battery discharges or is defective, a message stating this is displayed on the instrument cluster display. Go to a specialised workshop and ask for the battery to be replaced.

EDR data transmission ››› page 402

When an emergency call is made, the available data are transmitted to the CUPRA emergency call centre so that the necessary rescue measures can be determined.

Vehicle location data is continuously overwritten. This means that the vehicle is not subject to permanent monitoring.

The data related to the emergency call is only processed to ensure the correct operation of the emergency call system (eCall). The system will automatically delete the data related to the call a few hours after the call is activated.

The sent data includes:

- The vehicle's current position at the time the emergency call is activated.
- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle and type of drive.
- Type of activation (automatic or manual).
- Type of call.

- Direction in which the vehicle was travelling at the time the emergency call was activated.
- Moment of the collision.
- Estimated number of vehicle occupants.
- Language selected in the infotainment system.

⚠ WARNING

The following conditions may mean that it is not possible to make a public or private emergency call, either manually or automatically, or that it is only possible to a limited extent:

- **The emergency call is made in an area with little or no mobile or GPS coverage.**
- **In areas with sufficient mobile and GPS signal reception, the mobile network of the telecommunication providers is not available. In this case, the emergency call, if available in the vehicle, uses the legally required emergency call system.**
- **In areas with sufficient mobile and satellite signal reception, a 2G/3G mobile telecommunication provider network is not available.**
- **In some countries, the emergency call service may not be available and depending on the location of the vehicle, the control lamp LEDs, and even the operation of the different types of calls, could behave in a specific way.**
- **There is no valid licence for the use of the emergency call service.**
- **The components of the vehicle required for the emergency phone call are damaged or do not get enough power.**
- **The emergency call service function has been deactivated via the web or the App. In this case, the emergency call, if available in the vehicle, is forwarded to the public emergency call service automatically.**
- **The emergency call service function has been deactivated by preventing the transmission of data (privacy mode). In this case, the emergency call, if available in the vehicle, calls the public emergency call system. If the private emergency call system cannot be executed for technical reasons, calls are forwarded to the public emergency call service automatically.**
- **The vehicle's ignition is not on.**

Note

The operation of the emergency call system, which is required by law, may be limited if an infotainment system is retrofitted

Note

The emergency call, breakdown call and information service are only available in certain countries.

eCall emergency call service, required by law

Depending on the equipment and the country, the vehicle may be fitted with an emergency call system. In some countries, the free public emergency call system is activated by default. The control element is located on the roof console ››› Fig. 51.

With the emergency call, help can be organised as quickly as possible in emergency situations. A voice connection is established with a public rescue coordination centre. The telephone contact person communicates in the language of the country in which the vehicle is located. In addition, any legally required data relevant to emergency calls is automatically transmitted to the public rescue control centre, such as the vehicle's current location.

The required connection is made via a factory-installed control unit. Additional components such as an emergency call microphone, an emergency loudspeaker and an integrated battery which is independent of the integrated power supply, are required to ensure operation even after a serious accident.

Activating an emergency call manually

1. Briefly press the button cover SOS and open the cover ››› Fig. 51.
2. Press and hold the emergency call button for a few seconds ››› Fig. 52 ①.

The emergency call is activated and a voice connection is established with the emergency coordination centre.

If you press the emergency call button inadvertently, hang up the call immediately:

1. Press the emergency call button again until the control light stays green.

Note

Only press the emergency call button ››› Fig. 52 in the event of an emergency.

Automatic activation of an emergency call

The automatic emergency call is only activated if the ignition is switched on.

A connection to the public rescue coordination centre is automatically established in the following situations:

- Immediately after the airbags are triggered.
- Immediately after activation of the seatbelt pretensioner.
- Depending on equipment, in the event of intervention of the Emergency Assist system.

The automatic emergency call cannot be interrupted by pressing the emergency call button ››› Fig. 52.

If the public rescue control centre's questions remain unanswered, the rescue response begin automatically.

Troubleshooting

SOS Fault in the emergency call service.

The control lamp of the emergency call button lights up in red and stays on. In addition, the following message may appear on the instrument cluster display:

SOS Error: Emergency call function. Workshop!

There is a fault in the emergency call service. In this case, you will not be able to make any emergency calls.

1. Immediately visit a qualified specialist workshop and have the fault repaired. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA dealership.

SOS Limited emergency call service

The control lamp of the emergency call button lights up in red and stays on. In addition, the following message may appear on the instrument cluster display:

SOS Emergency call function limited. Workshop!

The Emergency Call Service is only available with limitations. E.g. no voice connection to the CUPRA emergency call centre can be established.

1. Immediately visit a qualified specialist workshop and have the fault repaired. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA dealership.

High-voltage battery

Safety instructions

Introduction

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

⚠ DANGER

The vehicle's high-voltage network and the high-voltage battery are hazardous and can cause burns and other injuries, including fatal electric shocks.

- It should always be assumed that the high-voltage battery is fully charged and that all of its components are live. This may also be the case when the ignition is switched off.
- Never touch the high-voltage cables, the high-voltage battery or its poles, or allow them to come into contact with jewellery or other metal objects, especially if the high-voltage cables, the high-voltage battery or its poles are damaged.
- Never take it upon yourself to perform any type of work on the high-voltage network, on the high-voltage cables or the high-voltage battery.
- Never open or perform maintenance or repairs on components or parts of the high voltage network, or disconnect them from this network.
- Never damage, modify or remove the orange high voltage cables or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
- Never open, modify or remove the cover from the high-voltage battery.
- Work on the high-voltage system, as well as on any systems that may be indirectly influenced by it, should only be carried out by specialized personnel with the corresponding qualifications and training.
- Work in the immediate vicinity of high-voltage cables and high-voltage components with tools that are sharp, give off shavings or that have heat sources, such as hot air, thermal bonding or welding work, may only be performed after disconnecting the voltage. The high voltage should only be disconnected by specialized personnel with the corresponding qualifications and training.
- All CUPRA guidelines and standards must be followed when performing any work on the high-voltage system and the high-voltage battery.
- The gases that are emitted or leaked from the high-voltage battery may be toxic or flammable.
- Damage to the vehicle or high voltage battery could cause an immediate or delayed leak of toxic gases. The emitted gases could also cause a fire. Do not inhale the gases.
- Never touch the liquids that spill from the high voltage battery and do not touch the emitted gases, particularly if the battery is damaged.
- In the event of a fire, leave the danger area and call the fire department.
- Always inform the fire fighters and the emergency service that the vehicle is fitted with a high-voltage battery.

⚠ DANGER

If works are performed on the high-voltage system and on the high-voltage components in an inappropriate manner, this may lead to faults in the operation, accidents and injuries.

- Work on the high-voltage system must only be performed by authorized specialized services with the corresponding permit.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle suffers an accident or collision with an obstacle, the high-voltage battery must be checked by specialized personnel with the corresponding qualifications and training.

NOTICE

If the 12-volt vehicle battery has been disconnected, discharged or replaced, there is a chance that the combustion engine may not initially turn off automatically after moving off. If this situation lasts for several days, contact a qualified specialized workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a CUPRA partner for this.

High voltage warning lettering

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

Warning lettering on the vehicle

The following parts of the vehicle can be identified with the depicted warning lettering ››› **Fig. 53**, ››› **Fig. 54**, ››› **Fig. 55** , ››› **Fig. 56**:

- Covers and lids behind which live high-voltage components are located.
- All the high-voltage components, including the high-voltage battery.
- Under the front bonnet.

Fig. 53 Warning lettering.

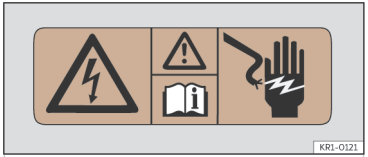


Fig. 54 Warning lettering.

The warning lettering ››› **Fig. 53** and ››› **Fig. 54** indicate high electrical voltage.

Fig. 55 Warning lettering.

The components of the high voltage system can become very hot and should not be touched ››› **Fig. 55**.

Fig. 56 High-voltage battery warning lettering.

››› **Fig. 56**

1. High voltage can cause serious injury or even death. Never touch the battery poles with bare fingers, tools, jewellery or other metal objects.
2. The high-voltage battery contains hazardous liquid and solid substances. Emitted gases can cause severe burns and blindness. Suitable eye protection and protective clothing must always be worn when working on the high voltage battery to prevent battery fluid coming into contact with the skin and eyes. If the battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, the affected areas should be rinsed with clean running water for at least 15 minutes, and then a doctor should be consulted immediately.

③ The high-voltage battery may burn. The high-voltage battery should never be exposed to fire, sparks or naked flame. The high voltage battery must always be handled with care to avoid damage and fluid leakages.

④ The high-voltage battery should always be kept out of the reach of children.

⑤ You will find further information and warnings in the usage instructions and workshop documentation.

⑥ Incorrect handling of the high-voltage battery can cause serious injuries or death. Never disassemble the high voltage battery or remove its cover.

⑦ Maintenance work on the high-voltage battery must only be performed by specialized personnel with the corresponding qualifications and training. Never modify the high-voltage battery. When the high-voltage battery is open, ensure it does not come into contact with water or other liquids. Liquids may cause short circuits, electrical shocks and burns.

Conservation of the high-voltage battery

Conservation instructions

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

Reliability and capacity of the high-voltage battery

In principle, lithium ion batteries are subject to ageing and wear and tear throughout their useful life due to their physical and chemical characteristics. Correct handling of the high-voltage battery makes an essential contribution to keeping it in a reliable state in the long term and to achieving high battery capacity and range. Therefore, it is extremely important to respect the following conservation instructions for the high voltage battery. These maintenance instructions are essential for maintaining the vehicle's value over time.

Please also observe the applicable CUPRA warranty conditions for the high-voltage battery.

Conservation instructions

CUPRA recommends the following conservation instructions:

- If possible, charge the high-voltage battery when a low charge level is displayed on the instrument cluster, or when the electric range is low >>> page 19.
- It is advisable to not charge the high-voltage battery when only a short trip has been made in full electric mode.
- As much as possible avoid fully discharging the high-voltage battery, such as by leaving the vehicle parked for a prolonged time with a low load level. The charge level must not drop below 20% for long periods of time >>> ⓘ.
- When the high-voltage battery has been charged to 100%, start driving immediately if possible.
- As far as possible, avoid loads above 80 %.

Vehicle parking times

- If there is a frost, do not park the vehicle for several hours with a charge level of lower than 40% >>> ⓘ.
- If you plan to leave your vehicle stationary for prolonged periods of time, park with a charge level of at least 30%. This situation occurs, for example, when you leave your vehicle at the airport before a trip.
- Do not expose the vehicle to outside temperatures below -30 °C or above 60 °C for more than 24 hours.
- To improve comfort and performance, make sparse use of the stationary air conditioning (depending on the equipment), particularly in temperatures lower than -15 °C >>> page 162.

ⓘ NOTICE

The high-voltage battery must not be used as a stationary power supply. This can cause irreversible damage to the high-voltage battery.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is parked for a long time with the high-voltage battery discharged, it may no longer be possible to charge the battery or start the vehicle. Irreversible damage could be caused to the high voltage battery in the long term.

- **Charge the high-voltage battery at regular intervals.**

Charging the high-voltage battery

Introduction

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

Check that the drive system is deactivated and that the charging cable and infrastructure are in a perfect state of repair.

Types of charging

The following charging types are possible for the vehicle:

- *Charging with alternating current (AC) at a public or home charging station* ››› page 83:

Charging at high power. The maximum achievable charging power depends on the charging station and charging cable that is used and the performance of the vehicle's charger.

- *Charging with alternating current (AC) at a household socket* ››› page 83:

The electrical installation of the house must have been checked and be in perfect working order ››› ⚠. Due to the large capacity of the battery and the low power of this method, a full charge will take more than 20 hours (8 hours, depending on the market).

- *Charging with direct current (DC) at a fast charging station* ››› page 84:

This is the most powerful type of charge. The charging time decreases significantly. Please note the information on charging frequently with direct current (DC) ››› ⓘ.

Protection against current leakage

The vehicle is fitted with a direct current (DC) leakage protection device. This prevents any current leakage that may occur during charging from reaching the house's electrically installation through the charging cable.

⚠ WARNING

If the battery is charged in an inappropriate manner, if no consideration is given to the appropriate safety measures or the high-voltage battery is used in an inadequate manner, this could lead to short circuits, electrical shocks, explosions, fires, burns and serious injuries, and even death.

- **Always respect the stipulated order of the operations to avoid the risk of suffering an electric shock or serious injuries due to the residual energy in the charging accumulator.**
- **Please observe the safety and handling instructions of the charging cable supplied with the vehicle** ››› page 94.
- **When charging, only use power sockets that are appropriately fitted, have been checked and are not damaged, as well as electrical installations that are in perfect working order. Duly qualified technicians should check the power sockets and the electrical installation on a regular basis.**
- **Never charge the vehicle in places where there is a danger of explosion. The components of the charging cable can cause sparks and, therefore, may ignite flammable fumes or explosives.**
- **Always protect the connectors from moisture and from water and other fluids getting inside directly.**
- **For safety reasons, never perform other works on the vehicle while charging.**
- **Always complete the charging process before unplugging the connector from the electrical network. Otherwise the charging cable and the electrical installation may also be damaged.**

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is driven with a very low charge level of the high-voltage battery, the vehicle may stall in traffic, causing serious damage or accidents and injuries.

NOTICE

Fast charging with direct current (DC) uses very high power. Frequent use of fast charging can permanently reduce the charging capacity of the high-voltage battery.

- The battery should preferably be charged with alternating current (AC) from a public or domestic charging station.

NOTICE

During the charging process, do not rest or wind the charging cable on the charging cover, as this could damage the part.

Note

- To charge the high-voltage battery using alternating current (AC), CUPRA recommends using a home or other type of charging station and charging with maximum charging power. These charging options are more efficient than using a domestic power socket.

- Please note the technical data on your vehicle's charging power. You can get more information from a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer.
- The high-voltage battery can only be charged at charging stations that meet the requirements of the country in questions and at least one of the following standards:
  - IEC 61851 and IEC 62196 (Europe).
  - ISO 15118 (-1, -2, -3).
  - SAE J1772 (USA, Mexico)
- In the event of very low or very high temperatures, it may only be possible to charge the high-voltage battery in a limited manner.

Identification of compatible charging infrastructure

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

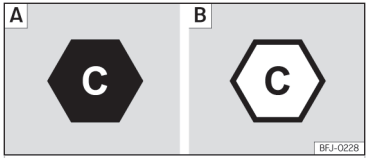


Fig. 57 Identification of alternating current (AC) and type 2 connector.

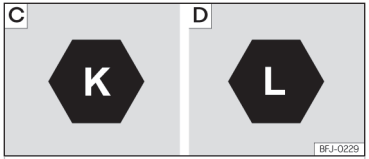


Fig. 58 Identification of direct current (DC) and the vehicle's CCS connector

Compatibility between vehicles and charging infrastructure

The following indicators according to the EN 17186 standard provide information about whether the infrastructure's charging connectors are suitable for the vehicle ››› ⚠.

Indicators >>> Fig. 57

A In the vehicle

B At the charging station

Indicators >>> Fig. 58

C Voltage up to 500 volts

D Voltage of up to 1000 volts.

The indicators are located on the vehicle's charging socket, on components of the local charging infrastructure (charging station, socket) and on the charging cable. The indicators refer to charging connection standards according to IEC 62196.

⚠ WARNING

Charging the vehicle at unverified electrical installations can cause serious injury and damage.

- **If there is no indicator or if the charging infrastructure is unknown, an electrical installation expert should be consulted first.**

Charging with alternating current (AC)

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

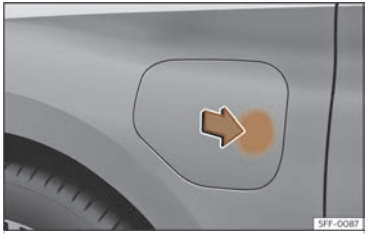


Fig. 59 Opening the charging socket cover.

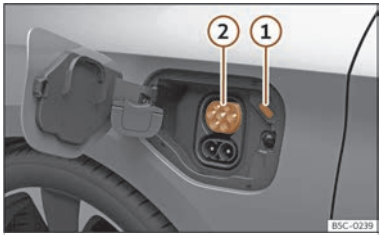


Fig. 60 Behind the battery charging cover on the front left-hand side: Charging socket

Fig. 61 Behind the battery charging cover on the front left-hand side: Charging socket (depending on the market).

>>> Fig. 60, >>> Fig. 61

1 Charging process display

2 Charging socket

The battery charger installed in the vehicle converts alternating current from the public supply into direct current.

AC charging station or socket cable: The vehicle's high-voltage battery can be charged using alternating current (AC) through the corresponding charging socket 2.

Connecting the charging cable

- Firstly, connect the charging cable to the socket, or public or home charging station. Next, fully unwind it.
- *Charging cable for domestic power sockets*: The protection device performs a self-test >>> page 96.

- If the vehicle is unlocked, the battery charging cover opens when the indicated zone is pressed ››› Fig. 59.
- Plug the charging connector into the charging socket. Check that the charging connector is fully plugged in.

The connector locks automatically.

The LED (charging process indicator) of the charging socket ① flashes or flashes white ››› Fig. 60 , ››› page 86.

You can set the charging as required in the infotainment system ››› page 91.

Automatic start of the charging process

If scheduled charging is not activated, the charging process starts immediately ››› page 89. The external charging infrastructure must be active.

Most public charging stations require authentication to start the process. It is important to verify that the authentication has been performed correctly, otherwise it could cause a system malfunction.

During charging

The charging process indicator on the charging socket ① flashes green. The charging connector is locked.

If the charging process indicator lights up red, there is a fault ››› page 86.

Interrupting the charging process

The charging process can be interrupted:

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Press the **Stop charging** function button of the infotainment system. The charging process indicator located next to the charging socket ① lights up white. If you want the charging connector to unlock automatically, the **Release connector automatically** setting must be selected in the charging settings ››› page 89.
- Press the **Continue** button to restart the process. The charging connector locks. In some cases you may need to authenticate yourself again in the charging station.

To restart the charging process just press the function button.

After charging

When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging process display on the charging socket lights up green.

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Unplug the charging connector from the charging socket within 30 seconds.
- **OR:** if **Release connector automatically** is activated in the charging settings ››› page 89, the charging connector automatically unlocks once the charging process is complete.
- Disconnect the charging cable from the power supply and replace the protective cap.
- Close the charging cover and make sure you hear it click into place.

Charging with direct current (DC)

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

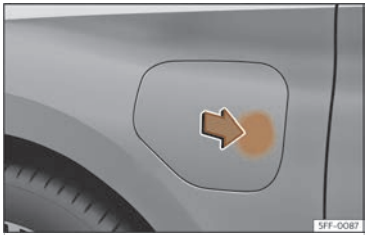


Fig. 62 Opening the charging socket cover.

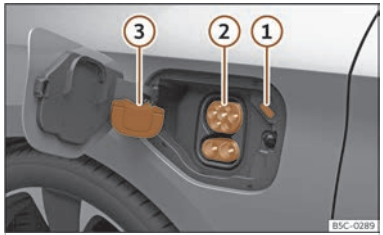


Fig. 63 Behind the battery charging cover on the rear right-hand side.

① Charging process display

② Charging socket

③ Protective cap

The alternating current is converted into direct current outside the vehicle. A considerably higher charging power is achieved than when charging with alternating current (AC).

Public fast-charging station: The high-voltage battery can be charged with direct current (DC) at an appropriate charging station. The charging time decreases significantly.

Use a charging cable less than 30 metres long.

Connecting the charging cable

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Press the battery's charging socket cover in the area of the arrow to open it ››› **Fig. 62**.
- Remove the protective cap and hang it on the hook ››› **Fig. 63 ③**
- Plug the charging station's charging connector into the charging socket ››› **Fig. 63 ②**

The connector locks automatically.

The LED (charging process indicator) of the charging socket flashes or flashes white ››› **Fig. 63 ①** ››› **page 86**

Automatic start of charging

Switch on the charging station ››› ⓘ.

The charging process will start immediately.

Most public charging stations require authentication to start the process. It is important to verify that the authentication has been performed correctly, otherwise it could cause a system malfunction.

During charging

The charging process indicator on the charging socket ① flashes green ››› **Fig. 63**.

If the charging process indicator lights up red, there is a fault ››› **page 86**.

Interrupting the charging process

The charging process can be stopped before the desired state of charge is reached:

- Tap the **Stop charging** function button on the infotainment system display. The charging process indicator located next to the charging socket ① lights up white ››› **Fig. 63**. The charging connector is unlocked.

After charging

When the desired state of charge has been reached, the charging process indicator on the charging socket will light up green.

After charging, the charging connector is automatically unlocked from the charging station if the **Release automatic connector** option is activated in the charging settings.

- Unplug the charging connector from the charging socket.
- Place the protective cap on the charging socket's lower connection ››› **Fig. 63③**
- Close the cover of the battery charging socket until you hear it has engaged.

ⓘ NOTICE

To use the charging station, bear in mind the manufacturer's indications and usage instructions.

Charging process display

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

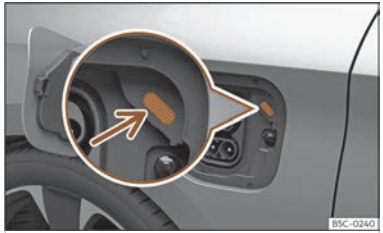


Fig. 64 Behind the battery charging socket cover: charging process indicator.

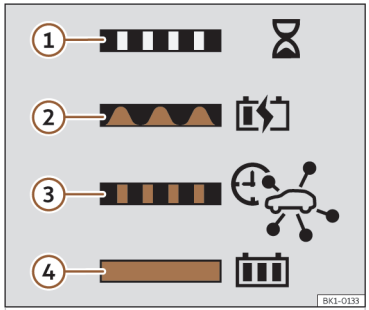


Fig. 65 On the inside face of the cover of the battery charging socket: sticker with information on the charging process display.

An LED light on the charging socket ››› **Fig. 64** (arrow) shows the status of the charging process.

A sticker on the battery charging cover provides information on the meaning of the LEDs ››› **Fig. 65**.

Charging process displays:

The LED flashes

- The vehicle has detected the charging connector.

White LED

- (1) Flashing: establishment of communication between the vehicle and the charging infrastructure. The charging process is being prepared.
- Permanently on: no active charging function

Green LED

- (2) Flashing: the high-voltage battery is charging.
- (3) Remains lit: delayed charging is activated. The charging process has not yet started.
- (4) Permanently on: the charging process has completed without any problems.
- Flashes red: emergency charging at reduced power due to a failure to recognize the charging connector.

Red LED

- Permanently on: there is a fault in the system. The charging process cannot start or has been interrupted.

Get specialist assistance if the charging process indicator permanently indicates a defect.

Charging socket lighting

In the dark, the charging socket's side lighting (white LED) can facilitate orientation on the vehicle:

On

- The vehicle has been unlocked.
- **OR**: The charging connector has been unplugged from the charging socket.

Off

- After unlocking or locking the vehicle, the lighting switches off automatically after a while.

Charging process indicator lamp

During charging process, the lamp is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

White indicator: connector plugged in, no charging process active.

Green indicator: connector plugged in, charging process active.

Troubleshooting

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

The electrical system is not working properly. Stop safely!

The warning lamp lights up red. A message is displayed in this regard.

There is a fault in the high voltage system. The high voltage components may be damaged ››› .

It is not possible to charge the high-voltage battery.

- **The vehicle must be parked in a safe place**. Park the vehicle outdoors as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Switch off the drive system.
- Seek professional assistance.

and HV battery: Risk of fire! Stop safely and get out immediately. Call the emergency services.

The warning lamp lights up red and is displayed along with with a text message on the instrument cluster accompanied by a continuous audible warning.

The high voltage battery temperature is too high .

If this message is displayed on the instrument cluster, please note ››› and follow the steps below:

1. **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle immediately, taking into account the traffic situation.
2. Choose a safe place outdoors, away from buildings or vehicles, canopies, covered car parks or similar places.
3. If possible, switch on the hazard warning lights.
4. Before leaving the vehicle, make sure it is immobilised (parking brake, parking lock **P**).
5. Switch off the ignition and leave the ignition key on the dash panel or in a visible place so that the emergency services can use it (for example to recover the vehicle from a hazardous area).
6. Exit the vehicle and make sure that there are no other people or animals left inside.
7. Make sure that you leave the danger zone together with all other vehicle occupants and that everyone remains in an area that is protected from traffic (e.g. behind the guard rail).
8. Notify the emergency services. Do not try to put out the fire yourself.

If the message is hidden, the warning lamp remains visible .

The audible warning can only be turned off by a qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

Protection functions in the event of a failure

If a serious high-voltage-battery failure occurs, the vehicle can activate additional protection functions; for example, the hazard lights may switch on or the horn may sound immediately after the ignition is turned off.

⚠ DANGER

If there is a risk of fire in the high-voltage battery, toxic gases may escape or components may be released from the high voltage battery. There is a risk of serious injury, burns or lethal electric shocks.

- **Park the vehicle safely as soon as possible** ››› ***page 73, Behaviour in the event of an accident or fire.***
- **Get out of the vehicle and keep a safe distance away from it.**
- **Call the fire department immediately.**

Deep discharge of the high-voltage battery due to prolonged parking time

The control lamp lights up red. A message is displayed.

The high-voltage battery can be damaged if, for example, the vehicle is not used for a long time.

- Charge the high-voltage battery immediately.

High voltage battery discharged

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A message is displayed.

- Charge the high-voltage battery immediately.

Low state of charge in the high-voltage battery

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A message is displayed showing the remaining range.

The high-voltage battery charge has reached the reserve level.

- Charge the high-voltage battery.

Range calculation fault

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A message is displayed.

There is a fault in the range calculation. Contact a specialised workshop.

The charging process is not possible or has been paused

The charging process indicator located next to the charging socket lights up red.

Before visiting a specialist workshop, you can try the following solutions:

- Plug the charging cable back in.
- Check that the charging connector is plugged in correctly.
- Check if a fault is displayed on the charging station or, depending on the equipment, on the charging cable protection device.

If the fault cannot be rectified, contact a specialist workshop immediately.

The charging cable protection device disconnects

If electrical devices with a separate electrical connection, e.g. a cool box, are used in the vehicle at the same time, the self-test of the protective device may detect a fault.

- Please note the order! First connect the charging cable to the external power supply and then to the charging socket.

The charging time varies

During the direct current (DC) charging process, the charging current is reduced automatically to preventing the high-voltage battery from overheating.

After several fast charging processes in a row, the charging time is temporarily extended.

⚠ DANGER

High-voltage components, including the battery and high-voltage cables, may be live and damaged. The high voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns, other injuries and fatal electric shocks.

- **Do not touch the high voltage components!**

Emergency release of the charging connector

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

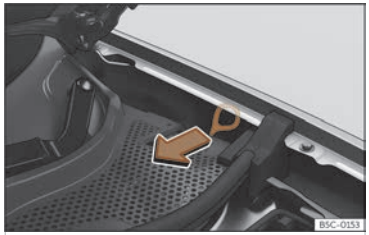


Fig. 66 Between the left wing panel and the engine bonnet hinge: Charging connector manual release mechanism puller.

Unlocking the charging connector

Prerequisites:

- The charging connector is plugged in correctly.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- The charging process has ended or has paused ››› page 81.
- When charging with alternating current (AC), the setting **Release connector automatically** is activated in the infotainment system. ››› page 89.

The manual release mechanism must be used if these prerequisites are met and it is still impossible to unplug the charging connector ››› ⚠.

Emergency electrical release of the charging connector

To avoid having to perform a manual emergency release, try releasing the charging connector electronically using the vehicle's central locking.

- Unlock the vehicle three times in a row.
- Unplug the charging connector.

Manual release of the charging connector

The puller for the manual release mechanism is on the left hand side of the engine compartment, above the charging socket ››› Fig. 66.

- Disconnect the power supply at the charging station or electrical socket.
- Open the bonnet and make sure it is held in place with the prop.
- Pull the puller ››› Fig. 66.
- Immediately unplug the charging connector.

⚠ DANGER

If the charging connector unexpectedly remains locked, the fault may be caused by the vehicle or charging station. The manual emergency release can make live contacts accessible. In this case, touching the contacts of the charging socket may result in burns, other injuries or a fatal electric shock.

- **Never touch the contacts of the charging socket or the charging connector.**

Note

The manual release mechanism of the charging connector should only be used in the event of a failure.

Charging settings

Introduction

Immediate charging

The high-voltage battery can be charged without further configuration and according to the available charging option ››› page 83 , ››› page 84.

1. Plug in the charging cable A charging information screen opens in the infotainment system. The charging process starts automatically.
2. Set the maximum battery charge level for the desired range in the Infotainment system.

Advanced charging configuration

Individual AC charging settings for your desired location, e.g. at your home, office or charging station, are available if a charging location (from now on **Schedule**) has been created in the Infotainment system.

1. Select: ⊕ > **Charging**.
2. Store the current charging location in the **Schedule** menu ››› page 93.

   If you want to performed programmed charging, establish and activate a departure time ››› page 93.
3. Make further adjustments if desired.

> **Note**
>
> **If no start time has been activated, the high-voltage battery charges to the maximum charge level.**

Changing the charging mode

The available charging modes can be selected via a drop-down list in the **Charging** menu or in the departure menu ››› page 41.

The available charging modes depend on the **Schedule** configuration and the technical requirements at the location.

Overview

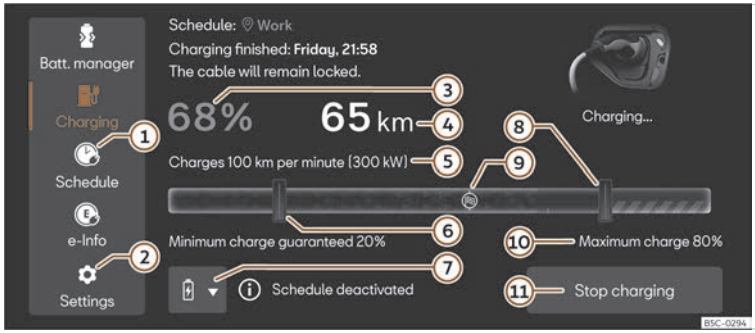


Fig. 67 In the infotainment system: Charging main menu.

Indications in the Charging main menu

Some of the following indications are only available when a charging schedule is active ››› page 93.

① Charge scheduling ››› page 93.

② General charging settings ››› page 92.

③ Current state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

④ Current electric range.

⑤ Charging speed and power: the increase in range per hour or per minute when charging at the current charging power is displayed. The charging power depends on the charging infrastructure and the temperature of the high-voltage battery. The charging power can vary during the process.

⑥ Minimum charging level. Only visible with an active charging mode, based on a schedule (not visible in immediate charging mode). Allows the minimum charging level to be changed. If a destination is set, it suggests the minimum charging level to reach the destination ››› page 92.

⑦ Charging mode selector based on the schedule for the vehicle's current position. Displayed only if a schedule has been previously set up. Provides extra information about the schedule ››› page 93.

⑧ Touch pad for adjusting the maximum charging level of the battery ››› page 92.

⑨ Navigation symbol with planned charging stops: the maximum charging level is automatically adjusted for the next suggested stop.

⑩ Maximum set battery charging level ››› page 92.

⑪ End the charge or restart it. Visible during an active charging process.

Instructions for plugging in the charging connector

Information on the current charging process is displayed in the infotainment system.

Close the screen:

- Press the ✕ function button.
- **EITHER:** the display ends automatically after 2 minutes.
- **OR:** lock the vehicle.

Configuration in the Settings menu

Open the General charging settings menu

1. Open the main **Charging** menu.
2. Push the ⚙ ② ››› **Fig. 67** button.

Settings in unknown locations

- Reduce the AC charging power: the charging current is reduced to 6 or 8 amps depending on the country. With this setting you can reduce mains overload when charging at a socket.
- Release the AC power cable: After the charging process is complete, the connector releases automatically.

Battery Care Mode function

The function automatically limits the maximum charge level to 80% for subsequent charges. If it is necessary to charge to over 80% and this is configured, the next charge will automatically be limited to 80%.

Note

- **The programmed charge configuration prevails over the "Battery Care" configuration (the maximum charge level is not automatically reset).**
- **CUPRA recommends using the Battery Care Mode function in daily use to prolong the life of the high-voltage battery.**

Set the battery charging limits

The infotainment system can be used to adjust the maximum and minimum charge level and thus the vehicle's range to suit daily needs.

Maximum battery charging level

Normally, if you use the vehicle regularly, it is not necessary to fully charge the high-voltage battery. The maximum charging level limits the battery's maximum state of charge.

- Move the touch slider to the desired value in the infotainment system's charging settings ››› page 91.

The maximum charging level can also be adapted during charging.

Minimum charging level of the battery

The minimum charging level sets the minimum state of charge for a saved schedule. This function can be used to guarantee a minimum range.

- In the infotainment system select: ⊞ > **Charging**.
- Set the minimum charging level in the schedule.

After connecting the electricity, first of all the vehicle charges up to the battery's minimum charging level. The preferred times or a departure time, for programmed charging, will only be taken into account once this limit is reached.

Examples for charging with alternating current (AC)

For AC charging, CUPRA recommends the following settings:

Everyday use - Long range is not necessary

- Maximum battery charging level: 80% maximum.
- Minimum battery charging level: 20% as a minimum if the outside temperature is mild or warm, or 40% if it is cool or cold.

Long distance travel - Long range required

- Maximum battery charging level: 100%.
- Minimum battery charging level: 20% as a minimum if the outside temperature is mild or warm, or 40% if it is cool or cold.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle parked and start driving immediately after charging the battery.

Set charging locations (Schedule)

You can create schedules associated with charging locations in the infotainment system. The vehicle recognises a saved charging location when it is there, and uses the available settings when charging.

Location data

The infotainment system uses the current location data (geographical coordinates) of the vehicle when you create or use a schedule.

Create a schedule

- In the infotainment system select: ⊞ > **Charging**.
- Press **Schedule**.
- Add the charging location and give it a name (maximum of 5).

Delete a schedule

- In the infotainment system select: ⊞ > **Charging**.
- Press **Schedule**.
- Press the ✎ function button.
- Press the function button 🗑 to delete the saved schedule.

Settings

- For immediate charging in the current schedule, activate the corresponding function in the departure menu ››› page 41 or in the charging modes selector located in the **Charging** menu.
- Departure time ››› page 93
- Reduce charging power in alternating current: the charging current is reduced to 6 or 8 amps. With this setting you can reduce mains overload when charging at a socket.
- Release the AC power cable: After the charging process is complete, the connector releases automatically.
- Minimum battery charging level from 0-50% ››› page 92.
- Maximum battery charging level from 50-100% ››› page 92.
- Preferred times. Activating this charging mode can be helpful when there are other electrical consumers in the household or when you prefer to charge during cheaper time periods.
- Display address or geographical coordinates

Note

All charging settings stored in the schedule always apply to the currently recognised charging location.

Departure time settings

When a charging location has been created, the high-voltage battery can be charged for a certain time.

Set the departure time

- In the infotainment system select: ⊞ > **Charging**.
- Press **Schedule**.
- Open the profile of a charging location.
- Set a departure time (maximum of three per location).
  - Days of the week.
  - Time at which the high-voltage battery should be charged.
  - Use once or weekly.

Air conditioning

The vehicle interior is cooled or heated for the departure time by the stationary air conditioning. The operation depends on the equipment.

- Set the desired temperature in the **Stationary air conditioning** ››› page 161 menu.

Activate a departure time

- Press **Schedule**.
- Open the profile of a charging location.

- Activate the departure time by checking the checkbox ✓.
- Select the desired programmed charging mode on the charging mode selector.

Displays

The departure time is used weekly.

> **Note**
>
> **The departure menu remembers the active charging mode and gives the option to modify it** ››› page 41.

Charging cable

Introduction

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

The type of charging cable supplied with the vehicle basically depends on the technical specifications of each country, e.g. charging connector connections for sockets.

CUPRA recommends **exclusively** using the supplied charging cable.

Notes on the charging cable

- Handle with care.
- Unroll and roll fully.
- Do not twist or bend it over sharp edges.
- Do not crush it or drive the vehicle over it.
- Always unplug it by pulling on the connector.
- Children should not use the charging cable.
- Keep animals away from the charging cable.
- After use, store it safely and without twisting it.

> **⚠ DANGER**
>
> **Using a charging cable that has been damaged or tampered with can cause serious injury and fatal electric shocks.**
>
> - **Before each use check that the connectors and the charging cable are undamaged, e.g. check for cracks.**
> - **Never disassemble the charging cable or its components.**
> - **Never use a charging cable that is damaged or has been tampered with.**
> - **If the charging cable does not work correct, get a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership to look at it.**

> **⚠ WARNING**
>
> **An unsecured or improperly secured charging cable may be thrown out of the vehicle's interior in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres. This may cause serious accidents and injuries.**
>
> - **Store the charging cable in the supplied charging cable bag and use the carabiner to attach the bag to the fastening rings at the front of the luggage compartment** ››› page 314.

Notes on charging connectors and the charging cable protection device

- Do not touch the charging connector's contacts.
- Protect from strong sunlight (outside temperatures no higher than 50°C or 122°F).
- Do not drop them.
- Protect from immersion in fluids such as rain water.
- Fit the protective caps after each use.

⚠ WARNING

The charging cable for electrical sockets must always be connected directly to an electrical socket. Failure to do so could result in fire damage and damage to the charging cable or home electrical installation.

- Never connect the charging cable to an extension lead, cable reel, power strip or adapter or timer.

NOTICE

The charging cable, as portable electrical equipment, may have to be checked periodically. This requires a test adapter.

NOTICE

Seek information regarding the appropriate charging cable and the maximum permitted charging current before travelling abroad. If possible, use the charging cable supplied in the country in question.

For the sake of the environment

Charging cables must be disposed of in an environmentally friendly way and should not be thrown in the household waste.

Note

The maximum charging capacity of the safety circuit that is used must be observed. If the charging cable is planned into an electrical socket on the same circuit as other consumers, the circuit's fuses may trip.

Cleaning the charging cable

Clean the surface of the charging cable with a dry or slightly damp cloth >>> ⚠, >>> ⓘ.

⚠ DANGER

The high voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns, other injuries and fatal electric shocks.

- Only clean the charging cable when it is unplugged.

NOTICE

The charging cable can be damaged if not cleaned properly.

- Only water should be used for this purpose, and never additional cleaning products.
- Water should be prevented from getting into the contacts.

Charging cable for alternating current (AC) charging stations

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

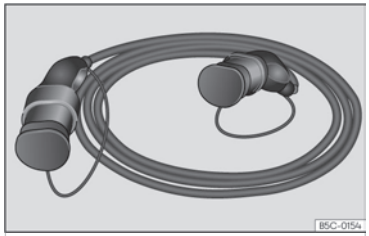


Fig. 68 Charging cable for alternating current (AC) charging stations.

The maximum charging current is 16 or 32 amps, depending on the vehicle's features and the charging cable that is supplied >>> ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Charging the high-voltage battery with an inappropriate charging cable could cause short circuits, serious injuries and fatal electrical shocks.

⚠ WARNING

The charging cable should not be used as an extension lead. The charging process could be affected.

NOTICE

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and indications when using the charging station.

Note

Charging with a charging cable for 16 A is not possible at some charging stations that support 32 A. This depends on the charging station's equipment.

- **Before charging the vehicle, find out about the available charging technology.**

Charging cable for power sockets

Valid for: hybrid vehicles

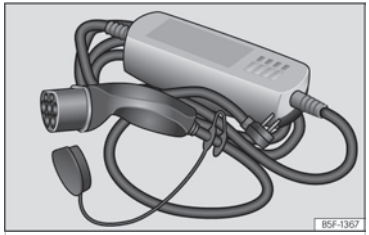


Fig. 69 Charging cable for electrical sockets

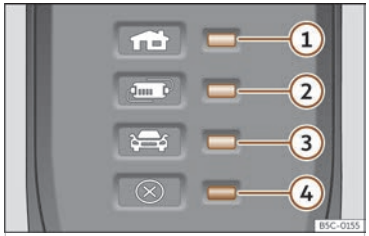


Fig. 70 On the charging cable for power sockets: Control lamps on the protection device.

>>> **Fig. 70**:

1. Indicator lamp of the connector and the power supply.
2. Control lamp of the protection device
3. Control lamp of the vehicle
4. Failure warning lamp

Charging cable information

Before using the charging cable, also follow the instructions displayed on it and on the rear of the protective device.

Protection device

The electronic protection device >>> **Fig. 70** ensures that the charging connector does not receive current until it is plugged in to the vehicle's charging connector.

Self-check

When the charging cable is plugged into the electrical socket, the protective device automatically performs a self-test. During this check, all warning and control lamps turn on briefly and go out one after the other. Upon completion, the operational status at that time is displayed.

Operating displays

One or more control lamps >>> **Fig. 70** ①, ② o ③ light up green.

Display >>> Fig. 70	Meaning
① ignition	The charging cable is plugged into the mains
①, ② on, ③ flashes slowly >>> page 96	The high-voltage battery is charging.
① ② and ③ on	The charging process is complete. The high-voltage battery has charged.

Set the charging current

The charging cable limits the charging current according to the available power supply.

If the local mains supply does not allow charging at the maximum charging current, the charging current can be reduced, depending on the charging setting features in the infotainment system ››› page 92.

Temperature control

The charging cable temperature control switches on when the charging cable overheats, such as when it has been stored in a luggage compartment exposed to high temperatures or strong sunlight.

Display ››› Fig. 70	Meaning
①, ④ flashing	The housing connector has overheated.
②, ④ flashing	The protection device has overheated.

If the charging process continues with a lower current, both the operating indicator and the warning lamp ››› **Fig. 70** ④ flash red.

- Unplug the charging cable from the mains and wait for it to cool down.
- If it disconnects again, or the charging current reduces and the cause does not seem to be exposure to an external heat source, make sure that the green control lamp is flashing ››› **Fig. 70**. Visit a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer to check the charging cable. Get an establishment that specialises in electrical installations to check the infrastructure connection.

Fault display

If the red warning light ④ flashes or turns on without one of the control lamps ››› **Fig. 70** ①, ② o ③ also turning on continuously on the status indicator, there is a fault.

Display ››› Fig. 70	Meaning
① flashing, ④ on or flashing	Failure in the power supply.
② flashing, ④ on or flashing	Failure in the protection device.
③ flashing, ④ on or flashing	Failure in the vehicle.

The charging process pauses or is cancelled.

- Check the instructions located on the back of the protective devices.
- Seek professional assistance if the fault persists.

Note

If there is any other mains connection during charging, or if the vehicle is right next to the high voltage cables, charging from an electrical socket is not possible in some cases. Additional mains connections:

- **Connecting a 12 volt battery charger.**
- **Contact with a work tool connected to the mains, such as a vehicle lift.**

Opening and closing

Set of vehicle keys

Vehicle key

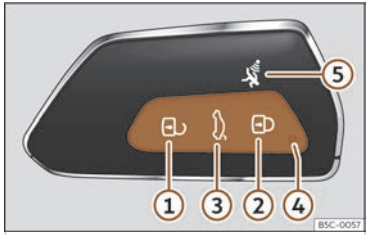


Fig. 71 Vehicle key

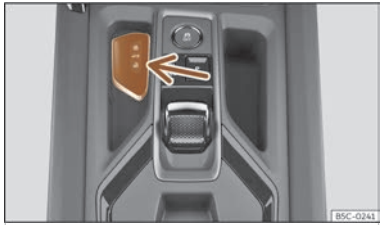


Fig. 72 Centre console (with automatic transmission): vehicle key housing.

① Unlocks the vehicle.

② Locks the vehicle.

③ Unlocks only the rear lid.
Press the button until all the turn signals on the vehicle flash briefly.
You have 2 minutes to open the rear lid. Once this time has passed, it will lock again. In addition, the lamp on the key flashes.

④ Control lamp.

⑤ Alarm button. Only press in the event of an emergency! When the alarm button is pressed, the vehicle's horn sounds and the turn signals light up for a short time. Press again to disconnect.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked from a distance using the vehicle key ››› page 105.

The vehicle key includes an emitter and battery. The receiver is in the interior of the vehicle. The range of the vehicle key with remote control and new battery is several metres around the vehicle.

If it is not possible to open or close the vehicle using the remote control key, this should be re-synchronised ››› page 100 or the battery changed ››› page 100.

Different keys belonging to the vehicle may be used.

Control lamp on the vehicle key

When a button is pressed briefly on the vehicle key, the control lamp ④ ››› Fig. 71 flashes once briefly, but if pressed for a long period of time, it will flash several times, for example, when using the comfort opening.

If the vehicle key control lamp does not light up when the button is pressed, replace the key's battery ››› page 100.

Key housing

Depending on the version, there is a housing for the key close to the start button ››› Fig. 72.
Warning! Do not confuse with the location for the emergency start ››› page 173.

Spare key

To obtain a spare key and other vehicle keys, the vehicle chassis number is required.

Each new key contains a microchip which must be coded with the data from the vehicle's electronic immobiliser. A vehicle key will not work if it does not contain a microchip or the microchip has not been encoded. This is also true for keys which are specially cut for the vehicle.

The vehicle keys or new spare keys can be obtained from a specialised CUPRA dealer or SEAT Official Service, a specialised workshop or an approved key service qualified to create this kind of key.

New keys or spare keys must be synchronised before use >>> page 100.

WARNING

- Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle. In case of emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle or manage on their own.
- An uncontrolled use of the key by third parties could activate a piece of electrical equipment (e.g. power windows), with the resulting accident hazard. The vehicle doors can be locked with the remote control key, making it difficult to get help in an emergency.
- Never leave the keys inside the vehicle. An unauthorised use of your vehicle could result in injury, damage or theft. Therefore always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.

NOTICE

Do not leave the key near the *Wireless Charger* area as this may cause interference.

NOTICE

All of the vehicle keys contain electronic components. Protect them from damage, impacts and humidity.

Note

- Only use the key button when you require the corresponding function. Pushing the button unnecessarily could accidentally unlock the vehicle or trigger the alarm. It is also possible even when you are outside the radius of action.
- Key operation can be greatly influenced by overlapping radio signals close to the vehicle working in the same range of frequencies, for example, radio transmitters or mobile telephones.
- Obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and discharged batteries can considerably reduce the range of the remote control.
- If the buttons of the vehicle key are pressed or one of the central locking buttons >>> page 106 is pressed repeatedly in short succession, the central locking briefly disconnects as protection against overloading. The vehicle is then unlocked. Lock it if necessary.
- Spare remote control keys are available at your Technical Service, where they must be matched to the locking system.

Pulling out the key blade

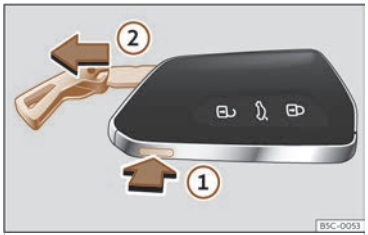


Fig. 73 Vehicle key: remove the key blade.

The central locking remote control has the key blade inside it for use in case of emergency locking/unlocking of the driver's door >>> page 110.

- Press the >>> **Fig. 73** ① button to release the ring from the key fob and remove the key blade ②. Pressing lightly on the ring leaves it fixed as a key fob.
- Press the >>> **Fig. 73** ① button to unlock. Press and hold button ① and at the same time pull on the ring in the direction of the arrow >>> **Fig. 73** ② to completely remove the key blade.

Changing the battery

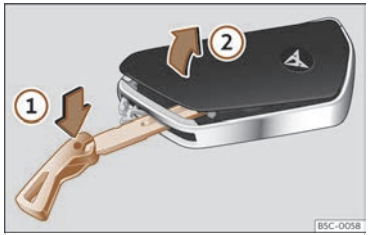


Fig. 74 Vehicle key: open the battery compartment cover.

Fig. 75 Vehicle key: removing the battery.

CUPRA recommends you ask a specialised workshop to replace the battery.

The battery is located at the back of the vehicle key, under a cover.

Changing the battery

- Remove the key blade from the vehicle key ››› page 100.
- Insert the key blade into the slot ››› Fig. 74, press it in the direction of the arrow ① and detach the cover by levering it ②.
- Remove the battery from the compartment with a suitable thin object ››› Fig. 75.
- Insert the new battery and press it into the battery compartment ››› ⓘ.
- Place the cover and press it into the vehicle key housing until it clicks into place.

⚠ DANGER

Swallowing a battery with a diameter of 20 mm or any other button battery can cause serious injuries or even death within a very short time.

- **Keep the vehicle key and key fobs with batteries out of reach of children.**
- **If you suspect that someone may have swallowed a battery, seek medical attention immediately.**

ⓘ NOTICE

- **If the battery is not changed correctly, the vehicle key may be damaged.**
- **Use of unsuitable batteries may damage the vehicle key. For this reason, always replace the dead battery with another of the same voltage, size and specifications.**
- **When fitting the battery, check that the polarity is correct.**

For the sake of the environment

Please dispose of your used batteries correctly and with respect for the environment.

Synchronize the vehicle key

If the 🔓 button is pressed frequently outside of the vehicle range, it is possible that the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked using the key. In this case, the key must be resynchronised as described below:

- Stand next to the vehicle.
- Briefly press the 🔓 button on the vehicle key twice.

OR:

- Remove the emergency key blade ››› page 99.
- Press the 🔓 button on the key.
- Unlock the vehicle with the key blade.

- Open the driver's door. If the vehicle is fitted with an anti-theft alarm, it will trigger immediately >>> page 108.
- Switch the ignition on. *Please note*: to turn on the ignition, place the vehicle key at the bottom of the central armrest box, as close as possible to the Kessy logo.

This completes the synchronization.

Keyless Access system

Locking and unlocking with the Keyless Access system

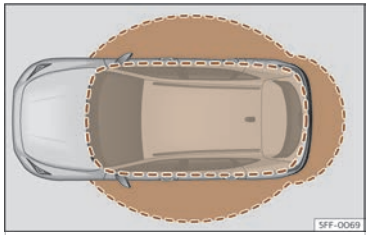


Fig. 76 Keyless Access: proximity zones.

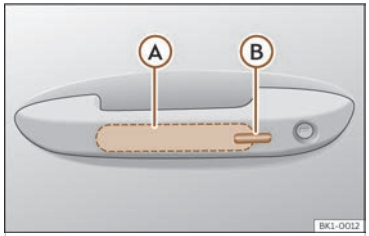


Fig. 77 Door handle: sensor surfaces.

>>> **Fig. 77**

Ⓐ Unlocking sensor surface on the inside of the door handle.

Ⓑ Locking sensing surface on the outside of the door handle.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may have the Keyless Access system. This is a keyless locking and starting system that can unlock and lock the vehicle without actively using its key. For this, it is only necessary that there is a valid vehicle key in the detection area corresponding to the attempted access to the vehicle.

Configuring the Keyless Access system

The behaviour of the Keyless Access system can be adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu of the Infotainment system >>> page 38.

If the Keyless Access function is disabled, its operation is limited.

Unlocks the vehicle.

- Touch the sensor surface on the inside of the handle Ⓐ. All turn signals flash *twice*.

If selective opening is fitted, touching the sensor's surface twice unlocks the entire vehicle.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for an extended period, the function is deactivated. The function will reactivate the next time that the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

Locks the vehicle.

- Park the vehicle.
- Touch the sensor surface Ⓑ >>> **Fig. 77** on the outside of the door handle. All turn signals flash once.

To check that the vehicle is properly locked, the unlocking function is deactivated for a few seconds.

Vehicle locking when walking away

The vehicle may lock automatically when you walk away from it. The following conditions must be met simultaneously:

- The function is active in the infotainment system.
- All vehicle keys are outside the locking area.

All turn signals flash once when automatic locking has been performed successfully.

Automatic locking will not occur if there is another vehicle key in the vehicle.

One-time deactivation of automatic locking:

1. Press and hold the button for more than 2 seconds with the door open.

   Automatic locking will not be available until the next time the vehicle is intentionally locked.

   The vehicle is only locked if all doors and the rear lid are closed. If this option has been activated in the vehicle settings, an audible warning may sound to indicate that a door is open.

In vehicles fitted with the "Safe" security system, when the vehicle is locked while walking away from it, it locks without the "Safe"function. This is indicated to the user by an audible signal. The vehicle's "Safe" system is only activated after intentionally locking using the door handle or contact key.

If the key is in the detection zone around the vehicle for a prolonged period of time, the options for locking when you walk away from the vehicle and unlocking when you approach it may work in a limited manner.

Note

Certain devices can prevent the vehicle from locking. The vehicle then remains unlocked without an audible warning being issued. Always make sure that the vehicle is locked.

Note

If the vehicle is parked for a long time without use, it can only be unlocked via the sensor surface inside the driver's door handle or with the vehicle key.

Unlocking the vehicle on approach

The vehicle can be unlocked by approaching it. For this to work, the function must be activated in the infotainment system and the vehicle key must be in the vehicle's approach area.

- The vehicle is unlocked when the vehicle key is detected nearby ››› Fig. 76. All turn signals flash twice.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for an extended period of time, the "Unlock vehicle when approaching it" function is deactivated. This function reactivates when the vehicle is locked again.

When activating the unlocking function for certain doors in the central locking settings in the infotainment system, it is possible that the "Unlock vehicle when approaching" function will only work to a limited extent.

Unlocking the rear lid

When the vehicle is locked and the "Keyless Access" function is active, the rear lid automatically unlocks when it is opened if there is a vehicle key in its proximity zone. The rear lid locks again after closing.

If the central locking of all doors and the unlock when approaching function in "Keyless Access" are active, the vehicle remains unlocked after the rear lid is closed. The vehicle does not lock automatically

Temporarily deactivating the Keyless Access system

The "Keyless Access" system's unlocking function can be temporarily deactivated:

- Move the gear lever to position **P** since otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.
- Lock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key.
- Within 5 seconds, touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle once ››› Fig. 77 (B). Do not grip the handle while doing so. This temporarily deactivates the Keyless Access system.
- Check that it is deactivated by pulling on the door handle after at least 10 seconds. It should not be possible to open the door.

The next time, the vehicle can only be unlocked electronically with the vehicle key. After the next unlocking, the Keyless Access system will be active again.

Permanently disabling the Keyless Access system

The Keyless Access system can also be permanently deactivated in the infotainment system.

Note

When Keyless Access is deactivated in the infotainment menu, sensor-controlled rear lid opening and closing (Easy Open) is also deactivated, even if the function appears "active" in the vehicle menu.

Comfort functions

To close all the power windows and the sunroof using the **comfort function**, keep a finger for a few seconds on the locking sensor surface ››› Fig. 77 Ⓑ of the door handle until the windows and roof have closed.

How the **doors open** when touching the sensor surface on the door handle will depend on the settings that have been activated in the infotainment system, using the function button **> Vehicle > Exterior > Opening/Closing.**

Note

- **Depending on the function set on the infotainment system for the mirrors, the exterior mirrors will unfold and the surround lighting will come on when unlocking the vehicle using the sensor surface on the driver and passenger door handles.**
- **If the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, the vehicle can only be locked by pressing the parking lock button P.**
- **To improve the safety of your vehicle, the system's remote control is equipped with a position sensor. If this remote control does not detect movement for a certain period of time, the system will understand that you do not intend to open the vehicle (e.g. on the table at night) and will therefore be deactivated.**

Troubleshooting

The Keyless Access system does not work

The operation of the sensor surfaces may be limited if they are soiled.

- Clean the sensor surfaces.

All turn signals flash four times

The key that was last used is still inside the vehicle.

- Remove the key and lock the vehicle.

Automatic deactivation of the sensor surfaces

The sensor surfaces are deactivated in the following cases:

- If the vehicle is not unlocked or locked for a long period of time.
- If any of the sensor surfaces are activated unusually often.

To reactivate the sensor surfaces:

- Unlock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key.

NOTICE

The sensor surfaces on the door handles may activate if hit by a jet of water or high pressure steam if there is a valid vehicle key in the proximity area. If at least one of the windows is open and the sensor surfaces on one of the handles permanently activates, all of the windows will close.

Note

If the message Keyless system out of order is displayed on the instrument cluster display, abnormalities may occur in the operation of the Keyless Access system. Contact a specialised workshop.

Note

If there is no vehicle key inside the vehicle or the system fails to detect one, a warning will display on the instrument cluster display. This could happen if another radio frequency signal (e.g. mobile phone or wireless charger)... interferes with the key signal or if the key is covered by another object, e.g. a metal case

Central locking

Introduction

Central locking functions correctly when all the doors and the rear lid are correctly shut. If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked with the key.

⚠ WARNING

The incorrect use of the central locking system may cause serious injuries.

- **The central locking system will lock all doors. A vehicle locked from the inside can prevent any non-authorised individual from opening the doors and accessing the vehicle. Nevertheless, in case of emergency or accident, locked doors will complicate access to the vehicle interior to help the passengers.**
- **Never leave children or disabled people alone in the vehicle. The central locking button can be used to lock all the doors from within. Therefore, passengers will be locked inside the vehicle. Individuals locked in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.**
- **Depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low, resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.**
- **Never leave individuals locked in a closed and locked vehicle. In case of emergency, they may not be able to exit the vehicle by themselves or get help.**

Description

Central locking allows all doors, the rear lid and the tank flap to be unlocked centrally:

Hybrid vehicles: the fuel tank flap does not unlock with the central locking ››› page 331.

- From outside, using the vehicle key ››› page 105.
- From outside with the Keyless Access system ››› page 101.
- From inside, by pushing the central locking button ››› page 106.

Self-locking system to prevent involuntary unlocking

It is an anti-theft system and prevents the unintentional unlocking of the vehicle. If the vehicle is unlocked and none of the doors (including the luggage compartment) are opened within 45 seconds, it re-locks automatically.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The vehicle locks automatically at over a speed of approx. 15 km/h (9 mph). The fuel tank flap is unlocked so that you can refuel without getting out of the vehicle.

Hybrid vehicles: the fuel tank flap remains locked ››› page 331.

When the vehicle is locked, the control lamp 🔒 of the central locking button lights up yellow.

Automatic unlocking (Auto Unlock)

If one of the following conditions is met, all doors and the rear lid are unlocked automatically:

- The electronic parking brake is engaged and the ignition is switched off.
- **EITHER:** the inside door handle has been pulled. This applies when driving at under 15 km/h (9 mph).
- **OR:** in the event of an accident and an airbag has been triggered ››› page 107.

Automatic unlocking allows third parties to access the interior of the vehicle to provide assistance if necessary.

Turn signals

The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked.

If they do not flash, this indicates that one of the doors, the rear lid or the bonnet is not closed correctly.

Accidental lock-out

If you have left the key in the vehicle, it cannot be locked in the following cases:

- If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked with the central locking switch >>> page 106.

Lock the vehicle with the remote control key, when all the doors and the rear lid have been closed. This prevents the accidental locking of the vehicle.

Central locking settings

Central locking settings can be changed in the Infotainment system.

Selective unlocking of the doors

- Press the function button > **Vehicle > Exterior > Opening and closing > Central locking.**

You can decide whether unlocking unlocks **all** doors, **one door** or **one side** of the vehicle. One locking action operates all vehicle doors regardless of the selected unlocking mode.

With the **One door** setting, the driver's door is unlocked when:

- The button on the remote control key is pressed once.
- **OR:** It is unlocked once using the key blade.
- **OR:** It is unlocked once via Keyless Access on the driver's door handle. If the passenger door is unlocked, the entire vehicle is unlocked.
- **OR:** It is unlocked by approaching the driver's door. Automatic unlocking does not occur when approaching the passenger door.

With the **One side** setting, the driver's side of the vehicle is unlocked when:

- The button on the remote control key is pressed once.
- **OR:** It is unlocked once using the key blade.
- **OR:** It is unlocked once via Keyless Access on the driver's door handle. If unlocked at the passenger door, only the passenger side is unlocked.
- **OR:** It is unlocked on the driver's side by approaching the driver's door. It is unlocked on the passenger side by approaching the passenger door.

Exception: When **One door** or **One side** is selected, operating the unlocking point twice in less than 2 seconds unlocks the whole vehicle.

With the **all doors** setting, an unlocking action will unlock all the doors and the rear lid.

Note

- **Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Not even a locked vehicle is a safe.**
- **If the LED on the driver's door sill lights up for about 30 seconds when the vehicle is locked, the central locking system or anti-theft alarm is not working properly. You should have the fault repaired at a specialised CUPRA dealer, SEAT Official Service or specialised workshop.**
- **Vehicle interior monitoring by the anti-theft alarm system will only function as intended if the windows and sunroof are closed.**

Unlock and lock with the key

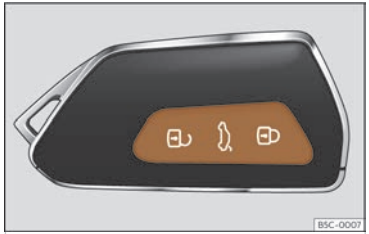


Fig. 78 Remote control key: buttons.

- Lock: press the button >>> Fig. 78.
- To lock the vehicle without the "Safe" security system, press the locking button twice within 2 seconds.
- Unlock: press the button.
- Unlock the rear lid: press the button once.

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors or the rear lid within 45 seconds after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake. This does not apply if you press the button for at least one second.

WARNING

Observe the safety warnings >>> page 106, *Safe security system*.

Note

- **For safety reasons it is advisable to only activate the remote control key when you can see the vehicle.**
- **Other functions of the remote control key >>> page 116, *Opening and closing the windows*.**

Unlocking and locking from the inside

Fig. 79 On the centre console: central locking button

- Lock: press the button >>> Fig. 79.
- Unlock: Press the button >>> Fig. 79 again.

Please note the following when using the central locking button to lock your vehicle:

- It is not possible to open the doors or the rear lid from the *outside* (for safety reasons, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights).
- The central locking button lamp lights up when all the doors are closed and locked.
- You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- The fuel tank flap remains unlocked.

Hybrid vehicles: the fuel cap remains locked >>> page 331.

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

WARNING

- **The central locking button also works with the ignition switched off, except when the "Safe" security system is activated.**
- **The central locking button does not operate if the vehicle is locked from the outside and the security system is switched on.**
- **Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency. Do not leave anyone, especially children, in the vehicle.**

Note

Your vehicle will lock automatically when it reaches a speed of approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) (Auto Lock) >>> page 104. You can unlock the vehicle again using the key of the central locking button.

"Safe" security system

Depending on its equipment, the vehicle may be fitted with the "Safe" security system.

When the vehicle is locked, the "Safe" security system puts the door handles out of operation and hinders possible attempts by people to access the vehicle. The doors cannot be opened from inside ››› ⚠.

The instrument cluster may display an indication that the "Safe" security system is switched on.

Disabling the "Safe" security system

The "Safe" security system may be disabled in any of the following ways:

- Press the vehicle key button 🔒 again **within 2 seconds**.
- Touch the sensor surface on the outside of the door handle again **within 2 seconds** ››› page 101.
- Switch the ignition on.
- **OR**: deactivate interior monitoring and the anti-tow system ››› page 109.

Depending on the equipment, before locking the vehicle temporarily deactivate interior monitoring and the anti-tow system in the **Vehicle settings** menu of the infotainment system ››› page 109.

When the "Safe" security system is deactivated, the following needs to be taken into account:

- The vehicle can be unlocked and opened from the inside using a door handle.
- The anti-theft alarm is active ››› page 108.
- The interior monitoring system and the anti-tow system are disabled ››› page 109.

"Safe" status

The flashing frequency of the diode in the door sill immediately confirms the process. Initially, the diode flashes in a fast sequence for a brief period, then it stops for approximately 30 seconds and, lastly continues flashing slowly.

⚠ WARNING

Using the "Safe" security system negligently or without paying due attention can cause serious injuries in the event of an emergency.

- **Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when you lock it with the key. When the "Safe" security system is active the doors cannot be opened from the inside!**

Troubleshooting

The control lamp remains on

The red LED on the driver's door flashes at short intervals and then stays on. There is a fault in the locking system.

- Contact a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a CUPRA dealership for this purpose.

The turn signals do not flash

If the turn signals do not flash as a confirmation when the vehicle is locked:

- At least one door or the rear lid are not closed **or**
- The engine bonnet is not closed.

The vehicle locks automatically

If one of the following conditions is met, the vehicle re-locks automatically after approx. 45 seconds.

- The vehicle has been unlocked, but none of the doors or the rear lid have been opened.

What happens when locking the vehicle with a second key

They key inside the vehicle is blocked and cannot be used to start the engine as soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside with a second key. To activate the key inside the vehicle to allow it to switch on the engine, press its 🔓 button.

Locking the vehicle after an airbag is triggered

When an airbag is triggered as a result of an accident, the vehicle is fully unlocked. Depending on the extent of the damage, the vehicle may be relocked after the accident as described below:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the driver's door and close it again.
- Lock the vehicle.

Note

If the 12-volt vehicle battery has little or no charge, or the vehicle key battery is almost or entirely out of charge, you will probably not be able to lock or unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Access system. The vehicle can be unlocked and locked manually >>> page 110.

Note

If there is no vehicle key in the vehicle or the system does not detect it, a warning will be displayed on the instrument cluster. This could happen if any other radio frequency signal interferes with the key signal or if the key is covered by another object, e.g. a metal case.

Anti-theft alarm

Description

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be fitted with an anti-theft alarm.

The theft alarm monitors the doors, bonnet and rear lid.

The anti-theft alarm system activates automatically when the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is not opened electronically with a valid key, the alarm triggers and emits audio and light signals for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes.

When is the anti-theft alarm triggered?

- If a mechanically unlocked door is opened with the vehicle key, you have 15 seconds to switch on the ignition before the alarm is triggered (depending on markets, the 15 seconds waiting time disappears and the alarm is triggered immediately when the door is opened).
- If the bonnet is opened.
- If the rear lid is opened.
- If an invalid vehicle key is used.
- If there are movements inside the vehicle (in vehicles with interior monitoring >>> page 109).
- If the vehicle is lifted or towed (for vehicles with an anti-tow system >>> page 109.
- If the vehicle is transported on a ferry or by rail (in vehicles with an anti-tow system or interior monitoring >>> page 109).
- If the 12-volt battery is disconnected.
- If the window is broken.
- When a trailer connected to the theft alarm system is unhitched.

Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key unlocking button 🔓.
- Grip the door handle.
- Switch the ignition on. *Please note:* to turn on the ignition, place the vehicle key in the area provided for it to perform an emergency start >>> page 173.

Note

- **After 28 days, the indicator light will be switched off to prevent the battery from exhausting if the vehicle has been left parked for a long period of time. The alarm system remains activated.**
- **If, after the audible warning goes off, another monitored area is accessed (e.g. the rear lid is opened after a door has been opened), the alarm is triggered again.**
- **The anti-theft alarm is not activated when the vehicle is locked from within using the central locking button 🔒.**
- **If the driver's door is unlocked mechanically with the key, only the driver's door is unlocked, the rest of the doors remain locked. Only when the ignition has been turned on will the other doors be available - but not unlocked - and the central locking button will be activated.**
- **Vehicle monitoring remains active even if the battery is disconnected or not working for any reason.**

Interior monitoring and anti-tow system

If movement is detected in the vehicle interior while the vehicle is locked, the interior monitoring triggers the alarm.

If it detects that the vehicle is being lifted, the anti-tow system triggers the alarm.

Switching on the interior monitoring and the anti-tow systems

- Lock the vehicle. When the anti-theft alarm is activated, the interior monitoring and the anti-tow system are as well.

Depending on the equipment, the use of a partition net can affect the operation of the interior monitoring system.

Temporarily switching off the interior monitoring and anti-tow systems

- Press the button on the remote control twice. The interior monitoring and the anti-tow systems will be deactivated. The alarm system remains activated.

Disconnect through the infotainment system

- Press the function button > **Vehicle > Exterior > Opening/Closing > Central locking > Interior monitoring**.

The interior monitoring and anti-tow system remain deactivated until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Interior monitoring and the anti-tow system can also be switched off in the departure menu. To do this, the ignition must be switched off ››› page 169.

To avoid false alarms, deactivate interior monitoring and the anti-tow system in the following situations:

- When people or animals remain inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is to be loaded onto another means of transport, transported or towed.
- When the vehicle is to be left in a car wash or is to be parked in a double-decker garage.

Risk of false interior monitoring alarms

The interior monitoring system will only operate correctly if the vehicle is completely locked. Please bear in mind all legal provisions. The following situations may cause a false alarm:

- If one or more windows are partially or completely open.
- If the sliding/tilting roof is partially or fully open.
- If light objects are left inside the vehicle, e.g. loose paper or items hanging from the interior mirror.
- If the vibrate function of a mobile left inside the vehicle is activated.

Note

- **It is not possible to permanently deactivate the interior monitoring and anti-tow systems.**
- **If any doors or the rear lid are open when the anti-theft alarm is activated, only the alarm will be activated. The interior monitoring and anti-tow systems will only activate once all of the doors and the rear lid are closed.**
- **When the interior monitoring and anti-tow systems are switched off, the "Safe" security system is also switched off** **››› page 106**.

Doors

Introduction

The doors and rear lid can be locked manually and partially opened, for example if the key or the central locking is damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Opening and closing doors carelessly can cause serious injury.

- **If the vehicle is locked from outside, the doors and windows cannot be opened from the inside.**
- **Never leave children or disabled people alone in the car. They could be trapped in the car in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety.**
- **Depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low, resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.**

⚠ WARNING

Getting in the way of the doors and the rear lid is dangerous and can lead to serious injury.

- **Open and close the doors and the rear lid only when there is nobody in the way.**

ⓘ NOTICE

In certain weather conditions, ice or snow may accumulate on the lower front part of the doors between the door frame and the door; do not force the doors open until you are sure that there is no ice or snow.

ⓘ NOTICE

When opening and closing in an emergency, carefully disassemble components and then reassemble them carefully to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Emergency unlocking or locking of the driver's door

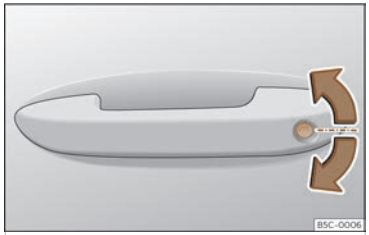


Fig. 80 Driver's door handle: lock cylinder.

If the central locking system should fail to operate, the driver's door can still be locked and unlocked by turning the key in the lock.

As a general rule, when the driver's door is locked manually all other doors are locked. When it is unlocked manually, only the driver's door opens. Please observe the instructions relating to the anti-theft alarm system ››› page 108.

- Remove the key blade from the vehicle key ››› page 99.
- Insert the key blade into the lock cylinder to unlock or lock the vehicle.

The key blade is inserted by pointing the grip towards the rear door (the entire key blade enters the cylinder in this position).

Special characteristics

- The anti-theft alarm will remain active when vehicles are unlocked ››› page 108.
- After the driver's door is opened, you have 15 seconds to switch on the ignition (depending on the market). Once this time has elapsed, the alarm is triggered.
- Switch the ignition on. The electronic immobilizer recognises a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

ⓘ Note

The anti-theft alarm is not activated when the vehicle is locked manually using the key blade **››› page 104**.

Emergency lock of doors without lock cylinders

Fig. 81 Locking the door manually.

If the central locking system fails or the vehicle's battery goes flat, doors with no lock cylinder will have to be locked separately.

The emergency lock is located on the front of the front passenger's door and the rear doors. It can only be seen if the door is open.

- If necessary, remove the rubber seal from the front of the door >>> **Fig. 81**.
- Insert the key in the inside slot and turn it to the right as far as it will go (if the door is on the right side) or to the left (if the door is on the left side).
- Replace the cap.

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. Pull the interior door handle once to unlock and open the door.

Child lock

Fig. 82 Left door child lock.

The child lock prevents the rear doors being opened from the inside. Its function is to prevent children from inadvertently opening a single door while the vehicle is in motion.

This function is separate from the vehicle's electronic unlocking/locking systems. It only works on the rear doors. It can only be activated and deactivated manually, as described below.

Activating the child lock

- Unlock the vehicle and open the door on which the child safety lock is to be activated.
- With the door open, turn the slot with the vehicle key clockwise for the left doors >>> **Fig. 82** and anticlockwise for the right doors.

When the child lock is activated, the doors can only be opened from the outside.

Deactivating the child lock

- Unlock the vehicle and open the door from which you want to remove the child lock.
- With the door open, turn the slot with the vehicle key anticlockwise for the left doors >>> **Fig. 82** and clockwise for the right doors.

⚠ WARNING

The doors cannot be opened from the inside when the child lock is activated. This means that people may be locked inside the vehicle. In an emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle independently or save themselves.

- **Never leave children or persons in need of assistance unattended in the vehicle when the doors are locked.**

⚠ WARNING

If children, persons requiring assistance or animals are left unattended inside the vehicle, they could be exposed to very high or very low temperatures. There is a risk of serious or fatal injuries.

- **Never leave children, persons in need of assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.**

Rear lid

Introduction

The rear lid unlocks and locks together with the doors.

On vehicles with the Keyless Access start/locking system, the rear lid automatically unlocks when it is opened ››› page 101.

⚠ WARNING

Careless and unsuitable locking, opening and closing of the rear lid can cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Do not close the rear lid by pushing it down with your hand on the rear window. The glass could smash. Risk of injury!**
- **Ensure the rear lid is locked after closing it. If not, it may open unexpectedly while driving.**
- **Never open or close the rear lid carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, as this could cause serious injuries to you or third parties. Make sure that no person or object is in the way of the rear lid as it closes or opens.**
- **Never drive with the rear lid open or half-closed, exhaust gases may penetrate into the interior of the vehicle. Danger of poisoning!**
- **Never open the rear lid if there is cargo, e.g. bicycles, attached to it. The rear lid may close by itself due to the additional weight. If necessary, remove the cargo first or hold the rear lid.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended or allow children to play inside or next to it, especially if the rear lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment, close the rear lid and become trapped. A locked vehicle can reach extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year, thus causing serious injuries, illness or even death.**

ⓘ NOTICE

- **Before opening or closing the rear lid, make sure that there is enough space to open or close it, e.g. when pulling a trailer or in a garage.**
- **Never use the rear wiper or rear spoiler to secure cargo or as a handhold. This could cause damage that could lead to the breakage of the rear wiper or spoiler.**

ⓘ Note

Before closing the rear lid, make sure that the key has not been left inside the luggage compartment.

Opening and closing the rear lid

Fig. 83 Rear lid: opening from the outside.

To lock or unlock the rear lid, press the ⌂ or ⌂ buttons on the vehicle key.

Manual opening and closing

- *Open:* press lightly on the handle and lift the rear lid ››› Fig. 83.
- *Close*: grip the rear lid by one of the handles on the interior trim and move it downwards to close.

If the doors are locked, the rear lid is also locked.

A warning appears on the instrument cluster display if the rear lid is open or not properly closed.

The rear lid locks automatically while driving.

When the outside temperature is around freezing, the opening mechanism cannot always raise the rear lid. Lift the rear lid by hand.

Note

If the rear lid is not opened within a few minutes after unlocking, the rear lid automatically relocks.

Rear lid with electric opening and closing

Opening the rear lid

Fig. 84 On the driver's door: button to open and close the rear lid.

The rear lid is unlocked if an authorised key is recognised in the vicinity of the vehicle.

- Unlock the vehicle and briefly press the handle of the rear lid. On vehicles with Keyless Access you can directly press the handle of the rear lid.
- **EITHER:** pull the button on the driver's door upwards for approx. 1 second ››› **Fig. 84**. The button also works when the ignition is switched off.
- **OR:** press and hold the button of the vehicle key for approx. 1 second. If the vehicle is locked, only the rear lid is unlocked (the doors remain locked).
- **OR:** on vehicles with Keyless Access and sensor-controlled opening you can open the rear lid by moving one foot in the area of the sensors located below the rear bumper (Easy Open ››› **page 115**). The rear lid will open automatically.

Closing the rear lid

Fig. 85 Rear lid: button for closing the rear lid.

- Briefly press the button on the rear lid ››› **Fig. 85**, ››› ⚠ in ***Introduction*** **on page 112**.
- **OR:** pull up and hold the button on the driver's door until the rear lid is fully closed ››› **Fig. 84** (only with the ignition switched on).
- **EITHER:** press and hold the button of the vehicle key until the rear lid closes.
- **OR:** on vehicles with Keyless Access and sensor-controlled opening, move a foot in the area of the sensors located below the rear bumper (Easy Open ››› **page 115**). The vehicle key must be in the Keyless Access system detection zone at the rear outside the vehicle.
- **OR:** hold the rear lid by one of the handles fitted to the inner lining and close it by moving it downwards.

The rear lid lowers automatically to the final position and also locks automatically ››› ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 112.

Interrupting opening or closing

After beginning to open or close the rear lid, the action can be halted by pressing one of the buttons.

If you press one of the buttons again, the rear lid will move again in the original direction.

If the rear lid meets with resistance or an obstacle during the automatic opening or closing, opening or closing will be interrupted immediately. For the closing process, the rear lid opens again slightly.

- Check why it has not been possible to open or close the rear lid.
- Try to open or close the rear lid again.
- If necessary, the rear lid can be opened or closed by hand using reasonable force.

Particular features if towing a trailer

If the factory-fitted towing bracket is electrically connected to a trailer ››› page 319, the electric rear lid can only be opened or closed with the buttons on the rear lid itself.

Audible warnings

Throughout the process of opening or closing the rear lid, audible warnings can be heard. *Exception:* when the rear lid is opened manually using the handle or closed using of the button on the rear lid ››› Fig. 85.

Modifying and saving the opening angle

If the space behind or above the vehicle is less than the travel area of the rear lid, you can change the opening angle of the rear lid.

To save a new opening angle, the rear lid must be open at least halfway.

- Interrupt the opening process in the desired position.
- Press the button ››› Fig. 85 on the rear lid for at least 3 seconds.

The opening angle is saved. The saving process is indicated by blinking of the hazard warning lights and an audible warning.

Resetting and saving the opening angle

For the rear lid to reopen completely, the opening angle must be reset and resaved.

- Release the rear lid and open it to the saved height.
- Lift the rear lid by hand as far as it goes. To do this, some force will have to be used.
- Press the button ››› Fig. 85 on the rear lid for at least 3 seconds.
- This resets and saves the factory-set opening angle. The saving process is indicated by blinking of the hazard warning lights and an audible warning.

Automatic protection against overheating

If the system is operated repeatedly in a short space of time, it automatically switches off to prevent overheating.

Once the system is cool again, the function can be reused. Until then, the rear lid can only be opened and closed by hand using reasonable force.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected ››› page 368 or the corresponding fuse burns out ››› page 349while the rear lid is open, the system will have to be reset. This requires closing the rear lid completely once.

⚠ WARNING

If a lot of snow builds up on the rear lid or it is heavily loaded, the rear lid may not open or, after opening, it may lower by itself due to the extra weight and cause serious injury.

- **Do not open the rear lid when there is a lot of snow on it or when carrying a load (e.g. on a rack).**
- **Before opening the rear lid, remove the snow or the load.**

Rear lid with sensor-controlled opening and closing (Easy Open)

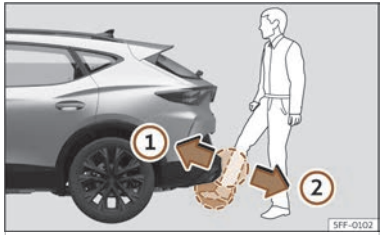


Fig. 86 Rear lid with sensor-controlled opening (Easy Open).

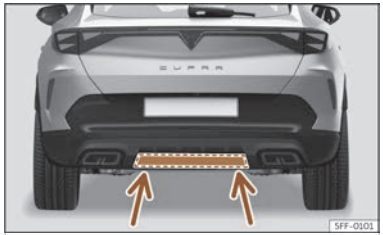


Fig. 87 Lower sensor detection area.

If there is a valid vehicle key in the vicinity of the rear lid, it is possible to unlock and open or close it by moving one foot in the area of the sensors located under the rear bumper.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Stand in front of the rear bumper, in the middle.
- With a brisk movement, bring your foot and lower leg as close as you can to the bumper. The lower part of the leg needs to be close to the upper sensor area and your foot to the lower sensor area ››› **Fig. 86 ①**.
- Quickly remove your foot and lower leg from the sensor areas ››› **Fig. 86 ②**. The rear lid will open automatically.
- If the rear lid fails to open, repeat the procedure after a few seconds. The detection zone of the lower sensor may not have been reached ››› **Fig. 87**.

The rear lid can be closed with another foot movement similar to the opening one (provided a valid vehicle key is in the vicinity of the rear lid).

When closed, the rear lid automatically locks if the vehicle has been locked beforehand and there is no valid key inside.

While the rear lid is in motion (either opening or closing), it can be stopped with another foot movement similar to the opening one (provided a valid vehicle key is in the vicinity of the rear lid).

The Easy Open feature is not available or only has limited availability in the following situations (examples):

- If the rear bumper or the sensor is very dirty.
- If the rear bumper or the sensor is wet with salty water, e.g. after driving on salted roads, or is covered with snow or ice.
- If the vehicle has been retrofitted with a tow bracket.

In the event of heavy rain, the Easy Open feature may take a little longer to open the luggage compartment or may deactivate automatically, to avoid the luggage compartment opening by accident, e.g. when water falls on it.

The Easy Open function can be connected and disconnected permanently in the infotainment system using the button > **Vehicle > Exterior > Easy Open.**

Note

Deactivating the Keyless Access system also deactivates the sensor controlled opening and closing of the rear lid (Easy Open), although the function is shown as “active” in the vehicle menu.

⚠ CAUTION

If there is a valid key in the vicinity of the rear lid, in some cases the Easy Open function may be accidentally activated and the rear lid will open, for example, when sweeping under the rear bumper, when directing a water jet or high pressure steam at the area or when carrying out maintenance work or repairs in

that area. If accidentally opened, the rear lid could injure somebody situated in its area of operation or cause material damage.

- Therefore, always make sure that there is no unsupervised valid key in the area near the rear lid.
- Before carrying out any maintenance or repair work on the vehicle, always disable the Easy Open feature via the infotainment system.
- Before washing the vehicle, always disable the Easy Open function via the infotainment system.
- Before attaching a bike rack or hitching a trailer >>> page 319, always disable the Easy Open function via the infotainment system.

Emergency unlocking of the rear lid

Fig. 88 Luggage compartment: manual release.

The rear lid can be unlocked from inside in the event of an emergency (e.g. if the 12 volt battery is flat).

There is a groove in the luggage compartment allowing access to the emergency opening mechanism.

Unlocking the rear lid from inside the luggage compartment

- Using the key blade, break the pre-punched sheet and push it out towards the inside of the luggage compartment.
- Insert the key blade into the slot and move the key in the direction of the arrow until the lock unlocks >>> Fig. 88.

Window controls

Opening and closing the windows

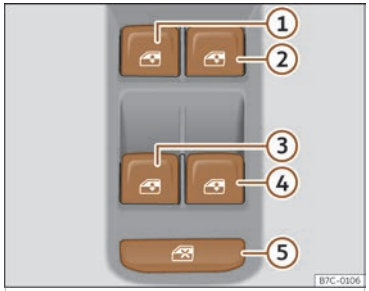


Fig. 89 Detail of the driver's door: window controls.

- Open the window: press button
- Close the window: pull button

Buttons on the driver's door

1. Left-hand front door window
2. Right-hand front door window
3. Left-hand rear door window
4. Right-hand rear door window
5. Safety control for deactivating the window control buttons on the rear doors

Both front and rear windows can be operated from the controls on the driver's door. The other doors have a separate control for each window.

Always close the windows completely when the vehicle is parked or out of sight ››› ⚠.

You can use the power windows for approx. 10 minutes after switching off the ignition if neither the driver's door nor the front passenger door have been opened and the ignition key has not been removed (depending on the equipment).

Safety switch

The safety control ››› **Fig. 89** ⑤ on the driver's door can be used to disable the power window buttons on the rear doors.

Safety control not pressed: the buttons on the rear doors are activated.

Safety control pressed: the buttons on the rear doors are deactivated.

The safety control symbol lights up in yellow if the buttons on the rear doors are switched off.

Convenience opening and closing

The windows can be opened and closed from the outside using the vehicle key:

In the infotainment system different settings can be adjusted using the function button > **Vehicle > Exterior > Windows > Convenience opening**.

Convenience opening:

- Press and hold the button on the remote control key until all the windows and the sunroof have reached the desired position.

Convenience closing:

- Press and hold button on the remote control key until all the windows and the sunroof are closed ››› ⚠.
- **OR:** using the Keyless Access system (only locking): Press and hold the locking sensor surface ››› **Fig. 91** (arrow) on the door handle for several seconds to close the windows and the sunroof. If you stop touching the sensing surface, the closing function is interrupted.

Convenience locking closes the windows first and then the panoramic sunroof.

One-touch opening and closing

Automatic raising and lowering fully opens and closes the windows. It is not necessary to press and hold the appropriate window button for this purpose.

For the automatic raising function: pull the button for the corresponding window upwards until it reaches the second position.

For the automatic lowering function: push the button for the corresponding window downwards until it reaches the second position.

Stop automatic movement: push or pull on the button of the corresponding window.

Resetting the automatic raising/lowering function

If the 12-volt battery is disconnected or discharged when the windows are not completely closed, the power window automatic raising and lowering function deactivates and has to be reset:

- Switch the ignition on.
- Close all doors and windows.
- Pull the corresponding window button upwards and hold it in this position for a few seconds.
- Release the button, pull it up again and hold it in this position. This resets the automatic raising and lowering function.

The function can be reset for a single window or for several windows at the same time.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings >>> ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 110.

- **Improper use of the power windows can cause injury.**
- **Never close windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, as this could cause serious injuries to you or third parties. Therefore, make sure that no one is in the way of the moving windows.**
- **If the ignition is switched on, electrical equipment such as the power windows could activate, which can cause injury.**
- **The vehicle doors can be locked with the remote control key, making it difficult to get help in an emergency.**
- **Therefore always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **The power windows are only deactivated when the ignition is switched off and one of the front doors is opened.**
- **If necessary, deactivate the rear power windows with the safety control. Make sure that they have actually been deactivated.**
- **For safety reasons, you should only unlock and lock the vehicle with the remote control key when you are approximately 2 metres away from the vehicle. When pressing the lock button, always monitor the movement of the windows to avoid accidents. Releasing the button immediately interrupts the closing process.**

Note

If the window is not able to close because it is stiff or because of an obstruction, the window will automatically open again >>> page 118. In this case, check why the window could not be closed before trying again.

Window anti-trap function

The roll-back function reduces the risk of injury when the power windows close.

If a window encounters resistance or an obstacle when closing, it will reopen immediately >>> ⚠.

- Check why the window does not close.
- Try closing the window again.
- If the closing process is interrupted again, the anti-trap function stops working for a few seconds.
- If the window still cannot be closed, it will stop in the corresponding position. Pulling the button again within a few seconds closes the window **without the anti-trap function** >>> ⚠.

Closing the windows without the anti-trap function

- Try to close the window again by pulling the button without releasing it, within a few seconds. **The anti-trap function will be deactivated!**
- If the closing process takes longer than a few seconds, the anti-trap function is activated again. The window will stop again if it encounters resistance or an obstacle, and will reopen automatically.
- If the window will still not close, visit a specialised workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings >>> ⚠ in *Opening and closing the windows* on page 118.

- **The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other parts of the body getting pinched against the window frame. Risk of accident.**

Note

The anti-trap function also works when the windows are closed with the comfort function using the vehicle key.

Sunroof

Introduction

The sunroof consists of two glass parts. The rear part is fixed and cannot be opened. It also has a sun blind.

The sunroof only works when the ignition is switched on. Once the ignition has been switched off, you can still open or close the sunroof for a few minutes provided the driver door and the front passenger door are not opened.

⚠ WARNING

If the sunroof is used negligently or without paying due attention, it can cause serious injury.

- **Open or close the sunroof and the sun blind only when no one is in their path of movement.**
- **Never leave any key inside the vehicle when exiting.**
- **Never leave a child or any other person who may need help in the vehicle, especially if they have access to the vehicle key. If using they key unattended, they could lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch on the ignition and activate the sunroof.**
- **After switching off, it is still possible to open or close the sunroof during a short space of time provided that neither the driver nor passenger door is opened.**

NOTICE

- **To prevent damage, during winter temperatures remove any ice or snow that might be on the car roof before opening the sunroof or adjusting the tilt position.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle or in case of rainfall, always close the sunroof. With the sunroof open or in a tilted position, water can enter the interior and can cause considerable damage to the electrical system. As a result, other damage can occur in the vehicle.**

Note

- **Leaves and other loose objects that accumulate on the sunroof rails should be regularly cleaned away either by hand or with a vacuum.**
- **If the sunroof does not work correctly, the anti-trap function will not work either. Contact a specialised workshop.**

Operating the glass roof

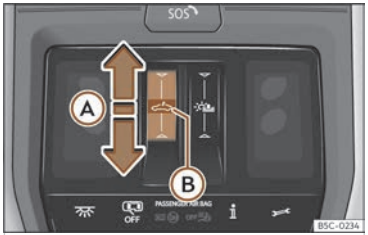


Fig. 90 On the headliner: glass roof button.

The functional area can be operated in two ways: by swiping and pressing.

- **Swiping:** Fully or partially opens or closes the roof.
- **Pressing:** Fully or partially raises, opens or closes the roof. Press again to stop the automatic movement.

Raising, opening and closing the sunroof

Opening the sunroof:

- Automatic movement: slide your finger back over the functional area ››› **Fig. 90** Ⓐ.
- Manual movement: slide your finger back over the functional area and hold it there.

Closing the sunroof:

- Automatic movement: slide your finger forward over the functional area Ⓐ.
- Manual movement: slide your finger forward over the functional area and hold it there.

Raise the sunroof (it is only possible to raise the sunroof if it is closed):

- Automatic movement: press briefly in the centre of the functional area Ⓑ

Closing the sunroof when raised:

- Automatic movement: slide your finger forward over the functional area Ⓐ.
- **Or** press briefly in the centre of the functional area Ⓑ.

Stop the automatic opening or closing movement:

- Press the functional area again Ⓐ.

Convenience function to open or close the sunroof

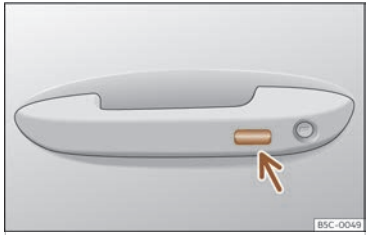


Fig. 91 Door handle: sensor surface.

The sunroof can be opened and closed with the convenience function, just like the windows.

Using the door lock

- Hold the key in the door lock of the driver door in either the unlocking or locking position to open or close the roof in the tilted position. Release the key to interrupt this function.

Using the remote control

- Keep the locking or unlocking button pressed to open or close the roof. If you release the button is the opening or closing will stop.

Using the Keyless Access system (only locking)

Press and hold the locking sensor surface ››› **Fig. 91** (arrow) on the door handle to close the sunroof. If you stop touching the sensing surface, the locking function is interrupted.

Anti-trap function of the panoramic sunroof

The anti-trap function can reduce the risk of injury when closing the sunroof ››› ⚠. If the sunroof encounters resistance or an obstacle when closing, it reopens immediately.

- Check why the sunroof did not close.
- Try to close the sunroof again.
- If the sunroof cannot be closed due to an obstacle or some resistance, it stops at the corresponding position and then reopens. For automatic closing, a new closing attempt might take place.
- If the sunroof is still unable to close, close it without the anti-trap function.

Closing the sunroof without the anti-trap function

- Before approx. 5 seconds after activation of the anti-trap function, slide your finger forward over the functional area ››› **Fig. 90** Ⓐ and keep pressed until the sunroof is fully closed.

- **The sunroof closes without the anti-trap function intervening!**
- If the sunroof will still not close, visit a specialised workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the sunroof without the anti-trap function can cause serious injuries.

- **Always be careful when closing the sunroof.**
- **No person should ever remain in the way of the sunroof, especially when closing without the anti-trap function.**
- **The anti-trap function does not prevent fingers or other parts of the body from becoming trapped against the roof frame and injuries occurring.**

Glass roof sun blind

Fig. 92 On the headliner: operate the sun blind.

Opening or closing the sun blind

Automatic movement:

- Swipe backwards or forward over the functional area ☼ ››› **Fig. 92**.

Manual movement:

- Swipe backwards or forward over the functional area ☼ and press and hold.

Steering wheel

Multifunction steering wheel

Functions

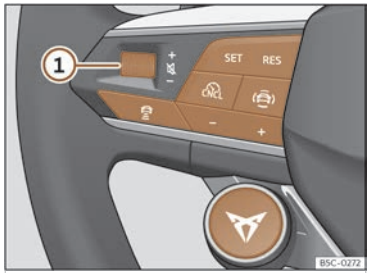


Fig. 93 Controls on the steering wheel.

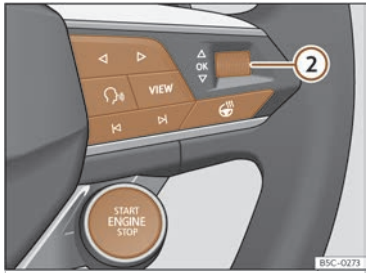


Fig. 94 Controls on the steering wheel.

The steering wheel includes multifunction modules from where it is possible to control the audio, telephone, navigation, voice control and assist functions without the driver needing to be distracted from the road.

Buttons available depending on the version

①	*Turn:* Turn volume up/down. *Press:* Mute volume.
②	*Turn:* Search in the instrument cluster menu. In Navigation mode, turn to zoom in/out of the map on the digital instrument cluster. *Press:* Select the highlighted option in the instrument cluster.
⏮ ⏭	*Radio:* Search for the previous/next station. *Media:* Short press: previous/next track; long press: fast forward/rewind.
📞	Activate phone menu (answer call, end call).
	Switch between media and radio sources.
◁ ▷	Change the instrument cluster menu (previous/next).
	Enable/disable voice control.
VIEW	Change the instrument cluster views. ››› **page 16**
	Activate or deactivate steering wheel heating. ››› **page 156**
CNCL	Pause the ACC ››› **page 209** / Cruise control ››› **page 204** / Speed limiter ››› **page 205** / Travel Assist ››› **page 223**.
SET	Activate ACC / Travel Assist / Speed limiter.
RES	Reset programmed speed.
– +	+: Increase programmed speed. –: Decrease programmed speed.

	Open the driver assistants menu in the instrument cluster.
	Modify the programmed ACC distance.

Satellite buttons	
	Drive profile selection >>> page 191
START ENGINE STOP	Starting and stopping the engine. >>> page 169

Steering wheel position adjustment

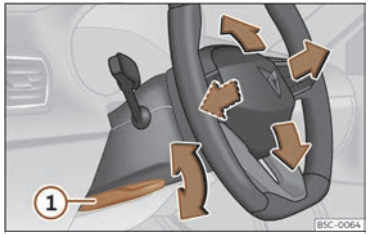


Fig. 95 Lever in the lower left side of the steering column.

Adjust the steering wheel before your trip and only when the vehicle is stationary.

- Pull lever >>> **Fig. 95** (1) down, move the steering wheel to the desired position and lift the lever back up until it locks.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering wheel adjustment function and an incorrect adjustment of the steering wheel can result in severe or fatal injury.

- **After adjusting the steering column, push lever >>> Fig. 95 (1) firmly upwards so that the steering wheel does not accidentally change position while driving.**
- **Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. If you need to adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion, stop safely and make the proper adjustment.**
- **The adjusted steering wheel should be facing your chest and not your face so as not to hinder the driver's front airbag protection in the event of an accident.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce injuries when the driver's front airbag deploys.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the driver's airbag deploys, you may sustain injuries to your arms, hands and head.**

Seats and headrests

Front seats

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Always read and observe the information and safety advice given in chapter ››› page 43, *Correct sitting position of vehicle occupants*.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat adjustment may lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary, as the seats could move unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion and you could lose control of the vehicle. Furthermore, an incorrect position is adopted when adjusting the seat.
- Adjust the height, position and inclination of the front seats only when their movement area is empty.
- Make sure there are no objects in that area.
- Make sure that the movement and locking areas of the seats are clean.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly using upholstery and seat covers might cause an accidental activation of the electrical seat adjustment system and make it move unexpectedly while driving. This might cause loss of control of the vehicle and thus accidents or injuries. Moreover, the electrical components of the front seats might be damaged.

- Never attach or place seat upholstery or covers on the electric controls.
- Never use upholstery or seat covers that have not been explicitly authorised for the seats of the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Objects with sharp edges can damage the seats.

- Do not rub the seats with sharp objects. Sharp objects, such as zips and rivets on clothing or belts, can damage surfaces. Open Velcro fasteners can also cause damage.

Manual adjustment of the front seats

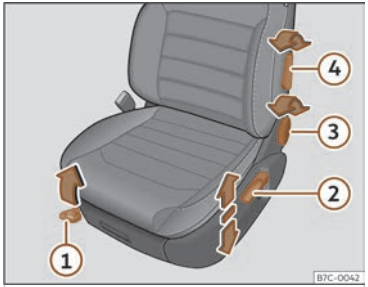


Fig. 96 Front seats: manual seat adjustment.

1. Pull the lever to move the seat forwards or backwards. The seat must engage when the lever is released!
2. Move the lever up or down to adjust the seat height; several times if necessary.
3. Without placing force on the seat backrest, turn the wheel to adjust the backrest.
4. To adjust the lumbar support, move the lever until the required position is achieved.

Electric adjustment of the front seats

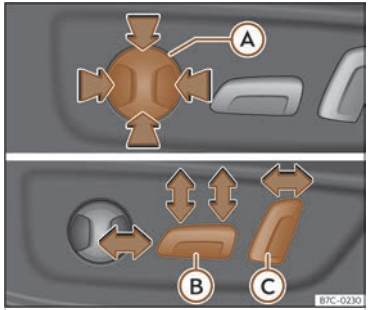


Fig. 97 Driver's seat: electric seat adjustment.

Ⓐ Adjust the lumbar support: press the button according to the desired position.

Ⓑ Seat forwards/backwards: press the button forwards/backwards.
Seat up/down: Press the rear part of the button up/down. To adjust the angle of the seat cushion, press the front of the button up/down.

Ⓒ Backrest further upright/further reclined: press the button forwards/backwards.

The position will be saved automatically in the CUPRA CONNECT Active user when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Using the electric front seats carelessly or without paying due attention can cause serious injury

- **The front seats can also be electrically adjusted when the ignition is switched off. Never leave a child or any other person who may need help in the vehicle.**
- **In the event of an emergency, electrical adjustment can be stopped by pressing any control.**

NOTICE

To avoid damaging the electrical components of the seats, please refrain from kneeling on the seat or applying sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion and backrest.

Note

- **It may not be possible to electrically adjust the seat if the vehicle battery is very low.**
- **If the engine is started while the seats are being electrically adjusted, the adjustment will stop.**

Note

When changing user a warning will be shown on the infotainment system's screen during the time that the seat is moving to the saved position. This movement can be stopped by pressing the stop button on the screen.

Rear seats

Folding down and raising the rear seat backrest

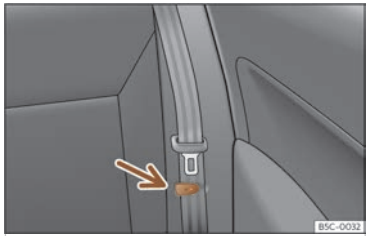


Fig. 98 Rear seat: clip to hold the seatbelt in place.

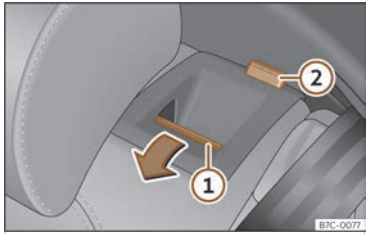


Fig. 99 Rear seat: folding down the backrest.

The rear seat backrest is split and each part can be lowered separately to enlarge the luggage compartment.

Folding the backrest forwards

- Place the side seat belts in the trim clip ››› **Fig. 98**.
- Fully lower the rear headrests ››› **page 127**.
- Press the unlock button ››› **Fig. 99** ① forwards and at the same time fold the backrest down. The rear seat backrest is not engaged when the red marking of the button ② is visible.

Converting the table to a seat

- Raise the backrest and lock it in place. The red marking on button ② should no longer be visible when the backrest is properly secured.

⚠ WARNING

Serious injuries can be caused if the rear seat backrest is lowered or lifted without due care and attention.

- **Never lower or lift the rear seat backrest while driving.**
- **Do not trap or damage the seat belt when raising the rear seat backrest.**
- **When lowering or lifting the rear seat backrest, keep your hands, fingers, feet and other body parts out of its path.**
- **For the rear seat belts to offer the necessary protection, all the parts of the rear backrest must be properly engaged. This is particularly important in the case of the centre rear seat. If someone is seated in a seat whose backrest is not properly engaged they will fly forward, along with the backrest, during an accident or a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.**
- **A red mark on button ② warns that the rear backrest is not engaged. Always check that the red marking is not visible when the backrest is in the upright position.**
- **When the rear seat backrest is lowered or is not properly engaged nobody else may travel in the corresponding seats (not even a child).**

ⓘ NOTICE

If the belts are caught when the seatback is raised, fold the seatback back down to release the belt. Grab the belt with your hand and lift the backrest so that it is not trapped.

ⓘ NOTICE

Serious damage can be caused to the vehicle and other objects if the rear seat backrest is lowered or lifted without due care and attention.

- **Before lowering the rear seat backrest, always adjust the front seats so that neither the headrests nor the cushions of the rear backrest can hit them.**

Headrest

Introduction

The headrest adjustment and removal options are described below. Always make sure that the seats are correctly adjusted ››› **page 43**.

All seats are fitted with a headrest. The central rear headrest is only intended for the central seat of the rear bench. Therefore, do not install it on any other seat.

Correct adjustment of the headrest[1)]

Adjust the headrest so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, as close as possible to eye level. Keep the back of your head always as close to the headrest as possible.

Adjusting the headrest for short people[1)]

Lower the headrest completely, even if your head is below its upper edge. In the lowest position, there may be a small distance between the headrest and the backrest.

Adjusting the headrest for tall people[1)]

Raise the headrest to the highest position.

⚠ WARNING

If travelling with the headrests removed or improperly adjusted, the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of accidents and sudden braking or manoeuvres increases.

- **Always travel with the headrest correctly installed and adjusted.**
- **To decrease the risk of neck injuries in the event of an accident, adjust the headrest correctly based on your height, always making sure that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, as close as possible to eye level. Keep the back of your head always as close to the headrest as possible and centred.**
- **Never adjust the headrest while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Under no circumstances should the rear passengers travel while the headrests are in the non-use position.**

NOTICE

When assembling and disassembling the headrests, do not allow them to come into contact with the vehicle's ceiling liner, the back rest of the front seat or other parts of the vehicles. Any such contact could damage the vehicle.

Adjusting the headrests

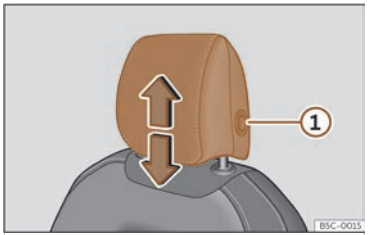


Fig. 100 Front seat: adjusting the headrest.

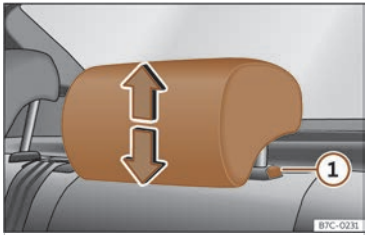


Fig. 101 Rear headrest: adjusting the headrest.

[1)] On seats with adjustable headrests.

Adjusting the height of the headrests

- Grab the sides of the headrests with both hands and push upwards to the desired position. To lower it, repeat the same action, pressing the button on the side ① ››› **Fig. 100** , ››› **Fig. 101**.
- The headrest must lock correctly in one position.

Removing and fitting the headrests

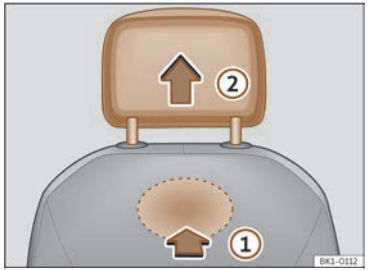


Fig. 102 Front headrest: removal.

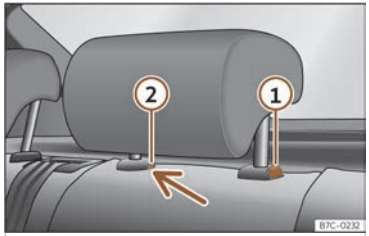


Fig. 103 Rear headrest: removal.

Removing the front headrests

- Lower the headrest if necessary.
- To unlock it, look for the button underneath the headrest and press in the direction of the arrow ››› **Fig. 102** ①.
- Remove the headrest in the direction of the arrow ②.

Fitting the front headrests

- Place the headrest in the correct position on the guides of the corresponding backrest and insert it.
- Press the headrest downwards until the bars lock.
- Adjust the headrest according to the instructions on the correct position of the seat.

Removing the rear headrests

To remove the headrest, the corresponding backrest must be partially folded forward.

- Unlock the backrest ››› **page 125**.
- Move the headrest upwards to its highest position.
- Press button ››› **Fig. 103** ①, while simultaneously pressing on the safety hole ② with a flat screwdriver a maximum of 5 mm wide, and remove the headrest.
- Move the backrest until it engages properly ››› ⚠ in ***Folding down and raising the rear seat backrest*** **on page 126**.

Fitting the rear headrests

To mount the external headrests, the corresponding backrest must be partially folded forward.

- Unlock the backrest ››› **page 125**.
- Insert the headrest bars into the guides until they are heard to engage. It should not be possible to remove the headrest from the backrest.
- Move the backrest until it engages properly ››› ⚠ in ***Folding down and raising the rear seat backrest*** **on page 126**.

⚠ WARNING

Remove the rear headrests only when it is necessary to fit a child seat. After removing a child seat, refit the headrest immediately.

Seat functions

Memory function

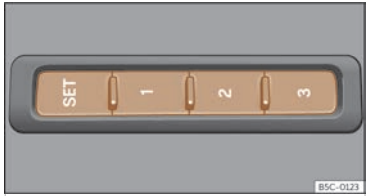


Fig. 104 On the outer side of the driver's seat: memory buttons.

Memory buttons

The memory buttons can be used to save and activate settings for the driver seat and exterior mirrors.

The settings will also be saved in the user of the online services[1].

Save the settings for the driver seat and exterior mirrors for forward gear

- Apply the electronic parking brake.
- Set the gearbox to the neutral position.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Adjust the driver seat and exterior mirrors.
- Press SET for longer than 1 second >>> **Fig. 104**.
- Press the memory button in which to store the settings within approx. 10 seconds. An audible signal confirms that they have been saved.

Save the settings of the front passenger exterior mirrors for reversing.

- Apply the electronic parking brake.
- Set the gearbox to the neutral position.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Press whichever memory button you want.
- Select reverse gear.
- Adjust the front passenger exterior mirror so that you can see, for example, the kerb edge well.
- The set position for the mirrors is automatically saved and assigned to the key with which you unlocked the vehicle.

Activating the settings

- With the vehicle stopped and the ignition switched on, press and hold the corresponding memory button until the saved position is reached.
- **OR:** With the ignition switched off and the driver's door open, briefly press the corresponding button.

The front passenger side exterior mirror automatically changes from the position stored for reversing as soon as the vehicle moves forward at a speed of at least 15 km/h (10 mph) or when the gear selection lever is changed to a position other than **R** >>> **page 145**.

Initialising the seat position memory

If, for example, the driver seat has been replaced, the position memory system must be restarted.

Restarting deletes all memories and assignments of seats with memory functions. The memory keys can then be programmed again.

- Open the driver's door and do not get into the vehicle.
- Change the seat settings from outside.
- Tilt the backrest fully forward.
- Release the control to adjust the inclination and press it again until an audible signal sounds.

[1] Not available in all markets.

Easy Entry function

Depending on the equipment, the Easy Entry function makes it easier for the driver to enter and exit by moving the seat forwards or backwards respectively.

The function is activated via the driver setting in the sub-menu of seat settings in the seats menu of the infotainment system.

⚠ WARNING

Only set the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Note

If the driver's door is opened approx. 10 minutes after the vehicle was unlocked or later, the driver seat and the exterior mirrors do not move automatically.

Front centre armrest

Fig. 105 Front centre armrest

To *raise* the armrest, pull it fully up in the direction of the arrow ››› **Fig. 105** or step by step, depending on how far you want to raise it.

To *lower* the armrest, first lift it to its highest position. Then lower it down.

To move the armrest horizontally, move it forward ››› **Fig. 105** or backward as much as possible in the direction of the corresponding arrow.

⚠ WARNING

The front centre armrest may obstruct the driver's arm movements, which could cause an accident and severe injuries.

- **Keep the storage compartments of the centre armrest closed at all times while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never let anyone sit on the centre armrest while the vehicle is in motion, not even a child. This position is incorrect and may cause severe injuries.**

Rear centre armrest

Fig. 106 Folding rear centre armrest (schematic view).

There might be a folding armrest in the rear centre seat.

- To *lower* the armrest, pull the cord in the direction of the arrow ››› **Fig. 106**.
- To *raise* the armrest, push it up in the opposite direction to the arrow and press it as far as it will go into the seat backrest.

When the centre armrest is down, do not allow anybody to travel in the centre seat of the rear bench.

⚠ WARNING

To decrease the risk of injuries while driving, the rear centre armrest must always be raised.

- When the centre armrest is down, nobody may travel in the centre rear seat, not even a child. An incorrect sitting position may cause severe injuries.

Lights

Vehicle lighting

Lighting and visibility buttons

Fig. 107 Dash panel: light panel.

By pressing the MODE button you can select between (the corresponding indicator lights up):

Switching on the dipped beam headlights.

AUTO Automatic control of dipped beam and daytime running light.

Switching on the side lights. The automatic headlight control AUTO activates at over a speed of approx. 10 km/h (6 mph).

Additionally, the following light functions can be activated by pressing on the corresponding symbol.

When the function is activated, the corresponding symbol lights up. To deactivate it, you will need to press on the symbol again.

FRONT Turning the front fog lights on or off. In addition, a pop-up window with the selected position is displayed in the instrument cluster.

REAR Turning the rear fog lights on or off. In addition, the yellow control lamp on the instrument cluster lights up.

MAX Switching the windscreen demisting function on and off ››› page 151.

REAR Switching the rear window heating on and off ››› page 151.

It is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven with the correct headlamp settings and the correct lights.

Side lights

When the side light is switched on, the side lights in both headlights, certain areas of the rear light clusters, the number plate light and the button lights on the instrument cluster turn on. The automatic dipped beam activates as of a speed of approx. 10 km/h (6 mph).

Automatic dipped beam headlight control AUTO

When the automatic dipped beam is switched on, the vehicle's lighting and the lighting of the instruments and controls turn on and off under the following conditions:

- The light sensor has detected darkness.
- The wiper has been on for some time.

When the lights are on, the control lamp lights up in green.

The automatic dipped beam is only an auxiliary function and cannot always identify all situations that may arise during driving with sufficient precision.

If the vehicle has the appropriate equipment, the vehicle settings menu of the infotainment system can be used to set the moment that the dipped beam automatically switches on ››› page 38.

Cornering light function

The *cornering* light is an additional function to the dipped beam to improve lighting of the side of the road when cornering at low speeds.

When the dipped beam is on, a static cornering light comes on when driving at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph) or on very tight bends.

- If the steering wheel is turned or the turn signal is switched on, the front fog light gradually turns on. Once the turn has been made, the *cornering* light progressively turns off.
- When engaging reverse gear, both front fog lights turn on.

Daytime running lights

Daytime running lights can increase the vehicle's visibility when driving in daylight and they turn on automatically when the ignition is switched on (if brightness is detected).

Motorway light

The motorway light is available on vehicles fitted with LED High lights.

- **Activation:** when going above 110 km/h (68 mph) for more than 10 seconds, the dipped beam raises slightly to increase the driver's visibility distance.
- **Deactivation:** when the speed of the vehicle is reduced below 100 km/h (62 mph), the dipped beam immediately returns to its normal position.

Warning buzzers to warn that the lights have not been switched off

If the ignition is not connected and the driver's door is open, an audible warning signal is heard in the following cases: this will remind you to turn the light off.

- When the parking light is on >>> page 134.
- When the lamp or is on.

If the exit lighting is switched on ("Coming Home" function), when you leave the vehicle there will be no audio warning to warn you that the lights are still on.

⚠ WARNING

Accidents can occur if the road is not well lit and other road users cannot see the vehicle or see it with difficulty.

- **The automatic dipped beam control (AUTO) only switches on the dipped beam when there are no changes in brightness, and not, for example when it is foggy.**

⚠ WARNING

The side light or daytime running light does not provide sufficient illumination to see the road properly or to be seen by drivers of other vehicles.

- **Always switch on the dipped beam headlight at night, in rainy weather or when visibility is poor.**
- **Daytime running lights must never be used when the road is poorly lit due to weather or lighting conditions.**

⚠ WARNING

Other road users may be distracted and dazzled if the headlights are set too high and used inappropriately. This could cause an accident, with serious consequences.

- **Always make sure that the headlights are correctly adjusted .**

ⓘ Note

- **The relevant legislation in each country must be observed when using the vehicle's lights.**
- **The dipped beam headlights will only work with the ignition on. When the ignition is switched off, the side light automatically turns on.**
- **The rear fog light can dazzle drivers behind you. You should use the rear fog light only when visibility is very poor.**

ⓘ Note

When the lights are in position AUTO or and the fog lights are switched on, the dipped beam is also switched on regardless of the ambient brightness.

Turn signal and main beam lever

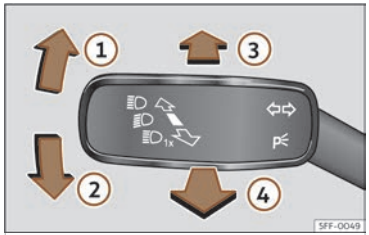


Fig. 108 Turn signal and main beam lever (depending on the version).

Move the lever to the required position:

1. Right turn light or right-hand parking light (ignition switched off).
2. Left turn light or left-hand parking light (ignition switched off).
3. Turning on the main beam. The blue control lamp lights up on the instrument cluster.
4. The headlight flasher turns on when the lever is pulled. The control lamp lights up on the instrument cluster.

Place the lever in its neural position to turn off the corresponding function.

Comfort turn signals

When the ignition is switched on, move the lever as far as possible upwards or downwards and release the lever. The turn signal will flash three times.

To switch off the comfort turn signal early, immediately move the lever in the opposite direction until you feel resistance and release it.

The comfort turn signals can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment system, in the vehicle settings menu >>> page 38.

Parking light

The parking lights will only work with the ignition off. If said light is on, an audible warning will sound while the driver's door is open.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Move the turn signal lever up or down.

When the parking light is switched on, the front side light and the tail light on the corresponding side of the vehicle turn on.

Parking light on both sides

- Switch the ignition off.
- Press the button to select .
- Lock the vehicle from the outside.

When this is done, only the side lights of both headlights, along with the tail lights, partially light up.

⚠ WARNING

Using turn signals inappropriately, not using them or forgetting to turn them off can confuse other road users. This could cause an accident with serious consequences.

- **Always give warning of lane changes, overtaking or turning manoeuvres by activating the turn signals well in advance.**
- **As soon as the lane change, overtaking or turning manoeuvre is complete, switch off the turn signal.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the main beam can cause accidents and serious injuries, as it can distract and dazzle other drivers.

Note

- **When you turn the ignition off without having turned the turn signals off, an audible signal sounds while the driver's door is open. It is intended to remind you to turn off the turn signals, unless you want to leave the parking light on.**
- **If the comfort turn signals are on (three flashes) and the comfort turn signal on the opposite side is activated, the active side stops flashing and only flashes once on the newly selected side.**

- **The turn signals only work when the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.**
- **The *main beam* can only be switched on when the dipped beam is switched on.**
- **In cold or wet weather conditions, the headlights, tail lights and turn signals may be temporarily fogged from the inside. This is normal and has no effect on the service life of the vehicle's lighting system.**
- **The parking light does not activate automatically if the left- or right-hand turn signal is left on and the ignition is disconnected.**

Main beam assist (Light Assist)

The main beam assist automatically prevents glare from affecting vehicles moving in the opposite direction or ahead in the same direction. In addition, the main beam assist detects illuminated areas and disconnects the main beam headlight when passing populated areas.

Within its limitations, the assist system automatically connects or disconnects the main beam headlight depending on the environmental and traffic conditions, as well as the speed ››› ⚠.

Advanced main beam assistant (LED Matrix)

The advanced main beam assistant provides maximum illumination of the road and roadside. At the same time, it avoids dazzling vehicles ahead or oncoming traffic.

The system uses a camera to detect other road users and deactivates certain areas within the light distribution in a specific manner. If the system cannot avoid dazzling other road users, the main beam is switched off completely.

The advanced main beam assistant normally recognizes illuminated areas such as cities and deactivates the main beam while driving through them.

Within the limits of the system, the assistant automatically switches the main beam on or off depending on the ambient conditions, traffic conditions and driving speed.

The advanced main beam assistant can be switched on or off in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment System.

Switching on the main beam assist or advanced main beam assist (Matrix LED)

- Switch on the ignition and select mode AUTO on the headlight control ››› Fig. 107.
- From the neutral position, press the turn signal and main beam headlights lever forwards ››› Fig. 108 ③.

When the main beam assist is switched on, the control lamp on the instrument cluster display turns on. When the main beam is on, the blue main beam control lamp on the instrument cluster switches on.

Switching off the main beam assistant or advanced main beam assistant (LED Matrix)

- Switching off mode AUTO on the headlight control ››› Fig. 107.
- **EITHER:** if main beam assist is on, pull the turn signal light and main beam headlights lever back ››› Fig. 108 ④.
- **OR:** if the main beam assistant is on, but the main beam **does not** turn on, press the turn signal and main beam lever forwards to turn the main beam on manually. Pull the turn signal and main beam lever back to switch off the main beam manually, if necessary.
- **OR:** switch off the ignition.

Additional functions

Depending on the equipment, the headlamps are equipped with additional functions that improve comfort and safety.

- **Lane light:** If the system has detected that the vehicle is travelling on a multi-lane motorway or similar roads the lane light illuminates the full width of the driving lane. If vehicles are detected ahead, the amount of lane illuminated ahead of the vehicle reduces automatically. If the vehicle changes lanes, the illuminated range is extended to both lanes for the duration of the manoeuvre.
- **Orientation light:** If the system has detected road works, the orientation light uses markings to approximately show the likely position of the vehicle in its lane, depending on the current

steering angle. The width of the markings corresponds approximately to the width of the vehicle, The length of markings is automatically adjusted according to speed and distance to vehicles in front.

When the outside temperature drops below 4°C (39°F), the icy road warning projects a snowflake symbol on the road. This is complemented by a pop-up window displayed on the instrument cluster.

These functions can be activated and deactivated from Vehicle settings in the infotainment system .

System limitations

In the following cases, the main beam headlight must be switched off manually because the main beam assist will not disconnect it on time or disconnect it at all:

- On insufficiently lit roads with highly reflective signs.
- If road users have insufficient lighting, e.g. pedestrians or cyclists.
- On tight curves, when the traffic in the opposite direction is partially hidden, on pronounced slopes or inclinations.
- On roads with traffic in the opposite direction and with a central reservation barrier where the driver can see over it e.g. lorry drivers.
- In case of fog, snow or heavy rainfall.
- In case of swirling dust or sand.
- If the windscreen is damaged in the camera's field of vision.
- If the camera's field of vision is misted up, dirty or covered by a sticker, snow or ice.
- If the camera is damaged or if the power supply has been cut off.

⚠ WARNING

The comfort features of the main beam assist must not lead you to take any risks. The system is not a replacement for driver concentration.

- **You must always control the main beam yourself and adapt it to the light, visibility and traffic conditions.**
- **The main beam regulator may not recognise all driving situations correctly and may operate with limitations in certain circumstances.**
- **When the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the operation of the main beam regulator may be affected. This also applies when the vehicle's lighting installation is modified, e.g. when additional headlamps are installed.**

⚠ WARNING

To avoid affecting the operation of the system, take the following points into consideration:

- **Clean the field of vision of the camera regularly and make sure it is free of snow and ice.**
- **Do not cover the field of vision of the camera.**
- **Check that the windscreen is not damaged in the area of the camera's field of view.**

Note

- **The headlight flasher can be turned on and off manually at any time with the turn signal and main beam lever** >>> page 134.
- **If there are objects that radiate light in the camera's area of influence, e.g. a portable navigation system, this may affect the operation of the main beam assist system.**

"Coming home" and "Leaving home" function (exterior orientation lighting)

The "Coming home" and "Leaving home" function lights up the vehicle's immediate surroundings when getting into and out of it in the dark.

This light is automatically controlled by a light sensor.

Turning on the “Leaving home” light

- Unlocks the vehicle (if the automatic dipped beam function AUTO is switched on and the light sensor detects darkness).

Turning off the “Leaving home” light

- It turns off automatically once the lights off delay time has elapsed.
- **OR**: lock the vehicle.
- **OR**: press the light control as many times as necessary until the instrument cluster displays the setting OFF.
- **OR**: switch on the ignition.

Turning on the “Coming home” light

- Switch the ignition off.

The “Coming home” light comes on if the automatic headlight control AUTO is switched on and the light sensor detects darkness.

The lights-off delay countdown starts when the last door or rear lid of the vehicle is closed.

Turning off the “Coming home” light

- It switches off automatically after the set lights-off delay time has elapsed.
- **EITHER:** it is automatically deactivated if, 30 seconds after the function has been activated, any vehicle door or the rear lid is still open.
- **OR**: press the light control as many times as necessary until the instrument cluster displays the setting OFF.
- **OR**: switch on the ignition.

“Coming home” and “Leaving home” settings

The duration of the lights-off delay can be set in the vehicle settings menu of the infotainment system, where the function can also be activated and deactivated >>> page 38.

Welcome light

The welcome light is a light located on the exterior mirrors facing the ground which is switched on or off if the lights control is in the AUTO position and the “Coming Home” or “Leaving Home” function is switched on or off.

Dynamic headlight range control

The headlight range is automatically adjusted according to the vehicle load status when they are switched on.

⚠ WARNING

If the dynamic headlight range control fails or does not work properly, the headlights could dazzle and distract other road users. This could cause accidents and lead to serious injuries.

- **Immediately go to a specialist workshop and have the headlight range control system checked.**

Driving abroad

The light beam of the dipped beam lights is asymmetric: the side of the road on which you are driving is lit more intensely.

When a car that is manufactured in a country that drives on the right travels to a country that drives on the left (or vice versa), it is normally necessary to cover part of the headlight bulbs with stickers or to change the adjustment of the headlights to avoid dazzling other drivers.

In such cases, the regulations specify certain light values that must be complied with for designated points of the light distribution. This is known as “Tourist light”.

The light distribution of the headlights allows the specific “tourist light” values to be met without the need for stickers or changes being made to the settings.

Note

"Tourist light" is only allowed temporarily. If you are planning a long stay in a country that drives on the other side, you should take the vehicle to an Authorised Technical Service to change the headlights.

Troubleshooting

Turn signal control lamp

The indicator lamp lights up green.

If a turn signal fails, the turn signal light flashes twice as fast.

1. Contact a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a CUPRA dealership for this purpose.

Hazard warning lights on ››› page 72.

Trailer turn signal indicator control lamp

The indicator lamp lights up green.

If a trailer turn signal fails, the indicator lamp stops flashing instead of flashing at double the speed of the turn signal on the vehicle.

Fault in external lighting

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

There is a total or partial failure of the exterior lighting.

1. Contact a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a CUPRA dealership for this purpose.

Interior lights

Lighting of the instrument cluster, displays and controls

The instrument and control lighting brightness can be set in the vehicle settings menu of the infotainment system ››› page 38.

The set intensity automatically adapts to changes in ambient brightness in the vehicle.

When the automatic dipped beam light AUTO is turned on, a sensor automatically turns the dipped beam light on or off, along with the instrument and control lighting, depending on the ambient brightness.

In some cases, e.g. when driving through a tunnel without the automatic dipped beam light AUTO function switched on, the instrument cluster lighting may even switch off. The objective of this function is to provide the driver with a visual indication that he or she should activate the dipped beam. If your vehicle is fitted with a digital instrument cluster, the message **Turn on the lights** will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Interior and reading lights

Fig. 109 Detail of headliner: front interior lighting.

Turning the interior lights on or off.

OFF Door contact connection. The interior lights come on automatically when you unlock the vehicle, open a door or disconnect the ignition. The light goes out a few seconds after closing all the doors, when locking the vehicle or connecting the ignition.

Reading light

The reading light is touch-operated, each lens is turned on and off individually by pressing in the respective central area. In addition, the intensity of the light can be adjusted according to the pressure exerted.

If you want to turn on the two lenses together you must press the symbol ››› Fig. 109.

Glove compartment and luggage compartment lighting

When opening and closing the glove compartment on the front passenger side and the rear lid, the respective light will automatically switch on and off.

Footwell lighting

The lights in the footwell area below the dash panel (driver and front passenger sides) will switch on when the doors are opened and will decrease in brightness while driving. This brightness can be adjusted through the infotainment system menu using the function button > **Lighting** > **Settings** ››› page 38.

Note

The reading lights go out when the vehicle is closed and locked or after a few minutes of turning the ignition off. This prevents the battery from discharging.

Background lighting

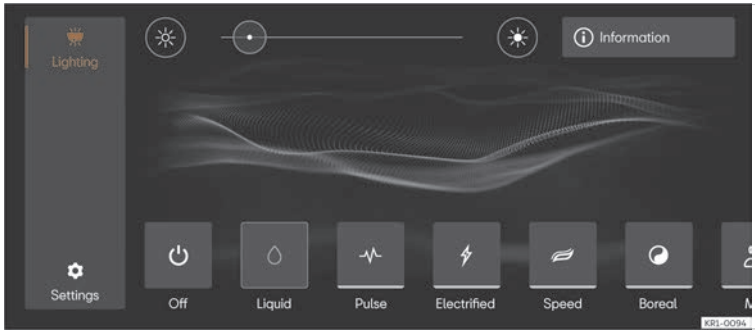


Fig. 110 Schematic representation: Background lighting.

Background lighting provides lighting in different areas of the interior.

There are predefined versions of **Ambient Light** ››› **Fig. 110**.

The intensity of the lighting can be adjusted using the function button ☼:

Lighting profile Lights up the interior of the vehicle depending on the selected lighting profile.

Individual To adjust the intensity of the background lighting in each of the areas as well as to change the colour in the versions that have lighting on the front door panel and the dash panel line.

Off Turns off the background lighting.

Additional functions of the background lighting

- **Door open alert:** Representation on the line of the respective front door if the vehicle reaches 10 km/h while either of the two front doors is not closed properly.
- **Rear windows locked alert:** Representation on the line of the respective front door when the operation buttons of the rear windows are pressed, if they have been locked with the safety button ››› **page 116** and the vehicle is locked (Auto Lock).
- **Representation of the hazard warning lights:** Animation on the entire background lighting line while the hazard warning light function is active.
- **Representation of acceleration:** Animation on the entire background lighting line when accelerating. This function is only represented in the Cupra when the link between the background lighting and the drive profile is activated. If a door has been left open, the “Door Open Alert” will be displayed at a speed above 10 km/h.

The representation of these functions by the background lighting can be switched on and off both individually and as a whole in the infotainment system: ⊞ > **Lighting** > **Settings**.

Visibility

Windscreen wiper and rear window wiper systems

Wiper lever

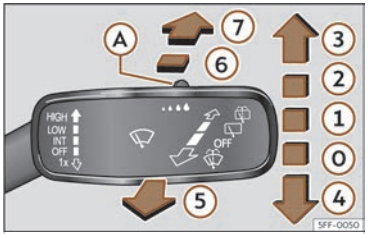


Fig. 111 Operation of windscreen wipers and rear window wiper system.

Move the lever to the required position:

OFF (0) Windscreen wipers off.

INT (1) Intermittent wiping of the windscreen or activates the rain sensor. The windshield is wiped intermittently depending on the speed of the vehicle or the heaviness of the rain.

LOW (2) Slow wipe.

HIGH (3) Fast wipe.

1x (4) Short wipe. Pressing the lever for longer accelerates wiping.

(5) Pull the lever to switch on the automatic windscreen washer/wiper. The Climatronic switches on air recirculation for approx. 30 seconds to prevent the smell of windscreen washer fluid from entering the vehicle interior.

(6) Switches on the intermittent rear window wiper. The wiper operates at intervals of approx. 6 seconds.

(7) Pressing and holding the lever turns on the automatic rear window washer/wiper.

(A) A Control for adjusting the duration of the wiping intervals (vehicles without rain and light sensors) or the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

⚠ WARNING

If insufficient antifreeze is added to the washer fluid, it could freeze on the glass and impair visibility.

- **Do not use the wiper system in winter temperatures without first heating the windscreen with the heating and ventilation system. Windscreen washer fluid could freeze on the windscreen and impair forward visibility.**

⚠ WARNING

The use of worn or dirty wiper blades reduces visibility and increases the risk of serious accidents and injuries.

- **Replace the wiper blades whenever they are in poor condition or worn out and no longer clean the windows sufficiently** **>>> page 339.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Before driving off and before switching on the ignition, check the following aspects of the wiper blades and the wiper motor to prevent damage to the glass:

- **The wiper lever is in the neutral position.**
- **You have removed or cleared any snow and ice from the wiper blades and windows.**
- **You have carefully removed any wiper blades that may have frozen from the window. CUPRA recommends an de-icer spray for this purpose.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Turn of the wiper before the glass is completely dry. Using the wipers while dry can damage the glass.

Note

- When the vehicle stops while the wiper is on, the wiper switches to operating temporarily at the next lower wiping level.
- In winter, the service position of the wipers can be useful to make it easier to lift the wipers off the windscreen when the vehicle is going to be left stationary ››› page 339.

Wiper functions

Automatic rear window wiper

The rear wiper switches on automatically when the wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged. The automatic rear window wiper activation when engaging reverse gear can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment system, in the vehicle settings menu ››› page 38.

Note

The windscreen will be wiped again approximately 5 seconds after the windscreen washer has been activated, provided the vehicle is moving (“drip” function). If you activate the wipers less than 10 seconds after the “drip” function, a new wash sequence will begin without performing the last wipe. For the “drip” function to work again, you have to turn the ignition off and then on again.

Note

The wiper will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windscreen. The wiper will stop moving if the obstacle is still blocking its path. Remove the obstacle and switch on the wiper again.

Rain and light sensor

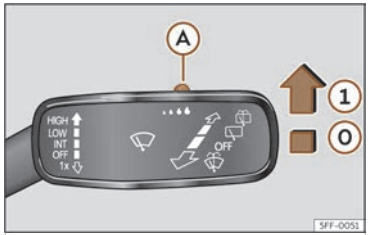


Fig. 112 Windscreen wipers lever: adjust the rain sensor Ⓐ.

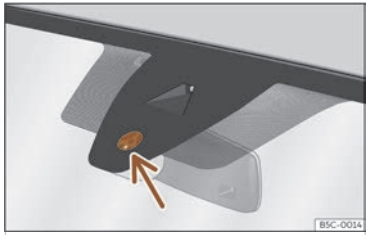


Fig. 113 Sensitive surface of the rain sensor.

The rain sensor controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper intervals, depending on the amount of rain ››› ⚠.

Push the lever to the desired position ››› **Fig. 112**.

⓪ Rain sensor deactivated.

① Rain sensor active; automatic wiping if necessary.

Ⓐ Setting sensitivity level of rain sensor:
– Set control to the right: high sensitivity.
– Set control to the left: low sensitivity.

When the ignition is switched off and then back on, the rain sensor stays on and starts operating again when the windscreen wipers are in position ››› **Fig. 112** ① and the vehicle is travelling at more than 16 km/h (10 mph).

Abnormal operation of the rain and light sensor

The possible causes of anomalies and erroneous interpretations *in the sensitive surface area* ››› Fig. 113 of the rain sensor are, among others:

- **Damaged wipers**: a film of water on the damaged blades may lengthen the activation time, reduce the washing intervals or result in a fast and continuous wipe.
- **Insects**: the impact of insects may cause the wiper to activate.
- **Salt on the road**: in winter, salt spread on the roads may cause an excessively long wipe when the windscreen is almost dry.
- **Dirt**: dry dust, wax, coating on glass (Lotus effect) or traces of detergent (car wash) may reduce the effectiveness of the rain sensor or make it react more slowly, later or not at all. Regularly clean the sensitive surface of the rain sensor ››› Fig. 113 (arrow) and check for possible damage to the wiper blades.
- **Windscreen crack**: the impact of a stone will trigger a single wipe cycle with the rain sensor on. The rain sensor then detects the reduction of the sensor surface and adjusts itself. The behaviour of the sensor may vary depending on the size of the stone impact.

⚠ WARNING

The rain sensor may not detect rain sufficiently and may not activate the windscreen wipers.

- **If necessary, switch on the windscreen wipers manually when water hinders the view through the windscreen.**

Note

- **The use of an alcohol-based glass cleaner is recommended to remove waxes and coatings.**
- **Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the rain sensor. This can cause alterations or failures.**

Troubleshooting

Washer fluid level too low

The control lamp lights up in yellow. Refill the washer fluid reservoir at the next opportunity ››› page 361.

Mirrors

General safety instructions

The exterior and interior mirrors allow the driver to observe vehicles driving behind and adapt his or her driving behaviour accordingly.

For safe driving, it is important for the driver to adjust the exterior mirrors and interior mirror correctly before setting off.

When looking through the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror, it is not possible to see the entire area behind and to the sides of the vehicle. These areas outside the field of view are known as the blind spot. Other road users and objects may be in the blind spot.

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the exterior mirrors and interior mirror while driving can distract the driver. This could cause accidents and lead to serious injuries

- **Only adjust the exterior mirrors and interior mirror when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **When parking, changing lanes, overtaking or turning, always keep a close eye on your surroundings, as other road users or objects may also be in the blind spot.**
- **Always make sure that the mirrors are adjusted correctly and that visibility to the rear is not reduced by ice, snow, fogging or other objects.**

⚠ WARNING

A failure to accurately estimate the distance to vehicles driving behind can lead to serious accidents and injuries.

- **Curved (convex or aspherical) mirrors increase the field of view and objects in them appear smaller and further away.**
- **Curved mirrors do not allow you to precisely calculate the distance to vehicles driving behind, so using them when changing lanes could cause serious accidents and injuries.**
- **If possible, use the interior mirror to precisely calculate the distance to vehicles driving behind you, or to other objects.**
- **Always make sure you have sufficient visibility to the rear.**

⚠ WARNING

The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which could leak if the mirror is broken.

- **If it gets out, the electrolyte fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory organs, particularly in the case of people with asthma or similar diseases. Immediately inhale enough fresh air and get out of the vehicle, or open all windows and doors if this is not possible.**
- **If the electrolyte fluid comes into contact with your eyes or skin, immediately rinse the affected area with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical advice.**
- **If the fluid comes into contact with footwear or clothing, rinse immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Clean thoroughly before using the footwear or clothing in question again.**
- **If the electrolyte fluid is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless advised by a doctor. Immediately seek medical attention.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Electrolyte fluid may leak if the automatic anti-dazzle mirror is broken. This liquid attacks plastic surfaces. Therefore, it should be cleaned as fast as possible with a damp sponge or similar.

Interior mirror

Interior mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function

When the ignition is switched on, the sensors in the mirror measure the light falling on it from behind and in front.

The interior mirror automatically darkens based on the measured values.

If the light falling onto the sensors is blocked or interrupted, e.g. by a sunshade blind or hanging objects, the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror does not work or does not work properly. Similarly, the use of portable navigation devices attached to the windscreen or close to the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror can affect the operation of the sensors >>> ⚠.

The automatic anti-dazzle function is deactivated in certain situations, e.g. when reverse gear is engaged.

⚠ WARNING

Light from screens of portable navigation devices can cause malfunctions of the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror and may cause serious accidents and injuries.

- **Abnormal operation of the automatic anti-dazzle function may result in it being impossible to use the interior mirror to precisely calculate the distance to vehicles driving behind, or to other objects.**

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

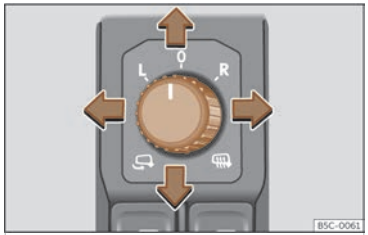


Fig. 114 Driver's door detail: exterior mirror control.

Turn the control to the corresponding position.

L / R By moving the control to the desired position, adjust the interior mirrors on the left side (L) and on the right side (R) in the desired direction.

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle, the mirrors may be heated according to the outside temperature.

Fold the mirrors >>> ⚠.

0 The exterior mirror cannot be adjusted and all functions are deactivated.

Activating exterior mirror functions

The following exterior mirror functions can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings menu of the infotainment system >>> page 38.

Note

The exterior mirror functions are described below. For left-hand drive vehicles, position L corresponds to the exterior mirror on the driver's side and position R corresponds to the exterior mirror on the passenger's side. Do the opposite for right-hand drive vehicles.

Synchronized regulation of the exterior mirrors

The synchronised mirror setting simultaneously adjusts the right hand exterior mirror when the left mirror is adjusted.

- Turn the control to position L[1].
- Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror. The right exterior mirror will be adjusted at the same time (synchronised).
- If necessary, correct the setting of the right hand mirror: turn the control to position R[1].

Folding the exterior mirrors when locking the vehicle

When the vehicle is locked or unlocked from the outside, the exterior mirrors may fold in or out automatically, depending on the equipment. For this purpose, the rotary control has to be in position , L, R, or 0.

If the rotary control of the electric exterior mirrors is in the folded position, the exterior mirrors remain folded.

Memory function

The memory buttons >>> page 129 can be used to save and turn on settings for the exterior mirrors.

The settings will also be saved in the user of the online services[2].

Saving the passenger interior mirror settings for reversing

- Switch the ignition on.
- In the infotainment system, select > **Vehicle > Exterior > Mirrors** >>> page 38.
- Select position R[1] on the control.
- Select reverse gear.

---

[1] Do the opposite in right-hand drive vehicles.
[2] Not available in all markets.

- Adjust the front passenger exterior mirror so that you can see, for example, the kerb area well.
- Release the reverse gear.
- The adjusted position for the interior mirror is stored.

Activating the passenger side exterior mirror settings for reversing

- Turn the exterior mirror control knob to position R[1].
- Engage reverse gear with the ignition switched on. The right-hand exterior mirror will move to the saved position.

The passenger side exterior mirror leaves the saved reversing position when the vehicle is travelling faster than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph), or if the control is turned from position R to another position.

⚠ WARNING

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out carelessly can cause injury.

- **Only fold or unfold the exterior mirror if there is no one in the path of the mirror.**
- **When moving the mirror, be careful not to pinch your fingers between the mirror and the mirror holder.**

NOTICE

- **Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure that the exterior mirrors are folded in to prevent them from being damaged.**
- **The electrically folding exterior mirrors must only be operated electrically, not by hand, as this could damage their electric drive.**

For the sake of the environment

Do not leave the exterior mirror heating on for longer than necessary. Otherwise it causes unnecessary energy consumption.

Note

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Sun protection

Sun blind

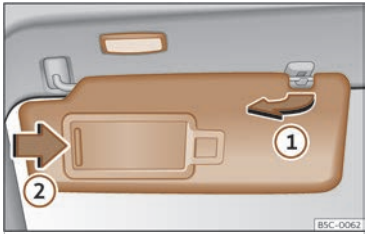


Fig. 115 Sun visor

Options for adjusting driver and front passenger sun visors

- Lower the sun visor towards the windscreen.
- The sun visor can be pulled out of its mounting and turned towards the door >>> Fig. 115 ①.
- Swing the sun visor towards the door, backwards and lengthwise.

There is a vanity mirror on the sun visor, with a cover. When the cover is opened ② a light comes on.

The light goes out when the vanity mirror cover is closed or the sun visor is pushed back up.

[1] Do the opposite in right-hand drive vehicles.

WARNING

Folded sun blinds can reduce visibility.

- Always store sun blinds and visors in their housing when not in use.

Note

The light above the sun visor automatically switches off after a few minutes in certain conditions. This prevents the battery from discharging.

Air conditioning

Heating, ventilation and cooling

Introduction

The 3-zone **Climatronic** heats, ventilates, cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior, considering it as 3 independent air conditioning areas (driver, front passenger and rear seats).

There are several ways to switch on the air conditioning:

- Press in the air conditioning menu >>> page 151.
- **OR:** tap any button in the air conditioning menu directly related to the air conditioning (for example temperatures, etc.).

Some functions and menu tabs depend on the equipment.

Economic use of the air conditioning

Extra fuel (combustion engines) or electricity (hybrid in electric mode) may be consumed by the compressor while the air conditioning is on.

The air conditioning operates most effectively with the windows and the sunroof closed. However, if the vehicle interior has heated up after standing in the sun for some time, the air inside can be cooled more quickly by briefly opening the windows and the sunroof.

Operating the air conditioning with voice controls

Depending on the equipment, some of the air conditioning functions can be operated by voice control >>> page 287.

Passenger recognition function[1)]

The front-passenger and rear-seat recognition system automatically adjusts the air conditioning, reducing output in unoccupied areas to optimise vehicle energy consumption.

With the ignition on, the vehicle can detect whether a seat is occupied.

The turning down of the air conditioning is indicated as follows:

- *Front passenger area*: on the front passenger temperature selector, which will display ECO instead of the selected temperature.
- *Rear zone:* on the rear temperature selector, where **ECO** will be displayed instead of the selected temperature. This turning down of the air conditioning will also be displayed on the control located in the rear area.

Dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter with activated carbon cartridge helps reduce impurities in the air entering the passenger compartment.

The dust and pollen filter must be changed regularly so that air conditioner performance is not adversely affected.

If filter performance drops sooner than expected because of operation in highly contaminated environments, replace it before the scheduled service interval.

Air vents

To ensure proper heating, cooling and ventilation in the vehicle interior, the air vents must remain open.

There are other additional, non-adjustable air vents in the dash panel, in the footwells and in the rear area of the vehicle interior.

⚠ WARNING

Reduced visibility through the windows increases the risk of serious accidents.

- **Always ensure that all windows are free of ice and snow, and that they are not fogged, so as to maintain good visibility of everything outside.**
- **Only drive when you have good visibility.**

---

1) Valid for hybrid vehicles.

- Always ensure that you use the air conditioner and heated rear window to maintain good visibility.
- Do not keep air-recirculation mode activated for long periods. If the cooling system is off and recirculation remains on, the windows may mist up quickly, greatly reducing visibility.
- Switch air recirculation mode off when it is not required.

NOTICE

Food, medicines and other objects sensitive to heat or cold may be damaged or made unsuitable for use by the air coming from the vents.

- Never place food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects close to the air vents.

Note

- When the air conditioning system is switched off, the incoming air from outside will not be dehumidified. To prevent fogging of the windows, CUPRA recommends leaving the cooling system turned on. To do this, press the function button A/C. The icon should light up.
- The maximum heat output required to defrost windows as quickly as possible is only available when the engine has reached its normal running temperature.

- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure heating and cooling are not impaired, and to prevent the windows from misting over.
- The air from the vents flows through the vehicle interior and is extracted through slots in the luggage compartment designed for this purpose. Therefore, you should avoid obstructing these slots with any kind of object.
- It is advisable to turn on the air conditioning at least once a month, to lubricate the system gaskets and prevent leaks. If a decrease in the cooling capacity is detected, a Technical Service should be consulted to check the system.
- When the engine is under extreme strain, switch off the compressor for a moment.

Climatronic control

Fig. 116 Schematic representation: air-conditioning functions.

Ⓐ Climabar

Fixed bar at the bottom of the Infotainment System display ››› **Fig. 116** Ⓐ where the following Air Conditioning functions are located:

Temperature Tapping on the numbers themselves opens a pop-up window for temperature settings using the symbols ⊕ or ⊖.
OR: use the touch zones ① and ② (blue / red) to adjust the temperature of the Air Conditioning ››› **Fig. 116**. You can also change the temperature by swiping your finger right to left across the touch areas.

Click on the symbol to change the heat setting. To turn off the heating, press the button until the light level is off. It can also be controlled via the main **Seats** menu ››› **page 154**.

OR: the seat heating can be controlled by tapping with two fingers at once on touch zones ① (for driver) and ② (for passenger) (depending on the equipment).

MAX The defrost/demist function of the Climatronic removes ice and condensation from the windscreen. The air is dehumidified and the fan is set to high.
This function is also available on the light control.
When this function is switched on, the rear air conditioning remains switched off.

CLIMA Press this to access the Air Conditioning menu ››› **page 151**.

REAR Switches the heated window on or off when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after a maximum of 10 minutes. The user must switch it off as soon as the glass is demisted. The system can temporarily switch off the function to avoid possible damage to the battery. The function will be restored as soon as the vehicle's energy management system permits it.
This function is also available on the light control.

Favourites (depending on the equipment)

Except for the temperature buttons and seat-heating buttons, **CLIMA**, MAX and REAR, the remaining Climabar buttons can be customised as follows:

1. Press and hold the button that you want to configure. A box showing all the possible options drops down.
2. When you select an option, the button is programmed with that option.
3. Close the box to return to the infotainment menu.

Air Conditioning Menu

Fig. 117 Schematic representation: Air conditioning menu.

The following functions are available in the **Air conditioning** menu, depending on the equipment:

Front submenu

Submenu for the air conditioning in the front of the vehicle interior where the following functions are found:

Switching the Climatronic off/on ››› **Fig. 117** Ⓐ.

SYNC Equalises all temperature settings to the value selected in the driver zone. To deactivate synchronisation, change the temperature setting for the front passenger and/or rear zone. Activates the temperature control for the passenger side ››› **Fig. 116** ② and/or rear zone to set a different temperature.

Vents The colour of the arrows in the image of the vehicle interior indicates the temperature requested depending on the ambient conditions, not the air outlet temperature. The direction of the air outlet is selected with the buttons ››› **Fig. 117** Ⓑ.

Switching manual air recirculation on and off ››› **page 152**.

Manual steering wheel heating setting with three heating levels. Press the function button repeatedly to achieve the desired level. To disconnect it, press several times until no LED is on ››› **page 156**.

A/C Switch the air conditioning system on and off.

A/C MAX Switch maximum air conditioning output on and off. The air recirculation mode switches on automatically and the Climatronic automatically directs the air to the upper body.

AIR CARE The air conditioning system contains a filter that can reduce allergen contaminants. The Air Care function activates recirculation and regulates it automatically and continuously as long as there is no risk of misting.
Information about the AirCare system can be found in the Settings submenu.

Manual adjustment of fan speed by tapping ⌘ or ✤.
OR: by pressing or swiping your finger on the lines until the desired fan speed is reached.

AUTO In this mode, the system automatically regulates the interior temperature, fan speed and air distribution for optimal thermal comfort. The AUTO mode will deactivate as soon as manual changes are made to the fan speed, air distribution, windscreen demisting or air recirculation. Repeatedly pressing the mode button AUTO sets the function to gentle, medium or high ventilation levels.

Smart submenu

Submenu where different smart and/or automatic functionalities are located, depending on the version.

Hand warm: automatically adjusts climate control for a set time to heat air via the front vents.

Cool feet: automatically adjusts the air conditioning for a certain time to cool the footwell area.

Demist the windscreen: automatically adjusts the air conditioning for a certain time to demist the windscreen.

Warm feet: automatically adjusts the air conditioning for a certain time to heat the footwell area.

Fresh Air: automatically adjusts the air conditioning for a certain time to ventilate the vehicle interior.

Fast cooling: automatically adjusts the air conditioning to ventilate the vehicle interior for a certain amount of time.

Rear submenu

Submenu for the air conditioning in the rear of the vehicle interior where the following functions are found:

When the rear lock is activated, it is not possible to adjust the temperature from the rear controls.

⊕/⊖ Press to adjust the rear zone temperature.

Settings submenu

Submenu where the following settings are located:

- Heated steering wheel switched on at start of journey depending on temperature: select one of the three heating levels and/or Off from the dropdown menu >>> page 156.

Rear controls

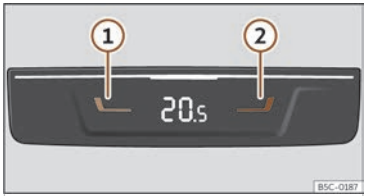


Fig. 118 In the centre console, rear section: controls for the rear seats.

Temperature selection

- Press buttons ① and ② >>> **Fig. 118** to adjust the temperature of the rear zone.

Air recirculation

Air recirculation mode prevents the ambient air from entering the interior.

When the outside temperature is very high, it is advisable to select air recirculation for a short period of time to refresh the vehicle interior more quickly.

For safety reasons, air recirculation is disconnected when MAX is pressed or when a sensor detects that the vehicle's windows may mist up.

Switching air recirculation on and off

- Press the button to switch air recirculation on or off.

WARNING

Stuffy or stale air will increase fatigue and reduce driver concentration possibly resulting in a serious accident.

- **Never leave the fresh air fan turned off or use the air recirculation for long periods of time; the air in the vehicle interior will not be refreshed.**

NOTICE

In vehicles with an air conditioner, do not smoke when air recirculation is switched on. The smoke may be deposited on the cooling evaporator and on the active combination filter and cause permanent unpleasant odours.

Note

When the outside temperature is very high, briefly switching on the air recirculation mode helps to cool the vehicle interior more quickly.

Seat heating

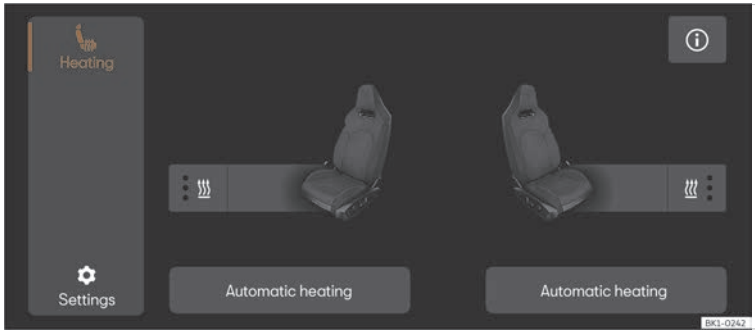


Fig. 119 Schematic representation: Seats menu

The front seats have three levels of electric heating.

Turning on the seat heating

There are several ways to switch on the front seat heating:

- Tap on the symbol located in: main menu **Seats > Air conditioning**.
- Tap on the **Climabar** symbol >>> **Fig. 116**.
- Tap with two fingers at once on touch zones ① (for driver) and ② (for passenger) >>> **Fig. 116**.

Controlling seat heating

- Press the corresponding seat function button to switch on the seat heating to maximum power.
- Press the function button of the corresponding seat repeatedly until the desired level is set.
- To switch off seat heating, press the corresponding seat icon several times until no LED is on.

The seat heating will switch off automatically when no person is detected on the seat. The indication on the infotainment system turns grey after approx 2 seconds. If the passenger sits down again while the drive system is still switched on, the seat heating switches on again automatically.

The seat heating can be switched on again manually even if the seat is unoccupied.

Smart heated seat

Availability depending on the equipment. This is an smart function that automatically activates and regulates the driver and front passenger seat heating for greater comfort.

The seat heating for the driver's seat and front passenger seat can be adjusted separately to achieve fully adapted comfort. In addition, in

the case of the driver, the function can be personalised, depending on the user registered in the vehicle.

To access the smart heated seats function, the CUPRA CONNECT **personalisation** service must first be activated››› page 268.

- To activate/deactivate the function go to the seat heating submenu, and press on the **Automatic heating** button below the image of the corresponding seat ››› Fig. 119.

The smart heated seats function requires a period for learning usage habits. The start of the learning process is indicated by the informative text **Learning 0 %** which will appear above the function's activation/deactivation button. During this process, the learning percentage increase will be shown in this informative text, until 100% learning is achieved.

Seat heating level 3 (maximum) needs to be used to ensure that habits are learned correctly.

During the learning period, it is recommended to use the seat heating at different ambient temperatures to achieve optimal autonomous operation.

No learning will take place after the stationary air conditioning has been used.

Once 100 % learning has been achieved, automatic mode will activate. This mode is also represented by an **A** next to the corresponding seat button on the air conditioning bar, which is always visible at the bottom of the screen.

The heating can be configured at any time. If the automatic mode is activated, the text **Optimising** is displayed and the automatic mode will take into account this new learning or modification that the user has made to the seat heating (e.g. changing the heat setting, etc.).

To reset the process and restart the learning period, go to **Settings > Reset driver/passenger profile**.

Tap ⓘ to access information about the function.

Cases in which heat seating should not be switched on

Do not switch seat heating on if any of the following conditions are met:

- The seat is occupied by a person with limited perception of pain or temperature.
- The seat is not occupied.
- The seat has a cover.
- A child seat has been installed on the seat.
- The seat cushion is wet or damp.
- The outdoor or vehicle interior temperature is higher than +25°C (77°F).

⚠ WARNING

Children and people who, due to medication, paralysis or chronic illnesses (e.g. diabetes), cannot perceive pain or temperature — or have limited perception — may suffer burns to the back, buttocks or legs when using seat heating.

- **People with limited pain and temperature thresholds must never use seat heating.**
- **If an abnormality in the device's temperature control is detected, have it checked by a specialist workshop.**

⚠ WARNING

If the fabric of the cushion is wet, this can adversely affect the operation of the seat heating, increasing the risk of burns.

- **Make sure the seat cushion is dry prior to using the seat heater.**
- **Do not sit on the seat with clothing that is wet or damp.**
- **Do not leave clothing that is wet or damp on the seat.**
- **Do not spill liquids on the seat.**

NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heaters, do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure to a single point on the seat cushion or backrest.
- Liquids, sharps objects and insulating materials (e.g. covers or child seats) can damage the seat heating.
- In the event of odours, switch off seat heating immediately and have it inspected by a specialised workshop.
- If the original seat upholstery is replaced by another material, seat heating may overheat or its operation may be limited.

For the sake of the environment

Seat heating should remain on only when needed. Otherwise, it is unnecessary energy consumption.

Note

Please note the following for the smart heated seats feature:

- The system may reset the learning process if it has not been satisfactory.
- Separate driver's seat learning will be required for each registered user.
- The passenger seat learns regardless of the active registered user.

- In hybrid vehicles the use of the stationary air conditioning function with electricity consumers >>> page 161 may affect the learning time of the function.

Steering wheel heating

The selected steering wheel heating level will be displayed on the instrument cluster display and in the air conditioning menu.

Adjusting steering wheel heating by pressing on the multifunction steering wheel

- *Short press (less than 1 second):*

Heating is switched on at its maximum level. Press the steering wheel button repeatedly to set the desired level. To switch off steering wheel heating, press the steering wheel button repeatedly until the heated steering wheel OFF icon is displayed on the instrument cluster.

- *Long press (more than 1 second):*

Heating is switched off directly from the current operating level Another long press on the button switches on heating directly at the last level saved before switching off.

Adjusting steering wheel heating via the infotainment system

- In the air conditioning menu, press the steering wheel heating function button . The heating initially switches on at the maximum level.
- Press the function button repeatedly to set the desired level.
- To switch off steering wheel heating, press the function button several times until no LED is on.

Automatic disconnection

Steering wheel heating will be switched off automatically when any of the following conditions are met:

- Electrical energy consumption is too high.
- The steering wheel heating system is faulty.
- If the ignition is switched off.

Parking ventilation

The vehicle interior can be ventilated with the stationary ventilation function (depending on equipment).

The power required for parking ventilation will be provided by the vehicle's 12V battery.

The ventilation function is controlled using the My CUPRA App.

Switching on the stationary ventilation

The function can be switched on as follows:

- The parking ventilation function can be switched on immediately using the immediate on/off button in the My CUPRA App.
- By programming a departure time.

In the event of low level charge of the 12V battery, the parking ventilation will not turn on.

Disconnecting parking ventilation

The parking ventilation will turn off in the following situations:

- When the operating time for the immediate on/off mode has elapsed.
- The parking ventilation function can be switched off immediately using the immediate on/off button in the My CUPRA App.
- When the scheduled departure time has been reached.

The maximum operating period of the parking ventilation is 30 min.

Programming a departure/trip start

The activation of the parking ventilation for a scheduled time is only valid for a single ventilation process. The departure time must be for each newly programmed ventilation process.

Before programming the departure time, you must check that the date and time of the car are correctly set.

When programming a departure time, the car automatically calculates, depending on the environmental conditions, the necessary operating time of the parking ventilation.

NOTICE

Foods sensitive to heat or cold, medications and other objects can be damaged by the airflow.

- **Do not place any type of food, medicines or other temperature sensitive items in front of the ventilation slots.**

Note

If parking ventilation runs repeatedly for long periods of time, the 12V battery charge level will drop. It is advisable to take the vehicle for a long drive to recharge the battery.

Troubleshooting

The cooling system cannot be switched on or its operation is limited

If the air conditioning system cannot be switched on, this may be caused by the following:

- The engine is not running.
- The fan is switched off.
- The air conditioner fuse has blown.
- The outside temperature is lower than approximately 0°C (+32°F).
- The air conditioner compressor has been temporarily switched off because the engine coolant temperature is too high.
- Another fault in the vehicle. Have the air conditioner checked by a specialised workshop.

Change the temperature unit (Climatronic)

The temperature display can be changed from Celsius to Fahrenheit on the Infotainment System display using the function button ⊞ **> Settings > Units**.

Water or water vapour under the vehicle

If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak!

When the outside humidity is high and the ambient temperature is low, condensation water may evaporate when the stationary air conditioning is operating. In this case, steam may come out from under the vehicle. This does not mean that the vehicle has any damage.

Note

After starting the engine, any residual humidity in the air conditioner could mist over the windscreen. Switch on the defrost function as soon as possible to clear the windscreen of condensation.

Auxiliary heating (additional heating)

Introduction

The auxiliary heater[1] runs on fuel from the vehicle's tank and can be used while you are driving and when the vehicle is stationary.

The auxiliary heater can be controlled through the auxiliary heating menu in the Infotainment system, through the My CUPRA App or with the remote control.

In winter, with the auxiliary heater switched on, you can demist the windscreen and leave it free of ice and snow (if it is a thin layer) before you start driving.

If the outside temperature is very high, the vehicle interior can be ventilated with the engine off using the auxiliary heater.

The maximum operating period of the parking ventilation is 60 min.

⚠ WARNING

The exhaust gases from auxiliary heating contain carbon monoxide, a toxic, colourless and odourless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.

- **Never switch on the auxiliary heater or leave it running in enclosed spaces or areas with no ventilation.**
- **Never program the auxiliary heating to switch on and operate in an enclosed or unventilated space.**
- **Before refuelling, switch off the additional heating.**

⚠ WARNING

The components of the auxiliary heater are extremely hot and could cause a fire.

- **Always park your vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come in contact with easily flammable materials that might be below the vehicle, such as dried grass.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Never place food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects close to the air vents. Food, medicines and other objects sensitive to heat or cold may be damaged or made unsuitable for use by the air coming from the vents.

Switching the auxiliary heater on and off

Connection

The auxiliary heating can be switched on in the following ways:

- Press the immediate on/off button in the My CUPRA App.
- Press the immediate on/off button in the infotainment system's departure menu (with the vehicle switched off) or the on/off button in the infotainment system's auxiliary heating menu (with the vehicle switched on).
- Press button on the remote control >>> page 159.
- Automatically scheduling a departure time in the auxiliary heater menu in the infotainment system or in My CUPRA App >>> page 160.

Disconnection

The auxiliary heating can be switched off in the following ways:

- The auxiliary heating function can be turned off immediately using the immediate on/off button in My CUPRA App.
- Press the immediate on/off button in the infotainment system's departure menu (with the vehicle switched off) or the on/off button in the infotainment system's auxiliary heating menu (with the vehicle switched on).

[1] Availability depending on the equipment.

- Press button OFF on the remote control >>> page 159.
- Automatically at the scheduled departure time or after the programmed operating time has elapsed .
- Automatically when the control lamp (fuel level indicator) lights up.
- Automatically when the 12-volt battery charge drops too low >>> page 366.

Setting the desired temperature

- Open the infotainment system's **Auxiliary heating** menu.
- Set the desired temperature using ⊕ and ⊖.

Things to note

Once switched off, the auxiliary heater will continue to operate for a short period of time in order to burn the fuel remaining in the system and also to expel the exhaust fumes.

Radio-operated remote control

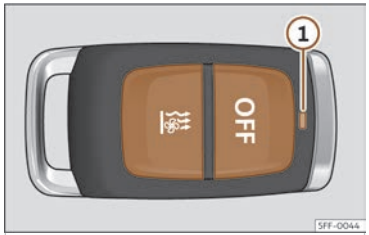


Fig. 120 Auxiliary heating: radio remote control.

>>> Fig. 120

Switch the auxiliary heater on

OFF Switch the auxiliary heater off

(1) Control lamp.

If the buttons on the remote control are pressed unnecessarily, the auxiliary heating may be switched on unintentionally, even if you are outside the operating range or the control lamp is flashing.

To switch on and off the independent heating, the button must be pressed and held for approximately 1 second.

Control lamp on the remote control

When the buttons are pressed, the control lamp on the remote control (1) provides the user with different information:

It lights up for approx. 2 seconds

- *In green:* The auxiliary heater has been switched on using the button.
- *In red:* The auxiliary heater has been switched off using the OFF button.

Flashes slowly for approx. 2 seconds

- *In green:* No on signal has been received. The remote control is out of range. Move closer to the vehicle.
- *In red:* No off signal has been received. The remote control is out of range. Move closer to the vehicle.

Flashes quickly approx. 2 seconds

- *In green:* The independent heating is blocked. Possible causes: the fuel tank is almost empty, the 12-volt battery charge is very low or there is a fault.

It lights up for approx. 2 seconds

- *In orange (then in green or in red):* The battery in the remote control is almost empty. However, the on or off signal was received.
- *In orange (then flashes green or red):* The battery in the remote control is almost empty. No on or off off signal has been received.

Flashes for around 5 seconds

- *In orange:* The battery in the remote control is flat. No on or off off signal has been received.

Changing the battery of the radio-operated remote control

When pressing the buttons, if the control lamp of the remote (1) flashes for approx. 5 orange or does not light up, the batteries must be replaced.

The battery is located beneath a cover on the back of the remote control.

- To open the cover, lift it slightly at the bottom and slide it down.
- Remove the battery.
- Insert the new battery. When doing so, take into account the polarity and use batteries of the same type ››› ⓘ.
- Replace the battery cover by inserting the tabs at the top and pressing the bottom.

Range

The receiver is inside the vehicle. The remote control, when fitted with new batteries, has a range of several hundred metres. Obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and discharged batteries can considerably reduce the range of the remote control.

⚠ WARNING

Swallowing a battery with a diameter of 20 mm or any other button battery can cause serious injuries or even death within a very short time.

- **Always keep the radio remote control and key fobs containing batteries, as well as spare batteries, button cells and other batteries larger than 20 mm, out of the reach of children.**
- **If you suspect that someone may have swallowed a battery, seek medical attention immediately.**

ⓘ NOTICE

- **The remote control contains electronic components. Therefore, avoid getting it wet and avoid impacts or direct sunlight.**
- **The use of unsuitable batteries may damage the remote control. Therefore, always replace the old battery with a new one of the same voltage, size and specification.**

For the sake of the environment

- **Dispose of used batteries in an environmentally friendly manner.**
- **The remote control battery may contain perchlorate. Please observe the legal provisions regarding its disposal.**
- **Make sure that it is not possible to operate the remote control unintentionally in order to avoid switching on the auxiliary heating without intending to.**

Programming the auxiliary heater

The activation of the parking ventilation for a scheduled time is only valid for a single ventilation process. The departure time must be for each newly programmed ventilation process.

Before programming the departure time, you must check that the date and time of the vehicle are correctly set.

When programming a departure time, the vehicle automatically calculates, depending on the environmental conditions, the necessary operating time of the parking ventilation.

⚠ WARNING

Never program the auxiliary heating to switch on and operate in an enclosed or unventilated space. The exhaust gases from auxiliary heating contain carbon monoxide, a toxic, colourless and odourless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause loss of consciousness and death.

Usage instructions

The auxiliary heater exhaust system located below the vehicle must be kept clear of snow, mud and other objects. The exhaust fumes must be able to exit freely. The emissions generated by the auxiliary heater are removed via an exhaust pipe fitted underneath the vehicle.

On heating the vehicle interior, depending on the outside temperature, the warm air is first directed at the windscreen and then to the rest of the vehicle interior through the air vents. Directing the vents – towards the windows for example – can affect air distribution.

When the auxiliary heater is not switched on

- The auxiliary heater requires about as much power as the dipped beam headlights. If the 12-volt battery charge is too low, the auxiliary heater switches off automatically and cannot be switched on. This avoids problems when starting the engine.
- The heating must be activated every time you want to set off. Similarly, the departure time must reactivate each time.
- The control lamp ⛽ (fuel level indicator) lights up.

Note

- **Noises will be heard while the auxiliary heater is running.**
- **When the outside humidity is high and the ambient temperature is low, condensation from the heating and fresh air system may evaporate when auxiliary heater is on. In this case, steam may come out from under the vehicle. This does not mean that there is an fault in the vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle is tilted, e.g. if parked on a slope, the operation of the auxiliary heater may be restricted if the fuel tank level is low (just above the reserve level).**
- **If the auxiliary heater is used a number of times for a long period of time, the 12-volt battery will lose its charge. In order to recharge the battery, the vehicle must be driven a few kilometres from time to time. As a guide: the run should last approximately as long as the heating has been switched on.**
- **At temperatures below +5 °C (+41 °F), the auxiliary heater may switch itself on automatically when the engine is switched on. The auxiliary heater is switched off again after a certain period of time.**

Stationary air conditioning

Introduction

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles.

With the stationary air conditioning you can cool, ventilate and heat the vehicle interior while the vehicle is parked. In winter, you can also demist the windscreen and leave it free of ice and snow (if the layer is thin).

The stationary air conditioning is powered by a socket, if the vehicle is plugged in, or by the high-voltage battery otherwise. The stationary air conditioning can be programmed and controlled in the infotainment system or via the My CUPRA App.

You can find information about the app, its availability and the necessary requirements for its use, as well as compatible terminals, on the Internet >>> page 266.

NOTICE

Never place food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects close to the air vents. Food, medicines and other objects sensitive to heat or cold may be damaged or made unsuitable for use by the air coming from the vents.

Note

Using the stationary air conditioning without connecting the charging cable reduces the vehicle's range. At extreme exterior temperatures, the heating or cooling power of the stationary air conditioning may be insufficient to reach the desired temperature.

Managing the stationary air conditioning

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles.

The stationary air conditioning only works if the high voltage battery is sufficiently charged.

The stationary air conditioning can be used without the charging connector being plugged in. In this case, stationary air conditioning draws the required electrical energy from the high-voltage battery.

Setting the desired temperature

- Open the infotainment system's **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
- Tap **Air conditioning**.
- Set the desired temperature using ⊕ and ⊖

Switching on the stationary air conditioning

It can be switched on in the following ways:

- Press the immediate on icon in the Infotainment system (while the vehicle is switched off). During immediate air conditioning, the vehicle reaches the set temperature in a maximum of 30 minutes.
- Press the immediate on/off button in the My CUPRA App.
- Automatically by scheduling a departure time in the My CUPRA App or in the infotainment system in the **Stationary air conditioning** ››› page 162menu.

Switching off the stationary air conditioning

It can be switched off in the following ways:

- Press the immediate on/off button in the My CUPRA App.
- Press the immediate on/off icon in the infotainment system (while the vehicle is switched off).
- Press the air conditioning off button in the **Air conditioning** menu of the infotainment system (while the vehicle is off).
- Automatically, a few minutes after the scheduled departure time.
- Automatically if the charge level of the vehicle's high-voltage battery drops excessively.

Note

- **Noises may be heard while the stationary air conditioning is running, related to its operation.**
- **When the outside humidity is high and the ambient temperature is low, condensation from the air conditioning system may evaporate when the stationary air conditioning is running. In this case, steam may come out from under the vehicle. This does not mean that there is an fault in the vehicle.**

Programming the stationary air conditioning

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles.

The stationary air conditioning can be programmed in the Infotainment system for a scheduled departure time. You can set the desired temperature of the vehicle interior for the vehicle's planned departure time.

Based on the desired temperature, the vehicle calculates the time that the stationary air conditioning needs to be switched on to reach this temperature by the departure time. The maximum pre-operation time of the stationary air conditioning is approx. 30 minutes before the departure time.

Air conditioning the vehicle for departure

- Open the **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
- Press **Departure** to open the timer menu.

- Set the scheduled departure time.
- Activate the timer using the checkbox.

The earliest scheduled departure time is displayed in the infotainment system's departure menu, and can be switched on and off there >>> page 41.

The stationary air conditioning switches off automatically

- After approx. 30 minutes if the vehicle is air-conditioned by "Air condition now" with the ignition switched off.
- After approx. 15 minutes if the drive system has not been switched on by one hour after the scheduled departure time.
- When the state of charge of the high voltage battery drops excessively.

Stationary air conditioning with additional electrical comfort consumers

If the vehicle is going to be air conditioned before departure, the electrical comfort consumers, such as seat heating, steering wheel heating or the heated rear window, can also be switched on automatically before the departure time. Comfort electrical consumers, depending on equipment, are activated only at low temperatures.

To enable the use of these consumers:

- Open the **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
- Tap **Air conditioning**.
- Select the seats whose comfort consumers should be connected along with the stationary air conditioning. Only these seats will be heated before the departure time.
- To turn on the window heating before the departure time, activate the **Automatic window heating** function

The maximum pre-operation time of the electrical comfort consumers is approx. 10 minutes before the departure time.

If the air conditioning is switched on immediately, the electrical comfort consumers are also activated, depending on the equipment.

Immediate activation of the rear window heating

The heated windscreen can be switched on/off using the My CUPRA App , whether or not the stationary air conditioning is switched on.

Air-conditioning the vehicle after unlocking it

- Open the infotainment system's **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
- Press ⚙ **Settings**.
- Check the **Air condition the vehicle after unlocking** check box by pressing it.

The vehicle will be air conditioned for 5 minutes when the doors are unlocked.

Air conditioning the vehicle during high-voltage charging

While the vehicle's high voltage battery is being charged, regardless of whether it is with alternating current (AC) or direct current (DC), the vehicle can be air conditioned before the scheduled departure time.

This can be set in the infotainment system, in the Stationary air conditioning menu.

Note

For high voltage charging at low power with alternating current (AC), charging may be interrupted under certain conditions due to the system's need to air condition the interior.

Check the schedule

When the ignition is switched off, the infotainment system displays the next time that is active and the set functions.

Driving

Driving indications

Pedals

- Make sure that you can always press the pedals without any problems.
- Ensure that the pedals can return unimpaired to their initial positions.
- Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened during the trip and do not obstruct the pedals ››› ⚠.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals clear and which are secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a specialised dealership. Fasteners for floor mats are fitted in the footwells.

Wear suitable footwear

Always wear shoes which support your feet properly and give you a good feeling for the pedals.

⚠ WARNING

- **Restricting pedal operation can lead to critical situations while driving.**
- **Never lay or fit floor mats or other floor coverings over the original floor mats. This would reduce the pedal area and could obstruct the pedals. Risk of accident.**
- **Never place objects in the driver footwell. An object could move into the pedal area and impair pedal operation.**

Selecting the optimal gear

Depending on the equipment on the instrument cluster display, a recommendation is shown with the gear that should be engaged to optimise consumption.

On vehicles with *automatic transmission*, it is only displayed when driving in Tiptronic mode ››› page 184.

No recommendation will appear if the optimal gear is engaged. The current gear will be displayed.

Display	Meaning
3	Optimum gear.
4 ▸ 5	Changing to a higher gear is recommended.
2 ▸ 1	Changing to a lower gear is recommended.

Information regarding the “cleanliness” of the particulate filter

When the exhaust system detects that the particulate filter is close to saturation, this system’s self-cleaning function recommends the optimal gear for that function ››› page 336.

⚠ CAUTION

The gear change recommendation is an auxiliary function and in no case should be a substitute for careful driving.

- **Responsibility for selecting the correct gear, depending on the circumstances, rests solely with the driver.**

For the sake of the environment

Selecting the correct gear can help to save fuel.

Note

The recommended gear display turns off when you are no longer in tiptronic mode.

Economical and environmentally friendly driving

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and wear to the engine, brakes and tyres all depend largely on driving style. Consumption can be reduced between 10-15% with an efficient

driving style. The following section gives you some tips on lessening the impact on the environment and reducing your operating costs at the same time.

Active cylinder management (ACT®)

Depending on vehicle equipment, the active cylinder management (ACT®) may deactivate some of the engine cylinders if the driving situation does not require too much power. The number of active cylinders can be seen on the instrument cluster display ››› page 16.

Anticipation when driving

If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Use the vehicle's inertia whenever possible, with a **gear engaged**. This takes advantage of the engine braking effect, reducing wear on the brakes and tyres. Emissions and fuel consumption will drop to zero.

Changing gear to save energy

An effective way of saving is to change *in advance* to a higher gear.

Manual gearbox: change from first to second gear as soon as possible. Choosing the correct gear saves fuel. Select the highest possible gear suitable for the driving situation (the engine should continue to run with cyclical regularity).

Automatic transmission: accelerate gradually and without reaching the “kick-down” position.

Avoid driving at high speed

Avoid travelling at your vehicle’s top speed, whenever possible. Fuel consumption, emission of harmful gases and noise pollution multiply as speed is increased. Driving at moderate speeds will help to save fuel.

Reduce idling time

In vehicles with the Start-Stop system idling is automatically reduced. In vehicles without the Start-Stop system it is worth switching off the engine, for example, at level crossings and at traffic lights that remain red for long periods of time. When an engine has reached operating temperature, and depending on the cylinder capacity, keeping it switched off for a minimum of about 5 seconds already saves more than the amount of fuel necessary for restarting.

The engine takes a long time to warm up when it is idling. Mechanical wear and pollutant emissions are also especially high during this initial warm-up phase. It is therefore best to drive off immediately after starting the engine. Avoid running the engine at high speed.

Regular maintenance

Regular servicing helps in saving fuel even before the engine is started. A well-serviced engine gives you the benefit of **improved fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and an enhanced resale value. A badly serviced engine can consume up to 10% more fuel than necessary.

Avoid short journeys

The engine and catalytic converter need to reach their optimal **operating temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions.

A cold engine consumes a disproportionate amount of fuel. The engine reaches its working temperature after about four kilometres (2.5 miles), when fuel consumption will return to a normal level.

Check tyre pressure

Always make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressures ››› page 377 to save fuel. If the pressure is half a bar too low, fuel consumption may increase by 5%. Due to the greater rolling resistance, under-inflation also increases tyre wear and impairs handling.

Do not use winter tyres all year round as they increase fuel consumption by up to 10%.

Avoid carrying unnecessary loads

Given that every kilo of extra **weight** will increase the fuel consumption, it is advisable make sure that no unnecessary loads are being transported.

Since the luggage rack increases the **aerodynamic drag** of the vehicle, you should remove it when not needed. At speeds of 100-120 km/h (62-75 mph), this will achieve fuel savings of 12%.

Save electrical energy

The engine drives the alternator, thereby generating electricity. This implies that any increase in power consumption also increases fuel consumption! For this reason, switch off any unneeded electrical devices. Devices that use a lot of electricity include the blower at a high setting, the rear window heating or the seat heating.

Plug-in hybrid drive: brake early and evenly to take advantage of energy recovery.

Note

- **If you have the Start-Stop system, it is recommended that it should not be disconnected.**
- **It is recommended that you close the windows when driving at more than 60 km/h (37 mph).**
- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal, as the pressure can make the plate slip. This causes wear and can damage the clutch plate.**
- **Do not ride the clutch on a hill, use the brake. The fuel consumption will be lower and you will prevent the clutch plate from being damaged.**
- **Use the engine brake on downhills by changing to the gear that is best suited for the gradient. Fuel consumption will be "zero" and the brakes will not suffer.**

Driving with a loaded vehicle

In order to achieve appropriate driving characteristics when the vehicle is loaded, please note the following:

- Place all luggage securely >>> page 311.
- Accelerate with particular care and precaution.
- Avoid sharp braking and sudden manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than usual.
- If applicable, please note the information about the roof rack >>> page 317.

⚠ WARNING

Loads that move around could seriously endanger the vehicle's stability and safety, extend the braking distance during hard or emergency braking and lead to serious accidents and injuries.

- **Secure the load correctly to prevent it from moving around.**
- **Secure heavy objects with suitable lashing straps or tie-down belts.**
- **Ensure that the rear seat backrests are securely engaged.**

Driving with the rear lid open

Driving with the rear lid open is particularly dangerous. Secure all objects and the open rear lid correctly and take any necessary measures.

Driving with the rear lid open increases the aerodynamic drag of the vehicle, along with fuel consumption. It is therefore recommended that you do not drive with the rear lid open.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with the rear lid unlocked or open can cause serious injury.

- **Always drive with the rear lid closed.**
- **Place all objects securely inside the luggage compartment. Otherwise, loose objects could fall out of the luggage compartment and injure road users driving behind.**
- **Always drive carefully and with special care and anticipation.**
- **Avoid braking and sudden manoeuvres, as the open rear lid could move uncontrollably.**
- **When transporting objects that protrude from the luggage compartment, mark them accordingly to warn other road users. Please bear in mind all legal provisions.**
- **Never use the rear lid to support or secure objects protruding from the luggage compartment.**
- **If a luggage rack is fitted on the rear lid, remove it and the load when you have to drive with the rear lid open.**

NOTICE

An open rear lid changes the height and, in some cases, the length of the vehicle.

Note

Depending on the country, it may be forbidden to drive with the rear lid open. Please observe the legal regulations of the country in question.

Driving on flooded roads

To prevent damage to the vehicle driving on flooded roads, take the following into account:

- Water should **never** come above the lower edge of the bodywork.
- Drive at pedestrian speed.
- Never stop the vehicle in the water, drive in reverse or stop the engine.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction form waves that can raise the water level so high that your vehicle will not be able to cross the water safely.

⚠ WARNING

After driving through flooded zones, braking effectiveness can decrease if the brake discs or pads are damp >>> page 193.

Note

- **Driving through flooded areas may severely damage vehicle components such as the engine, drive train or electrical system.**
- **Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion)** >>> page 395.
- **Whenever driving through water, the Start-Stop system must be switched off** >>> page 179.

Running in

Please observe the instructions for running-in new components.

Running-in the engine

A new engine must be driven through a run-in period during its first 1500 kilometres (1000 miles). During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded down.

How the vehicle is driven for the first 1500 km (1000 miles) influences the future engine performance. Throughout the life of the vehicle, it should be driven at a moderate speed (especially when the engine is cold) to reduce engine wear and increase its useful life. Never drive at extremely low engine speeds. Always engage a lower gear when the engine works “irregularly”. **For the first 1000 km or 600 miles, please note:**

- Do not use full throttle.
- Do not force the engine above two thirds of its maximum speed.
- Do not tow a trailer.

Between 1000 and 1500 kilometres (600 to 1000 miles), *gradually* increase power until reaching the maximum speed and high engine speeds.

Running in new tyres and brake pads

- Replacement of wheel rims and new tyres >>> page 376.
- Information about brakes >>> page 193.

For the sake of the environment

If the engine is run in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and the engine oil consumption reduced.

Four-wheel drive (4Drive)

On four-wheel drive models, the engine power is distributed to all four wheels

General notes

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the engine power is distributed to all four wheels. The distribution of power is controlled automatically according to your driving style and the road conditions. See also >>> page 194.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the higher engine power. This combination gives the vehicle exceptional handling and performance capabilities, both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points >>> ⚠.

Winter tyres

Thanks to four-wheel drive, your vehicle will have plenty of traction in winter conditions, even with the standard tyres. Nevertheless, we still recommend that winter tyres or all-season tyres be fitted on all four wheels to give an even better braking response.

Snow chains

On roads where snow chains are mandatory, this also applies to cars with four-wheel drive >>> page 380.

Changing tyres

On vehicles with four-wheel drive, all four tyres must have the same rolling circumference. Also avoid using tyres with varying tread depths >>> page 376.

Off-roader?

Your CUPRA vehicle is not an off-roader: it does not have enough ground clearance to be used as such. Avoid rough tracks and uneven terrain.

⚠ WARNING

- **Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions. Do not let the extra safety features tempt you into taking any risks when driving. Accident hazard!**
- **The braking capability of your vehicle is limited by the tyres' grip. It is therefore no different from a car without four-wheel drive. So do not be tempted to drive too fast on firm or slippery roads just because the vehicle still has good acceleration in these conditions. Accident hazard!**
- **On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to “aquaplane” and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed to warn the driver, as occurs with a front-wheel drive car. For this reason you should always choose a driving speed suitable for the road conditions. Accident hazard!**

Trips abroad

The vehicle has been manufactured for a specific country and meets the approval regulations in force in that country at the time it was manufactured.

If you are going to use the vehicle abroad temporarily or for a short period of time, please observe the relevant instructions.

Some countries have special safety regulations and provisions that the vehicle may not comply with. Before travelling abroad, CUPRA recommends that you seek information from one of your dealers about the legal provisions in force in your destination country.

If you are going to sell the vehicle in another country or use it there for a longer period of time, please observe the legal regulations in force in the country in question.

In some cases it may be necessary to install or remove certain equipment at a later date, and to deactivate certain functions. Sets and types of services may also be affected. In particular, this can occur if the vehicle is to be used in another climatic region for a long period of time.

Due to the different frequency bands around the world, the factory-fitted infotainment system may not work in another country.

With petrol vehicles, it should be ensured that lead-free petrol is available throughout the journey. Seek information about service station networks selling unleaded fuel.

Due to the different technical standards that exist, it may not be possible to charge the high-voltage battery at charging stations in other countries, or it may only be possible with a suitable charging cable. You can get more information from a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer.

⚠ WARNING

As altitude increases, air density decreases. Due to the reduced air density, engine performance may be reduced and vehicle components may be damaged during prolonged operation at very high altitudes. Reduced engine power can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries, e.g. when overtaking.

- **Before travelling abroad, especially at altitudes above 3,000 m (approx. 9,843 ft) above sea level, please contact a specialised CUPRA dealer or any dealer in the SEAT network for more information.**

Note

- **CUPRA cannot be held liable for any damage to the vehicle due to insufficient work or lack of availability of genuine spare parts.**
- **CUPRA accepts no liability if the vehicle does not meet the legal requirements in force in other countries and continents, or if it only partially meets them.**

Starting and stopping the engine.

Switching the ignition on/off

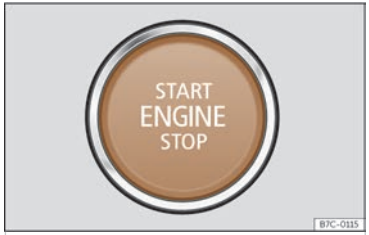


Fig. 121 Starter button

The engine can be started with a start button (Press & Drive). For this there must be a valid key inside the vehicle interior.

The START ENGINE STOP button is found at the bottom of the centre console or, depending on the version, on the multi-function steering wheel.

Opening the driver's door when exiting the vehicle activates the electronic lock on the steering column if the ignition is switched off. For vehicles with automatic transmission, the column will only be locked if the parking lock **P** is activated.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you only want to switch on the ignition (without starting the engine):

- *Vehicles with a manual gearbox:* briefly press the start button once **without pressing** the brake or clutch pedal ››› ⚠.
- *Vehicles with automatic gearbox:* briefly press the start button once **without pressing** the brake pedal ››› ⚠.

The start button text START ENGINE STOP flashes like a heartbeat when the system is preset for switching the ignition on and off[1].

Automatic ignition disconnection

When the vehicle detects that there is no driver once the engine has stopped, after a certain time the ignition is switched off automatically. If at that time the dipped beam headlights are on, the side lights will stay on for approx. 30 minutes. The side lights can be turned off by locking the vehicle ››› page 106, or manually ››› page 132.

Automatic deactivation of the ignition on vehicles with the Start-Stop system

The ignition is switched off automatically when the vehicle is stopped and the automatic engine shutdown is active, if:

- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the driver does not step on any pedal,
- the driver's door is opened.

After automatically turning off the ignition, if the dipped beam is on, the side light remains on for approx. 30 minutes (if the battery has enough charge). If the driver locks the vehicle or manually turns off the light, the side light goes out.

Switching off the ignition when leaving the vehicle, with hybrid drive

When the ignition is not switched off in E-MODE operating mode, a certain amount of time after the journey is complete it switches off automatically to prevent draining the 12-volt vehicle battery.

Function "My Beat"[1]

For vehicles with a convenience key there is the "My Beat" function. This feature provides an additional vehicle ignition system indication.

When entering the vehicle, the start button ››› Fig. 121 flashes to draw attention to it.

When the ignition is on/off, the engine start button flashes.

When the ignition is switched off, the start button goes off after a few seconds.

With the engine running, the start button light stays on, indicating that the engine is running. The time that elapses between the moment the user starts the engine with the start button and the lighting changing from flashing to fixed will depend on specific engine size characteristics. When the start button is used to stop the engine, the button starts flashing again.

In vehicles **with the Start-Stop system**, the "My Beat" function also offers additional information:

- When the engine stops during the Stop phase, the light of the start button stays on, as the Start-Stop system remains active even though the engine is off.
- When the engine cannot be started again with the Start-Stop system ››› page 179 and needs to be started manually, the start button flashes to indicate this situation.

Breath alcohol ignition interlock device (breathalyser)

The vehicle is ready for the installation of a breath alcohol ignition interlock device (breathalyser with LIN communication).

After installing a breath alcohol ignition interlock device, it will always be necessary to pass a breathalyser test before the ignition can be switched on.

Some vehicle functionalities may be limited.

---

[1] Valid for versions with the start button on the centre console.

⚠ WARNING

When switching on the ignition, do not press the brake or clutch pedal, otherwise the engine could start immediately.

⚠ WARNING

If vehicle keys are used negligently or without due care, this may cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Never leave any key inside the vehicle when you leave it. Otherwise, a child or unauthorised person could lock the vehicle, start the engine or connect the ignition and operate any of the electrical equipment.**

Note

- **Before leaving the vehicle, always disconnect the ignition and, if appropriate, take into account the instructions on the dash panel screen.**
- **If the vehicle is stationary for a long time with the engine off and the ignition on, the vehicle battery might be discharged and it might not be possible to start the engine.**
- **In vehicles with diesel engines, wait until the warning light ϖ goes off before starting the engine.**
- **If during the STOP phase you press the START ENGINE STOP button, the ignition is switched off and the push-button flashes[1].**

- **If the following indication appears on the instrument cluster display: "Start-Stop system deactivated: Start the engine manually"; the button START ENGINE STOP will flash.[1]**

Starting the engine

- *Vehicles with manual transmission:* put the gear lever in neutral, press the clutch pedal and keep it pressed in this position until the engine starts.
- *Vehicles with automatic transmission:* press the brake pedal and keep it pressed in this position until the engine starts.
- Press the start button ››› **Fig. 121** without pressing the accelerator. There must be a valid key in the vehicle for the engine to start.

After starting the engine, the lighting of the START ENGINE STOP button remains fixed indicating that the engine is running[1].

- If the engine does not start, stop and wait for around 1 minute to try again. If necessary, perform an emergency start ››› **page 173**.

Diesel engines can take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. During preheating, the warning lamp ϖ remains lit. To avoid unnecessary discharging of the battery, do not use any other major electrical equipment while the glow plugs are pre-heating.

The preheating time depends on the coolant and exterior temperatures. With the engine at operating temperature, or at outside temperatures above +8°C, the warning lamp ϖ will light up for about one second. This means that you can start the engine almost immediately.

Starting a diesel engine after having run out of fuel

If the fuel tank of a diesel vehicle was run until completely empty, after refuelling it can last longer than normal to start the engine, even up to a minute. This is because the fuel system must eliminate air first.

⚠ WARNING

Do not keep the engine running in confined spaces, as there is a risk of poisoning.

- **The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless poisonous gas that can cause loss of consciousness and death.**

⚠ WARNING

Do not get out of the vehicle with the engine running, especially if a gear is engaged. The vehicle could then suddenly move or something strange could happen that would cause damage, fire or serious injury.

[1] Valid for versions with the start button on the centre console.

⚠ WARNING

Never use cold start sprays, they could explode or cause the engine to run at high revs. Doing this risks injury.

NOTICE

- The starter motor or the engine may be damaged if you try to restart the engine immediately after switching it off.
- When the engine is cold, you should avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine, as this could cause engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm-up the engine by running the engine with the vehicle stationary. Start off immediately, driving gently. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions.

Note

Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily when the engine starts.

- When starting with a cold engine, noise levels may briefly increase. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.
- When the outside temperature is below +5 °C (+41 °F), if the engine is diesel, some smoke may appear under the vehicle when the fuel-operated auxiliary heater is on.

Turning off the engine

- Bring the vehicle to a full stop ››› ⚠.
- *Vehicles with manual transmission:* fully depress the clutch.
- *Vehicles with an automatic gearbox:* Switch on the parking lock by pressing button **P**.
- Apply the electronic parking brake.
- Briefly press the start button ››› Fig. 121.

Car wash function (hybrid vehicles)

When the ignition is turned off with gear **N** activated, the vehicle can roll for the next 30 minutes. After that time, if the vehicle is stopped the parking lock **P** activates automatically. The corresponding warning message is displayed on the instrument cluster display one minute before this happens.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion. This could cause loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious injury.

- The airbags and seatbelt pretensioners do not work when the ignition is switched off.
- The brake servo does not work when the engine is switched off. Therefore, when the engine is switched off, the brake pedal has to be pressed harder to stop the vehicle.
- The power steering does not work when the engine is switched off. When the engine is switched off, more force is required to turn the steering wheel.
- If the ignition is switched off, the steering column lock may activate, leaving the vehicle impossible to control.

⚠ WARNING

Always take the key with you when leaving the vehicle. This is particularly important if there are children in the vehicle, as they might otherwise be able to start the engine or use power-operated equipment (e.g. the power windows), which could cause injuries.

NOTICE

- **If the vehicle is stopped and the Start-Stop system switches off the engine, the ignition remains switched on. Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the ignition is switched off, otherwise the battery will discharge.**
- **If the engine has been driven at high speed for a prolonged period of time, it may overheat when switched off. To avoid damage, allow the engine to run for approximately two minutes in neutral before switching it off.**

Note

After stopping the engine, the radiator fan may continue to run for a few minutes, even with the ignition switched off. It may also start up again if the coolant temperature rises due to heat building-up under the engine compartment or if the engine gets even hotter due to prolonged exposure to sunlight.

Electronic immobilizer

The electronic immobiliser helps to prevent the engine from being started with an unauthorised key and, consequently, the vehicle being put in motion.

The vehicle key has an integrated chip which automatically deactivates the electronic immobiliser if there is a valid key inside the vehicle interior.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when there is no longer a valid key inside the vehicle.

For this reason, the engine can only be started with a correctly coded Original CUPRA key. This type of key can be purchased from a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer.

NOTICE

The correct operation of the vehicle is only guaranteed with original CUPRA keys.

Emergency starting function

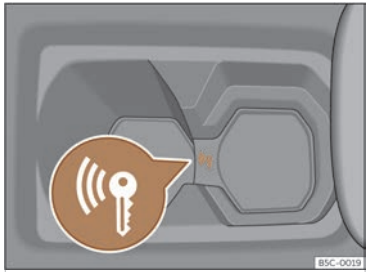


Fig. 122 On the centre console: emergency start.

If no valid key is detected inside the vehicle, an emergency start-up will be required. The relevant message will appear in the dash panel display. This may happen when, for example, the vehicle key battery is very low.

- Immediately after pushing the start button, place the key in the drink holder of the centre console ››› **Fig. 122**, as close as possible to the *Kessy* logo.
- The ignition connects and the engine starts automatically.

Indications for the driver on the instrument cluster display

Depress the clutch

- This indication is displayed on vehicles with a manual gearbox when the driver does not depress the clutch pedal when starting the engine. The engine can only be started if the clutch pedal is depressed.

Press the brake

- This message appears on vehicles with an automatic gearbox if the driver tries to start the engine without pressing the brake pedal.

Press the brake to engage a gear

- This indication is displayed when starting or stopping the engine if the automatic transmission selector lever is in position **D** or **R** and the brake pedal is not depressed. The engine can only be started and stopped in these positions.

Engage position P; the vehicle can move; doors can only be locked in position P.

- For safety reasons, this driver message appears and an audible warning sounds if the parking lock button **P** is not pressed after switching off the engine. Press button **P** otherwise the vehicle could move.

Ignition is switched on

- This driver message is displayed and a buzzer sounds when the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched on.

Driving with electric drive

Switching on the hybrid drive system

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles

Switching on the hybrid drive activates the vehicle's propulsion system. When the vehicle's drive system is switched on, the electric drive is activated. The combustion engine starts automatically when the charge level of the high-voltage battery is not sufficient to run with the electric drive, or if high drive power is required.

To access driving with the electric drive in the infotainment system:

- Select: ⊞ > **Charging** > **Battery Manager.**

Requirements for switching on the drive system

The drive system can be switched on when the following conditions are met:

- The high voltage battery has a sufficient charge level.
- There is no charging cable plugged in.
- The temperature of the high-voltage battery is within the operating range.
- There is a valid remote control key in the vehicle.

Switching on the drive system

- Press the ignition and start button once. The ignition must be switched on.
- Press the brake pedal and hold it down.
- Set the gear selector switch to position **N** or activate the parking lock **P**.
- Press the ignition and start button >>> Fig. 121 until indicator lamp READY lights up on the instrument cluster. Do not press the accelerator. Release the ignition and start button when the indicator lamp READY lights up on the instrument cluster. The mark on the power display changes from OFF to **0**.
- If the indicator lamp READY does not light up, cancel and repeat the operation.
- If the vehicle has been locked with the remote control key, the ignition and start button is deactivated. If you are inside the vehicle and have to start the engine, first unlock the vehicle or perform an emergency start >>> page 173.

Note

A click is heard when the drive system is turned on. This is completely normal and does not mean there is a problem.

Detecting the drive system

With the electric drive, the motor makes no noticeable noise when the drive system is switched on or while driving. Therefore, you cannot detect that the vehicle's drive system is on by engine noise. Instead, the following characteristics show that the vehicle is ready to drive:

- The indication **0** >>> page 20 is displayed on the power gauge of the instrument cluster.
- The display light on the instrument cluster is on, regardless of whether the vehicle's exterior lighting is on.
- The indicator lamp READY is on in the instrument cluster display.
- An audible signal is heard.

Switching on the drive system in very low outside temperatures

If the outside temperature is very low (approximately -27°C (-16°F) or lower), the high-voltage battery may freeze and stop working. In this case it's not possible to switch on the drive system.

As soon as the temperature of the high-voltage battery has increased enough, the drive system can be switched on again.

To ensure that the drive system can be switched on, even in very low outside temperatures, CUPRA recommends parking the vehicle in a place protected from the cold.

Behaviour when moving off or stopping

The combustion engine only runs if necessary. When the vehicle is stationary, the combustion engine is normally switched off and the vehicle's electrical systems are powered by the high-voltage battery. The rev counter on the instrument cluster remains at **0** ››› **page 20**.

The combustion engine switches off in certain driving conditions. This is normal and aims to save fuel. In general, the power steering and brake assist systems remain on. In isolated cases the system may require the combustion engine to carry on running even when the vehicle is stationary.

In traffic jams the combustion engine may start up while the vehicle is stationary to recharge the high voltage battery for subsequent *driving off* and *stopping* phases.

Operating mode selection

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles

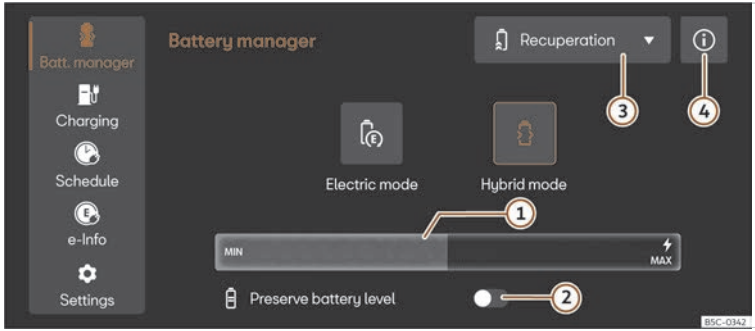


Fig. 123 In the infotainment system: Battery manager menu

The vehicle has different operating modes so that it can always be optimally adjusted to every situation while driving. Once the drive system has been turned on, and provided that all of the operating conditions required for this purpose have been met, the **Electric mode** operating mode is always activated in the first instance for electric driving.

Operating mode selection

- Switch on the drive system.
- Access the **Battery manager** menu of the infotainment system (⊞ > **Charging** > **Battery manager**).
- Select **Electric Mode** or **Hybrid Mode** in the infotainment system. Further information about the operating mode can be found in ⓘ ››› **Fig. 123** ④.

Electric mode (driving in electric mode)[1]

In electric mode, the vehicle basically drives in electric only mode. To the extent possible, the vehicle's combustion engine is not used.

All of the following conditions must be met for the Electric mode to be activated:

- The high voltage battery has a sufficient charge level.
- The vehicle speed is lower than 130 km/h (80 mph).
- The high voltage battery temperature is above -10°C.

If, while driving in Electric mode, the necessary conditions are no longer met, the combustion engine starts and electric driving is suspended. In this case, the indicator Ⓔ lights up on the instrument cluster display.

[1] The displayed symbol varies depending on the active operating mode and the charge level of the high-voltage battery.

The combustion engine starts when a kick-down occurs in Electric mode. However, Electric mode remains on.

Hybrid mode (use the battery's charge)[1]

This is the operating mode that allows you to save most fuel.

The operating mode control unit tries to make the most of the battery charge. For this purpose, with active directions the navigation data are also accessed.

In this operating mode, the electric motor and the combustion engine share the work of driving the vehicle.

In hybrid operating mode, the power from the battery charge is used optimally. If route guidance is activated, the vehicle may autonomously recharge the high-voltage battery using the combustion engine.

Manual control of the battery charge

Manual control of the battery charge is only possible in **Hybrid mode**. The option selected by the user is only valid until the ignition is switched off or the vehicle is switched to Hybrid mode or Electric mode.

Key to ››› **Fig. 123**:

① The horizontal bar can be used to select a lower theoretical charge level of the high voltage battery. The system **does not allow the selection** of a **higher** charge level than the one that is displayed. The vehicle only uses the battery's charge when it is above the selected theoretical charge level. The rest is kept until the end of the journey.

② **Maintaining the battery level**. The high-voltage battery charge level is kept at around the current level while driving. If you accelerate harder or increase the vehicle speed, the combustion engine starts up. When permitted by the driver's demand for acceleration and the vehicle speed, the vehicle switches back to electric mode.
CUPRA recommends using the charging socket to charge the high-voltage battery, whenever possible ››› **page 81**.

③ **Adjust the recuperation level.** Allows you to select between different levels of recuperation: Smooth, Auto or Strong. If there is no active route, the system will offer the activation of a predictive route to run in a more efficient hybrid mode.
Smooth: In this mode recuperation is low. The level of recuperation can be adjusted in combination with the gear shift, using the steering wheel paddles.
Auto: In "ECO" and "Comfort" driving modes, recuperation is generally smooth, although it can be strong, depending on the driving situation. If the "Cupra" or "Performance" driving mode is selected, recuperation will be strong. The level of recuperation can be adjusted in combination with the gear shift, using the steering wheel paddles.
Strong: The vehicle recuperates as much energy as possible, depending on the situation. If the brake pedal is depressed, the vehicle also recovers energy through the high-voltage system. If the recuperation level is **Strong**, the brake lights will also light up to indicate that the vehicle is decelerating.
For the most efficient driving possible, we recommend activating the efficiency assistant ››› **page 208**, driving in "ECO" driving mode, setting the gear shift to **D** and the recuperation mode to **Auto**.

⚠ WARNING

Medium and strong energy recuperation can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.

- **Only activate the high recuperation level if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, and if other road users are not at risk due to your vehicle's deceleration behaviour and driving style.**

[1] The displayed symbol varies depending on the active operating mode and the charge level of the high-voltage battery.

⚠ WARNING

The higher the charge level of the high-voltage battery, the lower the braking effect of the engine, to the extent that there may be no braking effect due to recuperation. This can change the behaviour of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- **Do not fully charge the high-voltage battery at high altitude, such as at the top of a mountain pass, to allow the use of the recuperation braking effect when driving downhill.**
- **Reduce speed before driving on a steep gradient.**
- **Reduce the vehicle's speed by using the vehicle brakes when driving on a steep gradient.**
- **Note that there is a higher load on the vehicle's brakes if there is no engine braking effect.**

Show the active operating mode

The operating mode active at any given time is displayed on the instrument cluster display, e.g. .

⚠ WARNING

Switching to a different operating mode while driving can distract you from traffic conditions and cause accidents.

Note

Information about the operating mode that is currently active is displayed on the instrument cluster display, along with the charge level of the high-voltage battery.

Vehicle sound

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles

The electric drive makes much less noise than a combustion engine. In the versions for some countries, artificial vehicle sound is generated to allow the vehicle to be heard better from the outside. At higher speeds, when the noise produced by the tyres and the wind increases, the vehicle's sound automatically fades out.

⚠ WARNING

During electric driving, the auditory perception of the vehicle by other road users may be much lower. This is especially true in traffic-restricted areas and when manoeuvring or reversing. Accident hazard!

Troubleshooting

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles

Drive: Fault! Stop the vehicle safely

The warning lamp lights up red.

There is a fault in the vehicle's drive system. The vehicle's drive system is no longer available. Park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Seek professional assistance.

Drive: Fault! The electric drive is not working properly. Visit a workshop

The warning lamp lights up yellow.

There is a fault in the vehicle's drive system. Drive slowly to a specialised workshop to have the fault repaired.

Drive: Warning! Power is limited. Check the manual

The warning lamp lights up yellow.

Performance limited. The high-voltage battery may not be sufficiently charged or may have reached its operating temperature limit, for example in very cold outside temperatures.

Vehicle sound: Fault! Pedestrians cannot hear the vehicle. Visit a workshop

The warning lamp lights up yellow.

There is a vehicle sound fault. Drive with utmost care, as other road users may not be able to hear the electric vehicle. Go immediately to a specialised workshop to have the fault repaired.

System power limited

The warning lamp lights up yellow.

A warning text accompanied by an audible warning is displayed on the instrument cluster. System power is limited as it is not possible to use the combustion engine.

- The available power can be monitored on the instrument cluster ››› page 20.
- If the combustion engine cannot be started due to lack of fuel (empty tank), refuel as soon as possible. If the charge level of the high-voltage battery is low and it is not possible to use the combustion engine, the vehicle will be immobilised.

As soon as the combustion engine is available again, the warning light on the instrument cluster will go out.

Electric Mode is not available

The indicator lamp lights up in white.

The electric mode (driving in electric mode) cannot be used temporarily because one or more conditions are not met.

- Meet the conditions for using the Electric mode ››› page 174.

Start-Stop system

Description and operation

Not valid for PHEV hybrid vehicles

The Start-Stop system helps you to save fuel and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start-Stop mode, the engine will automatically switch off when the vehicle stops or is stopping. The ignition remains switched on. The engine automatically switches back on when required.

In this scenario, the light of the START ENGINE STOP button remains lit.[1)]

When the ignition is switched on, the Start-Stop function is automatically activated.

Control lamps

The Start-Stop system is available, the automatic engine shutdown is active.

The Start-Stop system is not available or has been disconnected.

Stopping and starting the engine

Vehicles with a manual gearbox:

- When the vehicle is stopped, put it into neutral and release the clutch pedal. The engine will stop. The warning lamp Ⓐ will light up on the display. The engine may stop before the vehicle comes to a standstill (approximately 7 km/h).
- When you depress the clutch pedal, the engine will start again. The indicator lamp goes out.

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox:

- Brake until the vehicle has come to a standstill, and keep your foot on the brake pedal or activate the Auto Hold function so that the vehicle remains braked. The engine will stop. The warning lamp Ⓐ will appear on the display. The engine may stop before the vehicle comes to a standstill (approximately 7 or 2 km/h depending on the vehicle's gearbox[2)]).
- When you take your foot off the brake pedal the engine will start up again. The indicator lamp goes out. When the Auto Hold system is active, the engine will not start if you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The car starts when you press the accelerator pedal.

---

1) Valid for versions with the start button on the centre console.

2) In the mHEV version (semi-hybrid), above 20 km/h.

Basic requirements for the start/stop mode

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The bonnet must be closed.
- The engine has reached operating temperature.
- The reverse gear must not be engaged.
- The vehicle must not be on a very steep slope.

The engine does not turn off for various reasons

Before stopping the vehicle, the system verifies whether certain conditions are met. The engine **does not** switch off in the following situations, for example:

- The engine has not yet reached the required temperature for the Start-Stop mode.
- The temperature selected on the climate control has not been reached.
- If maximum (HI) or minimum (LO) temperature is requested in the air conditioner.
- De-icing function button activated.
- Park assist is switched on.
- The battery is very low.
- The steering wheel is turned too far or is being turned.
- If there is a danger of misting.
- After engaging reverse gear.
- In case of a very steep gradient.
- In a traffic jam after stopping for the fifth time, the engine will not stop any more.
- With ESC disabled.
- After emergency braking or loss of adhesion.
- With a trailer attached.
- While the particulate filter is regenerating.
- The **Offroad** driving profile is active.

The instrument cluster screen displays .

The engine starts by itself

When stopped, the normal system mode may be interrupted in the following situations. The engine restarts without the driver's intervention.

- The interior temperature differs from the temperature selected on the climate control.
- Defrost function button activated .
- The brake is pressed several times in a row.
- The battery is not charged enough.
- High electricity consumption.
- The vehicle rolls forward or backward with the engine off.
- ESC deactivated.
- *With manual gearbox:* The accelerator pedal is depressed.

With automatic gearbox: The accelerator pedal is depressed.

- The steering wheel is turned slightly.[1)]
- When the air conditioning is activated.
- Exhaust system temperature is too low.
- The **Offroad**driving profile is activated.

Additional information related to the automatic gearbox

The engine stops when the selector lever is in **D**, **N** and **S**, as well as in Tiptronic mode. When the parking lock button **P** is activated, the engine will also remain off when you remove your foot from the brake.

In MHEV vehicles the stop does not occur in **S** or in Tiptronic mode.

In order to start the engine up again the accelerator must be pressed, or another gear engaged or the brake released.

If the selector lever is placed in **R** while stopped, the engine will start up again.

Additional information about vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

In vehicles with the ACC function, the engine will start up again in certain operating conditions if the radar sensor detects that the vehicle ahead drives off again.

---

1) Except for the MHEV version.

⚠ WARNING

- Never switch the engine off until the vehicle is stationary. The operation of the brake and steering will not be fully guaranteed. More force will be needed to turn the steering wheel or to brake. You could suffer an accident and even serious injuries.
- To avoid injury, make sure that the Start-Stop system is switched off when working in the engine compartment >>> page 181.

NOTICE

The Start-Stop system must always be switched off when driving through flooded areas >>> page 167.

Note

- In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, you can control whether the engine should switch off or not by reducing or increasing the brake force applied. While the vehicle remains stopped, the engine will not stop if the brake pedal is slightly pressed, in traffic jams with frequent stopping and starting for example. As soon as strong pressure is applied to the brake pedal, the engine will stop.
- When stopped, the brake pedal must be kept pressed to ensure that the vehicle does not move.
- If the engine "stalls" with a manual gearbox, it can be directly started up again by immediately pressing the clutch pedal.
- If the lever is placed in position D, N or S after engaging reverse gear, 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forwards direction must be reached for the system to be in a condition to stop the engine.

Manually connecting and disconnecting the Start-Stop system

Not valid for PHEV hybrid vehicles

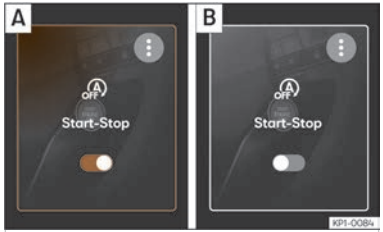


Fig. 124 In the infotainment system: Start-Stop system (accessible from different infotainment menus).

>>> **Fig. 124**:

A System disconnected.

B System connected.

If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually:

- In the infotainment system select > **Assistants** > **Smart Assistants**.

Note

When the ignition is switched on, the Start-Stop system activates automatically.

Troubleshooting

Not valid for PHEV hybrid vehicles

Indications for the driver on the instrument cluster screen

A warning will be displayed whenever there is an error or the Start-Stop system is switched on/off.

"Start the engine manually"

- This indication shows that the Start-Stop system **cannot** restart the engine.

This happens for 2 reasons: if the driver's door has been opened or if the driver has unbuckled the seat belt.

"Start-Stop system: Fault! Function not available"

- There is a fault in the Start-Stop system. Take the vehicle to a workshop to have the fault repaired.

Manual gearbox

Changing gears

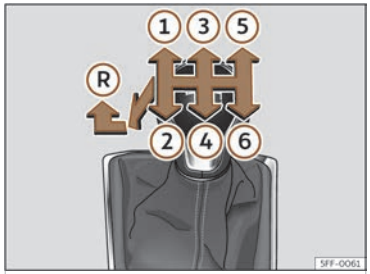


Fig. 125 Diagram of a 6-speed manual gearbox.

Gear positions are indicated on the gear lever ››› **Fig. 125**.

- Depress the clutch and keep your foot as far as it will go.
- Move the gear lever to the desired position.
- Release the clutch.

Engaging reverse gear

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stopped.

- Depress the clutch and keep your foot as far as it will go.
- With the gear lever in neutral, push it down, move it all the way to the left and then forwards to select reverse gear ››› **Fig. 125** Ⓡ.
- Release the clutch.

Changing to lower gears

When driving, you should always change down through the gears progressively, i.e. to the gear immediately below when engine RPM is not too high ››› ⚠. Skipping one or several gears when changing down through the gears at high speed or high RPM can cause damage to the clutch and gearbox, even if the clutch is depressed ››› ⓘ.

⚠ WARNING

If the engine is running, the vehicle starts moving as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released. This also happens if the electronic parking brake is switched on.

- **Never engage reverse gear while the vehicle is in motion.**

⚠ WARNING

Changing down through the gears incorrectly by selecting a gear that is too low can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and cause accidents and serious injuries.

ⓘ NOTICE

Engaging a gear that is too low when driving at high speed or at high engine RPM can cause considerable damage to the clutch and gearbox. This can happen even if the clutch pedal is kept depressed and the gear is not engaged.

ⓘ NOTICE

Consider the following to avoid damage and premature wear:

- **Do not rest your hand on the gear lever while driving. The pressure exerted by the hand is transmitted to the gearbox forks.**
- **Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal; even if the pressure seems insignificant, it can cause premature wear of the clutch disc. Use the footrest when not changing gears.**
- **Make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before engaging reverse gear.**
- **When changing gears, always fully depress the clutch.**
- **Do not “ride” the clutch with the engine running when the vehicle is stopped on an uphill slope.**

DSG automatic transmission

Introduction

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled manual gearbox. Torque between the engine and the gearbox is transmitted via two independent clutches. They replace the torque converter found on conventional automatic gearboxes and allow for smooth, uninterrupted acceleration of the vehicle.

The **Tiptronic** system allows the driver to change gears *manually* >>> page 184, *Changing gear in Tiptronic mode*.

Gear selector positions

Fig. 126 On the centre console: selector lever.

The gear selector position is shown by the corresponding sign lighting up. The engaged gear is also displayed on the screen in manual shift positions **M**, **D**, **S** and **E** (when the **Eco** >>> page 190 engine setting is selected in the **Individual** profile).

In certain versions, **S+** or **M+** is also displayed on the screen when the **Drift** or **CUPRA** profile is selected. **S+** and **M+** are more extreme shift modes than the conventional **Sport (S)** mode.

P – Parking lock

When the **P** button is pressed, the drive wheels are locked. Only press **P** when the vehicle is stationary >>> ⚠.

To press the **P** button you must press the brake pedal simultaneously.

R – Reverse gear

Reverse gear must be engaged only when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling >>> ⚠.

To engage reverse gear **R**, you must press the brake pedal simultaneously. The reverse lights switch on when the reverse gear **R** is selected and the ignition is on.

N – Neutral

In this position, the gear is in neutral.

Press the brake pedal to move the lever from **N** to **D/S** when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 3 km/h (2 mph) >>> ⚠.

D/S – Permanent forward drive position

The **D/S** position enables the gears to be operated in normal mode (**D**) or sport mode (**S**). To select Sport mode **S**, move the lever backwards. Pushing the lever again will select normal mode **D**. The selected driving mode is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

In **normal mode** (**D**), the gearbox selects the best gear ratio. This depends on the engine load, speed and the dynamic regulation program (DRP).

Sport mode (**S**) should be selected for a sporty driving style. This setting makes use of the engine's maximum power output. When accelerating, gear shifting operations are perceptible.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. on mountain roads) it can be advantageous to switch to tiptronic mode >>> page 184, to adapt the gears to suit the road conditions.

⚠ WARNING

- Take care not to press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stopped. The vehicle could start moving immediately (in some cases even if the parking brake is engaged) resulting in the risk of an accident.
- Never move the lever to position R when driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident or failure.
- With lever in any position, the foot brake must be depressed whenever the engine is running. This is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed.
- Do not accelerate while selecting a gear, with the car stationary and the engine running. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident.
- The driver must never leave the vehicle while the engine is running and with a gear engaged. Switch on the electronic parking brake and select the parking lock (P).

Note

- If the lever is moved accidentally to N when driving, release the accelerator and let the engine speed drop to idle before selecting gear range D or S again.
- If the power supply is interrupted while the P parking lock is active, it will not be possible to move the lever. If this should happen the manual release can be used. In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

Note

- If a gear has been selected, the vehicle does not move forwards or back. Proceed to the next mode:
  - If the vehicle does not move in the desired direction, the gear ratio may not be correctly engaged by the system. Depress the brake pedal and reselect the gear range.
  - If the vehicle still does not move in the desired direction, there is a system failure. Seek specialist help and have the system checked.

Changing gear in Tiptronic mode

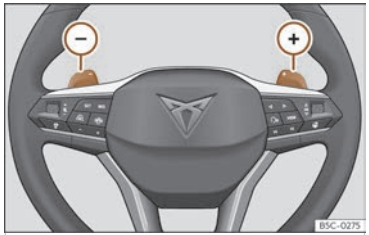


Fig. 127 Steering wheel: automatic gearbox levers

Tiptronic gives the driver the option to change gears manually.

When you change to the Tiptronic programme, the vehicle remains in the currently selected gear. This is possible as long as the system is not changing gear automatically due to a traffic situation.

Using Tiptronic with the steering wheel paddles

The gear shift paddles can be used when the selector lever is in the **D/S** position.

- Press the ⊕ gear shift paddle to change up a gear ››› Fig. 127.
- Press the ⊖ gear shift paddle to change down a gear.
- To exit the Tiptronic mode, pull the right-hand gear shirt paddle towards the steering wheel for approximately 1 second.

To keep Tiptronic mode permanently switched on, move the selector lever to the **S** position. If the selector lever is in position **D** and the gear shift paddles are not operated for some time, the Tiptronic mode will automatically be switched off.

NOTICE

- **When accelerating, if a higher gear is not selected, it will automatically change shortly before reaching the maximum permitted RPM.**
- **Also, if a lower gear is selected, the system will not change until it detects that the engine will not reach its maximum RPM.**

Driving with an automatic gearbox

Shifting to a higher or lower gear is automatic.

The engine can only be started with the lever in the **N** position and the **P** button must be lit up (the parking lock remains active).

Driving downhill

Under certain circumstances it may be advantageous to use the Tiptronic mode to select the gear manually according to driving conditions ›››.

Stop/Park

To park on flat ground, just press the **P** ››› Fig. 126 button. On slopes the parking brake should first be applied and then press the **P** button.

If the driver door is opened and the **P** button has not been activated, the vehicle could move. The following warning is displayed on the instrument panel: **Gear change: Selector lever in the drive position!**. A buzzing sound is also heard.

Stopping on a downhill

Always apply the brake pedal firmly to prevent the vehicle from moving; if necessary, apply the electronic parking brake ›››.

Do not accelerate while a range of gears is engaged to prevent the car from rolling downhill ›››.

Starting off uphill with the Auto Hold function

- Once you have engaged a gear, take your foot off the brake pedal and gently press the accelerator.

Starting off uphill without the Auto Hold function

- Pull on the electronic parking brake button.
- Once you have engaged a gear, gently press the accelerator and pull on the electronic parking brake button.

WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› in *Gear selector positions* on page 184.

- **Never allow the brake to rub and do not use the brake pedal too often or for long periods, as the brakes can overheat. This reduces the braking power, increases the braking distance or even causes a brake system fault.**
- **If you have to stop on a hill, keep the vehicle's brakes applied with the brake pedal or parking brake.**

NOTICE

- **When stopping the vehicle on an uphill slope, do not try to avoid shifting into gear and depressing the accelerator. This could overheat and damage the automatic gearbox.**
- **If you allow the vehicle to roll with the lever in position N and the engine off, the automatic gearbox will be damaged due to a lack of lubrication.**
- **In certain driving situations or traffic conditions, the gears could overheat and be damaged! If the warning lamp lights up, stop the vehicle as soon as you can and wait for the gearbox to cool ››› page 187.**
- **If the gearbox operates in emergency mode, have the fault repaired by a specialist workshop without delay.**

Kick-down

The kick-down device provides maximum acceleration when the gear selector lever is in the positions **D**, **S** or in Tiptronic mode.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the automatic transmission shifts to a lower gear, depending on speed and engine speed. This uses the vehicle's maximum acceleration ››› ⚠.

The shift to the next higher gear will not take place until the preset maximum engine RPM is reached.

⚠ WARNING

Please note that if the road surface is slippery or wet, the kickdown feature could cause the driving wheels to spin, which could result in skidding.

Launch-control program

The Launch-control program enables maximum acceleration from a standstill.

Condition: the engine must have reached operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned.

The engine RPM for Launch-control is different for petrol and diesel engines.

To use Launch-control you must disconnect the traction control (TCS) or activate the ESC Sport or ESC OFF mode, using the Infotainment system menu: press the function button 🚗 > **Assistants** > **Smart Assistants** or press the ESC off button ››› page 196. The lamp 🚗 will remain on.

- Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
- Set the selector lever to position **S** or Tiptronic, or select the **Sport** or **Cupra** Drive Profile ››› page 190.
- With your right foot, press the accelerator down to the full throttle or kick-down position. The engine speed is set at approximately **2000** rpm to **4000** rpm, depending on the engine version.
- Take your left foot off the brake pedal. The vehicle starts with maximum acceleration.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always adapt your driving style to the traffic conditions.**
- **Only use the Launch control programme when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your manner of driving and accelerating the vehicle does not inconvenience or endanger other road users.**
- **Make sure that the ESC remains switched on. Please note that when the TCS and ESC are deactivated, the wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip. Accident hazard!**
- **After moving off, you should activate the TCS or deactivate the ESC "sport" mode again using the Infotainment system: function button 🚗 > Assistants > Smart Assistants or by pressing the ESC off button ››› page 196.**

Note

- **Dynamic driving or using a launch-control program may considerably raise the temperature of the catalytic converter or gearbox. In this case, the program may be out of service for a few minutes. The program may be used again once the cooling phase is complete.**
- **Accelerating with the Launch control programme places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.**

Inertia mode

The inertia mode allows you to travel certain distances without using the accelerator, which saves fuel. Plan ahead and use the inertia mode to "let" the vehicle "roll".

Activation of the inertia mode

Combustion engine vehicles (not PHEVs, not mHEVs):

- The function is only available when the "**Eco**" drive profile is selected, when the accelerator is not depressed and at speeds between 7 and 130 km/h (between 4 and 80 mph).
- If when driving below about 22 km/h (about 14 mph) and you press the brake with the intention of stopping, the engine may switch off and remain off until the vehicle comes to a stop. The system can automatically start the engine to ensure that power is supplied to the electrical system or to ensure its own start-up.

Mild hybrid electric vehicles (mHEV):

- The function is only available when the "**Eco**" or "**Comfort**" drive profile is selected, when the accelerator is not depressed and at speeds between 7 and 160 km/h (between 4 and 99 mph).
- If you apply the brakes and the vehicle slows to a stop below about 40 km/h (about 25 mph), the engine switches off until the vehicle comes to a stop. The system can automatically start the engine to ensure that power is supplied to the electrical system or to ensure its own start-up.
- If you press the brake when in inertia mode to stop above about 40 km/h (about 25 mph), the inertia mode will be interrupted and the engine will start.
- When stopping without braking, the engine automatically restarts at minimum speed to allow manoeuvring.

Start and cancel inertia mode

Start:

1. Select the "**Eco**" drive profile.

   Or, in mHEVs, select the "**Comfort**" drive profile.
2. Take your foot off the accelerator. The engine will disengage and run at idle. The vehicle runs without the engine braking effect. The engine may switch off in vehicles with a mHEV system.

Cancelling inertia mode:

1. Press the accelerator.

   Alternatively, pull the automatic gear shift *paddle* towards the steering wheel.

WARNING

- **If the inertia mode has been switched on, take into account, when approaching an obstacle, that the vehicle will not decelerate in the usual manner: Accident risk!**
- **When using inertia mode while travelling down hills, the vehicle can increase speed: Accident risk!**
- **If other users drive your vehicle, warn them about inertia mode.**

NOTICE

The operation of the inertia mode in combination with hybrid engines (mHEV and PHEV) can cause the combustion engine to switch off.

NOTICE

The inertia mode will be automatically disconnected on gradients steeper than 15%.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not start

The indicator lamp lights up green.

The brake is not depressed, e.g. when trying to change the gear selector lever.

- To select a gear range, press the brake pedal.

Indications on the instrument cluster display:

Clutch

Clutch overheated Please stop!

- The clutch has overheated and could be damaged. Stop and wait for the gearbox to cool with the engine idling and press the **P** parking lock button. When the warning lamp and the driver message turn off, go to a specialised workshop to get the fault repaired. If they do not turn off, do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.

Faults in the gearbox

Gearbox: Fault! Stop the vehicle and place the lever in P

- There is an anomaly in the gearbox. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.

Gearbox: System fault! You may continue driving

- Have the fault corrected by a specialised workshop without delay.

Gearbox: System fault! You can continue driving with restrictions. Reverse gear disabled

- Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop and have the fault repaired.

Gearbox: System fault! You can continue driving in D until switching off the engine

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Seek specialist assistance.

Gearbox: too hot. Adapt your driving accordingly

- Continue driving slowly. When the warning lamp goes out, you can continue driving normally.

Gearbox: press the brake and engage a gear again

- If the warning was caused by the temperature of the gearbox, this driver message will be displayed when the gearbox has cooled again.

Emergency mode

If all the gear positions are shown over a light background on the instrument cluster, there is a system fault and the automatic gearbox will operate with the backup programme. It is still possible to drive the vehicle, but at low speeds and within a selected range of gears. **Driving in reverse gear may not be possible**.

Parking lock manual release mechanism

If, in the event of a power failure (e.g. the 12-volt vehicle battery is drained), the vehicle must be towed and the parking lock can be released manually. In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

Driving on slopes

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

When driving up a slope or driving in **Offroad** with the lever in position **D/S**, stopping the vehicle switches on the hill hold control.

When the brake pedal is released, the assistant keeps the vehicle's brakes applied for a few seconds to give the driver time to press the accelerator pedal and continue driving.

downhill assistant

Downhill speed control is activated when the gear lever is in the **D/S** position and the brake is applied. An appropriate lower gear is engaged.

The assistant attempts to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brake was applied, within logical limits. It may be necessary to correct the speed by pressing the brake.

The assistant can only change down as far as 3rd gear. It is possible that on very steep slopes you may have to switch to tiptronic mode and then manually change down to 2nd or 1st gear to take advantage of engine braking and take the load off the brake system.

Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with a cruise control system >>> page 204, downhill speed control is activated when you set a cruising speed.

⚠ WARNING

The downhill speed control cannot defy the laws of physics. Therefore, speed cannot be kept constant in all situations. Always be prepared to use the brakes!

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

✓ Valid for vehicles: with 4Drive all-wheel drive

The HDC function is activated automatically when driving down a steep hill in **Offroad** mode.

Hill Descent Control limits speed on steep downhill gradients by automatically braking all four wheels, helping the driver to maintain precise control of the vehicle on off-road gradients without having to constantly apply the brakes.

The system works in both forward and reverse, even if the **N** position is selected on the gearbox. Keeping the anti-lock brake system active prevents the wheels from locking.

In vehicles with manual gearboxes, the Hill Descent Control adapts the theoretical speed without braking the engine below its idling speed.

Hill Descent Control is available when the dash panel display shows the message .

Control lamps

Lights up white.
HDC is active.

Lights up grey.
HDC is on, but is not acting because the required conditions are not met.

After starting the descent of a steep hill at less than 30 km/h (18 mph) when the system is on, the HDC will activate automatically if neither the accelerator nor brake pedals are depressed. The speed is limited to a minimum of 2 km/h (1 mph) and a maximum of 30 km/h (18 mph).

At any time, the driver can increase or decrease the speed within the above-mentioned limit by depressing the accelerator or the brake. The function is then temporarily interrupted while the speed is being regulated and then activated again if applicable.

However, it is essential that the surface ensures sufficient grip. For this reason, the Hill Descent Control will not perform its function when, for example, descending a slope with a frozen or slippery surface.

The Hill Descent Control intervenes automatically if the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle's engine is running.
- The **Offroad** drive profile has been selected ››› page 191. Driving at a speed below 30 km/h (18 mph) (the message is shown on the dash panel display).
- The downward gradient is at least 10%.
- Neither the brake nor accelerator pedal is depressed.

The hill descent control is deactivated if the gradient is less than 5%. The function can be switched off manually in the infotainment system using the > **Assistants** > **Smart Assistants** > **HDC** function button.

⚠ WARNING

Always be ready to apply the brakes. Failure to do so could result in an accident and injury.

- **The hill descent control is only an auxiliary system which in some situations may not be able to brake the vehicle sufficiently when going downhill.**
- **The vehicle's speed may increase despite the intervention of the hill descent control.**

Steering

Information relating to different vehicle processes.

To make the vehicle more difficult to steal, always lock the steering before leaving the it.

Steering

On vehicles with electromechanical steering, the power steering automatically adjusts according to the driving speed, the steering

wheel torque and the orientation of the wheels. The power steering only works when the engine is running.

If the power steering does not work properly or does not work at all, you will have to use much more strength than usual to turn the steering wheel.

Progressive steering

Depending on the vehicle's features, it may or may not incorporate a progressive steering system.

In *city traffic* you do not need to turn so much on parking, manoeuvring or in very tight turns.

On *roads or motorway*, progressive steering transmits, for example, in bends, a sportier, more direct and noticeably more dynamic driving sensation.

Steering assist

This help assists the driver in critical situations. It recommends turning the steering wheel to perform a corrective manoeuvre (counter-steering), turning slightly to avoid skidding >>> ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Steering assist helps the driver in critical situations. The driver is the person who has to control the vehicle's steering at all times.

Troubleshooting

Steering fault

The warning lamp lights up red.

There is a fault in the power steering.

- **Stop driving!** Seek specialist assistance.
- Do not allow the vehicle to be towed on its own wheels.

Steering fault

The control lamp lights up or flashes yellow.

The steering is stiffer or reacts more sensitively than usual.

The control lamp **lights up and remains lit**:

- Restart the engine and drive slowly for a short distance. Contact a specialist workshop if the control lamp remains on.
- **OR:** the 12-volt battery was disconnected and reconnected. Drive slowly for a short distance.

The control lamp **flashes**:

- Turn the steering wheel slightly from one side to the other.
- Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
- Consider the warnings shown on the instrument cluster display.
- If the control lamp continues flashing after the ignition has been switched on, do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.

Drive Profiles

Introduction

The driver can use the drive profiles to adapt various features of the vehicle's systems to the current driving situation, the desired driving comfort and an economical driving style. Some of the systems that can be adapted are the suspension, steering, engine and air conditioning.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various drive profiles can be selected. The degree of influence of the vehicle's systems on the different drive profiles depends on the vehicle's equipment.

Engine

Depending on the profile selected, the engine responds more quickly or smoothly to the accelerator being pressed.

In vehicles with automatic transmission, the behaviour of the transmission is modified, whenever a gear is changed up and down, and at other times. The idle speed and gear position can also be changed according to the selected profile.

The **Inertia Mode** function can also be switched on by selecting the **Comfort** profile, or from the **Individual** profile by putting the engine into **ECO** mode. This allows fuel consumption to be reduced. Other factors can cause it to switch on >>> page 186.

With manual transmission, the **ECO** profile changes the gear change recommendations to facilitate more efficient driving.

Engine sound

Depending on the equipment and the selected profile, it modifies the acoustic sensation in the vehicle's interior and the outside sound levels. It acts on several components of the vehicle to increase or decrease the engine and intake noise, as well as the noise from the exhaust system. The configuration is preset for each profile and can be modified in the **Individual** profile.

Dynamic chassis control (DCC)

The DCC continuously adapts the damping of the suspension system to the characteristics of the road surface and the driving situation (speed, acceleration and steering wheel angle) according to the selected drive profile. The vehicle's dynamic behaviour is also adapted to improve grip on curves and turning capacity. Within the **Individual** profile you can also adjust the DCC level in a customised manner. In the event of a fault in the DCC, the following message is displayed on the instrument cluster display> **Fault: damping adjustment**.

Four-wheel drive (4Drive)

Modify the transmission to adjust the vehicle's traction capacity to suit the road surface. The acceleration capacity from a standstill will also be modified.

Steering

The operation of the power steering is modified and adapted to the selected profile to offer the best behaviour for each situation.

Air conditioning

Climatronic can operate in **Eco** mode, especially restricting fuel consumption.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Depending on the drive profile, the performance of the ACC is adapted to allow a speed that is more sporty or fuel consumption-friendly.

PreCrash system

The PreCrash system adapts according to the selected configuration >>> page 51.

The **Cupra** and **Offroad** drive profiles have specific settings to adapt them to driving characteristics .

Engine torque distribution

This distributes torque as appropriate between the rear wheels, giving more traction on corners.

Selecting a driving profile

Fig. 128 Multifunction steering wheel: button to change the driving profile.

The drive profile can be selected when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle is stationary or moving >>> ⚠.

Selecting a driving profile

- Press the function button ⊞ > **Drive Profile**, available profiles will be displayed.
- **OR:** With the Infotainment System turned off, by pressing on the **Drive Profile** icon, the available driving profiles will be displayed.

- **OR:** Briefly press the ⚡ >>> Fig. 128 (arrow) button to change the driving profile. Press and hold the ⚡ button to access the **Cupra** profile directly.

Displaying the drive profile information

- To display more information on the selected drive profile, press **Information** in the infotainment system.

⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the driving profile while driving can distract attention from traffic and cause accidents.

- **Always drive with attention to traffic and in a responsible manner.**

Characteristics of drive profiles

The icon of the selected profile is displayed at all times in the upper central part of the instrument cluster and on the Infotainment System display when it is turned off.

Drive profile	Characteristics
Comfort	Balanced and comfortable drive profile. The vehicle's component settings offer optimum comfort, making it ideal for daily use and long journeys.
Performance	Drive profile for a sporty, dynamic and precise style. The vehicle's component settings offer stiffer steering and direct running gear and engine response.
Cupra[a]	Drive profile for the ultimate driving experience. The settings of the components, from the powertrain to the acoustics, offer the highest performance for thrilling, agile and precise driving.
Individual	Personalised drive profile. Allows the vehicle configuration to be adapted to suit the user's desired driving style.
Offroad[b]	Drive profile for optimal dirt road and off-road performance. Adjusting the components offers increased traction and allows the hill descent control (HDC) to be turned on.
Drift[c]	Drive profile with engine torque distribution adjusted to optimise oversteer. Activates the more permissive ESC Sport mode.

[a] Available in the VZ version.
[b] Only for 4Drive models. Not available for PHEV hybrid vehicles.
[c] Only for 4Drive models, depending on the version. Designed for race track driving. Prohibited on public roads.

⚠ WARNING

Speed and driving style should always be adapted to suit visibility, weather and traffic conditions.

Note

- **Regardless of the drive profile selected when the ignition is switched off, all systems will start up in Comfort mode. To select a different drive profile, use the CUPRA button on the multifunction steering wheel or the infotainment system display.**
- **Speed and driving style should always be adapted to suit visibility, weather and traffic conditions.**

Braking system

Information about the brakes

During the first 200 to 300 km, **new brake pads** do not provide maximum braking power and still have to "settle" ››› ⚠. **When running in the brake pads, the emergency braking distance is longer** than after they have been run in. During the run-in, avoid sharp braking and situations that place a lot of demand on the brakes, e.g. driving too close to another vehicle.

Brake pad wear depends to a large extent on the conditions in which the vehicle is used, and driving style. If the vehicle is frequently used in city traffic and for short distances, or for sporty driving, brake pad thickness should be checked regularly at a specialist workshop.

Driving with **wet brakes**, e.g. after driving through water, in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, braking performance may be affected by wet brake discs, or even frozen discs in winter. The driver should be ready to brake harder.

If **the brake discs and pads have a layer of salt on them**, the braking performance is reduced and the braking distance increases. When driving on salted roads without braking for some time, the layer of salt should be removed by carefully applying the brakes a few times ››› ⚠.

Corrosion on the brake discs and **dirt** on the brake pads increase if the vehicle is left unused for a long time, or if it is not driven for many kilometres. If corrosion is present, it is recommended to clean the discs and pads by braking hard several times while driving at high speed. Make sure that you do not endanger any other vehicles or road users ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or a defective brake system can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **If you suspect that the brake pads are worn or that the brake system is faulty, have the brake pads checked immediately by a specialist workshop and replaced if they are worn.**

⚠ WARNING

The braking performance of new brake pads is not optimal.

- **During the first 300 km, new brake pads do not provide maximum braking power and still have to "settle". This can be counteracted by applying more pressure to the brake pedal.**
- **When brake pads are new, drive with extra care to reduce the risk of accidents, serious injury or loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **Only perform hard braking to clean the brake system when permitted by the traffic situation. Do not endanger the occupants of other vehicles. Accident hazard!**
- **When running in new brake pads, do not drive too close to other vehicles or cause situations that would require the brakes to be applied heavily.**

⚠ WARNING

When the brakes overheat, their braking performance drops and the braking distance increases.

- **When driving downhill, particular demand is placed on the brakes and they heat up very quickly.**
- **Before a long steep slope, reduce speed and change down into a lower gear or range. Therefore, using the engine brake relieves the brakes.**
- **If you wish to retrofit a front spoiler, integral trim or other accessories, ensure that the air inlet around the brakes is not reduced, as otherwise the brake system could overheat. Please also note the information on brake fluid** ››› page 360.

⚠ WARNING

Wet, frozen or salt-covered brakes take longer to brake and increases the braking distance.

- **Test the brakes carefully.**
- **Always dry the brakes and free them from ice and salt by braking repeatedly, if permitted by visibility, weather, road surface and traffic conditions.**

⚠ WARNING

When braking manoeuvres are started automatically, the brake pedal may move automatically in the application direction. Do not put your foot under the brake pedal. Risk of injury!

⚠ WARNING

Ensure the vehicle does not move while in neutral, when the engine is stopped. The braking distance is increased considerably when the brake servo is not active.

Note

Never let the brakes "drag" by leaving your foot on the pedal when it is not necessary to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in increased brake travel and wear. Please consider the important notes on brake fluid ››› page 360.

Note

Regularly check the thickness of the brake pads visually through the holes in the rims or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, the wheels should be removed for a more thorough inspection. To do so, CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

Troubleshooting

Defect in the brake system

The warning lamp lights up red. A message may also be displayed.

Stop driving!

- Inform a specialist workshop and request a brake system inspection.

Brake pad wear indicator

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

The front brake pads are worn.

- Contact a specialised workshop immediately.
- Get **all** the brake pads inspected and replace if necessary.

Brake assist systems

Information relating to brake assist systems

Brake assist systems can help the driver in critical driving or braking situations. The driver is responsible for driving safely ›››.

When the brake assist systems are regulating the brakes, the brake pedal may move or make noises. Even so, continue to brake with the necessary force and control the trajectory of the vehicle if necessary.

Depending on the equipment, the ESC and TCS settings can be changed in the vehicle.

- The ESC, ABS and TCS can only operate correctly if the four wheels are fitted with the stipulated tyres ›››.
- If a fault occurs in the ABS, the ESC, TCS and EDS also cease to function.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The ESC helps to reduce the risk of skidding and to improve stability in certain driving situations ›››.

Traction control (TCS)

The TCS reduces the driving force on skidding wheels and adapts this force to suit the road surface conditions. The TCS facilitates starting, acceleration and hill climbing ›››.

Electronic brake pressure distribution (EBV)

Electronic brake force distribution (EBV) regulates the braking force between the front and rear axles. Excessive braking of the rear axle is avoided and the vehicle remains stable during the braking operation.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS),

The ABS can prevent the wheels from locking up under braking until shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop, and helps the driver maintain control of the steering and the vehicle ›››.

Brake assist (BAS)

Brake assist (BAS) can help to reduce the braking distance. Brake Assist increases the pressure exerted by the driver when the brake pedal is depressed quickly in an emergency.

Electronic differential lock (EDS and XDS)

The EDS automatically brakes skidding wheels and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheels.

XDS improves traction by applying the brakes to improve cornering acceleration.

Multi-collision brake

The multi-collision brake automatically triggers braking if the airbag control unit detects a collision in the event of an accident.

Automatic braking requirements:

- The driver is not pressing the accelerator pedal.

Trailer stabilisation[1)]

Note that the vehicle-trailer assembly generally tends to snake. When the snaking of the trailer is felt by the vehicle and detected by the ESC, it will automatically brake the towing vehicle within the limits of the system and stabilise the vehicle-trailer set ››› page 325.

Electromechanical brake servo (eBKV)

With the ignition switched on, the electromechanical brake servo (eBKV) supplements the force exerted by the foot by increasing the pressure that the driver exerts on the brake pedal ›››. When a driver assistance system applies the brakes, e.g. ACC when regulating the speed, or during emergency braking, the brake pedal may move automatically.

After disconnecting the ignition, the assistance of the brake servo is progressively reduced. If you continue to hold the vehicle in place with the brake pedal, messages are displayed on the instrument cluster display. In this case, the brake servo function is restricted.

Once stopped, immobilise the vehicle to prevent it from moving ››› page 233.

Brake blending[2)]

The regulated application of the brakes blends the braking effect of the electric motor in energy recuperation with mechanical braking by the driver.

⚠ WARNING

Smart brake assist technology cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and only works within the limits of the systems. Driving at high speed on icy, slippery or wet road surfaces can cause a loss of control of the vehicle and serious injury to the driver and passengers.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Never take any risk that compromises safety.**
- **Brake assist systems cannot prevent an accident if you are driving too close to other vehicles.**
- **Always use suitable tyres. Driving stability depends on tyre grip.**

---

1) Depending on the version.

2) Valid for hybrid vehicles

⚠ WARNING

The efficiency of the ESC can be significantly reduced if components or systems that affect the driving dynamics are not properly maintained or are not working properly. This can particularly occur if changes are made to the suspension or unauthorised rim/tyre combinations are used.

- **Ensure that vehicle conversions and modifications are only made by specialised workshops.**
- **Always use suitable tyres. Driving stability depends on tyre grip.**

⚠ WARNING

When driving without a brake servo or with restricted brake servo functions, the braking distance can increase considerably and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **If the brake servo is not working, the brake pedal has to be pressed harder, as the braking distance increases due to the lack of assistance from the servo brake.**

Connecting and disconnecting the ESC and TCS

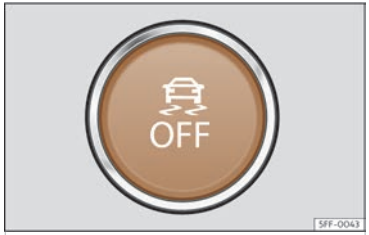


Fig. 129 On the lower part of the centre console: ESC on/off button (depending on the version).

The ESC is switched on automatically when the engine is started, and only works when the engine is running and includes the ABS, EDS and TCS systems.

The TCS function should only be switched off in situations in which traction is insufficient.

Depending on the finishes and versions, there is the possibility of disconnecting only the TCS or activating the ESC in "Sport" mode, or turning off the ESC.

Disconnecting and connecting the TCS[1)]

- The TCS can be switched on and off by briefly pressing the button on the centre console ››› **Fig. 129**.
- **OR:** in the infotainment system, press the function button **> Assistants > Smart Assistants** ››› **page 38**.

When the TCS is disconnected, the control warning light lights up on the instrument cluster.

Disconnecting and connecting the ESC in "Sport" mode

- In Sport mode, the ESC can be switched off and on by briefly pressing the button on the centre console ››› **Fig. 129**.
- **OR:** in the infotainment system, press the function button **> Assistants > Smart Assistants** ››› **page 38**.

When "Sport" mode is connected, the interventions of the ESC to stabilise the vehicle, and the traction control (TCS) interventions are limited. In vehicles with 4-wheel drive, the TCS is disconnected completely . In addition, the control lamp lights up on the instrument cluster.

[1)] Depending on the version.

Disconnecting and connecting the ESC[1)]

- The ESC can be switched on and off by briefly pressing the button on the centre console >>> Fig. 129.
- **OR:** in the infotainment system, press the function button > **Assistants** > **Smart Assistants** >>> page 38.

When the ESC is disconnected the control warning lamps and light up on the instrument cluster.

ESC in "Offroad" mode[2)]

Select the **Offroad** profile to switch it on >>> page 192. The interventions of the TCS, as well as of the EDS and the ABS system adapt to irregular terrain.

In the following exceptional situations it may make sense to activate the Offroad mode to allow the wheels to spin:

- When swinging the vehicle to get it out of mud/snow.
- Driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When driving on uneven ground with one or two wheels in the air (axle articulation).
- Steep descents while braking on unpaved terrain.

For your safety we recommend that you turn off the Offroad mode when it is not absolutely necessary.

To **disconnect** the **Offroad** mode, select a different driving mode.

WARNING

The ESC Sport mode should only be switched on if the traffic situation and the driver's ability allow it. Danger of skidding!

- **With ESC in Sport mode, the stabilising function will be limited or fully deactivated (depending on the model version) for sportier driving. The vehicle may skid.**
- **If ESC is deactivated, the vehicle stabilisation function is not available.**

Note

- **If the TCS or ESC is switched off or "Sport" mode is selected, the cruise control system switches off.**
- **In ESC OFF mode, ESC will temporarily reactivate to assist the driver during braking, and will switch back to passive mode when the brake pedal is released (depending on the model version).**

Troubleshooting

The electromechanical brake servo is not working

Stop driving

The warning lamp lights up red.

A message is displayed as appropriate. Depress the brake pedal hard because the braking distance will increase due to the lack of brake assist from the brake servo.

- You should obtain professional assistance immediately.

There is a fault in the electromechanical brake servo

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

A message is displayed for a few seconds.

Depressing the brake pedal may cause vibrations. The brake pedal has to be pressed harder because the braking distance increases due to the reduced brake servo assistance.

- Contact a specialised workshop.

The ABS does not work properly or does not work at all

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

---

1) Depending on the version.

2) Only for vehicles with 4Drive all-wheel drive.

- Contact a specialised workshop. The vehicle's brakes still work without the ABS.

The ESC or TCS is regulating

The control lamp flashes yellow.

ESC fault

The control lamp lights up in yellow. The ESC has been switched off.

There is a fault or defect.

- Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
- If possible, drive for a short distance at 15-20 km/h (9-12 mph).
- If the control lamp is still on, go to a specialised workshop.

The brake assist systems make noises

When the described brake assist systems intervene, you may hear noises.

⚠ WARNING

- **When the ignition is switched on, the status of the brake system and the brake assist functions is automatically checked. The control lamps on the instrument cluster light up briefly and then go out. Any indicator lamp that remains on indicates a fault. Seek qualified technical assistance immediately.**

- **If the brake system warning light comes on together with the control lamp, the ABS regulation function may not work and the rear wheels may lock relatively quickly when braking. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle! If possible, slow down and drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist workshop to have the brake system inspected. During this journey, avoid heavy braking and any sudden manoeuvres.**
- **If the indicator lamp does not go out, or comes on while driving, it means that the ABS function cannot work properly, is not available and will not work during braking. Go to a specialised workshop as soon as possible.**

Assistant systems

General notes

Safety advice

⚠ WARNING

- Responsibility for driving rests with the driver at all times. The drive assist systems are not a replacement for driver attention. Focus all your attention on driving and be prepared to intervene at all times.
- Use the drive assist systems only when conditions allow. The driving style must always be suitable for the weather, visibility, road and traffic conditions.
- In order for drive assist systems to react correctly, sensors and cameras must operate without limitations. Please read the notes on sensors and cameras in this chapter.

Note

- Keep in mind the specific rules of each country, especially when it comes to driving, formation of an emergency corridor, braking distance, speed, parking position, wheel position, etc. The driver is solely responsible for always complying with the specific regulations of each country.

- The area in front of and around the radar sensor should not be covered with adhesives, additional headlights or similar items, as this could have a negative impact on the operation of the assistants. If the vehicle is not properly repaired or structural modifications are made to it, the operation of the assistants may be affected.
- The repair and adjustment of sensors and cameras requires special knowledge and tools. This is why CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer.

System limits

⚠ WARNING

- Drive assist systems can not overcome the laws of physics. Depending on the circumstances, a collision may not be avoidable.
- Warnings, notices and control lamps may not be displayed on time, or may be displayed incorrectly, e.g. if a vehicle approaches too quickly.
- Corrective interventions by drive assist systems (e.g. interventions in the steering or brakes) may be insufficient or may never occur, depending on the circumstances. As a driver, you must be prepared to act at all times.

Note

- Due to the system's detection limits in the surroundings, the systems may not give warnings or intervene on time, or they might do so even if it is not desired. In addition, the auxiliary systems may incorrectly interpret a manoeuvre and, as a result, warn the driver in an unexpected manner.
- When the towing mode is selected, some assist systems may react with limitations, in an unusual way or may not be available. Keep in mind the instructions relating to the towing mode.

Button for the assistant systems

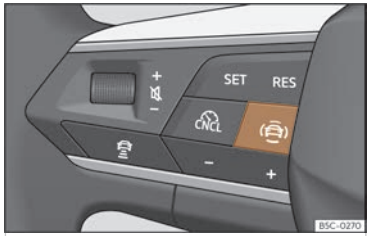


Fig. 130 Left side of the multifunction steering wheel: button for driver assistance systems (depending on the version).

The button for the driver assistance systems is located on the multifunction steering wheel. This button can be used to switch the driver assistance systems in the **Assistants** menu on and off.

- Press the button to open the **Assistants** menu.
- Select the assistance system in question and turn it off or on. A mark indicates that assistant system is switched on.
- Next, confirm the selection by pressing the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The assistant systems can also be switched on and off in the infotainment system, in the vehicle settings menu ››› page 38.

Drive assist sensors and cameras

Front radar

Fig. 131 On the front bumper: front and side radar sensors.

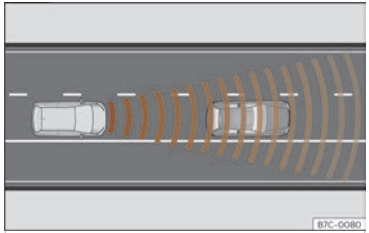


Fig. 132 Detection area.

The vehicle may be fitted with radar sensors on the front bumper ››› Fig. 131.

The front radar detects any objects in its detection zone ››› Fig. 132 and provides support for the following functions:

- Front Assist ››› page 217.
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ››› page 209.

The radar can have a range of up to 120 m (400 ft) depending on road and weather conditions.

Side radars ››› Fig. 131 detect objects in their detection zone in order to prevent the vehicle from colliding with crossing vehicles when entering an intersection or junction. These radars provide support to the:

- Junction assist function ››› page 219.

Automatic deactivation of supported functions

The front sensors deactivate automatically when, among other reasons, it is detected that they are permanently covered. This may be the case if, for example, there is a layer of snow or ice on top of the sensor.

If the sensor is deactivated, the instrument cluster will temporarily display the message **"Driver assist now limited. Front sensors without visibility"** accompanied by an audible signal.

Due to the front sensor systems not being able to see, each of the ACC and Front Assist functions will be shown as permanently disabled.

⚠ WARNING

- The visibility of the radar sensors can be impaired by dirt or environmental influences, such as rain, fog, snow, mud, dust, insects, etc.
- Clean the sensor area on the bumper as indicated in >>> page 396, *Cleaning the exterior*. When the radar sensor starts correctly detecting again, the message disappears from the screen and the functions become available again.

NOTICE

- If the radar sensors are dirty or poorly adjusted, the Front Assist or Junction assist system may give unnecessary warnings and apply the brakes inappropriately.
- The operation of the radar sensors can be affected by strong reflections of the emitted signal. This may occur, for example, in an enclosed car park or due to the presence of metallic objects (e.g. guard rails or sheets used in road works).
- The sensor may not be adjusted correctly if it receives an impact. This may compromise the system's efficacy or disconnect it. If you have the feeling that the radar sensor is damaged or adjusted incorrectly, switch off the Front Assist, ACC and Junction assist functions to avoid any damage. If this occurs have it adjusted.

- The rear bumper should only be painted with paint authorised by CUPRA. Junction assist functions may be limited or work incorrectly if other paints are used.

Interior camera

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be fitted with a camera on the interior rear view mirror. This camera detects the driver and his/her driving behaviour to provide support to the:

- driver attention monitoring function >>> page 28.

NOTICE

Take the following points into consideration to ensure the camera's functionality is not affected:

- Do not cover the field of vision of the camera.
- Adjust the mirror correctly.

Front camera

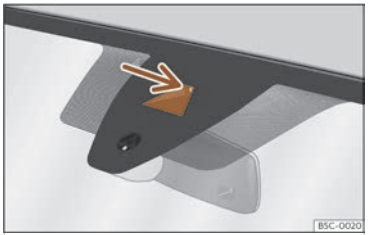


Fig. 133 On the windscreen: field of vision of the Lane Assist system camera.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be fitted with a front camera on the front windscreen. This camera detects lane boundaries (lines) to provide support for the following functions:

- Lane Assist >>> page 221.
- Travel Assist >>> page 223.
- Emergency assist >>> page 228.

Automatic deactivation of supported functions

The front camera automatically switches off when, among other things, it detects that it is permanently covered. This may be the case if, for example, there is a layer of snow or ice.

If the camera is deactivated, the instrument cluster will temporarily display the message "**Driver assist now limited. Front sensors without visibility**" accompanied by an audible signal.

Due to the front sensor systems not being able to see, each of the Lane Assist, Travel Assist and Road Sign Recognition functions will be shown as permanently disabled.

NOTICE

To avoid affecting the operation of the systems, take the following points into consideration:

- **Clean the field of vision of the camera regularly and make sure it is free of snow and ice.**
- **Do not cover the field of vision of the camera.**
- **Check that the windscreen is not damaged in the area of the camera's field of vision.**

Rear radar

Fig. 134 Rear view of the vehicle: radar sensor areas.

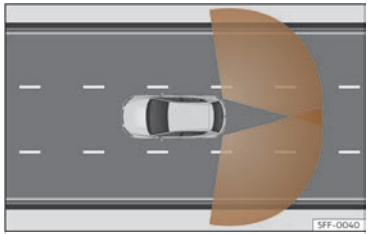


Fig. 135 Sensor detection zones.

The rear radar sensors are located on the left and right of the bumper and are not visible from the outside >>> **Fig. 134**. The sensors monitor both the blind spot and traffic behind the vehicle >>> **Fig. 135**.

They support the following functions:

- Side Assist >>> **page 229**.
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert >>> **page 256**.
- Exit Warning >>> **page 257**.

Automatic deactivation of supported functions

The rear radar sensors deactivate automatically when, among other reasons, one of the sensors is detected to be permanently covered. This may be the case if, for example, there is a layer of snow or ice in front of one of the sensors.

The relevant text message will appear in the instrument cluster display.

Control lamps

Side Assist function not available

Rear Cross Traffic Alert function not available.

Exit Warning not available.

NOTICE

- **The radar sensors on the rear bumper may be damaged or shifted in the event of a collision, for example, when entering or exiting a parking space. This may result in the system disconnecting itself, or at least potential diminished functionality.**
- **In order to ensure that the radar sensors work properly, keep the rear bumper free of snow and ice and do not cover it.**
- **The rear bumper should only be painted with paint authorised by CUPRA. The lane departure warning's functions may be limited or work incorrectly if other paints are used.**
- **The visibility of radar sensors may be affected due to leaves, snow, dense haze or dirt, among others. Clean the area in front of the sensors.**
- **Never use auto lane changing or the rear cross traffic alert if the radar sensors are dirty.**
- **Radar operation may also be affected if objects such as bicycle racks or luggage racks interfere with the visibility of the radars.**

Ultrasound sensors

The bumpers are fitted with ultrasound sensors to perform the following functions:

- Park Assist ››› page 243.
- Park assist plus ››› page 239.
- Rear park assist ››› page 242.

NOTICE

- **Damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arch and vehicle underbody can modify the orientation of the sensors. This can affect the park assist function. Have the function checked by a specialised workshop.**
- **A number plate or number plate holder with dimensions that exceed the space for the number plate, or a curved or deformed number plate can cause false detections or a loss of sensor visibility.**

Note

- **In order to guarantee good operation, keep the sensors clean, free of snow and ice, and do not cover them with stickers or other objects.**
- **If you use high-pressure or steam equipment for cleaning, do not apply it directly, unless you do so very briefly, and always keep a distance of more than 10 cm away.**
- **Fitting certain accessories to the front of the vehicle, such as a plate holder with advertising, may interfere with the operation of the Park Assist.**

Area View system

Fig. 136 On the rear lid handle: location of the rear assist camera.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, it can be fitted with 1 or 4 cameras that provide support to the following functions:

- Top View Camera ››› page 251.
- Rear View Camera ››› page 248.

WARNING

Fitting a number plate frame may interfere with the view shown on the screen, as it may reduce the camera's field of vision.

NOTICE

- **In order to guarantee good system operation, keep the cameras clean, free of snow or ice, and do not cover them with stickers or other objects. The camera can be cleaned by operating the wiper.**
- **Never use abrasive cleaning products to clean the camera lens.**
- **Do not use hot or warm water to remove ice or snow from the camera lens. Doing so could damage the camera.**

Cruise control system

Introduction

The cruise control system (GRA) helps maintain a constant speed set by you.

Speed range

The cruise control system is available when driving in forward gear at a speed of over approx. 20 km/h (15 mph).

Temporarily switching off the cruise control

The saved speed can be exceeded at any time, e.g. for overtaking. The cruise control is suspended during acceleration and is then resumed with the saved speed.

Status display

When the cruise control system is switched on, the instrument cluster display shows the saved speed and the system status:

Lights up grey.
The cruise control system is switched on, but regulation is not active.

It lights up green.
The cruise control system is switched on and regulation is active.

If there is no speed saved, the instrument cluster display shows ––– instead of speed.

Changing gears

As soon as the clutch pedal is depressed, regulation is suspended and resumes once the gear change has been made.

Driving down slopes

Shift into a low gear before descending a long hill. This makes use of engine braking and relieves the brakes.

The vehicle cannot maintain the saved speed in all driving situations. Always be ready to apply the vehicle's brakes.

WARNING

If it is impossible to drive with sufficient braking distance and at a constant speed, using the cruise control system may cause accidents and serious injuries may occur.

- **Do not use Travel Assist when visibility is bad, on steep roads, on windy roads or in slippery circumstances (such as snow, ice, rain or loose gravel), or on flooded roads.**
- **Only use the cruise control system on paved roads with a firm surface.**
- **Adapt your speed and safety distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **After use, always switch off the speed limiter to prevent the speed being regulated against your wishes.**
- **It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.**

Operating the cruise control

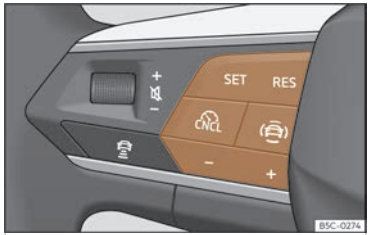


Fig. 137 On the multifunction steering wheel: cruise control operation buttons.

Connecting

- Press the button.

Then select "**Cruise control**" from the driving assistants menu.

Regulation has not yet taken place.

Start regulation

- While driving, press the button SET.

The cruise control system saves and regulates the current speed.

Adjusting the speed

While the GRA is set, the stored speed can be adjusted:

RES + 1 km/h (1 mph)

SET - 1 km/h (1 mph)

\+ + 10 km/h (5 mph)

– - 10 km/h (5 mph)

Interrupting the adjustment

- Briefly press the button or press the brake pedal.

The speed is stored.

Reinstating the cruise control

- Press the RES button.

The cruise control system resumes the saved speed and regulates it.

Troubleshooting

Fault in the speed regulator

The control lamp switches on yellow.

Abnormal operation. Switch off the cruise control system and take the vehicle to a specialist workshop.

The adjustment is interrupted unexpectedly

- If the clutch pedal is pressed for a long time.
- The vehicle has exceeded the saved speed for a long time.
- No forward gear has been selected.
- A brake assistance system, e.g. TCS or ESC, has intervened.
- Front Assist has braked the vehicle.
- If the fault continues, disconnect the Emergency Assist and consult a specialised workshop.

Speed limiter

Introduction

The speed limiter helps the driver not to exceed a set speed.

Speed range

The speed limiter helps avoid exceeding a programmed speed, from 30 km/h (20 mph) approx. and faster.

Selecting the speed limiter

The speed limit can be interrupted at any time by depressing the accelerator pedal fully, beyond the point of resistance. As soon as the saved speed is exceeded, the green indicator light flashes and an audible warning signal may sound. The speed is stored.

The limiter is reactivated automatically after returning to less than the set speed.

Status display

When the speed limiter is switched on, the instrument cluster display shows the saved speed and the system status:

Lights up grey
The speed limiter is switched on but regulation is not active.

Lights up green
The speed limiter is switched on and active.

Driving down slopes

Shift into a low gear before descending a long hill. This makes use of engine braking and relieves the brakes.

The vehicle cannot maintain the saved speed in all driving situations. Always be ready to apply the vehicle's brakes.

⚠ WARNING

After use, always switch off the speed limiter to prevent the speed being regulated against your wishes.

- **The speed limiter does not relieve the driver of their responsibility to drive at the appropriate speed. Do not drive at high speed if not necessary.**
- **Using the speed limiter under adverse weather conditions is dangerous and can cause serious accidents, e.g. aquaplaning, snow, ice, leaves, etc. Only use the speed limiter when the status of the road and the weather conditions allow it.**

Operating the speed limiter

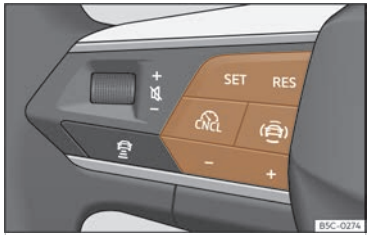


Fig. 138 On the multifunction steering wheel: buttons to control the speed limiter.

Connecting

- Press the button.

Then select "**Speed limiter**" from the driving assistants menu.

Regulation has not yet taken place.

Start regulation

- While driving, press the button **SET**.

The current speed is saved as a limit speed.

Adjusting the speed

The programmed speed can be set:

RES + 1 km/h (1 mph)
SET - 1 km/h (1 mph)
+ + 10 km/h (5 mph)
– - 10 km/h (5 mph)

Interrupting the adjustment

- Press the button.

The speed is stored.

Reinstating the cruise control

- Press the **RES** button.

The limiter will re-activate as soon as the vehicle is moving at a speed lower than the saved one.

Troubleshooting

LIM The speed limiter is not available

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

- Malfunctions: Switch off the speed limiter and go to a specialist workshop.

Regulation is interrupted unexpectedly

- You have switched off the Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC).
- The brakes have overheated. Wait for the brakes to cool down and check the operation again.
- If the fault continues, consult a specialised workshop.

Speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment

Introduction

The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment automatically adapts a maximum speed that you have saved to the detected speed limits.

The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment is an additional function of the speed limiter and uses the infotainment system's dynamic road sign display ››› page 30 and navigation data.

The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment is available depending on the equipment, but not in all countries.

⚠ WARNING

The smart technology of the speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and only works within the limits of the system. Never allow the greater convenience offered by this function to induce you to take any risk that compromises safety. Serious accidents and injuries can occur if the speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment is used carelessly or unintentionally. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Always adapt your speed to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Always pay attention to traffic and always keep the vehicle's surroundings in mind.**
- **Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself. If the road sign recognition system is not working properly or the navigation data is not updated, the speed may change unexpectedly and suddenly or may not be suitable for the current traffic situation. In addition, the speed adjusted by the system may not suit your driving style.**
- **Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself. If you drive without any active guided route, if you leave the route calculated by the navigation system or if the position of the vehicle cannot be determined correctly because the GPS does not provide accurate data, the speed may change unexpectedly and suddenly or may not be suitable for the current traffic situation.**
- **Always use up to date navigation data.**
- **Always take into account the speed limit. In the case of speed limits that are not included in the navigation data, the speed limit may be exceeded.**

Note

Please also note the information of relevance to safety on the speed limiter **››› page 205.**

Limitations of proactive speed adjustment

In addition to the limitations of the dynamic road sign display system ››› page 30, the speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment has the following limitations inherent to the system:

- The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment only recognises road signs showing a speed limit.
- Road signs that indirectly show a speed restriction, e.g. signs at the entrance to towns, are only recognised on the basis of navigation data.
- If a warning is given of a speed restriction based on navigation data, without it being detected by the dynamic road sign display, the indicated speed will be adjusted to the most recently saved speed.
- The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment is not available for speed restrictions lower than approx. 30 km/h (approx. 20 mph) that are detected. In this case, a relevant message is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

Activate proactive speed adjustment

The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment can be activated in the infotainment system's assistants menu.

Driving with proactive speed adjustment

- Activate the proactive speed adjustment.
- Switch on the speed limiter and start the control >>> page 205.
- When the system recognises a new speed limit, a warning is displayed on the instrument cluster. This speed will be stored in the speed limiter.

km/h The system has recognised a new speed limit and uses it for regulation.

Interrupting speed adjustment

- Press the multifunction steering wheel button **RES** or release and press the accelerator twice. The last saved speed is resumed.
- Press the **SET** button on the multifunction steering wheel. The current speed is taken.
- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel. The system switches to a passive state.

Adjust the displayed speed using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel

RES + 1 km/h (1 mph)

SET - 1 km/h (1 mph)

+ + 10 km/h (5 mph)

– - 10 km/h (5 mph)

If you adjust the indicated speed excessively, the proactive speed adjustment is interrupted.

Note

- **When a speed restriction is recognised, the proactive speed adjustment also adapts the saved speed, even if the speed limiter is not active.**
- **If the speed of travel considerably exceeds the speed limit detected by the road signal detection system, a relevant warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display.**
- **When merging onto a motorway or dual carriageway, the recommended speed is automatically saved as the desired speed.**

Special cases

On motorway entry and exit lanes, the system stops applying the maximum permitted speed so you retain better control in line with road layout and traffic conditions.

Troubleshooting

A message is displayed indicating that proactive speed adjustment is not currently available or not offered in your country.

- If this message is displayed for a longer period of time and proactive speed adjustment is available in your country, please contact a specialist workshop.

Note

Depending on the anomaly in question, additional information may be displayed in Vehicle status >>> page 40.

Eco Assist

Fig. 139 Eco Assist indication (schematic representation).

Eco-efficient driving assistance helps you drive with care and with low energy consumption by following instructions superimposed in the digital cockpit, depending on the situation.

When you approach places such as a junction, a roundabout or a section of road with a speed limit, the symbol is displayed along with an event on the digital instrument cluster >>> Fig. 139.

As soon as you follow the indication and take your foot off the accelerator, the vehicle adapts, based on the selected drive profile and distance to the event, brake energy recuperation and speed.

Eco Assist uses the trip data from the infotainment system and the sensors of certain driver assistance systems. If no destination guidance is active, the most likely route is used.

Pressing the accelerator can cancel the intervention of the assistance at any time.

Eco Assist can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment system, in the assistance system settings ››› page 38.

Eco Assist is temporarily deactivated if:

- The gear selector is in the **S** position.
- The **Performance** or **CUPRA** drive profile is used.
- Driving with adaptive cruise control (ACC) or cruise control (GRA).

When these conditions no longer exist, the assistance is reactivated if it is switched on in the assistance system settings.

Eco Assist is available depending on equipment and not in all countries.

⚠ WARNING

The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Road signs on the road and traffic regulations have priority over eco-driving notes.**

Note

- **The appearance of the symbols may vary slightly depending on the equipment and model. System updates may modify or expand the symbols.**
- **When the system is active, Eco Assist may also increase recuperation without displaying any indication. This can occur in situations such as when the accelerator pedal is released when a vehicle is driving in front. In this case, energy recuperation is adapted to match the speed of the vehicle in front without any indication being displayed.**

ACC - Adaptive Cruise Control

Introduction

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) maintains a constant speed set by the driver. When approaching another vehicle in front, the ACC detects it and adapts the speed automatically, maintaining a distance set by the driver.

Does my vehicle have ACC?

Your vehicle has ACC if it has the ACC function buttons on the multifunction steering wheel ››› page 122, or if it has the configuration menu in the infotainment system.

Speed range

ACC regulates at speeds between 20 and 210 km/h (15 and 130 mph).

When **Electric mode** is activated in hybrid vehicles, the ACC speed range may vary.

The ACC can bring the vehicle to a standstill if a vehicle in front stops.

If your vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, you should pay attention to gear changes. The ACC could switch off if the RPM gets too high or low.

Driving with ACC

You can override the ACC at any time. Braking interrupts the ACC. If you accelerate, regulation is interrupted during acceleration and then resumed.

Driver intervention prompt

ACC is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system. This means that the driver will have to control the speed and distance from other vehicles in certain situations. In this case, the instrument cluster display **will tell you to intervene** by applying the brake, and an audio warning will be played.

Radar sensors

The ACC uses the front radar technology. Read its maintenance instructions and information about its limitations >>> page 199.

WARNING

The ACC's technology cannot overcome the system's inherent limitations or change the laws of physics. If used negligently or involuntarily, it may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Always be prepared to brake or accelerate.**
- **If you press the accelerator pedal the ACC will stop working. Therefore, it will not brake or request any braking intervention.**
- **Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Do not use the ACC in poor visibility, or on roads that are steep, with lots of curves or slippery.**
- **Never use ACC when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.**
- **The system may not react in time to stationary obstacles (such as a traffic jam queue), particularly at high speeds. React soon enough to avoid a hazardous situation.**
- **The system may not react to stopped vehicles in the same lane. You must react early enough yourself in this case.**
- **The system does not react to people, animals or vehicles that are crossing or approaching in the opposite direction.**
- **If you are driving with a spare wheel fitted, the ACC system could automatically switch off. Switch off the system when starting off.**
- **Brake immediately if the ACC does not slow down enough.**
- **Brake immediately when a driver intervention instruction is displayed on the instrument cluster display.**
- **If the vehicle continues to move involuntarily after a driver intervention prompt, brake the vehicle.**
- **The brake pedal may move downwards during braking. Be careful not to position your foot under the pedal.**

Note

If the ACC does not work as described in this chapter, do not use it until it has been checked by a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

ACC operation

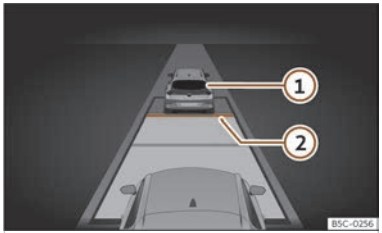


Fig. 140 On the instrument cluster display: ACC active.

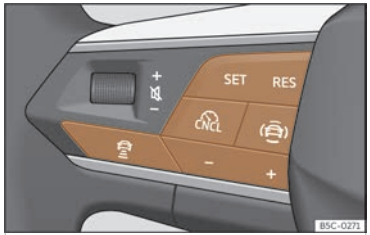


Fig. 141 On the multifunction steering wheel: buttons for operating the ACC.

>>> **Fig. 140**

① Vehicle detected in front. It will light up if the distance to the vehicle is set.

② Distance selected.

Connecting

- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel >>> **Fig. 141**.
- Then select the **"ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)"** checkbox in the driving assistants menu.

The ACC does not regulate anything yet (standby).

Start regulation

Activating the ACC system also automatically activates the ESC and traction control (TCS).

- To start regulation, press the **SET** button >>> **Fig. 141**.

The ACC saves the current speed and maintains the set distance. If the current speed is outside the predefined speed range, ACC adjusts the speed to the nearest limit of the range.

Depending on the driving situation, the following control lamps come on:

Lights up green
ACC connected, no vehicle detected in front.

Lights up green
ACC connected, vehicle detected in front.

When the ACC is in standby, the control lamps light up grey.

Program the speed

RES + 1 km/h (1 mph)

SET - 1 km/h (1 mph)

+ + 10 km/h (5 mph)

– - 10 km/h (5 mph)

Program the distance setting

The distance can be set to one of five levels, from very short to very long:

- Press the button and then + or – button >>> **Fig. 141**.
- Alternatively, press button as many times as necessary to set the desired distance.

Keep in mind each country's regulations on minimum braking distances.

Suspend regulation (standby)

- Briefly press button >>> **Fig. 141** or press the brake pedal.

The ACC indicator lamp is grey; the speed and distance are saved.

If the traction control or ESC is switched off, the ACC regulation is automatically interrupted.

Reinstating the cruise control

- Press the **RES** button. The ACC regulates to the last speed and distance setting.
- **OR**: Press **SET** button to regulate to the current speed.

Exceeding the speed regulated by the ACC

While driving with the ACC switched on, the driver can increase speed by pressing the accelerator pedal. ACC regulation is suspended until you release the accelerator pedal >>> ⓘ.

Changing the drive profile

In vehicles with Drive Profile, the selected drive profile can have an influence on the ACC's acceleration and braking behaviour >>> page 190.

In vehicles without Drive Profile, the behaviour of the ACC can also be affected if any of the following drive profiles are selected in the infotainment system in **Assistants**. ACC settings will be the same as those in the Drive Profile.

⚠ WARNING

Before driving off, check that the road is clear. The radar sensor may not detect obstacles that could be on the road. This can lead to an accident and serious injury. Press the brake if necessary.

ⓘ NOTICE

If you increase speed using the accelerator pedal, the ACC may not be able to safely adjust the speed or the distance due to the limitations of the system.

- **Be prepared to react if required by the situation.**

Special driving situations

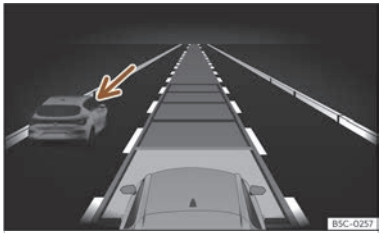


Fig. 142 On the instrument cluster display: ACC active, vehicle detected on the left.

Be aware of the limitations and warnings described at the beginning of this chapter >>> page 209, *Introduction*.

Avoid undertaking on the right[1)]

If a vehicle is detected in the left lane that is travelling at a speed slower than that set by the driver, it will brake the vehicle within the comfort limits of the system to avoid passing it on the right >>> **Fig. 142**.

You can cancel this regulation by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The function works at speeds over 80 km/h (50 mph). It may not be available in certain countries.

Overtaking

When the turn signal is switched on for overtaking, the ACC reduces the distance from the vehicle in front to help with the overtaking manoeuvre. The set cruising speed will not be exceeded.

The function works at speeds over 80 km/h (50 mph). It may not be available in certain countries.

Stop&Go function

The ACC can bring the vehicle to a standstill if the vehicle in front stops.

Vehicles with manual gearboxes: you will need to keep the clutch pedal depressed to allow the car to come to a complete stop.

The ACC remains active and the message **ACC ready to start** is displayed on the instrument cluster for a few seconds. You can extend or reactivate this warning by pressing the **RES** button or by grabbing the wheel if your vehicle is fitted with Travel Assist. During this time, the vehicle will move off again if the vehicle in front moves forwards.

To move off when the message **ACC ready to start** is not longer displayed, once the vehicle in front has moved off:

- *Vehicles with automatic transmission:*Briefly depress the accelerator pedal.

[1)] Or on the left, in countries that drive on the left hand side of the road.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox: Briefly depress the accelerator pedal and gently lift the clutch pedal.

- **OR**: press the **RES** button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- **OR**: grab the steering wheel again if your vehicle has Travel Assist.

The ACC does not remain active in the following cases:

- The stopping phase lasts for several minutes.
- When a vehicle door is opened.
- If the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

If the message ACC ready to start is displayed on the instrument cluster display and the vehicle in front moves off, your vehicle will move off automatically. In this case, any obstacles in the road may not be detected. This may cause serious accidents and injuries.

- **Always check the road before moving off, and apply the vehicle brakes yourself if necessary.**

ACC system limitations

The limits of the ACC system mean that it is not appropriate in all situations ››› ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 210.

CUPRA does not recommend using the function in the following cases ››› ⚠:

- Heavy rain, snow or fog.
- When going through tunnels.
- On stretches of road with roadworks.
- On routes with curves, e.g. on mountain roads.
- On off-road routes.
- In covered car parks.
- On roads with embedded metal objects such as train or tram tracks.
- On roads with loose gravel.

Pay special attention when using ACC in the following situations:

On curves

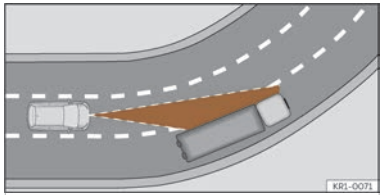


Fig. 143 Vehicle on a bend.

The ACC may not detect the vehicle in front on a curve, or may regulate the distance from vehicles in other lanes ››› **Fig. 143**.

Vehicles outside the sensor zone

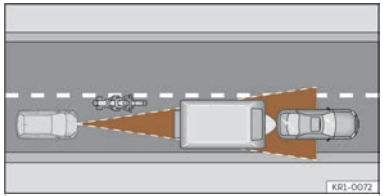


Fig. 144 Motorcyclist ahead out of range of the radar sensor.

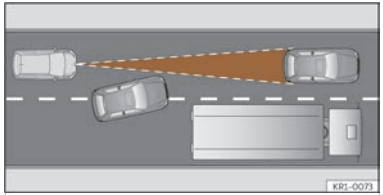


Fig. 145 Vehicle changing lanes.

In the following situations the ACC may not react, or may react slowly or inappropriately:

- Vehicles that are not aligned while driving or that are outside the sensor's detection area, such as motorcycles ››› **Fig. 144**.
- Vehicles that move into your lane, a short distance from your vehicle ››› **Fig. 145**.
- Vehicles with loads or accessories that protrude from the sides, rear or roof.

Objects that are not detected

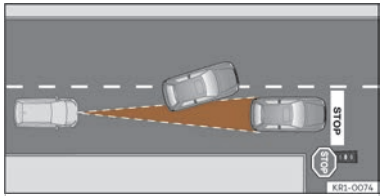


Fig. 146 A vehicle turning and another stationary.

The ACC function only detects and reacts to vehicles moving in the same direction. Therefore it does not detect:

- People
- Animals
- Vehicles travelling in the opposite direction or crossing the road.
- Other stationary obstacles

The ACC may not react to stationary vehicles. If, for example, a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or moves over and there is a stationary vehicle in front of it, the ACC will not react to the second vehicle ››› **Fig. 146**.

⚠ WARNING

Using the ACC in the above situations can cause serious accidents and injuries, and you could break the law.

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

The indicator lamp lights up yellow:

- The radar sensor is dirty or adjusted incorrectly. Take into account the warnings described at the beginning of this chapter ››› page 200
- There is a fault or a defect. Turn off the vehicle's ignition and turn it on again after a few minutes.
- If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop.

The ACC does not work as expected

- Make sure that the conditions are met for the radar sensor to operate properly ››› page 200.
- If the brakes overheat, regulation stops automatically. Wait for them to cool down and check the operation again.
- Unusual noises during automatic ACC braking are normal and do not indicate any anomalies.

The following conditions may lead the ACC not to react:

- The accelerator or brake is depressed.
- No gear is engaged or the vehicle is in gear **R**.
- The vehicle is reversing.
- ESC is operating.
- The driver is not wearing his/her seat belt.
- The RPM is too high or too low.
- A vehicle brake light is faulty.
- A trailer brake light is faulty.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Driving on an excessive slope.

Predictive speed adjustment

Introduction

The predictive speed adjustment adapts the speed to the speed limits detected and to the road layout (curves, crossings, roundabouts, etc.).

Predictive speed adjustment is an additional function of the ACC ››› page 209 and uses the road signal detection system and the navigation data of the infotainment system.

Predictive speed adjustment is available depending on the equipment, although not in all countries.

⚠ WARNING

The predictive speed adjustment smart technology cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and it only works within the limits of the system. Never allow the enhanced convenience of this function to induce you to take any risk that compromises safety. If used negligently or involuntarily, it may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Always adapt your speed to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Always pay attention to traffic and always keep the vehicle's surroundings in mind.**
- **Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself. If the road sign recognition system is not working properly or the navigation data is not updated, the speed may change unexpectedly and suddenly or may not be suitable for the current traffic situation. In addition, the speed adjusted by the system may not suit your driving style.**
- **Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself. If you drive without any active guided route, if you leave the route calculated by the navigation system or if the position of the vehicle cannot be determined correctly because the GPS does not provide accurate data, the speed may change unexpectedly and suddenly or may not be suitable for the current traffic situation.**
- **Always use up to date navigation data.**
- **Always take into account the speed limit. In the case of speed limits that are not included in the navigation data, the speed limit may be exceeded.**

Note

Also note the information related to the ACC relevant to safety >>> page 209.

Limitations of the predictive speed adjustment

In addition to the limitations of the road sign detection system and the limitations of the ACC, predictive speed adjustment has the following limitations inherent to the system:

- Predictive speed adjustment only recognises road signals that show a speed limit. The predictive speed adjustment does not take into account, above all, the rules on priority of passage or traffic lights.
- Road signs that indirectly show a speed restriction, e.g. signs at the entrance to towns, are only recognised on the basis of navigation data.
- On roads that are not included in the navigation data, or that are included with low accuracy, predictive speed adjustment is not available.
- If a speed limit is notified based on the navigation data without it being detected by the road signal detection system, the indicated speed will be adjusted to the speed that was saved the last time.
- Predictive speed adjustment is not available for speed limits below approx. 20 km/h (approx. 15 mph). In this case, a relevant message is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

Activating the predictive speed adjustment

In the infotainment system, in the assist services menu, you can individually adjust the type of incident the vehicle should react to >>> page 38:

- Response to road layout.
- Response at permitted speeds.

Driving with predictive speed adjustment

- Connect the ACC >>> page 210.
- Set the distance and speed.
- Activate the predictive speed adjustment.

As soon as the system recognises a speed limit or a relevant road layout during the route, a warning will appear on the instrument cluster

display. This warning will indicate the reason and the speed to which the vehicle will adjust due to said limitation.

Indication of turning intention

If the turn signals are activated to indicate the intention to turn, the predictive cruise control can reduce the speed at the next available turn.

The predictive cruise control does not detect the intention to turn in the following situations:

- A dashed line is recognised in the direction in which the turn signal is activated.
- The turn signals are not activated sufficiently far in advance.

Indication of regulation in progress

Adjustment due to a speed limit.

Adjustment due to the end of a speed limit.

Adjustment due to a roundabout.

Adjustment due to a junction.

Adjustment due to a road layout.

In the event of adjustment due to a speed limit, the detected speed will be saved as the new desired speed. In the event of adjustment due to the road layout, the vehicle will accelerate again after leaving the reason for the adjustment behind and the speed will be adjusted to the saved speed.

Curve control speeds depend on the selected driving profile ››› page 190.

Interrupting speed adjustment

- During the warning, press the button **RES**.
- During the regulation, press the button **SET**.

Adjust the announced speed

The announced speed can only be adjusted in the event of adjustment due to a speed limit.

Multifunction steering wheel:

RES + 1 km/h (1 mph)

SET - 1 km/h (1 mph)

+ + 10 km/h (5 mph)

– - 10 km/h (5 mph)

Note

- **When a speed limit is recognised, the predictive speed adjustment also adapts the saved speed even if the ACC is switched off. However, it will not regulate.**
- **If the speed of travel considerably exceeds the speed limit detected by the road signal detection system, a relevant warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display.**
- **In the event of joining a highway without a speed limit, the recommended speed is automatically saved as the desired speed. If a higher speed has previously been saved for a motorway without a speed limit, this is used instead of the recommended speed.**

Troubleshooting

A message is displayed indicating that predictive speed adjustment is not currently available or not available in your country.

- If this message is displayed for a long time and predictive speed adjustment is available in your country, contact a specialised workshop.

Note

Depending on the anomaly in question, additional information may be displayed in Vehicle status ››› page 40.

Emergency brake assistance system (Front Assist)

Introduction

The objective of the system is to prevent head-on collisions against objects that may be in the vehicle's path or minimise the consequences of such impacts.

The function is designed to avoid collisions against:

- Parked vehicles.
- Vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists that are travelling in the same lane and direction.
- Pedestrians and cyclists who cross the vehicle's path.

Front Assist detects these objects using a camera on the top of the windscreen and a radar sensor on the front of the vehicle ››› page 200.

Front Assist detects different road users, such as other vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and motorcycles, using a camera on the top of the windscreen and three radar sensors on the front of the vehicle ››› page 200.

Depending on several factors and how critical the situation is, the system operates in a staggered manner.

First by informing the driver, and if there is no or insufficient reaction, then by activating an autonomous emergency braking or an evasive manoeuvre as indicated by the conditions that will be discussed in the following points.

The system can be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is pressed or the steering wheel is turned firmly.

Depending on the equipment and the country, Front Assist also includes the following functions:

- Pedestrian protection ››› page 218
- Cyclist protection ››› page 218
- Dodge assist ››› page 218
- Oncoming vehicle braking when turning ››› page 218
- Junction assist ››› page 219

⚠ WARNING

- **Front Assist is a driving assistance function that can never replace the driver's attention.**
- **Front Assist cannot change the laws of physics or replace the driver in terms of keeping control of the vehicle and reacting to a possible emergency situation.**
- **Following a Front Assist emergency warning, pay immediate attention to the situation and try to avoid the collision where appropriate.**

Warning levels and brake assist

Front Assist is active from 5 km/h (3 mph). Depending on different conditions (vehicle speed, speed and type of object recognised, etc.), some of the stages described below are omitted to optimise the performance of the system.

Safety distance warning

If the system detects that you are driving too close to the vehicle in front, it will warn the driver with this indication on the instrument cluster display.

The timing of the warning varies depending on driver behaviour, vehicle speed and relative speed between both.

The safety distance warning is active from approx. 65 km/h (40 mph).

Advance warning

If the system detects a possible collision with the vehicle in front, it alerts the driver by means of an audible warning and an indication on the instrument cluster display.

The warning moment varies depending on the traffic situation and driver behaviour. At the same time, the vehicle will prepare for a possible emergency braking >>> ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 217.

When Front Assist is connected, the indications of other functions on the screen may be hidden.

Critical warning

If the driver fails to react to the **advance warning**, the system may actively intervene in the brakes and generate a brief jolt to warn the driver of the imminent danger of a collision.

Automatic braking

If the driver also fails to react to the **critical warning**, the system may initiate independent emergency braking by progressively increasing the braking in accordance with the criticality of the situation.

Driver emergency braking assistance system

If the driver, after the critical warning, starts braking but the system detects that the brake is not being applied with sufficient force, the braking intensity will be increased. This brake assist only occurs if the pedal is pressed firmly.

⚠ WARNING

- **The system cannot prevent a collision, although it can significantly minimise the consequences by reducing the speed and the force of the impact.**
- **If Front Assist applies the brakes, the brake pedal is "harder".**
- **Automatic interventions by Front Assist on the brakes may be interrupted by pressing the accelerator or moving the steering wheel.**
- **Front Assist may decelerate the vehicle until it stops completely. However, the brake system does not halt the vehicle permanently. Use the foot brake!**

Pedestrian and cyclist recognition

The system recognises pedestrians and cyclists who travel in the same lane and direction and pedestrians and cyclists who transversely cross the vehicle's path.

Pedestrian and cyclist recognition technology cannot exceed the physically prescribed limits and works exclusively within the system's limits. The responsibility for braking always depends on the driver.

The pedestrian and cyclist recognition can cause undesired warnings and braking interventions, e.g. with a hidden radar sensor or a dirty camera field of vision.

Be ready to take charge of the vehicle at any time.

The pedestrian and cyclist recognition operating speed range is lower than that of Front Assist.

Dodge assist

Dodge assist helps the driver avoid an obstacle in critical conditions.

Once the Front Assist has activated a critical warning, if the driver intends to dodge the object, the swerve assist will help correct the trajectory. The driver must start and finish the manoeuvre, as this is an assistance system and not an autonomous one.

The system is active between approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) and 150 km/h (90 mph).

Limitations

This system does not react to objects crossing the path of the vehicle or to animals. The basic limitations of Front Assist must also be taken into account>>> page 219.

Turn-off assist

Turn-off assist can avoid a collision with a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction, by braking the vehicle itself when the intention is to turn.

This system is active **up to 25 km/h** (15 mph).

Limitations

The turn-off assist function is available if you have indicated your intention to turn by activating the turn signal, you have turned the steering wheel and the turning path has started.

It only reacts to vehicles that are in the path of the vehicle (not to animals, people, etc.).

The basic limitations of Front Assist must also be taken into account››› page 219.

Junction assist

Junction Assist can prevent the vehicle from colliding with a vehicle crossing the road as it enters an intersection or junction.

If there is a risk of collision when exiting an exit or entering a junction, Junction Assist can issue a visual and audible warning and brake the vehicle. This can reduce the risk of an accident.

Displays

At low speeds, the park assist display uses coloured segments to show detected crossing traffic.

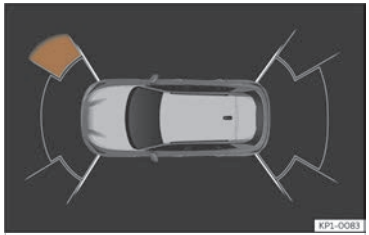


Fig. 147 In the infotainment system: junction assist display.

Yellow segment: Junction assistant has detected crossing traffic. Pay attention and be prepared to brake.

Red segment: Junction assist has detected a potential collision with crossing traffic. Brake!

Depending on the situation, the coloured arrows are also shown on the head-up display or on the instrument cluster. These indicate the direction from which cross traffic is approaching.

Speed range

Junction assist is available in a speed range from 0 km/h (0 mph) to around 65 km/h (close to 40 mph).

Limitations

Junction assist does not react to road users who are hidden by structures or other road users. Road users leaving a place where they were concealed may be detected with a delay.

Always keep in mind the basic limitations of the Front Assist ››› page 219 system.

System limitations

Front Assist has certain limitations inherent to the system. Thus, in certain circumstances, some of the reactions may be inappropriate from the driver's standpoint. So pay attention and intervene if necessary.

The following conditions may cause Front Assist not to react or to do so too late:

The indication will be shown on the instrument cluster display in the first few instants of driving after switching on the ignition, due to the system's initial auto-calibration.

Unrecognised objects

- Vehicles travelling outside the range of the sensors at a close distance to your vehicle.
- Vehicles that suddenly change to the lane on which your vehicle is travelling.
- Pedestrians that cannot be recognised because they are partially or totally hidden.

- Objects such as walls, posts, fences, trees or garage doors.
- Loads and accessories of other vehicles that protrude over the sides, rear or top.
- Pedestrians or cyclists standing or approaching in the opposite direction.
- Other vehicles crossing the vehicle's path.

Operating limitations

In the following situations, Front Assist may work in a limited or unwanted way:

- If Front Assist or the front camera are disabled or broken.
- If the radar sensor or the front camera are dirty or covered.
- On taking tight bends or complex paths.
- When pressing the accelerator firmly or at full throttle.
- If the ESC is adjusting or is broken.
- If several brake lights of the vehicle or electrically connected trailer are damaged.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- In case of snow or heavy rain.
- In case of dazzling sun or total darkness.
- Entrances and exits of tunnels.
- In complex driving situations (such as traffic islands, cut-through roundabouts, etc.), Front Assist may issue warnings and unnecessarily intervene in braking.

For more details, see section >>> page 199, *System limits*.

Manual activation and deactivation of the function

Front Assist indicators appear on the instrument panel display.

Front Assist is active whenever the ignition is switched on. When the vehicle is started, Front Assist may not be available for a short period of time while the system starts. During this phase, the instrument cluster display will display the following indication .

When Front Assist is deactivated, so too are the advance warning and the distance warning functions.

CUPRA recommends leaving Front Assist activated except in the situations explained in section page 221, *Temporarily deactivating Front Assist*.

Activating and deactivating Front Assist

With the ignition switched on, Front Assist can be deactivated or activated as follows:

- In the infotainment system: press the function button > **Driver assist** > **Smart Assistants** > **Front Assist** >>> page 38.
- **OR:** Select the corresponding menu option using the button for the assistants systems >>> page 199.

OFF This indication will be displayed in the instrument cluster when Front Assist is deactivated.

Each time the ignition is switched on, Front Assist will reappear as active.

Switching distance warning on and off

The safety distance warning can be activated or deactivated in the infotainment system using the function button > **Driver assist** > **Smart Assistants** > **Front Assist** >>> page 38.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the distance warning will reappear as active.

CUPRA recommends having the safety distance warning activated, with the exceptions described in section page 221, *Temporarily deactivating Front Assist*.

Activating or deactivating the swerve and turn assist

The swerve and turn assistance systems can be activated or deactivated in the infotainment system using the function button > **Driver assist** > **Smart Assistants** > **Front Assist** >>> page 38.

Whenever the ignition is switched on, the swerve and turn assist will reappear as active.

CUPRA recommends having the swerve and turn assistance systems activated, with the exceptions described in section page 221, *Temporarily deactivating Front Assist* .

Activating or deactivating the swerve and turn and junction assist

The swerve and turn assistance systems can be activated or deactivated in the infotainment system using the function button 🕮 > **Driver assist > Smart Assistants > Front Assist** ››› page 38.

Whenever the ignition is switched on, the swerve and turn and junction assist will reappear as active.

CUPRA recommends having the swerve and turn assistance systems activated, with the exceptions described in section page 221, *Temporarily deactivating Front Assist* .

Temporarily deactivating Front Assist

In the following situations Front Assist should be deactivated due to the system's limitations:

- When the vehicle is to be towed.
- If the vehicle is on a test bed.
- If the radar sensor or the front camera is faulty.
- If the radar sensor or the front camera has suffered a violent blow.
- If it intervenes several times unnecessarily.
- If the radar sensor or the front camera is temporarily covered by an accessory.
- When the vehicle is going to be loaded onto transportation.
- If the windscreen is damaged in an area that covers the vision of the front camera.

Lane Assist system

Introduction

The Lane Assist System helps the driver stay in his/her lane within the physical limits of the system. This function is not suitable and is not designed to keep the vehicle automatically in the lane.

Using the camera located in the windscreen, the Lane Assist system detects the lane boundaries dividing the lanes in which the vehicle is travelling. If the vehicle gets too close to the detected lane limits, the system alerts the driver through a corrective motion of the steering wheel. The driver can cancel the steering corrective action at any time.

No warning will be given when the turn signals are activated, given that the Lane Assist system understands that a lane change is required.

System limits

Use the Lane Assist system only on large, well-maintained motorways and highways.

The system is not available under the following conditions:

- The speed limit allowed is below approx. 60 km/h (35 mph).
- The system has not detected any lane lines.
- On tight bends.
- Temporarily in very sporty driving situations.
- If the driver firmly rectifies a system intervention.
- If a lane marking is crossed despite system intervention.
- If the driver does not react to a request to intervene.

⚠ WARNING

The intelligent technology in the Lane Assist system cannot change the limits imposed by the laws of physics and by the very nature of the system. Careless or uncontrolled use of the Lane Assist system may cause accidents and injury. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness or manoeuvres when driving.

- **Always adapt your speed and the distance to the vehicles ahead in line with visibility, weather conditions, the condition of the road and the traffic situation.**
- **Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so it can be turned at any time. The responsibility of staying in the lane is always the driver's.**

- **The Lane Assist system does not detect all road markings. The road surfaces, road structures or objects in poor condition can be incorrectly detected as road markings under certain circumstances by the Lane Assist system. Immediately counter any unwanted intervention of the system.**
- **Please observe the indications on the instrument cluster and act as is necessary if the traffic situation permits.**
- **In the following situations there may be undesired interventions of the system or it may not intervene at all. In these situations, special attention is required from the driver and, where appropriate, the temporary deactivation of the lane assist warning system:**
  - **In very sporty driving situations.**
  - **In adverse weather conditions and roads in poor condition.**
  - **When passing through road works.**
  - **Before gradient changes of grade and river beds.**
- **Always observe the vehicle surroundings carefully and drive proactively.**
- **When the area of vision of the camera becomes dirty, covered or is damaged, the Lane Assist system function can be affected.**

Driving with the Lane Assist System

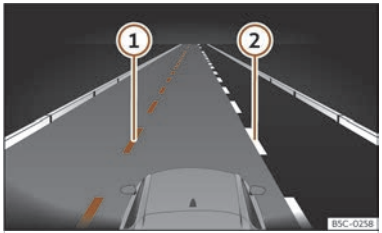


Fig. 148 On the instrument cluster display: indications of the lane assist system.

① Yellow line: The system intervenes assisting on the represented side.

② White line: Lane line detected. The system is ready to intervene on the displayed side. When the line is grey, the lane line is detected but the system is in a passive state or not available for intervention.

Depending on the equipment, additional details of the lane marking line currently detected by the camera, e.g. dashed road markings, can also be displayed on the instrument cluster display.

Control lamps

Lights up grey
Lane departure warning system switched to passive and not available for guidance.

Lights up green
Lane Assist system active and available.

Lights up yellow
The Lane Assist system is intervening by adjusting the steering.

Switching the lane assist system on or off

In some countries, the Lane Assist system is always activated when the ignition is switched on. It is switched on and off and displayed in the infotainment system's **Vehicle** menu and also in the driving assistants menu displayed on the instrument cluster, by pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Lane Assist system is designed to actively intervene as of approximately 65 km/h (40 mph) and if it has detected the lane boundaries (system status: active).

When a turn signal is activated, the system temporarily switches to a passive state in the indicated direction and is available for operation in the opposite direction.

An energetic rotation or rectification of the steering wheel by the driver causes the system to temporarily switch to a passive state.

OFF When Lane Assist is switched off, the yellow disconnection warning lamp lights up in the instrument cluster (depending on the country).

Note

If a system fault persists, Lane Assist may switch off automatically.

Driver intervention prompt

If the steering is not corrected manually, the system prompts the driver an indication on the instrument cluster display and audible warnings.

If no reaction is obtained from the driver, the system switches to a passive state.

Depending on the equipment, Emergency Assist is activated.

Regardless of the steering manoeuvres, an indication on the instrument cluster display and audible warnings also prompt the driver to drive in the middle of the lane if the steering correction lasts longer than reasonable.

Steering wheel vibration

The following situations may result in a steering wheel vibration:

- The lane ceases to be recognised during a sudden intervention in the steering by the system.

It is also possible to select steering wheel vibration in the **Vehicle** menu of the infotainment system. In this case, when a vehicle with Lane Assist switched on crosses over a detected lane marking, the steering wheel will vibrate.

Troubleshooting

The lane departure warning assistant is not available

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A relevant warning is also displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- There is a fault or a defect. Switch the engine off and on again.
- The field of vision of the camera is dirty. Clean the windscreen ››› page 395.
- The camera has decreased visibility due to accessories or adhesives.

If the camera's field of view is affected by dirt, snow, accessories, stickers or other obstructions, the following temporary message may appear on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an audible warning:

"Driver assist limited now. Front sensors without visibility."

See more information on this topic in the section *"Drive assist sensors and cameras"* ››› page 200.

The system behaves differently than expected

- The camera has been altered or damaged, e.g. because of damage caused to the windscreen. Check for visible damage.
- Do not mount objects on the steering wheel.

If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop.

Note

After switching on the ignition, it may take a few seconds before a fault is detected in the system.

Note

If lane assist is not available, Emergency Assist and Travel Assist are not available either.

Travel Assist

Introduction

Travel Assist combines adaptive cruise control (ACC) and the adaptive lane guidance function. Within the limitations of the system, the vehicle can maintain a distance from the vehicle in front that is preselected by the driver and remain in the preferred position within the lane.

Travel Assist uses the same sensors as Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Lane Assist. Therefore, carefully read the information about the ACC ››› page 209 and the Lane Assist ››› page 221 and take into account the limitations of the systems and the indications given in the information.

How to know if the vehicle is fitted with Travel Assist

The vehicle is fitted with Travel Assist if the Travel Assist option appears in the instrument cluster menu when the button on the multi-function steering wheel is pressed.

Speed range

Travel Assist regulates at speeds between 20 and 210 km/h (15 and 130 mph).

Driving with Travel Assist

Travel Assist automatically controls the accelerator pedal, the brakes and the steering. In addition, Travel Assist may, within its limitations, decelerate the vehicle until it stops behind another that stops, and automatically start again.

You can override assisted adjustment at all times.

Status display

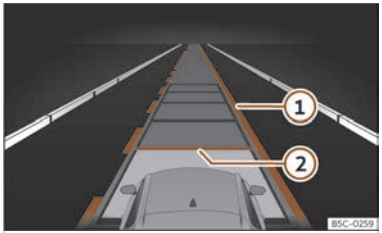


Fig. 149 On the instrument cluster display: display of active regulation (schematic representation).

① The colour of the lane markings indicates the status of the adaptive lane guidance function.

- *Green:* adaptive lane guidance function active.
- *Grey:* passive adaptive lane guidance function.

② Distance set.

Depending on the equipment, additional details, e. g. dashed road markings and vehicles in front, can also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

Control lamps indicate the status of the system on the instrument cluster display:

Indicator lamp green: Travel Assist active, adaptive cruise control and adaptive lane guidance function are active.

Partially green lamp: Travel Assist active, adaptive cruise control active and adaptive lane guidance function passive.

Grey lamp: Travel Assist deactivated, not regulating.

Driver intervention prompt

If you remove your hands from the steering wheel, after a few seconds the system asks you to take over the steering with an indication on the instrument cluster display and audible warnings.

If you do not react, Travel Assist is deactivated.

Depending on the equipment, Emergency Assist activates in its place.

⚠ WARNING

The Travel Assist smart technology cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and it only works within the limits of the system. If Travel assist is used negligently or involuntarily, it may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Bear in mind the system limitations and the indications regarding the control of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Lane Assist.**
- **Adapt your speed and safety distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Do not use Travel Assist when visibility is bad, on steep roads, on windy roads or in slippery conditions (e. g., snow, ice, rain or loose gravel), or on flooded roads.**
- **Do not use Travel Assist offroad or on roads where the surface is not firm. Travel Assist has been designed for use on paved roads only.**
- **Travel Assist does not react to people or animal or vehicles crossing your path or which approach you head-on in the same lane.**
- **Brake immediately if Travel Assist does not slow down enough.**
- **Brake immediately when instructed to do so on the instrument cluster display, or if Travel Assist does not reduce speed sufficiently.**
- **Brake when the vehicle continues to move forward without it being desired after an indication to brake.**
- **If possible, do not wear gloves while driving. The system could interpret this as no driving activity.**
- **If driver intervention is requested on the instrument cluster display, immediately resume control of the vehicle.**
- **Keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times, to ensure you always have control over the steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle in its own lane.**
- **Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself.**

Operating Travel Assist

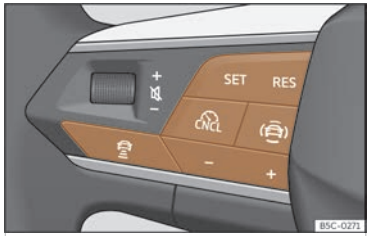


Fig. 150 Left side of the multifunction steering wheel

Switch on and start regulation

The Travel Assist function is activated via the driving assistance menu displayed on the instrument cluster.

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
2. Then select the **Travel Assist** option from the menu.

Depending on the driving situation, the vehicle switches to the following system statuses in Travel Assist:

- If the ACC was already regulating, Travel Assist maintains the current speed and the preset distance to the vehicle in front.

When lane markings are detected, the vehicle is also kept in the lane by steering movements.

- If ACC was not already regulating, Travel Assist remains selected but in a passive status (not regulating).

Press the **SET** button.

Travel Assist switches to the active system status, depending on the driving situation.

The indicator lamp for the driving situation lights up on the instrument cluster display. A message is also displayed.

Interrupting regulation

1. Briefly press the button .

   OR: press the brake pedal.

   The set distance remains saved.

Switch to ACC or speed limiter

1. Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.
2. Then select the **ACC** or **Limiter** option from the menu.

   The vehicle switches from Travel Assist to the ACC or speed limiter system status corresponding to the driving situation.

Making other adjustments

All other aspects of Travel Assist are controlled like the ACC.

Using the lane change assist

Lane Change Assist uses the same sensor system as Side Assist. Therefore, read the information on Side Assist ››› page 229 carefully and observe the limits of the system and the notes that it displays.

Activating the comfort turn signal on a motorway, provided that the prerequisites are met and no vehicles have been detected in the vicinity, provides assistance when the vehicle is changing lanes.

Prerequisites

Lane change assist is only available, depending on the vehicle's equipment, when driving forwards on multi-lane motorways included in the Infotainment system's navigation data, and when travelling faster than 65 km/h.

Travel Assist must also be activated.

The **comfort turn signals** mode must first be activated in the infotainment system's vehicle settings menu ››› page 134.

Status display

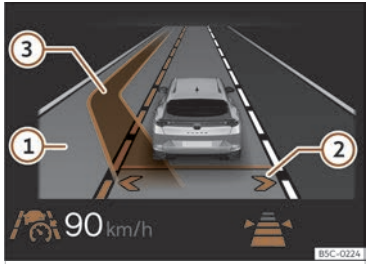


Fig. 151 On the instrument cluster display: lane change assist display (schematic representation).

① Adjoining lane highlighted: changing lanes is possible on the respective side.

② Arrows in the vehicle's own lane show that the assisted lane changing function is switched on.

- *Grey arrow:* changing lanes to the respective side of the lane is not possible.
- *White arrow:* changing lanes to the respective side of the lane is possible.

③ Green track on the overtaking lane: lane change is in progress.

Activating and deactivating lane change assist

You can activate and deactivate lane change assist in the Infotainment system.

1. Access the assistant menu.
2. Select Travel Assist.
3. Activate or deactivate lane change assist as a sub-function of Travel Assist.

Note

If a fault occurs in the system, lane change assist may automatically switch off or be interrupted during the lane change.

Activating lane change assist while driving

Once the prerequisites have been met and the programmed speed has been set with the **SET** button:

1. Press the **SET** button again.

   This activates lane assist. The arrows of your own lane on the instrument cluster display are grey ››› Fig. 151 ②

Changing lanes

If the system detects no objects in the detection field of the sensor system and an assisted lane change to an adjacent lane is possible, the corresponding lane is shown in the instrument

cluster display next to the driver's own lane. The arrow on the corresponding side of the lane is displayed in white >>> **Fig. 151** ②.

1. When the comfort turn signal is activated on the desired side, the vehicle changes lane. A message is also displayed.

When changing lanes, the vehicle automatically activates the turn signal on the corresponding side. Once the lane change is complete, the turn signal automatically switches off.

⚠ WARNING

The sensor system cannot reliably detect all objects in the surroundings and operates exclusively within the limits of the system. If you use the lane change assist irresponsibly, accidents and serious injuries can occur. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Before changing lanes, make sure it is safe to do so. In particular, rapidly approaching objects may not be detected in time.**
- **Keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times and be prepared to control your own speed and direction of travel.**

Turning off the lane change assist

- It turns off if the steering wheel is turned sharply.
- **OR:** by pressing the button.
- **OR:** by pressing the brake pedal.

Lane change assist is deactivated.

Troubleshooting

Travel Assist is not available or does not work as expected

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A relevant warning is also displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- There is a fault in the sensors. Check the causes and solutions described in the information about the ACC >>> **page 214** or the Lane Assist >>> **page 223**.
- There is a fault or a defect. Switch the engine off and on again.
- The system limits are exceeded.
- If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

Grip the steering wheel

The warning lamp lights up white and a message is then shown on the instrument cluster display.

- You released the steering wheel for a few seconds. Take hold of the steering wheel and take control of the vehicle.

Grip the steering wheel

The warning lamp lights up red and a message is shown on the instrument cluster display. Depending on the situation, an audio warning sounds or the steering wheel vibrates.

- You have let go of the steering wheel for a long time, or the system limits have been reached. Immediately take hold of the steering wheel and take control of the vehicle.

Travel Assist disconnects automatically

- There is a fault or a defect. Switch the engine off and on again.
- If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

Regulation is interrupted unexpectedly

- *Vehicles without lane departure warning:*

You have turned on the turn signal.

Assisted lane changing is interrupted or unavailable

A message about this is shown on the instrument cluster display.

- The vehicle has stopped detecting lane markings.
- You have let go of the steering wheel
- You are applying too much force to the steering wheel.

- You have turned on the turn signal too many times, or the turn signal lever is stuck.
- The driving speed is lower than around 65 km/h.
- The vehicle has detected objects in the vicinity that prevent an assisted lane change.
- You are not on a multi-lane motorway.

Emergency Assist

How it works

Emergency Assist can detect whether the driver is inactive and can automatically keep the car in its lane and stop it altogether if necessary.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the system may perform an assisted lane change, guiding the vehicle to the adjacent lane and even stopping it on the shoulder, based on nearby traffic conditions, vehicle speed, and road type.

This way the system can actively help avoid an accident or reduce its consequences.

Emergency Assist uses the same sensors as Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Lane Assist and Side Assist. Therefore, carefully read the information about ACC ››› page 209, Lane Assist ››› page 221 and Side Assist ››› page 229 and take into account the limitations of the systems and the indications given in the information.

Emergency assist always available after the ignition has been switched on and is activated if the following conditions are met:

- Travel Assist or Lane Assist is switched on.
- The system has detected at least one lane boundary to the left or right of the vehicle.

Note

If emergency assist is faulty, it may switch off automatically.

Note

If Lane Assist is unavailable, Emergency Assist is also unavailable.

Driver intervention prompt

If Emergency Assist detects that the driver is not actively doing anything, he or she is prompted to take control of the vehicle by audio warnings and a brief application of the brake. In addition, a warning is shown on the instrument cluster display and the volume of the infotainment system is lowered.

Depending on the equipment, the driver's seat belt is tightened at the same time.

System intervention

If the driver does not respond, the Emergency Assist system is activated. The following control lamp lights up on the instrument cluster display:

The system is regulating, lane guidance is activated.

The system is regulating, passive lane guidance.

You can cancel the adjustment at any time by moving the steering wheel, over-accelerating or braking.

While the emergency assistant is in operation, other road users are warned as follows:

- The hazard warning lights are switched on soon after.
- The horn sounds (depending on the speed).
- If the system performs an assisted lane change, the corresponding turn signal will activate.

The following happens as soon as the vehicle stops:

- The electronic parking brake and gear shift position **P** are engaged.
- All doors are unlocked.
- The vehicle interior lighting comes on.
- Depending on the features, an emergency call (eCall) is made.

⚠ WARNING

The Emergency Assist smart technology cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics; it only works within the limits of the system. The driver is responsible for driving the vehicle.

- **Adapt your speed and safety distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Emergency Assist cannot always avoid accidents or serious injuries by itself.**
- **If the radar sensor or the camera are covered or have been altered or damaged, the system may inappropriately apply the brakes or intervene in the steering.**
- **The Emergency Assist does not react to people or animal or vehicles crossing your path or which approach you head-on in the same lane.**

⚠ WARNING

If Emergency Assist intervenes inopportunely, serious accidents and injuries may occur.

- **If the vehicle behaves differently than expected, interrupt the intervention of the Emergency Assist by over-accelerating, braking or moving the steering wheel.**
- **Do not use Travel Assist or Lane Assist. Have the system checked by a specialised workshop.**

Troubleshooting

SOS Emergency Assist not available

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A relevant warning is also displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- There is a fault or a defect. Turn the drive system off and on again.
- If the problem persists, switch off the Emergency Assist and go to a specialised workshop.

Lane departure warning (Side Assist)

Introduction

The lane departure warning uses radar sensors to monitor the areas behind the vehicle >>> page 6. The system does this by measuring the vehicle's distance from other vehicles and its speed differential. The lane departure warning will not work at speeds of less than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph).

Lane width is not detected individually, but is rather pre-configured in the system. Thus if you are driving in wide lanes or in between two lanes, the indications may be incorrect. Furthermore, the system can detect vehicles driving in the lane next to you (if there are any), and can also detect stationary objects such as dividers, and thus give an incorrect indication.

Trailer mode

Side assist is automatically deactivated and cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted tow-bar is electrically connected to a trailer or similar device.

As soon as the driver starts to drive with a trailer connected electrically to the vehicle, a message is displayed on the instrument cluster display indicating that side assist is switched off. Once the vehicle trailer has been disengaged, side assist will return to the initial state prior to the moment the trailer was electrically connected.

If the tow-bar is not factory fitted, side assist should be switched off manually when driving with a trailer.

Physical limitations inherent to the system

In some situations the lane departure warning may not interpret the traffic situation correctly. I.e. in the following situations:

- on tight bends;
- in the case of lanes with different widths;
- in areas with significant gradient changes;
- in adverse weather conditions;
- in the case of special constructions to the side of the vehicle, e.g., high or irregular dividers.

⚠ WARNING

The smart technology incorporated into Side Assist cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics; it only works within the limits of the system. Accidents and severe injury may occur if Side Assist is used negligently or involuntarily. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Keep your hands on the wheel at all times to be ready to intervene in the steering at any time.**
- **Pay attention to the control lamps that may come on in the external interior mirrors and on the instrument cluster, and follow any instructions they may give.**
- **The lane departure warning could react to any special constructions that might be present to the sides of the vehicle, e.g. high or irregular dividers. This may cause erroneous warnings.**
- **Never use the lane departure warning on unpaved roads. The lane departure warning has been designed for use on paved roads.**
- **Always pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings.**
- **The control lamps of the lane departure warning may have limited functionality due to solar radiation.**

Note

If Side Assist does not work as described in this chapter, stop using it and contact a specialised workshop.

Driving with Side Assist

Fig. 152 Control lamp of the lane departure warning.

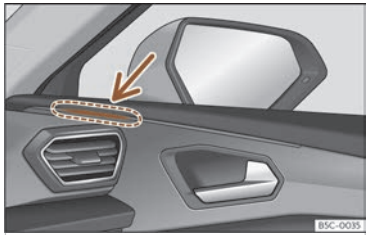


Fig. 153 Control lamp of the lane departure warning.

Connecting and disconnecting

Side Assist can be switched on and off by accessing the **Assistants** menu in the infotainment system.

Additionally it can be switched on and off by accessing the **Assistants** menu on the instrument cluster.

When the lane departure warning is ready to operate, the indications in the control lamps will turn on briefly as confirmation.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last adjustment in the system will remain active.

Light indication

The control lamp provides an indication on the corresponding side regarding the traffic situation behind the vehicle, if it is deemed to be critical. The control lamp on the left-hand side

indicates the traffic situation to the rear left of the vehicle, and the control lamp on the right-hand side indicates the traffic situation to the rear right of the vehicle .

Keep the warning lamps zone of the lane departure warning free of stickers or similar objects that may interfere with your visibility.

It lights up
It turns on once briefly: the lane departure warning is activated and ready to operate, i.e. when activating the system.
It lights up continuously: the lane departure warning has detected a vehicle in the blind spot.

Flashes
A vehicle has been detected in the adjacent lane and the turn signal has been switched on in the direction of the detected vehicle.
For vehicles that are also equipped with Lane Assist >>> **page 221**, a warning to switch lanes will also appear even though the turn signal has not been switched on (Lane Assist “Plus”).

The control lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should turn off after approximately 2 seconds. This is the time taken for the function check.

If there are no indications from the control lamp of the lane departure warning, this means that the lane departure warning has not detected any other vehicles at the rear area.

When the exterior lighting is low, the brightness of the control lamps dimmed. The user can modify the intensity of the control lamps with up to 5 levels in the infotainment system menu.

Lane assist Plus.

The Lane Assist Plus function can be used by activating the **Lane Assist** >>> **page 221** and **Side Assist** functions. In this case its functions are expanded as described below.

If the driver initiates a lane change manoeuvre in a potential critical situation:

- The lamp flashes on the corresponding side even though the turn signal has not been activated.
- The steering wheel vibrates to warn the driver of the risk of collision.
- torque is applied to correct the steering and return the vehicle to its lane.

Driving situations

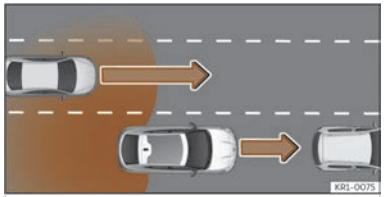


Fig. 154 Overtaking with traffic behind the vehicle.

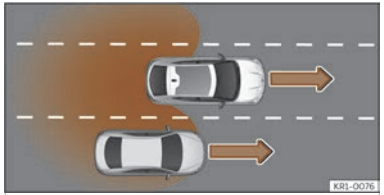


Fig. 155 Overtaking in the central lane and then joining the right lane.

In the following situations, an indication will be displayed by the control lamp >>> **Fig. 152** , >>> **Fig. 153** (arrow):

- When being overtaken by another vehicle
››› Fig. 154.

- When overtaking another vehicle
››› Fig. 155 with a speed difference of approx. 10 km/h (6 mph). If the vehicle is passing at a considerably higher speed, no indication will be displayed.

The faster the vehicle approaches, the sooner an indication will be displayed in the control lamp, because the lane departure warning takes into account the speed differential with other vehicles. Thus even though the distance from the other vehicle is identical, the indication will appear sooner in some cases and later in others.

Parking and manoeuvring

Park the vehicle

Parking

When parking your vehicle, all legal requirements should be observed.

1. Connect the electronic parking brake ››› page 234.
2. *Automatic transmission:* switch on the parking lock by pressing button **P**.
3. Stop the engine and turn off the ignition. Turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering lock.
4. *Manual gearbox:* engage first gear on flat ground and slopes, or even reverse gear on hills, and release the clutch pedal.
5. On slopes, turn the steering wheel so that if the parked vehicle were to start moving, it would steer toward the kerb.
6. Exit the vehicle ››› ⚠. Watch out for other road users!
7. Take all vehicle keys with you and lock it.

To avoid damage or hazardous situations, always park the vehicle on a suitable parking surface ››› ⓘ.

Rear seat warning

The function depends on the vehicle's equipment.

When the ignition is switched off, a text message in the infotainment system reminds you not to leave any passengers in the rear seats ››› ⚠.

If a rear door was used before the trip, a text message is also displayed on the instrument cluster and an audible warning may sound. This warning can be activated/deactivated in the infotainment system menu **Settings > Screen settings > Rear seat warning**.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is parked incorrectly, it could roll away, even on gentle slopes. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **When parking, always carry out the operations in the stipulated order.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electronic parking brake is engaged.**

⚠ WARNING

If children, people who may need assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries can occur.

- **Never leave children, people who may need assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle. They could operate the gear selector and release the electronic parking brake. The vehicle could be set in motion.**
- **Never leave children, people who may need assistance, or animals in the vehicle. Depending on the season, very high or low temperatures can be reached inside a closed vehicle.**
- **Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle.**

ⓘ NOTICE

The presence of irregularities on the ground, sand or mud can cause damage to the vehicle and mean that it cannot be parked properly.

- **Always park the vehicle on firm and flat ground.**

NOTICE

Components on the underside of the vehicle, such as bumpers, spoilers and running gear components, can be damaged when running over objects protruding from the ground.

- **Drive carefully when entering buildings, on ramps, driving over kerbs or fixed markings, and on descents.**

NOTICE

Avoid parking the vehicle where the hot exhaust system could ignite inflammable materials, such as dry grass, low bushes, spilt fuel or flammable materials.

Electronic parking brake

Using the electronic parking brake

Fig. 156 Centre console, lower part: electronic parking brake button.

Connecting

The electronic parking brake can be activated whenever the vehicle is at a standstill, even when the ignition is switched off. Activate it whenever you leave or park the vehicle.

- Pull and hold the button ››› **Fig. 156**.

The parking brake is on when the red indicator lamp on the instrument cluster and the button indicator lamp turns on.

- Release the button.

Switching off

- Switch the ignition on.
- Press the button ››› **Fig. 156**. At the same time step hard on the brake pedal or, if the engine is running, press the accelerator pedal slightly.
- The indicator lamp on button and the red indicator lamp on the instrument cluster turn off.

Automatic disconnection when moving off

The electronic parking brake automatically disconnects when moving off in any of the following situations, if the driver's door is closed and the driver's seatbelt is buckled:

- *Vehicles with an automatic gearbox:* A gear range is engaged or switched to another one and the accelerator pedal is lightly pressed.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox: Fully depress the clutch pedal before moving off and gently depress the accelerator.

- To facilitate certain manoeuvres, there are exceptions that allow the parking brake to disconnect automatically without the driver's seatbelt being buckled.

The parking brake can be prevented from being automatically released by continuously pulling up the switch when moving off.

The electronic parking brake is not disconnected until the button is released. This can facilitate starting off when a heavy load is towed ››› page 319.

Automatic application when exiting the vehicle incorrectly

In vehicles with automatic transmission, the electronic parking brake may be applied automatically if the system detects an improper attempt to exit the vehicle. For example:

- no seat presence detection,
- seat belt unfastened,
- door open.

The electronic parking brake also holds the vehicle in the neutral **N** position.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is left incorrectly, it could roll away. This could lead to accidents, serious injury and property damage.

- **When parking the vehicle, always perform the appropriate operations in the indicated order** ››› **page 233, *Parking*.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electronic parking brake is applied and that the control lamp (P) next to the gear selector is red on the instrument cluster.**

Protection against unintentional movement

If you do not want the electronic parking brake to be applied automatically, e.g. in a car wash or if you want to push or tow the vehicle, the vehicle's ability to roll can be maintained .

Deactivate:

With the vehicle stationary, press down the brake pedal and select the **N** position on the gear selector.

- Confirm the message **Deactivate roll-away protection** in the infotainment system.
- **OR:** open the vehicle settings in the infotainment system **> Vehicle > Brakes > Deactivate the "*Roll-away protection function*"**.

Activate:

- Press the (P) button ››› **Fig. 156**. The electronic parking brake is activated.

ⓘ NOTICE

The vehicle may be able to roll even when the ignition is switched off.

Automatic connection when the ignition is turned off

This function can be deactivated through the Infotainment system.

In vehicles with manual transmission, the electronic parking brake is activated automatically when the ignition is turned off.

Emergency brake function

Only use the emergency brake function in an emergency, if the vehicle cannot be stopped by pressing the brake pedal ››› ⚠!

- Pull and hold the (P) button. The vehicle will brake sharply. At the same time, an audio warning will be heard.
- To stop the braking process, release the button or press the accelerator.

When the **ESC Sport** or **ESC OFF** mode is selected, ESC will reactivate to assist the driver during braking. Depending on the model version, the ESC will either switch back to its previous disconnected state or will remain on.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the electronic parking brake can cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Never use the electronic parking brake to stop the vehicle, unless it is an emergency. The braking distance is considerably longer. Always use the brake pedal.**
- **Never accelerate from the engine when a gear range or a gear is engaged and the engine is running. The vehicle could start moving even when the electronic parking brake is engaged.**

ⓘ NOTICE

To prevent the vehicle from unintentionally moving when parking it, first apply the electronic parking brake and then remove your foot from the brake pedal.

Troubleshooting

(!) There is a defect in the electronic parking brake

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

Visit a CUPRA dealer or other specialist workshop.

The electronic parking brake does not release.

The 12-volt battery is discharged.

- Use the jump start >>> page 340.

The electronic parking brake makes noises

- When the electronic parking brake is applied and released, noises may be heard.
- The system performs automatic and audible checks sporadically in the parked vehicle if some time elapses without the electronic parking brake being used.

Auto Hold function

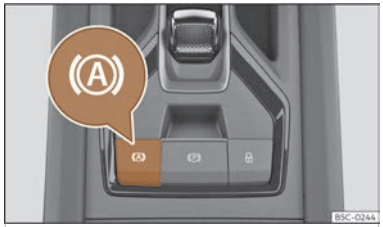


Fig. 157 In the lower part of the centre console: Auto Hold function button.

The Auto Hold function holds the vehicle at a standstill and prevents it from moving without it being necessary to keep the brake pedal depressed.

AUTO HOLD When the Auto Hold function is switched on, the lamp on the instrument cluster lights up grey.

AUTO HOLD When the Auto Hold function is active, the control lamp on the instrument cluster lights up green.

Ⓐ The control lamp of the Ⓐ button >>> Fig. 157 remains on when the Auto Hold function is connected.

Requirements

- If the system has detected the driver's presence based on various signals such as: seatbelt, driver's door, driver's seat occupied and others.
- The engine is running.

Connecting and disconnecting

Press the Auto Hold button >>> ⚠. The control lamp on the button turns on when the Auto Hold function is switched on. The function is now available to be activated. The lamp on the button goes out when the Auto Hold function is switched off.

Switching on and off automatically

If the Auto Hold function was switched on with the Auto Hold button before switching off the ignition, the function will remain on after the ignition is re-engaged.

If the Auto Hold function was not switched on, it will remain off next time the ignition is switched on.

The Auto Hold function is automatically turned off if the following conditions are met:

1. If any of the requirements of the function are no longer met.
2. If the engine runs erratically or has any anomaly.
3. If the engine stalls.
4. *Automatic gearbox:* If any of the tyres have only minimal contact with the ground, e.g., if the axles are crossed.

Activation and deactivation

The Auto Hold function activates automatically if the following conditions are met (all points must be met **at the same time**):

1. The function is switched on
2. The vehicle is brought to a complete standstill with the brake pedal on a flat surface or on a slope.
3. The engine rotates "correctly".

The Auto Hold function deactivates automatically if the following conditions are met:

1. The car moves off again:

   Automatic gearbox: by pressing the accelerator.

   Manual gearbox: by lifting your foot off the clutch pedal and pressing the accelerator (provided that a gear is engaged).
2. The function is switched off with the actions seen in the previous sections.

⚠ WARNING

The smart technology of the Auto Hold cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and it only operates within the limits of the system. Never allow the enhanced convenience of the Auto Hold function to induce you to take any risk that compromises safety.

- **Never leave the vehicle running with the Auto Hold function switched on.**
- **The Auto Hold function cannot always keep the vehicle stopped on an uphill, or brake it sufficiently on a downhill, e.g. on slippery or icy surfaces.**

NOTICE

Always deactivate the Auto Hold function before entering an automatic car wash facility. Failure to do so could cause damage due to the automatic application of the parking brake.

Note

After connecting the 12-volt battery, drive for a short distance to reset the Auto Hold function to operate correctly.

General information on parking systems

Automatic brake operation

The automatic braking feature of a parking system is used to reduce the danger of collision when an obstacle is detected during a parking manoeuvre.

Braking functions

Depending on the equipment, the following systems are available:

- Park assist plus manoeuvre braking function >>> page 239.
- Rear cross traffic alert emergency brake function >>> page 256.
- Park assist emergency brake function >>> page 243.
- Trailer Assist manoeuvre braking function >>> page 254

Infotainment system lamps

White lamp: system activated, the system brakes when it detects an obstacle in the path.

Coloured lamp: system deactivated, the system does not brake when it detects an obstacle although the sensors still detect it.

Requirements

- The vehicle is moving between approx. 3 km/h and 8 km/h when manoeuvring
- A parking system is switched on.

The brakes are not automatically operated when park assist is switched on automatically while moving forward.

What happens in the event of automatic braking?

If there is an obstacle, the system brakes the vehicle to a standstill and keeps it stationary for approx. 2 seconds. **Press the brake!**

Activate

- Automatic braking is activated when the driver switches a parking system on.

Deactivating

- The automatic brake operation function deactivates when a park assist system is switched off.
- **OR:** to temporarily deactivate the manoeuvre braking function, press the ⚙ function button on the park assist screen and change the setting.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow the automatic braking operations of park assist systems to lead you to take any risk that compromises safety. In certain situations, the automatic braking intervention may only work in a limited way or not work at all. Collisions with obstacles can injure people and damage the vehicle. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Pay attention and do not rely solely on park assist systems.**
- **Always be prepared to brake and control the steering yourself.**
- **Do not take any risks that compromise safety.**
- **Act in accordance with the warnings and driving recommendations of the parking systems.**

Note

- **Switch off the parking system if the automatic brakes operate excessively, e.g. when driving off-road.**
- **After the park assist's manoeuvre braking function has braked the vehicle, it deactivates for the next 5 metres of movement in the same direction, and becomes active again after changing gear or changing the position of the gear selector.**

Troubleshooting

The parking system behaves differently than expected

There can be several causes:

- The system requirements are not met.
- The sensors or the camera are dirty or have ice on them ››› page 396.
- The camera lens is not clean and the camera image is not clear ››› page 396.
- Some noise sources, such as a jackhammer or a cobblestone surface can interfere with the ultrasound signal.
- The vehicle has some type of damage in the sensor or camera area, e.g. due to a parking impact.
- The sensor detection zone or field of view of the camera are blocked by an accessory, e.g. a bike rack.
- Changes have been made to the paintwork or structural modifications in the sensor or camera area, e.g. at the front of the vehicle or to the running gear.

Also take into account the messages displayed on the infotainment system display.

Sensor or camera without visibility, or the parking system has been switched off

If a sensor fails, that sensor zone is permanently switched off. The affected sensor zone may be displayed on the infotainment system with a **!** symbol and a greyed-out graphic segment. If necessary, the parking system switches off the affected zone.

If the park assist is not working properly, a continuous audible signal sounds for a few seconds when it is switched on. If applicable, a message to this effect is displayed on the instrument cluster display

- Check if one of the causes indicated above has occurred.
- Once the source of the problem has been eliminated, the system may be reconnected.
- If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop.

Park Distance Control Plus (Park Pilot)

Description

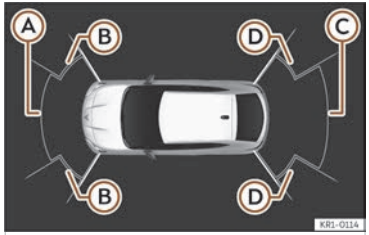


Fig. 158 Park assist view on the Infotainment system display.

Park assist plus assists the driver by giving visual and audio warnings about obstacles detected in front of and behind the vehicle.

The bumpers are fitted with sensors. When an obstacle is detected, it is indicated by audible signals and in the Infotainment system ››› **Fig. 158**.

When moving close to an obstacle, it is possible to know if the obstacle is in front of the vehicle or behind it according to the sound frequency.

The approximate measurement range of the sensors is:

Ⓐ 1.20 m

Ⓑ 0.90 m

Ⓒ 1.60 m

Ⓓ 0.90 m

As you approach the obstacle, the frequency of the audible signals will increase. The signal will sound continuously at around 0.30 m: Stop the vehicle!

If the separation is maintained, the warning volume is reduced after about 2.5 seconds.

Error messages

If a an error or fault message is displayed on the instrument cluster in Park Assist, there is a fault.

If the fault doesn't disappear before switching off the ignition, it will not be indicated next time the park assist is connected.

If a rear sensor is faulty, only the obstacles in the front area are detected. If a front sensor is faulty, only the obstacles in the rear area are displayed. The symbol ⚠ is displayed.

We recommend taking the vehicle to a specialised workshop to have the fault repaired.

Trailer mode

On vehicles with a factory-fitted trailer hitch, when the trailer is connected, the rear sensors will not activate when reverse gear is engaged or button P⚠ is pressed in the Infotainment system (🗀 > **Assistants**). Therefore, any objects behind or to the side of the vehicle will not be indicated on the screen and no audible signals will sound.

The screen will only display objects detected at the front, and the vehicle's trajectory will be hidden.

Park assist settings

The indications and audible signals are set in the Infotainment system: function button 🗀 > **Assistants** > **Parking** > **P** > **Settings**.

- **Automatic activation:** On/off
- **Front volume:** Volume in the front and rear area.
- **Rear volume:** Volume in the rear area.
- **Reduce volume:** When Park Assist is switched on, the volume of the audio source will be reduced, depending on the selected option.

⚠ WARNING

- Always pay attention, by looking directly, to traffic and the area around the vehicle. Assistance systems are not a replacement for driver awareness. Responsibility always lies with the driver.
- The sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not detected. Pay special attention to children and animals.
- Always keep the surroundings in sight: use the mirrors for additional help.

NOTICE

Park assist plus functions can be affected by various factors which may cause damage:

- Under certain circumstances, the system does not detect or display certain objects:
  - Chains, trailer draw bars, bars, fences, posts and thin trees.
  - Objects that are located above the sensors, such as protrusions in a wall.
  - Objects with certain surfaces or structures, such as wire mesh fences or powder snow.
- Certain surfaces of objects and garments do not reflect the ultrasound sensors' signals. The system cannot detect these objects or people wearing such clothes correctly.
- Sensor signals may be affected by external sound sources. This may prevent them from detecting people or objects.
- If the system warns you of the proximity of a low obstacle, please note that after being detected by the system, the obstacle in question may disappear from the measurement sensors as the vehicle moves closer, and the system will no longer warn of its presence. In certain circumstances, objects such as high kerbs that could damage the underside of the vehicle are not detected.
- If the parking distance warning system is ignored, the vehicle could suffer considerable damage.
- Damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arch and vehicle underbody can modify the orientation of the sensors. This can affect the park assist function.

  Have the function checked by a specialised workshop.
- A number plate or number plate holder with dimensions that exceed the space for the number plate, or a curved or deformed number plate can cause false detections or a loss of sensor visibility.

Note

- The Infotainment System display has a slight time delay.
- In certain situations, the system can give a warning even though there is no obstacle in the detected area:
  - Rough or cobbled surfaces or surfaces with long grass.
  - External ultrasound sources, such as other vehicles equipped with ultrasound systems.
  - Heavy rain or snow, hail or dense exhaust gases.
  - If the number plate is not properly secured to the surface of the bumper.
  - Gradient changes.
- In order to guarantee good operation, keep the sensors clean, free of snow and ice, and do not cover them with stickers or other objects.
- If you use high-pressure or steam equipment for cleaning, do not apply it directly, unless you do so very briefly, and always keep a distance of more than 10 cm away.
- Fitting certain accessories to the front of the vehicle, such as a plate holder with advertising, may interfere with the operation of the Park Assist.
- We recommend that you practice parking in an area without traffic.

- **The volume and tone of the signals and indications can be changed.**
- **Please observe information on towing a trailer.**

Operating Park Assist Plus

Switching on and off manually

- Press button P% in the infotainment system (🚗 > **Assistants** > **Parking assist** > **Park assist**).

Automatic activation

- Select reverse gear.
- **OR:** if you drive forward at a speed of less than 15 km/h (9 mph) and you encounter an obstacle, it is detected when it is optically approx. less than 95 cm. away, or acoustically approx. 50 cm. away. If the automatic connection is activated, a reduced display is shown.
- **OR:** if the vehicle moves back a certain distance (between approx. 10 and 20 cm approx depending on whether or not an obstacle is detected).

When the **Park Assist Plus** connects automatically, a diagram of the vehicle and the segments will appear on screen. This function will be available unless the user has deactivated it.

It only operates every time the speed drops below 15 km/h (9 mph) for the first time.

Automatic activation of park assist can be switched on and off in the infotainment system:

- Switch the ignition on.
- In the infotainment system select 🚗 > **Assistants** > **Parking** > **Park assist**.
- Check the **Automatic activation** box.

If activated automatically, an audible sound warning will only be given when obstacles in front are at a distance of less than 50 cm. approx.

If it is switched off using the P% button in the infotainment system, one of the following actions must be taken for it to reactivate automatically:

- Switch off the ignition and switch it on again.
- **EITHER:** drive forward at over approx. 15 km/h (9 mph).
- **OR:** activate or deactivate the parking lock button **P**.
- **OR:** switch the automatic activation on and off in the Infotainment system.

Automatic disconnection

- Drive forward at 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.
- **OR:** press the parking lock button **P**.

Temporary mute

- Press the 🔇 function button on the infotainment screen.
- **OR:** activate the electronic parking brake.

Change from reduced view to full view

- Engage the reverse gear if your vehicle is equipped with a reversing camera.
- Press the car icon on the reduced view
- **OR:** if the vehicle moves back a certain distance (between approx. 10 and 20 cm approx depending on whether or not an obstacle is detected).

Switch to the reverse assist image (Rear View Camera "RVC")

- Select reverse gear.
- **OR:** press the **RVC** button on the Infotainment System display.[1)]

A short confirmation signal will be heard and the button symbol will light up when the system is switched on.

NOTICE

Park assist plus only connects automatically when driving very slowly. If driving style is not adapted to the circumstances, an accident and serious injury or damage may be caused.

1) The RVC button will only be displayed when reverse gear is engaged.

Visual indication segments

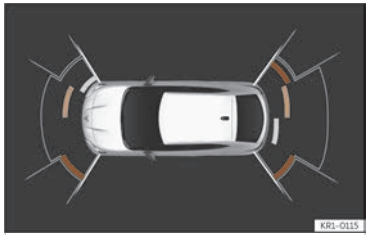


Fig. 159 Park assist view on the Infotainment system display.

The optical indication of the segments works as follows:

- **Grey segments**: the obstacle is more than approx. 30 cm away from the path or in the direction opposite to travel. They are also displayed when the electronic parking brake is activated.
- **Yellow segments**: the obstacles lie on the vehicle's path and are at a distance of less than approx. 30 cm away.
- **Red segments**: obstacles are less than approx. 30 cm away.

A guiding track will indicate the anticipated forward or backward trajectory, depending on the gear that is engaged.

If an obstacle is located in the vehicle's way, the corresponding audible warning will sound.

When the penultimate segment is displayed, the vehicle has reached the collision zone. In the collision zone, obstacles are shown in red (including those outside the trajectory). Stop the vehicle! ››› ⚠ in *Description* on page 240

If the car is fitted with the Top View Camera system, Park Assist visual guidance will appear in accordance with the view selected in the Top View Camera system.

Rear park assist

Description

Rear park assist is a visual and audible assistant that warns of obstacles located behind the vehicle.

There are sensors integrated in the rear bumper. When they detect an obstacle, you are alerted by audible and visible warnings on the Infotainment system.

If the Top View Camera system is installed, the rear park assist will issue an audible warning about objects near the rear of the vehicle, and the Top View Camera image will be available on the infotainment screen, giving a real image of the objects around the car.

Particularly make sure that the sensors are not covered by adhesives, residues, dirt and the like, as this could affect the system's operation. Cleaning instructions ››› page 396.

The approximate measurement range of the rear sensors is:

- Side area: 0.60 m
- Central area: 1.60 m

As you approach the obstacle, the frequency of the audible signals will increase. The signal will sound continuously at around 0.30 m: Stop the vehicle! ››› ⚠ on page 240.

If the separation is maintained, the warning volume is reduced after about 2.5 seconds.

Turning on Park assist

- Select reverse gear.

Turning off Park assist

- Drive forward at 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.
- **EITHER:** use the selector lever to select **N** or **D**, or press the parking lock button **P**.

Park assist settings

The indications and audible signals are set in the Infotainment system: function button 🚗 > **Assistants** > **Parking** > **P** > **Settings**.

- **Rear volume:** Volume in the rear area.
- **Reduce volume:** When Park Assist is switched on, the volume of the audio source will be reduced, depending on the selected option.

Error messages

If a an error or fault message appears on the instrument cluster in Park assist, there is a fault.

If the fault doesn't disappear before switching off the ignition, it will not be indicated next time the park assist is connected.

We recommend taking the vehicle to a specialised workshop to have the fault repaired.

Towing device

In vehicles factory fitted with a towing device, when the trailer is connected, the park assist will not be activated when reverse gear is engaged.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in *Description* on page 240.

Intelligent Park Assist (IPA) automatic parking system

Introduction

The automatic parking system is an additional function of ParkPilot ››› page 239 and helps the driver find a suitable parking space from among the following types:

- reverse parking in suitable perpendicular and parallel spaces,
- park driving forwards in suitable perpendicular spaces,
- exit a parking space driving forwards from a parallel space,
- park in a suitable space driving forwards at an angle to partially enter the selected parking space. The system will centre the vehicle in the parking space,
- finish reverse parking into a space in which you have attempted to park manually by partially entering with the rear of the vehicle.

In vehicles with an automatic parking system and factory infotainment system, the front, rear and side areas are represented, and the position of obstacles is shown relative to the vehicle.

The automatic parking system is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system and its use requires special attention by the driver ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The technology used in the automatic parking system has a series of limitations inherent to the system itself and the use of ultrasonic sensors. The use of Park Assist should never tempt you to take any risk that may compromise safety. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Any accidental movement of the vehicle could result in serious injury.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Certain surfaces of objects and garments do not reflect the ultrasound sensors' signals. The system cannot detect, at least correctly, these objects or people wearing such clothes.**
- **Ultrasound sensor signals may be affected by external sound sources. In certain circumstances this may prevent them from detecting people or objects.**
- **The ultrasound sensors may have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not detected.**
- **Monitor the area around the vehicle at all times, since the ultrasound sensors do not detect small children, animals or certain objects in all situations.**

⚠ WARNING

Quick turns of the steering wheel when parking or exiting a parking space with the automatic parking system can cause serious injury.

- **Do not hold the steering wheel during manoeuvres to park or exit a parking space until the system requests it. Doing so disables the system during the manoeuvre, resulting in the parking being cancelled.**

NOTICE

- In certain circumstances, the ultrasonic sensors do not detect objects such as trailer hitches, bars, fences, posts or thin trees, or an open (or opening) rear lid, which could damage the vehicle.
- Retrofitting of certain accessories to the vehicle, such as a bicycle rack, may interfere with the operation of the automatic parking system and cause damage.
- The automatic parking system uses as a reference parked vehicles, kerbs and other objects. Make sure that the tyres and wheels are not damaged while parking. If necessary, interrupt the parking manoeuvre on time to avoid damaging the vehicle.
- The ultrasound sensors on the bumper may be damaged or shifted in the event of a collision, for example, when entering or exiting a parking space.
- If you use high-pressure or steam equipment to clean the ultrasound sensors, do not apply it directly unless very briefly and always from a distance of more than 10 cm.
- A registration plate or plate holder on the front that is larger than the space for the registration plate, or a registration plate that is curved or warped can cause:
  - False detections.
  - The sensors to lose visibility.
  - Cancellation of the parking manoeuvre or defective parking.
- If one of the ultrasonic sensors is damaged, the area corresponding to that group of sensors (front or rear) is deactivated and cannot be activated until the fault is corrected. However, you can still use the sensors of the other bumper as per usual. If there is a fault in the system, consult a specialist workshop. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

Note

- In order to guarantee good system operation, keep the ultrasound sensors of the bumper clean, free of snow or ice, and do not cover them with stickers or other objects.
- Certain sources of noise, such as rough asphalt or paving stones and the noise of other vehicles can induce the automatic parking system or ParkPilot to give erroneous warnings. The presence of metal objects can also affect the manoeuvre.
- To become familiar with the system and its functions, CUPRA recommends that you practice operating the automatic parking system in an area where there is not too much traffic or in a car park.

Description of the automatic parking system

The components of the automatic parking system are the ultrasonic sensors located in the front and rear bumpers, the P button to switch the system on and off and the messages on the infotainment system display.

Prerequisites for parking

- The traction control (TCS) must be switched on >>> page 196.
- Speed when passing next to the parking space: do not exceed approx. **50 km/h (31 mph)**.
- Keep a distance between **0.5 and 2.0 metres** when driving past the parking space.
- Space length (parallel parking): **vehicle length + 1 meter**.
- Space width (parking bay): **vehicle width + 1.1 meters**.

Requirements for leaving the parking space (only for parallel parking)

- The traction control (TCS) must be switched on >>> page 196.
- Space length: **length of the vehicle + 0.5 metres**.

Prematurely stopping or automatically interrupting the manoeuvres for parking or exiting a parking space

The automatic parking system interrupts the manoeuvres for parking or exiting a parking space in any of the following cases:

- Press button P in the infotainment system, **> Assistants > Parking > Automatic parking system**.
- The driver takes control of the steering wheel.
- The parking manoeuvre can involve up to 8 movements.
- The parking manoeuvre does not end within 6 minutes after activation of the automatic steering.
- There is a fault in the system (the system is temporarily unavailable).
- TCS is switched off.
- TCS or ESC intervene with regulation.
- A door or the luggage compartment is opened.
- The parking system encounters an unexpected obstacle.
- The parking system detects high rolling resistance, e.g. if there is an obstacle on the ground (stone, bump, kerb, etc.).

Special characteristics

The automatic parking system is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system. For example, it is therefore not possible to use it to enter or exit a parking space on sharp bends or on very steep hills.

After changing a wheel

If, after changing a wheel, the vehicle stops entering and exiting parking spaces correctly, the circumference of the new wheel may be different and the system may need to adapt to it. The adaptation is automatic and takes place during driving >>> ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 243.

Selecting a parking type

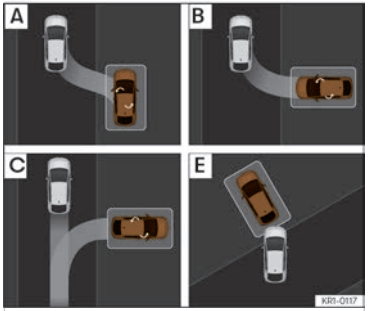


Fig. 160 On the infotainment system display: parking modes indication.

Automatic parking includes the following 5 types of parking:

A Reverse parallel parking.

B Reverse angle parking.

C Forward angle parking.

D Reverse parallel parking without driving past first: “Help me”.

E Forward or reverse parking in a parking bay without driving past first.

Selecting a parking type after passing in front of the space

After activating the automatic parking system and after detecting a parking space, the infotainment system display proposes a type of parking. The automatic parking system selects the parking type automatically. The selected type is shown on the infotainment system display ››› **Fig. 160**.

- The prerequisites for parking with the automatic parking system must be met ››› **page 244**.
- Press the P button in the infotainment system, > **Assistants**.
- When the system is switched on, the symbol P on the infotainment system display is highlighted. The selected type of parking is also displayed. You can change the type of parking on the infotainment system display.
- If there are more spaces available, another space can be selected by clicking on it on the infotainment system display.
- Follow the instructions displayed on the infotainment system display while paying attention to traffic and drive the vehicle past the parking space.

Reverse parallel parking without driving past first (type D)

With this type of parking D, press button P so that the system completes the parking that has already been started. The system will only switch on if sufficient progress has been made with the manoeuvre (the side sensor must be able to detect the reference vehicle). If it is impossible to successfully complete the manoeuvre that has been started, the system itself will drive out of the parking space before starting parking in a similar way to type A.

Special case of forward or reverse parking into a parking bay E without driving past first.

- The prerequisites for parking with the automatic parking system must be met ››› **page 244**.
- Move forward towards the parking space while paying attention to traffic and stop the vehicle with the front part partially inside the parking space.
- Press the P button once in the infotainment system, > **Assistants**.
- When the system is switched on, the symbol P on the infotainment system display is highlighted. The selected parking mode without a reduced view is also displayed.
- Let go of the steering wheel ››› ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 243.

Parking with the automatic parking system

The prerequisites have to be met to park with the automatic parking system ››› **page 244** and the parking mode has to be selected ››› **page 245**.

Parking

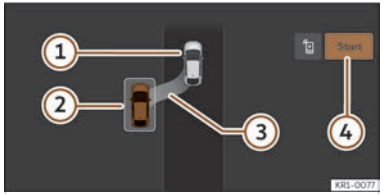


Fig. 161 On the infotainment system display: parallel parking position.

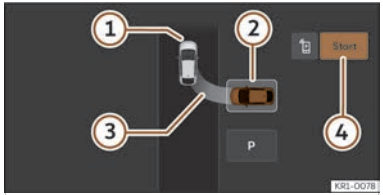


Fig. 162 On the infotainment system display: parking bay parking position.

>>> Fig. 161, >>> Fig. 162

① Your vehicle

② Parking space detected

③ Indication showing the proposed parking manoeuvre

④ Start parking manoeuvre

- Look at the display on the infotainment system's screen to see if the space has been detected as “appropriate” and if the correct position for parking has been reached >>> Fig. 161, >>> Fig. 162. Stop the vehicle and follow the instructions shown on the infotainment screen.
- Stop the vehicle, press the brake and, after a short pause, press the **Start** ④ button in the infotainment system.
- Let go of the steering wheel >>> ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 243.
- Please note the following message:

Parking the vehicle... Steering intervention active

- The automatic parking system will park autonomously by taking control of the steering wheel (transverse control of the vehicle) and control of the accelerator and brake pedals (longitudinal control of the vehicle).
- Once the manoeuvres have been completed, this is indicated by an audio and visual warning in the infotainment system. At this point the vehicle will be parked and immobilised (gear **P** activated) and will turn off.

Progress bars

Fig. 163 On the infotainment system display: progress bar

The progress bar ⑤ on the infotainment system display shows the relative distance to be covered as a symbol. The more complete the progress bar, the shorter the distance to complete the parking manoeuvre.

Fig. 164 On the Infotainment System display: parking space

Note

If the parking space is displayed with arrows on its sides, this indicates that it is possible to park in a different way in the same space by pressing on the highlighted space >>> Fig. 164.

Note

If the manoeuvre is terminated prematurely during parking, the result may not be the best.

Leaving a parking space with the automatic parking system (only for parallel parking)

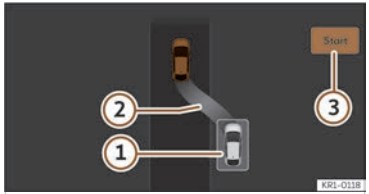


Fig. 165 On the infotainment system display: leaving a parallel parking space.

① Your vehicle

② Message giving the proposed manoeuvre to exit the parking space

Leaving a parking space (parallel parking)

The necessary conditions to exit a parking space with Park Assist have to be met ››› page 244.

- Press the P in the infotainment system: > **Assistants**. When the system is switched on, the symbol P on the infotainment system display is highlighted.
- Turn on the corresponding turn signal towards the road you will enter when exiting the parking space, and press the brake pedal.
- Tap the **Start** button (3) in the Infotainment system.
- Let go of the steering wheel ››› ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 243. Please note the following message:

Vehicle driving out of the parking space... Intervention in active steering.

- The automatic parking system will automatically perform the manoeuvres for getting the vehicle out of the parking space by taking control of the steering wheel (transverse control of the vehicle) and control of the accelerator and brake pedals (longitudinal control of the vehicle).
- The vehicle can be driven out of the parking space when a message to this effect is displayed in the infotainment system (**Vehicle out of the parking space. Take control of the vehicle**) and, if necessary, an audio signal sounds. Take control of the steering wheel while maintaining the steering angle set by the automatic parking system.
- Paying attention to the traffic and surroundings, exit the parking space.

Reverse Assist (Rear View Camera)

Introduction

A camera installed in the rear lid handle assists the driver with reverse parking or manoeuvring ››› page 203.

The camera image is viewed together with orientation lines projected on the Infotainment System display. Part of the bumper can be seen at the bottom, which can be used by the driver as a reference point.

Reverse assist modes

Depending on the equipment, the following modes are available:

- **Angle parking:** reverse parking perpendicular to the road.
- **Trailer towing assist function:** assistance with hitching a trailer.
- **Cross traffic:** monitors cross traffic.

Requirements

To park with reverse assist, the following requirements must be met:

- Do not exceed a speed of approx. **15 km/h (9 mph)**.
- Parking space width: **vehicle width + 0.15 m** (without counting the mirrors).

To display a real image, the following requirements must be met:

- The luggage compartment rear door is closed.
- The surroundings are on a flat surface.
- The vehicle should not be loaded very heavily at the rear.

⚠ WARNING

- **Reverse assist cannot precisely calculate the distance from obstacles and the limits of the system cannot be overcome, hence its negligent use may cause serious accidents and injuries if used without due care. The driver should be aware of his/her surroundings at all times to ensure safe driving.**
- **The camera lens expands and distorts the field of view and displays the objects on the screen in a way that is different from reality. Distance perception is also distorted.**

- **Due to the screen resolution or light conditions, some items may be blurry or not displayed at all. Take care with thin posts, fences, railings or trees that might not be seen on the screen and could damage the vehicle.**
- **Reverse assist has blind spots where it cannot see people or objects. Monitor the vehicle's surrounding area at all times.**
- **The system is not a replacement for driver awareness. Supervise the parking manoeuvre and the vehicle's surrounding area at all times.**
- **Do not be distracted from the traffic by looking at the screen.**
- **The images are only two-dimensional. Protruding objects or holes in the road, for example, are more difficult to detect or may not be seen at all.**
- **Vehicle load modifies the representation of the guide lines. The width represented by the lines decreases with vehicle load. Pay special attention to the surroundings when the inside of the vehicle or the luggage compartment are loaded.**
- **In the following situations, objects or other vehicles appear to be further away or closer than they actually are. Pay special attention:**
  - **If moving from a flat surface to a slope and vice-versa.**
  - **If the vehicle is heavily loaded.**
  - **When the vehicle approaches objects that are not on the ground surface or that protrude from it. These objects may be outside the camera angle when reversing.**

Note

- **It is important to take great care and pay special attention if the driver is not familiar with the system.**
- **The reverse assist reference lines disappear when the rear lid is open.**

Connecting and disconnecting

Connect the reverse assist

- With the ignition switched on, select reverse gear.
- **OR:** in the infotainment system select **> Driver assist > Park assist**.

Disconnect the reverse assist

- Drive forward at a speed of at least 15 km/h (9 mph).

Shown on the display

The system's functions and representations may vary depending on the equipment.

The assistant's image view changes when the factory-fitted tow hitch is electronically connected to a trailer >>> page 319.

Reverse assist functions and symbols

When the reverse assist is connected, you can make adjustments using the function buttons. Some adjustments are equipment-dependent.

Exit the current display

Switch to angle parking >>> page 250

Switch to the trailer hitching assistance function

Switch to cross traffic

Adjust the display: brightness, contrast and colour.

Switch to park assist >>> page 239

Display/hide the park assist view

Guide lines

Green horizontal lines: extension of the vehicle.

Yellow lines: vehicle path depending on the steering angle.

Assistance function for hitching a trailer

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, this function can be used to move the vehicle close to a tow bar.

Auxiliary lines are shown in the infotainment system.

Green lines: distance to the trailer hitch. The distance between the lines is approx. 0.30 m

Yellow line: pre-calculated direction of the trailer hitch depending on how the steering wheel is turned.

Cross traffic

This view helps to monitor traffic behind the vehicle and can be used, for example, when exiting garages or narrow exits.

Angle parking

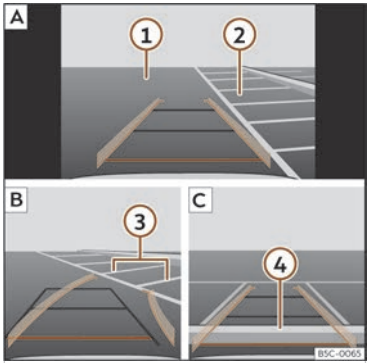


Fig. 166 Display on the infotainment system display: parking with reverse assist.

Key to >>> **Fig. 166**:

- A Find a parking space
- B Go to the selected parking space
- C Centre the vehicle inside the parking space
- 1 Road
- 2 Parking space
- 3 Side boundary of the parking space
- 4 Rear boundary of the parking space

Parking

- In the infotainment system select > **Driver assist > Park assist** before passing in front of the selected parking space.
- With reverse assist connected and in operation, press the function button .
- Stop the vehicle in front of the parking space >>> **Fig. 166** 2 A.
- Reverse while turning the steering wheel so that the yellow lines enter the parking space. The green and yellow lines must match the side boundary lines 3 B.
- Stop the vehicle when the red line has reached the rear boundary 4 C.

Troubleshooting

The system behaves differently than expected

There can be several causes:

- The camera is dirty >>> **page 396**. In addition to dirt and snow, camera visibility can be reduced by detergent residue or any type of coating.
- The system requirements must be met >>> **page 248**.
- The camera is covered with water.
- The factory-fitted towing bracket must not be electrically connected to a trailer >>> **page 319**.

- The vehicle has some type of damage in the camera area, e.g. due to a parking impact.
- The field of view of the camera is blocked by an accessory, e.g. a bicycle carrier system.
- Changes have been made to the paint in the camera area, or structural modifications have been made to a component such as the running gear.

Camera with no visibility, fault message, the system disconnects

- Clean the camera or remove any stickers or accessories from it ››› page 396.
- Check for visible damage.

Possible solution

- Temporarily disconnect the system.
- Check if one of the causes indicated above has occurred.
- Once the source of the problem has been eliminated, the system may be reconnected.
- If the system still behaves unpredictably, have it checked by a specialised workshop.

Peripheral view system (Top View Camera)

Introduction

Using 4 cameras, the system generates a representation that is shown on the infotainment system display. The cameras are located on the radiator grille, the exterior mirrors and the rear lid.

The functions and representations of the Area View system may vary depending on whether or not the vehicle has ParkPilot.

⚠ WARNING

The image from the cameras does not make it possible to calculate the distance to the obstacles (people, vehicles, etc.) precisely, so using them could cause serious accidents and injury.

- **The camera lenses augment and distort the visual field and the objects on the screen are seen differently and imprecisely.**
- **Certain objects may not be shown or may not be shown very clearly, for example, posts or thin rails, due to the screen resolution or if light conditions are insufficient.**
- **The cameras have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered.**

⚠ WARNING

The smart technology incorporated into the Top View Camera system cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and it only works within the limits of the system. The greater convenience provided by the Area View system should never tempt you to take any risk that may compromise safety. If used negligently or involuntarily, it may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Do not be distracted from the traffic by looking at the screen.**
- **Monitor the area around the vehicle at all times, since the cameras do not capture small children, animals and certain objects in all situations.**
- **The system will probably be unable to represent all areas clearly.**

NOTICE

- **The camera images are only two-dimensional. Due to a lack of spatial depth, objects that jut out or holes on the road, for example, are more difficult to detect or may not be seen at all.**
- **In certain circumstances, the camera does not capture objects such as beams, fences, posts or thin trees, which could damage the vehicle.**
- **The system displays the auxiliary lines and boxes regardless of the vehicle's surroundings and whether or not objects are detected. The driver is responsible for determining that the vehicle will fit in the parking space.**

Area View system

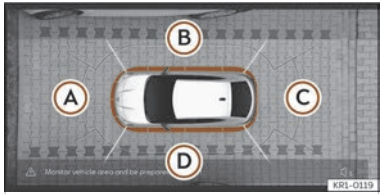


Fig. 167 Area View system display: top view.

There are four different views to choose from ››› **Fig. 167**:

Ⓐ Front camera area

Ⓑ Right camera area

Ⓒ Rear camera area

Ⓓ Left camera area

Function buttons:

Depending on the equipment: switch the Park Pilot sound on and off.

The top view is generated by combining the images from all the cameras ››› **Fig. 167**. The top view can be selected by pressing the vehicle inside the zone.

The system will automatically switch between front and rear camera view according to the direction of travel.

Press on the different areas ››› **Fig. 167** Ⓐ to Ⓓ of the top view or reduced top view to select and set the corresponding view, which will be highlighted in orange.

Conditions necessary for the use of the Area View system

- The doors and the rear lid must be closed.
- The image must be reliable and clear. For this reason, for example, the camera lens must be clean.
- The area around the vehicle must be clearly and totally visible.
- The area for parking or manoeuvring should be a flat surface.
- The vehicle should **not** be loaded very heavily at the rear.
- The driver must be used to the system.
- There should be no damage to the vehicle in the camera area. If the position or installation angle of the cameras have been changed, e.g. after a rear-end collision, the system should be checked by a specialised workshop.

Special characteristics

The images on the area view system cameras are only two-dimensional. Due to a lack of spatial depth, it is difficult or impossible to make out on-screen any potholes in the ground, objects jutting out from the ground or parts protruding from other vehicles.

Situations in which the objects or other vehicles appear to be further away or closer than they really are:

- When moving from a horizontal plane to a slope.
- When moving from a slope to a horizontal plane.
- If the vehicle is heavily loaded at the rear.
- If the vehicle approaches protruding objects. These objects may be outside the cameras' angle of visibility.

Trailer mode

The Area View system conceals, in the rear camera area, all the auxiliary guiding lines when the factory-fitted towing bracket is connected electrically to a trailer ››› page 319.

> **Note**
>
> **To become familiar with the system and its functions, CUPRA recommends that you practice handling the Area View system in an area where there is not too much traffic or in a car park.**

Connecting and disconnecting

Connecting

- Select reverse gear.
- **OR:** in the infotainment system select **> Assistants > Parking assistant > Park assist**.

Switching off

- Drive forward at a speed of at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- **OR:** press the ✕ function button.

Views of the peripheral vision system (modes)

The red lines indicate a distance of approx. 40 cm away from the vehicle.

Top views (bird's eye view)

Main mode:

The vehicle and its immediate vicinity seen from above are shown. Depending on the equipment, the ParkPilot's path may also be displayed.

Front camera views (front view)

Cross traffic.

This visualization helps to monitor traffic to the left, front and right of the vehicle and can be used, for example, when exiting garages or narrow exits

Angle parking.

The area in front of the vehicle is shown. Orientation lines are shown to give guidance.

Side camera views (side view)

Right and left sides.

The areas located directly to the side of the vehicle seen from above are represented in order to navigate possible obstacles more precisely.

Rear camera views (rear view)

Angle parking.

The area behind the vehicle is shown. Auxiliary lines are shown to give guidance.

Trailer coupling assistance function.

On vehicles with a trailer coupling assistance function, the function will provide guidance to facilitate hitching the trailer. Auxiliary lines are shown in the infotainment system.
Green lines: distance to the trailer hitch. The distance between the lines is approx. 0.30 m
Yellow line: pre-calculated direction of the trailer hitch depending on how the steering wheel is turned.

Cross traffic.

This visualization helps to monitor traffic to the left, front and right of the vehicle and can be used, for example, when exiting garages or narrow exits.

Trailer Assist

Introduction

Trailer assist helps the driver to reverse and manoeuvre with a trailer.

By moving the rotary knob of the exterior mirrors, the trailer assist directs the trailer that is hitched. The driver has to accelerate, change gears and brake!

System limitations

Under certain circumstances, the camera does not detect objects such as trailer draw bars, bars, fences, posts or thin trees, or an open (or opening) rear lid, which could damage the vehicle.

In order to guarantee good system operation, keep the camera clean, free of snow or ice, and do not cover it with stickers or other objects. Do not allow the draw bar to be covered by external influences.

Use the trailer manoeuvre assistant only when the rear lid is closed correctly.

NOTICE

The trailer maneuver assistant does not take the vehicle's surrounding as a reference. No obstacle detection takes place. The driver alone has to assess whether it is possible to manoeuvre safely with the tow vehicle and trailer set.

- **Always observe the movement of the trailer and, if necessary, actively interrupt the manoeuvre to avoid damage. Even if the trailer manoeuvring assistant is operated correctly, on rare occasions the trailer may move in a different way to the setting.**
- **Do not rely solely on the indications on the instrument cluster display.**

Note

The trailer manoeuvre assistant automatically switches off approx. 10 minutes after being activated. The assistant is also deactivated if the driver does not perform any action over the course of approx. 3 minutes.

Requirements

The following requirements must be met for the trailer manoeuvre assistant to work:

- The engine is running.
- The ESC must be connected.
- The driver's door and the rear lid are closed.
- The exterior mirrors are not folded.
- There is a non-articulated one or two axle trailer hitched and electrically connected.
- Both the tow vehicle and trailer are stopped.
- The maximum bending angle has not been exceeded.
- The length of the trailer's drawbar has been determined.

Determine the length of the trailer's drawbar

In order for the trailer manoeuvre assistant to determine the length of the trailer's drawbar, drive the vehicle-trailer set through some turning manoeuvres or curves. The more precisely the length of the drawbar is determined, the wider the angles that will be available when manoeuvring. The assistant subdivides the maximum available end stops of the angle indicator into four levels: approx. 30°, 45°, 60° and 75°.

Note

For technical reasons, the trailer manoeuvre assistant cannot always correctly detect trailers with LED technology taillights.

Operating

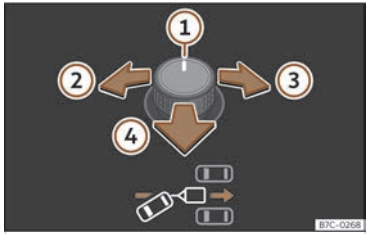


Fig. 168 Outside rearview mirror rotary control: adjust the trailer angle.

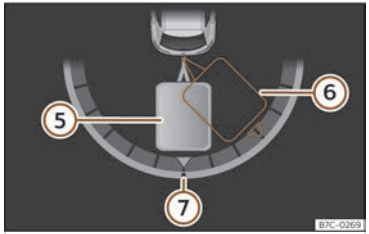


Fig. 169 Instrument cluster display: engage reverse.

Key to the >>> **Fig. 168** , >>> **Fig. 169**:

① Rotary exterior mirror controls.

② Trailer orientation to the left

③ Trailer orientation to the right

④ Move the vehicle in the direction of the towing device.

⑤ Actual trailer position

⑥ Target trailer position

⑦ Angle indicator zero position

Manoeuvre with the tow vehicle and trailer set

The system requirements must be met >>> page 254.

- Select reverse gear.
- Press the infotainment system button > **Assistants > Parking > Trailer Assist**.
- Let go of the steering wheel >>> ⚠.
- Tilt the rotary control until the desired direction is reached >>> **Fig. 168**. A representation of the tow vehicle and trailer set is shown on the instrument cluster screen for guidance purposes >>> **Fig. 169**.
- Reverse by accelerating slowly. Pay attention to your surroundings!
- If necessary, correct the angle with the rotary control. Press the control towards the left or right: the set will move to the left or right. Press the control backwards: the vehicle will follow the trailer.
- Reverse and move forwards until the desired position is reached.
- The manoeuvre ends when a message is displayed on the instrument cluster display and, in some cases, an audio signal sounds.

Automatic brake operation

The trailer manoeuvre assistant helps the driver by automatically operating the brakes in certain situations.

The driver is responsible for braking on time >>> ⚠.

The brakes may be applied automatically and the function deactivated in the following situations:

- A certain speed is exceeded.
- The steering wheel is grabbed. The vehicle brakes automatically until it stops.
- If the button P is pressed during the manoeuvre or the driver's door opens.

⚠ WARNING

The quickly turning steering wheel can cause serious injuries.

- **Do not hold the steering wheel during the manoeuvre until the system requests it.**
- **Exception: If a dangerous situation occurs, intervene and take over the steering.**

⚠ WARNING

Never allow the automatic operation of brakes to lead you to take any risk that compromises safety. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **The manoeuvre assist system is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system. In certain situations, the automatic braking intervention may only work in a limited way or not work at all.**
- **Always be ready to use the brakes yourself!**
- **Automatic brake operation ends after 1.5 seconds approx. if the vehicle is stopped. After this, brake the vehicle yourself.**

Note

The exterior mirrors cannot be adjusted while the assistant is active. The saved setting for the passenger's mirror can be activated ››› **page 145.**

Troubleshooting

Camera with no visibility, fault message, the system disconnects

- Clean the camera or remove any stickers or accessories from it ››› **page 396**.
- Check for visible damage.

The system behaves differently than expected

There can be several causes:

- The camera is dirty ››› **page 396**. In addition to dirt and snow, camera visibility can be reduced by detergent residue or any type of coating.
- The system requirements must be met ››› **page 254**.
- The camera is covered with water.
- The vehicle has some type of damage in the camera area, e.g. due to a parking impact.
- The field of view of the camera is blocked by an accessory, e.g. a bicycle carrier system.
- Changes have been made to the paint in the camera area and structural modifications have been made, e.g. to the front part of the vehicle and the running gear.

Solution for all cases

- Temporarily disconnect the system.
- Check if one of the causes indicated above has occurred.
- Once the source of the problem has been eliminated, the system may be reconnected.
- If the system still behaves unpredictably, have it checked by a specialised workshop.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

How it works

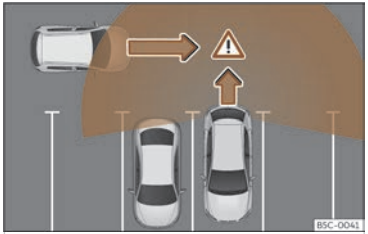


Fig. 170 Park assist diagram: detected area around the vehicle that is driving off.

Park Assist uses the radar sensors on the rear bumper ››› **page 202** to monitor traffic crossing behind the vehicle as it reverses out of a parking bay, or as it is being manoeuvred, for example in very low visibility conditions.

When the system detects a relevant vehicle on the road that is approaching the rear of the vehicle ››› **Fig. 170**, an audio alarm may sound if the vehicle is sufficiently relevant.

In addition to the audio alarm, the driver is also informed by means of a visual signal on infotainment system display. This signal is displayed in the form of a red strip at the back of the image of the vehicle on the infotainment

system display. This strip displays the side of the vehicle towards which traffic is approaching in a cross-wise direction[1].

Automatic braking to reduce damages

>>> page 237.

Connecting and disconnecting

The rear cross traffic alert can be activated and deactivated by accessing the **Assistants** menu of the infotainment system. It can also be found in the Park Assist **Settings** menu.

Additionally it can be switched on and off by accessing the **Assistants** menu on the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last adjustment in the system will remain active.

Trailer mode

The rear cross traffic alert will be automatically deactivated and it will be impossible to activate them if the tow hitch is electrically connected to a trailer or other similar object. As soon as the driver starts driving, a message appears on the instrument cluster display indicating that the assistant is deactivated.

Once the trailer is uncoupled from the vehicle, the assistant will return to its initial state prior to the moment when the trailer was electrically connected.

If the tow hitch is not factory fitted, then the rear cross traffic alert will have to be deactivated manually when driving with a trailer.

⚠ WARNING

The smart technology incorporated into the rear cross traffic alert cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics; it only works within the limits of the system. The park assist function should not tempt you into taking any risks. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **The system should never be used in limited visibility conditions or complicated traffic, e.g., in high-traffic areas or when crossing multiple lanes.**
- **Be sure to always be aware of the vehicle's surroundings, since the system often fails to detect things such as bicycles or pedestrians.**
- **The rear cross traffic alert itself will not brake the vehicle to a complete stop.**

Exit Warning

How it works

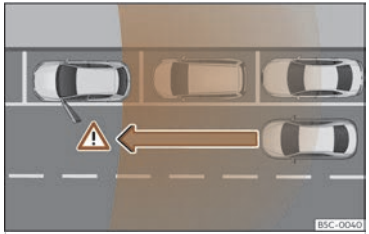


Fig. 171 Illustrated example.

Fig. 172 Door: warning lamp

[1] It is only displayed if the vehicle is equipped with a parking system.

The door opening warning (Exit Warning) warns occupants of a possible collision when opening the door when the vehicle is stationary.

The system monitors, within the limits of the system itself, the rear and side environment of the vehicle using the rear sensors >>> page 202. It detects moving objects that approach from behind, such as cars >>> Fig. 171.

If a critical situation is detected when the door is opened, an alert is given by an audible signal from the door speaker on the corresponding side >>> Fig. 172. Additionally, the lane assist indicator on the corresponding door side will flash only when the front doors are open. When the rear doors are opened, the side assist indicator light will not be available. If either front door has already been opened and another road user has been detected in a critical situation, the control lamp of the lane departure warning on the corresponding side will light up permanently.

The brightness of the door opening assistant display can be adjusted by accessing the **Side Assist** menu.

When you want to access the vehicle for the first time, with the doors closed and locked, the function will be available 3 minutes after the first opening of any of the doors. The function will continue to be available as long as the vehicle has the ignition connected and is not moving.

After switching off the ignition, the function will remain available for approximately 3 minutes.

Connecting and disconnecting

The door opening assistant can be switched on and off by accessing the **Assistants** menu in the infotainment system. It can also be found in the Park Assist **Settings** menu.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last adjustment in the system will remain active.

Trailer mode

The door opening assistant will be automatically deactivated and it will be impossible to activate it if the tow hitch is electrically connected to a trailer or other similar object.

Once the trailer is uncoupled from the vehicle, the assistant will return to its initial state prior to the moment when the trailer was electrically connected.

If the tow hitch is not factory fitted, then the door opening assistant will have to be deactivated manually when driving with a trailer.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always pay close attention to the traffic and the surroundings of the vehicle. The door opening warning (Exit Warning) cannot replace the necessary attention to be paid by the vehicle's occupants. Responsibility for opening the doors and exiting the vehicle always lies with its occupants.**
- **The door opening warning (Exit Warning) operates continuously as long as the vehicle ignition is on. Otherwise, the system is deactivated and the lamps light up briefly.**
- **It is possible that the traffic situation is not interpreted correctly the system cannot be aware of all the objects that are approaching, such as pedestrians. Always visually monitor the traffic and the area surrounding the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

The door opening warning (Exit Warning) is subject to system limits and cannot warn of an imminent collision in all cases:

- **If your vehicle is too deep in the parking space and the adjacent vehicles hide it.**
- **In certain circumstances, objects or people who approach, e.g. on a bicycle or scooter, are not detected.**
- **The system does not react to stationary objects.**

Practical equipment

Storage compartment

Introduction

Use the storage compartments only for small or light items.

⚠ WARNING

Objects inside the vehicle that are not secured could be thrown across the vehicle interior in the event of sudden braking or manoeuvring. This may cause severe injuries as well as loss of control of the vehicle.

- **Do not carry animals or sharp, hard or heavy items in open storage compartments of the vehicle, on the dashboard or on the cover behind the rear seats, or inside pieces of clothing or bags inside the vehicle.**
- **Keep the storage compartments closed at all times while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Do not hang garments weighing more than 2.5 kg (approx. 5.5 lb) on the vehicle's coat hooks. Never leave heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets of these pieces of clothing.**

⚠ WARNING

If you leave lighters inside the vehicle, they might be damaged or lit inadvertently. This could lead to severe burns and damage to the vehicle.

- **Before moving a seat, make sure there are no lighters in the moving part area of the vehicle.**
- **Before closing a storage compartment, make sure there are no lighters in the closing area.**
- **Never leave a lighter inside a storage compartment or any other surface of the vehicle as it could ignite due to the high temperatures on such surfaces, particularly during the summer.**

ⓘ NOTICE

- **Do not store heat- or cold-sensitive objects, food or medicines in the vehicle interior. Heat and cold could damage them or render them useless.**
- **Objects made from transparent materials left inside the vehicle, such as glasses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction pads stuck to the windows can concentrate sunlight and damage the vehicle.**

Glove compartment

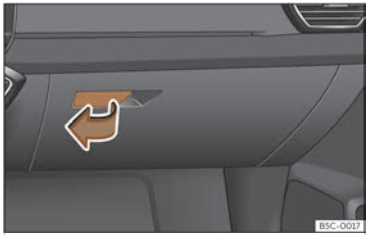


Fig. 173 On the passenger side: glove compartment.

Opening and closing the glove compartment

Opening: Pull the handle ››› **Fig. 173** and open the glove compartment.

Closing: Press the glove compartment upwards.

⚠ WARNING

If the glove compartment is left open, the risk of severe injuries being caused in the event of an accident, sudden braking or manoeuvring increases.

- **Always keep the glove compartment closed while the vehicle is in motion.**

Drink holder

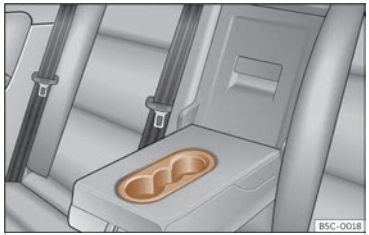


Fig. 174 In the rear central armrest: drink holder.

The storage compartments of the driver and passenger doors contain a bottle holder.

Front drink holders

There are two drink holders in the centre console .

Drink holder in the rear central armrest

Use: Lower the central armrest ››› **Fig. 174**.

When the drink holder is no longer in use, lift the armrest again.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the bottle holders may cause injuries.

- **Never put hot drinks in the drink holders. In the event of sudden braking or an accident while driving, hot beverages in the bottle holders might spill and cause burns.**
- **Ensure that no bottles or other objects are dropped in the driver footwell while driving, as they could get under the pedals and obstruct their working.**
- **Never place glasses, food or other heavy objects in drink holders. These heavy objects may be thrown across the vehicle interior in the event of an accident and cause serious injuries.**

⚠ WARNING

Closed bottles may explode inside the vehicle due to cold or heat.

- **Never leave closed bottles in the vehicle if the temperature inside is very high or very low.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Do not leave open cans in the drink holders when the vehicle is in motion. If the drink is spilled (e.g. due to sudden braking) it may damage the vehicle and its electrical system.

ⓘ Note

The elements inside the drink holders can be extracted for cleaning.

Storage compartment under front seats

Fig. 175 Storage compartment under the front seats.

Opening: Press the tab on the drawer handle and slide the drawer out.

Closing: Push the drawer under the seat until it engages.

⚠ WARNING

If the drawer is left open, it could prevent use of the pedals. This may cause serious accidents and injuries.

- **Always keep the drawer closed while the vehicle is in motion. Otherwise, the drawer and any objects in it could fall into the driver's footwell and obstruct the pedals.**

ⓘ NOTICE

The drawer can hold 1.5 kg at most.

Other object holders

You will find more object holders, compartments and supports in other parts of the vehicle:

- In the centre console.
- In the upper part of the glove compartment. The load should not exceed 1.2 kg.
- Other storage compartments are found in the rear seat, to the left and the right of the seats.
- In the backrests of the front seats, storage pockets.

There are hangers on the struts of the doors and the rear.

⚠ WARNING

Hanging clothes may decrease the driver's visibility, which may cause serious accidents and injuries.

- **Always hang clothes from hangers in such a way that the driver's visibility is not affected.**
- **Only hang light pieces of clothing from the hangers of the vehicle. Never leave heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets of these pieces of clothing.**
- **Do not use clothes hangers to hang up the clothing, as this could interfere with the function of the head-protection airbags.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Do not place overly large objects in the pockets on the front seat backrests (e.g. bottles) or objects with sharp edges. Risk of damage to the pockets and the upholstery.

Power sockets

Introduction

Electrical equipment can be plugged in to the vehicle's sockets.

The devices must be in a perfect state of repair. Do not use defective devices.

The 12 volt power socket will only work with the ignition on.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the sockets or electrical devices could lead to a fire and cause serious injuries.

- **Please ensure that children are never left unsupervised inside the vehicle. The sockets and the devices connected to them can be used when the ignition is switched on.**
- **If electrical devices overheat, switch them off immediately and disconnect them from the power supply.**

ⓘ NOTICE

- **To avoid damaging the electrical system, never connect electrical devices that supply power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to 12-volt sockets to charge the 12-volt battery.**
- **Only use electrical devices that comply with the applicable electromagnetic compatibility directives.**
- **To prevent voltage fluctuations from causing damage, unplug any connected electrical devices before switching the ignition on and off.**
- **Never connect electrical devices that consume more than the specified power to a 12 volt socket. Exceeding the maximum power consumption could damage the vehicle's electrical system.**
- **Observe the instruction manuals of electrical devices!**

Note

- **The use of electrical appliances with the engine switched off will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.**
- **Uninsulated devices can interfere with the radio, infotainment system and the vehicle's electronic system.**

Vehicle power sockets

Fig. 176 Vehicle 12-volt socket.

›› **Fig. 176**

① 12-volt sockets inside the front armrest.

② 12-volt USB sockets at the rear of the console, between the front seats.

Make sure that the maximum power of the sockets is not exceeded. The power consumption of the devices is shown on the type plate of the devices.

The continuous output of all of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets is 120 watts in total.

When connecting two or more electrical devices at the same time, make sure that their total consumption never exceeds 190 watts.

USB power sockets

Depending on the equipment and the country, the vehicle may also have USB connections **exclusively for charging or as a power socket** ›› **Fig. 176** ②.

These USB ports are located at the rear of the console, between the front seats. These connectors can work at a maximum power of up to 10.5 W per port.

NOTICE

If the 12-volt socket is used at full power for longer than the specified time, the fuse may blow.

- **Never use the 12-volt socket at full power for more than 10 minutes.**
- **In the case of full power, use a single 12-volt socket.**

230-volt power socket

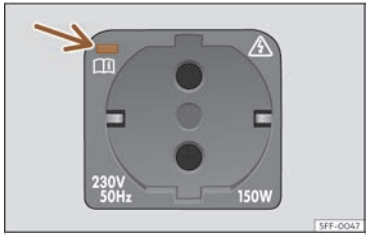


Fig. 177 In the luggage compartment: 230-volt power socket.

With the engine running, the power socket activates automatically as soon as a connector is plugged in.

Maximum power consumption is 150 watts (300 watts - maximum 2 minutes).

Connect an electrical device: Open the cover and insert the plug into the power socket as far as possible to unlock the built-in child lock. The socket only supplies power once the child lock is unlocked.

LED on the power socket ›› Fig. 177 (arrow)

Steady green light:

- The childproof lock is unlocked. The socket is ready to operate.

Flashing green light:

- The ignition is switched off, but there is enough power available to continue supplying the socket with current for a maximum of 10 minutes. If the connector is unplugged before this time elapses, the socket is disconnected and cannot be used again until the ignition is switched on again.

If insufficient power is available in the 12V battery, the socket cannot be used while the engine is off.

Flashing red light:

- There is an anomaly, e.g. disconnection due to a current surge or overheating.

Disconnection due to overheating

When the temperature exceeds a certain value, the 230-volt socket inverter is automatically disconnected. The disconnection prevents overheating when the power consumption of the connected devices is excessive or the ambient temperature is very high. The 230-volt power supply can be used once again after a cooling time. First unplug the connector of the connected device and then plug it back in again. This prevents the electrical device from being switched on again if this is not wanted.

⚠ WARNING

The electrical system is under high voltage!

- **Do not spill liquids onto the socket.**
- **Do not plug adapters or extension cords into the 230-volt power socket. Otherwise, the integrated child lock will be unlocked and the power socket will operate.**
- **Do not insert conductive objects (a knitting needle, for example) into the 230-volt power socket.**

NOTICE

230-volt power socket:

- **Do not leave devices or connectors that are too heavy (e.g. a transformer) hanging directly from the power socket.**
- **Do not connect neon lamps.**
- **Only connect devices to the socket if the device and socket voltage match.**
- **The built-in overload disconnect function prevents any electrical devices that require a high start-up current from turning on. In this case, unplug the electrical device's power supply and re-try the connection after about 10 seconds.**

Note

Some appliances may not work properly when connected to the 230-volt sockets due to a lack of power (watts).

Data transmissions

Over-the-air update

Introduction

Over-the-air updates allow you to always keep your vehicle up to date, for example for optimising functions and for malware protection.[1)]

How can you find out when an over-the-air update is available?

The available updates are displayed in the infotainment system.

If several updates are available for the vehicle at the same time, one over-the-air update must first be successfully completed before the next one can be performed.

Note

Over-the-air updates require your vehicle's connectivity to be enabled.

It is in your own interest to complete updates as soon as possible. If the controller repeatedly rejects the over-the-air update, it will be necessary to visit a qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends using a CUPRA dealer.

WARNING

In very rare cases, a control unit may not function properly after an over-the-air update. Malfunctioning of a control unit and the vehicle can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- **Reduce speed in a controlled manner if the vehicle operates or reacts differently than usual while driving.**
- **Contact a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends using a CUPRA dealer.**

WARNING

If the instrument cluster does not work after an over-the-air update, you will not be able to see instrument cluster displays, warning lights, symbols or text messages. Driving with an instrument cluster that does not work can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- **Do not use the vehicle. Please contact the CUPRA customer care service.**

NOTICE

If special modifications have been made to vehicles outside the scope of CUPRA's responsibility (for example, for emergency service vehicles or taxis), there is a risk that special functions (e.g. the taximeter) may no longer work properly after an over-the-air update.

- **Consult with your CUPRA dealer before performing an over-the-air update.**

Note

- **Measures to improve performance or efficiency (e.g. engine tuning) that have not been incorporated by CUPRA may be deleted after an over-the-air update.**
- **Depending on the equipment, release notes may appear once before or after an over-the-air update. These release notes describe changes to the vehicle status. For release notes and more information on over-the-air updates, please visit the website:**

  www.cupraofficial.com/owners/cupra-connect/ota-updates
- **The over-the-air update will not update apps installed in the vehicle.**
- **Certain information, such as your VIN (vehicle identification number), may be shared with the brand to ensure that each of these campaigns is successful. These updates will require your final confirmation before installation. If you do not wish to receive them, you can change your privacy to Incognito (maximum privacy) mode in the privacy and services settings** >>> page 271.

[1)] Not available in all markets.

Prerequisites for an over-the-air update

The following prerequisites must be met to allow an update to be downloaded via satellite and to install the update software.

- The over-the-air update function is available in your country.
- The vehicle is located in an area with sufficient mobile reception.
- Your current privacy configuration allows you to transmit and receive data and information ››› page 271.
- The vehicle's 12-volt battery is properly charged.

Download and install an over-the-air update

Download costs

Over-the-air updates are downloaded via the factory control unit with eSIM card, and are free of charge. CUPRA covers the cost of the connection.

Download timing

Downloading takes place automatically without warning and may also happen while driving. When the download is complete, a message will appear to inform you that an over-the-air update is available.

Note

The duration of the download process depends on the quality of the network, the file size and the type of update. The download process may be interrupted. It will resume when the ignition is switched on again.

Software installation pre-requisites

- The vehicle is parked safely in accordance with legal requirements and local regulations ››› page 233.
- Previous over-the-air updates have been installed.

Installing the software from an over-the-air update

Choose a time for the over-the-air update when neither you nor others are likely to be driving the vehicle.

WARNING

The control units will be switched off and will not work while the software installation is in progress. Driving while the control units are switched off or faulty can lead to accidents and fatal injuries.

- **Install the software in a way that does not interfere with other road users.**
- **Do not use the vehicle during a software installation procedure.**

1. Deactivate the vehicle's drive system and apply the electronic parking brake.
2. Close the bonnet, luggage compartment, all windows and all doors.
3. Confirm the software installation in the Infotainment system.
4. Ensure that all vehicle occupants get out and that there are no animals left inside.
5. Collect all vehicle keys and get out.
6. Lock the vehicle.

Functional restrictions during software installation

The control units, central computer, functions and displays will not be available during the software installation. Do not use the vehicle or the Infotainment system during installation.

- The system prevents the activation of the vehicle's drive system.
- The high-voltage battery is not charged.
- The AUX-IN diagnostic socket is switched off.
- The anti-theft alarm is switched off.
- The “Safe” security system is switched off.

After installing the software

After the software installation and before activating the vehicle's drive system, read the message on the Infotainment system or in the Instrument cluster about the complete installa-

tion of the software. It can take up to 1 minute for the vehicle to display the status of the over-the-air update.

- The vehicle's drive system can be activated once the software has been successfully installed.
- If the software installation is not successful:

››› page 266, *Troubleshooting*.

Troubleshooting

The installation of an over-the-air update has failed.

- If an update is not installed correctly, an error message will appear in the infotainment system or in the instrument cluster. Observe the corresponding messages and warnings.

Note

The control units will stop working or will not work properly in the event of a critical installation error. The functions and screens will not be available until the error is amended. Do not use the vehicle. In this case, please contact CUPRA customer care.

Can I interrupt the installation of an over-the-air update?

Not possible.

What happens if the installation of an over-the-air update is interrupted?

If the installation is interrupted, for example due to damage to the vehicle's electrical system, the control units may not be updated and may not work due to incomplete installation of the update.

CUPRA CONNECT

Introduction

Access CUPRA CONNECT[1] digital services by connecting your vehicle to the Internet. A description of the available services can be found on the Internet at:

https://www.cupraofficial.com/owners/cupra-connect

To use CUPRA CONNECT, you have to activate the services by concluding a CONNECT contract with SEAT, S.A., which may be subject to usage time limitations, depending on the country.

Both the CUPRA CONNECT service portfolios offered by CUPRA and individual services can be modified, cancelled, deactivated, reactivated, renamed and extended, even without prior notification.

The implementation and availability of all CUPRA CONNECT services and service portfolios may vary by country, as well as by vehicle and its equipment.

CUPRA CONNECT's voice recognition or search technology does not recognise or offer results for all words.

There are CUPRA CONNECT services for which registration is mandatory and others for which it is not mandatory.

Description of services

Before running CUPRA CONNECT services, read and take into account the description of the corresponding services. Descriptions are updated from time to time.

- Always use the most up-to-date version of the corresponding service description.

WARNING

In areas with insufficient mobile phone and GPS coverage, emergency calls and phone calls will not be connected and data cannot be transmitted.

- **Change location if possible.**

[1] Not available in all markets.

NOTICE

The vehicle may be damaged by factors outside CUPRA's control, specifically including:

- **Misuse of mobile terminals**
- **Data loss during transmission.**
- **Unsuitable or defective third party applications.**
- **Malicious software on data storage devices, computers, tablets or mobile phones.**

Services portfolio

The initial service assignment shown here represents the maximum possible volume. The maximum possible volume is only available on a few vehicle models. During the useful life of the vehicle, you can change the assignment shown here.

After activating service management in the infotainment system, you can check whether services are available for the vehicle and what services they are >>> page 270.

In some countries and in the event of a contract renewal, the services offered may be combined differently than indicated here. They may also vary depending on the year of production of the vehicle. The aforementioned services correspond to **CUPRA CONNECT**.

CUPRA CONNECT services

If you vehicle is fitted with Media System + or Navi System +, your online services package is CUPRA CONNECT. The following services are included[1]:

- Breakdown call.
- Customer care.
- Service appointment planning.
- Customisation.
- Remote heating and ventilation.
- Remote unlock.
- Horn and turn signals.
- Vehicle status incl. doors and lights.
- Driving data.
- Vehicle health report.
- Anti-theft alarm warning.
- Zone notification.
- Speed notification.
- Online map update.
- Natural voice control for destinations and addresses.
- Internet radio.
- Online route import.
- Online destination import.
- Parking position.
- Data package.
- Online Store.
- Online navigation: Dynamic Points of Interest
- Online system update.

If your vehicle is fitted with Navi System +, it also has the CUPRA CONNECT PLUS online services package. The included services are all the CUPRA CONNECT services in the previous section plus[2]:

- Search for public car parks.
- Search for petrol stations.
- Online route calculation.
- Online traffic information.

CUPRA CONNECT services for hybrid vehicles

Available only in hybrid vehicles.

The included services are all the CUPRA CONNECT services in the previous section plus:

- Remote air conditioning.
- Electrical power manager.
- Remote vehicle charging.
- Search for charging stations.

[1] Some services may be subject to special equipment.
[2] The above services may be subject to a subscription period.

CUPRA CONNECT individual options

- In-Car Applications. These applications can be purchased and installed directly on the infotainment system through the Online Store, provided they are available. Access to the Online Store is only possible if the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system.
- Data package. Pay per use data rates for the use of online functions, for example, 2 GB per month.

Note

- **The public emergency call service is available regardless of whether the infotainment system is logged in.**
- **Customisation and purchase of in-car Apps require logging in to the Infotainment system and activating the vehicle in a CUPRA CONNECT account.**

Activating CUPRA CONNECT and S-PIN

The following steps are required to activate CUPRA CONNECT (including registration):

1. Switch on the ignition and the infotainment system.
2. Change the privacy mode to "Tracking" >>> page 271.
3. Select: ⊞ > 👤 **Users** and press the button ⊕ to add a new user.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to download the My CUPRA App.
5. Follow the instructions to create your CUPRA ID.
6. Accept the Privacy Policy.
7. Enter the vehicle identification number (VIN) to add the vehicle to your user account.
8. Check your personal details.
9. Select your CUPRA CONNECT online services pack.
10. Open the app and scan the new QR code generated by the infotainment system.

S-PIN

The S-PIN is a sequence of several digits, which can be selected when the CUPRA CONNECT registration is completed.

When creating the S-PIN, avoid easy-to-guess number sequences and known dates of birth. You can change the S-PIN in the CUPRA CONNECT user account in **Account settings**.

The S-PIN is necessary, for example, to protect your user profile or to run a CUPRA CONNECT service related to the security of your vehicle.

You must keep this S-PIN strictly confidential. If you reveal the S-PIN to third parties, for security reasons you must change it immediately.

Ownership and identity accreditation

Become primary user

To become a primary user and thus prove ownership of the vehicle, you need both of the vehicle's physical keys. Ownership accreditation takes place in the vehicle during registration or, if you already have a CUPRA CONNECT user account, you must log in through the infotainment system and then go to **Manage users**.

- Switch on the ignition and the infotainment system.
- In the infotainment system, register in CUPRA CONNECT.

Or: open the menu 👤 **Users > Settings > Become primary user** and follow the instructions.

- Press the unlock button on the first vehicle key.
- Press the unlock button on the second vehicle key.

Once the infotainment system has processed the orders by radiofrequency, the accreditation of the ownership will have been completed.

How is ownership accredited?	
Infotainment	2-Key method
My CUPRA App	Not possible

Identity accreditation (CUPRA ID)

Identity accreditation must be completed before you can use CUPRA CONNECT services that are relevant to security, such as the **Remote Opening** service. The identity verification can be carried out at a specialised CUPRA dealership with the assistance of a brand specialist or independently and online via the My CUPRA App.

Legal provisions

When using CUPRA CONNECT services, information is transferred and processed online through the vehicle. Such data can also provide (at least indirectly) information about the driver in question, for example, driving behaviour and location. As a contracting party in the CUPRA CONNECT contract with SEAT, S.A., you must ensure that when your vehicle is used by other drivers (for example, family or friends), data protection and personal rights are respected. Therefore, you must inform drivers in advance that the vehicle transfers and receives data online, and that you can access such data.

Not taking into account this obligation to inform, can infringe certain rights of the occupants.

Follow-up services: ask all occupants

The follow-up services need geographical and vehicle data to determine whether the vehicle is being used within defined speed ranges, where it has been parked or if it is being used in an established geographical area. This information is displayed in the My CUPRA App.

Therefore, before moving off, ask all the vehicle occupants if they agree with the activated services. If they do not, deactivate the service in question (if possible) or do not allow the occupants to use the vehicle.

GPS tracking: marking

If the vehicle has a factory-assembled control unit that transmits the its current geographical position and speed, the vehicle usually has this GPS marking (e.g., on the roof console). The absence of the marking on the vehicle does not guarantee that the control unit does not transmit the vehicle's current geographical position and speed.

Personal information

CUPRA protects your personal data and only uses them, as long as the law allows it or you have given your consent on the occasion of a use. Detailed information on data processing in connection with the CUPRA CONNECT services can be found in the Data Protection Declaration, the current version of which can be accessed on the CUPRA website.

Permanent transfer of the vehicle

If the vehicle has been purchased used or someone else has left the vehicle to you for permanent use, CUPRA CONNECT may already be activated and the previous primary user may still be able to access the data registered via CUPRA CONNECT and control certain functions of your vehicle.

You can automatically remove the previous primary user by registering yourself as the primary user of the vehicle. Alternatively, you can restore the infotainment system to factory settings (⚙ > **Restore factory settings**) or set the vehicle to "Privacy" mode (maximum privacy) and therefore limit both your vehicle's communication with the CUPRA data service and the processing of personal and vehicle data.

Deactivating CUPRA CONNECT services

The following functions are available to activate and deactivate the CUPRA CONNECT services:

- Allow or prevent data transmissions through the infotainment system ››› page 270, *Privacy mode*.
- Whenever possible: individual deactivation or activation ››› page 270.

You can run the relevant services again after cancelling their deactivation.

Note

The services required by law and their data transmission cannot be disconnected or deactivated, for example, the emergency call system (eCall).

Faults

Even if the prerequisites for the use of CUPRA CONNECT services are met, there may be factors beyond the control of CUPRA that interfere with the execution of such services or prevent them. specifically including:

- Maintenance, repair, deactivation, software update and technical expansion of telecommunication equipment, satellites, servers and data banks.
- Change of the mobile telephony standard for mobile data transmission by the telecommunications service provider, e.g. from LTE or UMTS to EDGE or GPRS.
- Disconnection of an existing mobile phone standard by the telecommunications service provider.
- Interference, disturbance or interruption of mobile and GPS signal reception due to aspects such as high speed driving, solar storms, meteorological influences, topography, jamming equipment and intensive mobile phone use in the radio cells in question.
- When in areas with zero or insufficient mobile telephony or GPS signal. Also, for example, in tunnels, confined areas between very tall buildings, garages, underpasses, mountains and valleys.
- External information from third party suppliers available with limitations, incomplete or incorrect, e.g. representations of maps.
- Countries and regions where CUPRA CONNECT is not offered.

Service management

Open the settings in **Users** and go to **Privacy settings and services**. You can do the following in the infotainment system:

- Check which CUPRA CONNECT services are currently available in the vehicle.
- View the number of CUPRA CONNECT services that are activated or deactivated.
- Activate or deactivate CUPRA CONNECT services.

Note

If you deactivate all CUPRA CONNECT services, the vehicle can still transmit emergency call (eCall) data.

Privacy mode

Introduction

With the “Privacy” function, data transmissions between the vehicle and the Internet can be allowed or blocked.

Please note that your vehicle is connected by default, so that it can receive remote updates that improve the performance of your vehicle.

Certain information, such as your VIN (vehicle identification number), may be shared with the brand to ensure that each of these campaigns is successful. These updates will require your final confirmation before installation. If you do not wish to receive them, you can change your privacy to **Incognito** (maximum privacy) mode in the privacy and services settings >>> page 271.

The desired mode can be set in **Users > Settings > Privacy and Services**.

Data transmission by external devices and their communication with the vehicle **cannot** be blocked using the “Privacy” function.

The services required by law and their data transmission cannot be disconnected or deactivated, for example, the emergency call system (eCall).

Note

Please note that all vehicle users can configure individual settings in the "Privacy" function. These settings may not match those desired by the vehicle owner.

Privacy and services settings

CUPRA CONNECT services can be activated and deactivated individually. To do this, just check the box corresponding to the service you want to activate or deactivate. Use the privacy mode option if you want to deactivate all of the services at the same time.

Privacy mode.

Allows you to deactivate or activate the services depending on the selected privacy level.

Tracking	**Share location.** Primary users and co-users can view position data on the My CUPRA App.
Location	**Use location.** Position, vehicle, and user data are used for services.
Personal	**No location.** Only the vehicle data and user data are used for services.
Privacy	**Maximum privacy.** Your services are disabled. Only services required for legal reasons use data.

Setting options are not available in all markets or in all vehicle models.

Connectivity status indication

The following symbols indicate the respective data transmission status in the infotainment system.

Symbol white: full connectivity, all services available

Symbol grey: limited connectivity, some services may not be available.

no icon No connectivity, no services available.

User administration

User role description

Both the owner of the vehicle, and any other user who has access to the vehicle will be authorised to order and activate CUPRA CONNECT services for a specific vehicle.

Each vehicle only has one main user, as well as one anonymous guest user and up to 4 additional or secondary users. The different roles are described below:

- **Primary user:** A user registered in the vehicle who completes the enrolment process by activating CUPRA CONNECT services (via the two-key method or pairing code) to become the primary user. He or she is the only one that can make online purchases (data and other services). He or she has access to all vehicle services.
- **Additional user:** a user registered in the vehicle who has not completed the enrolment process and is not the primary user. Through the vehicle's infotainment system, the additional user has access to the same services as the main user, except those that require making a purchase. Additional users do not have access to in-App services.
- **Secondary user:** the primary user can invite an additional user to become a secondary user, so that they can enjoy all services available to the primary user except those related to purchasing and receiving alerts. The invitation is sent from the vehicle user management menu in the app and must be accepted by the additional user invited to become a secondary user.
- **Guest user:** the only role that is always present in the vehicle, if you don't want to register as a main or additional user. When selecting this mode for the first time, or each time you switch from a primary or additional user to a guest user, data is shared online so that remote updates can be received. If you do not wish to receive them, you can change the privacy to "*Offline Mode*" (maximum privacy) in the privacy settings >>> page 271.

Create and delete a user role

Create a user

Register for CUPRA CONNECT. You can then sign a CUPRA CONNECT contract with CUPRA, add the vehicle to your user account and follow the steps in the app to register yourself as a new main user or as an additional user.

Delete a user

To delete the main user, restore the factory settings of the infotainment system. If you want to delete an additional user, the main user may delete it manually, or the additional user can delete himself/herself.

Note

If the infotainment system is restored to factory settings in offline mode, the user cannot be deleted on the server.

WLAN access point

Introduction

The infotainment system can be used to share a WLAN[1] connection with up to 8 devices >>> page 272, *Configuration for sharing a connection over WLAN*.

The infotainment system can also use the WLAN hotspot of an external device to provide Internet to the devices connected to the hotspot (WLAN client) >>> page 273.

Note

- **There may be a charge for the required data transmission. Due to the high volume of data exchanged, CUPRA recommends the use of a flat rate tariff for data transmission. Mobile phone operators can provide information on this. You can also purchase data plans for your vehicle on the Cubic website:**

  https://cupra.cubictelecom.com

- **Exchanging data packages and purchasing them from third parties may generate additional costs, depending on your mobile phone rate, particularly if you are abroad (for example, roaming rates).**

Configuration for sharing a connection over WLAN

Establishing the connection with the wireless network (WLAN)

- Press the **HOME** > ⚙ button.
- Activate the wireless network. To do this, tap the function button **Network > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot**.
- Activate the wireless network (WLAN) on the device that is to be connected. If necessary, refer to the manufacturer's instruction manual.
- Activate the mobile device assignment in the infotainment system. To do this, press the function button **Use as hotspot** and check the checkbox.
- Enter and confirm the network key displayed on the device.

The following adjustments can also be made in the **Infotainment system as hotspot** menu:

- **Network key:** Network key generated automatically. Press the function button to change the network key manually. The network key must have at least 12 characters and a maximum of 62.
- **SSID:** Name of the WLAN network (maximum 32 characters).

The WLAN (wireless) connection is established. To complete the connection, it may be necessary to enter other data into the device.

Repeat this process to connect other devices.

There is also the option of scanning the QR code to connect the device directly to the infotainment system's Wi-Fi network without having to enter the password: select **Settings > Network > Quick connection to infotainment system**.

[1] Not available in all markets.

Configure Internet access

The infotainment system can use the WLAN hotspot of an external device to establish an Internet connection.

Establishing the connection with the wireless network (WLAN)

- Activate and share a wireless hotspot with Internet on the external device. Refer to the manufacturer's instruction manual.
- Press the **HOME** > ⚙ button.
- Tap the menu **Settings** > **Network** > **Wi-Fi** > **Wi-Fi** and tick the verification box.
- Press the **Search for Wi-Fi** button and select the device you want from the list.

The system preferentially searches for devices in the 5 GHz Wi-Fi band. If no results are found, it is advisable to check the device's access point settings.

- If necessary, enter the network key of the device in the infotainment system and confirm with **OK**.

Manual settings:

- To manually enter the network settings of an external (WLAN) device.

The WLAN (wireless) connection is established. To complete the connection, it may be necessary to enter other data into the device.

Note

Due to the large number of devices on the market, it is not possible to guarantee fault-free operation of all functions.

Full Link

Introduction

With Full Link it is possible to view and use the contents and functions that are shown on the mobile phone device on the infotainment screen.

To do this, the mobile phone device must be connected with the infotainment system through a USB interface.

Some technologies can also be used by Wireless Full Link through the Bluetooth® interface and a Wi-Fi connection.

The following technologies may be available:

- Apple CarPlay™
- Apple CarPlay™ Wireless
- Android Auto™
- Android Auto™ Wireless

The availability of the technologies that Full Link includes depends on the country and the mobile phone device used.

You can find more information on the CUPRA website (www.cupraofficial.com).

Access the Full Link main menu

Browsing the Full Link main menu depends on the infotainment system used.

- Press **MENU** > **Full Link**.

Configure Wireless Full Link

In order to use Wireless Full Link, you must first pair the mobile phone device with the infotainment system. To do this, proceed as follows:

Connect a mobile phone device for the first time.

- Unlock the mobile phone device.
- Enable Wi-Fi reception and Bluetooth® on the mobile phone device.
- Connect the mobile device to the infotainment system using a USB cable.
- Access the **Full Link** main menu, if it is not displayed automatically.
- Select the mobile device and the technology you want.
- Confirm authorisation inquiries on the mobile phone device to grant the necessary authorisations to the infotainment system.
- Disconnect the USB connection and connect with the infotainment system again via Wi-Fi or Bluetooth®. Wireless Full Link is now configured.

The pairing has concluded. The connected mobile phone device can also use Wireless Full Link from now on without the USB connection.

If pop-up menus are rejected during the connection process, Wireless Full Link will not be available. In this case, CUPRA recommends removing the devices in both the telephone settings and the infotainment system, and restarting the connection process.

Bluetooth pairing®

You can connect your device to the infotainment system via Bluetooth®.

If the device is compatible, the system will inform you that you can connect your device to Apple CarPlay™ or Android Auto™ as appropriate.

⚠ WARNING

The use of applications while driving can distract your attention from the traffic. Any distraction affecting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries.

- **Always drive with attention to traffic and in a responsible manner.**

⚠ WARNING

Any applications that are not suitable or execute incorrectly may cause damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.

- **Protect the mobile phone device and its applications from inappropriate use.**
- **Never make modifications to the applications.**
- **Follow instructions in the instruction manual for the mobile phone device.**

NOTICE

CUPRA cannot be held liable for any damage caused to the vehicle as a result of the use of applications that are of poor quality or are defective, inadequate programming of the applications, insufficient coverage of the network, loss of data during transmission or improper use of mobile phone devices.

Note

- **Wireless Full Link may not be compatible with all technologies.**
- **When crossing the border into countries with permitted radio frequencies different to those in your own country, running the Full Link Wireless function may be restricted or even unavailable due to legal regulations. This may also be indicated by a message in the infotainment system. Running Full Link via cable is not affected by this restriction and it can continue to be used.**

Applications (apps)

With Full Link, the display of the contents of CUPRA applications and other providers installed on mobile phone devices can be transferred to the infotainment screen.

In the case of third-party applications, there may be compatibility problems.

Applications, their use and the necessary mobile phone connection may be pay per use.

The applications on offer can be varied and designed for a vehicle or a specific country. The content and volume of applications, as well as the companies that offer them, may vary. Some applications also depend on the availability of third-party services.

It cannot be guaranteed that all the applications offered will work on all mobile phone devices or with all their operating systems.

The applications offered by CUPRA can be modified, cancelled, deactivated, reactivated and extended without prior notification.

To avoid distracting the driver while driving, only certified applications can be used.

Full Link symbols and settings

- To show more information.
- To select Apple CarPlay technology.
- To select Android Auto™ technology.

Apple CarPlay™

In order to use Apple CarPlay™, the following requirements must be met:

- The iPhone™ **must** be compatible with Apple CarPlay™.
- Voice control (Siri ™) **must** be active on the iPhone™.
- Apple CarPlay™ **must** be active without limitations in the iPhone™ settings.
- If this is not possible via Apple CarPlay™ Wireless, the iPhone™ **must** be connected to the infotainment system via a USB connection. Only USB connections with data transmission are suitable for the use of Apple CarPlay™.
- The USB cable used **must** be an original Apple™ cable.

Apple CarPlay™ Wireless: Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi must also be activated on the iPhone™.

Establish connection

When you first connect an iPhone™, follow the instructions on the infotainment system display and on the iPhone ™.

The requirements must be met to use Apple CarPlay™.

Launch Apple CarPlay™:

- Press **MENU > Full Link** to access the Full Link main menu
- Press Apple CarPlay™ to establish a connection with the iPhone™.

Disconnecting

- In Apple CarPlay™ mode, press the **CUPRA** icon to access the Full Link main menu.
- Press ✕ to interrupt the active connection.

The representation of function buttons on the screen may vary.

Special characteristics

During an active Apple CarPlay™ connection, the following characteristics are applicable:

- Bluetooth® connections between the iPhone™ and the infotainment system are **not** possible.
- If there is an active Bluetooth® connection, it is automatically interrupted.
- It is **not** possible to use the built-in navigation system and the Apple CarPlay™ navigation system at the same time. The last route started interrupts the one that was previously active.
- Depending on the infotainment system you use, on the instrument cluster display you can view data from the Telephone mode.
- Only navigation instructions from compatible apps are displayed on the instrument cluster's screen.
- With the multifunction steering wheel you can accept or reject incoming calls, as well as end an ongoing telephone conversation.

Voice control

- Press on the multifunction steering wheel briefly to start voice control using the infotainment system.
- Press and hold this button to start voice control (Siri™) of the connected iPhone™.

Note

- **The availability of technologies depends on the country and may vary.**
- **You will find information about technical requirements, compatible iPhones, certified applications and their availability on the CUPRA and Apple CarPlay™ websites, at specialised CUPRA dealerships or at any SEAT dealership.**

Android Auto™

Requirements for Android Auto™

In order to use Android Auto™, the following requirements must be met:

- The mobile phone device, called smartphone from here on, **must** be compatible with Android Auto™.
- The smartphone **must** have an Android Auto™ application installed.

- If this is not possible via Android Auto™ Wireless, the smartphone must be connected to the infotainment system via a USB connection with data transmission.
- The USB cable used **must** be an original cable provided by the smartphone manufacturer.

Android Auto™ Wireless: The smartphone's Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi signal also have to be on.

Establish connection

When you first connect a smartphone, follow the instructions on the infotainment system display and on the smartphone.

The requirements must be met to use Android Auto™.

Launch Android Auto™:

- Press **MENU > Full Link** to access the Full Link main menu
- Press Android Auto™ to establish a connection with the smartphone.

Disconnecting

- In Android Auto™ mode, press the **CUPRA** icon to access the Full Link main menu.
- Press ✕ to interrupt the active connection.

Special characteristics

During an active Android Auto™ connection, the following characteristics are applicable:

- An active Android Auto™ device can be connected at the same time via Bluetooth® (HFP profile) with the infotainment system.
- It is possible to use the phone's functions through Android Auto™. If the Android Auto™ device is connected at the same time via Bluetooth® with the infotainment system, the telephone function of the infotainment can also be used.
- It is **not** possible to use the built-in navigation system and the Android Auto™ navigation system at the same time. The last route started interrupts the one that was previously active.
- Telephone and Media data can be displayed on the instrument cluster display.
- Only navigation instructions from compatible apps are displayed on the instrument cluster's screen.
- With the multifunction steering wheel you can accept or reject incoming calls, as well as end an ongoing telephone conversation.

Voice control

- Press on the multifunction steering wheel briefly to start voice control using the infotainment system.
- Press and hold this button to start voice control (Google Assistant) on the connected smartphone.

Note

- **The availability of technologies depends on the country and may vary.**
- **You will find information about technical requirements, compatible mobile phone devices, certified applications and their availability on the CUPRA and Android Auto™ websites, at specialised CUPRA dealerships or at any SEAT dealership.**

Wired and wireless connections

USB connection

Fig. 178 Centre console: USB input.

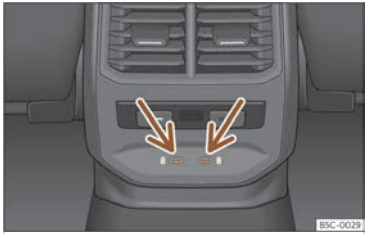


Fig. 179 Rear centre console: USB connectors with power socket function.

The USB port can be found in the storage compartment area of the front centre console ››› **Fig. 178**.

Depending on the equipment and the country, the vehicle may also have USB connections **exclusively for charging or as a power socket**.

These USB ports are located at the rear of the console, between the front seats ››› **Fig. 179**.

Note

Before switching the ignition on or off, unplug the appliances from the USB ports to protect them from any damage caused by fluctuations in voltage.

Infotainment system

First steps

Introduction

Infotainment functions and settings depend on the country and equipment.

Before first use

Before the first use, bear in mind the following points, to take full advantage of the functions and settings offered:

- Observe the basic safety warnings >>> page 278.
- Restore infotainment to factory settings.
- Search and store favourite radio stations on the preset buttons so you can tune them quickly.
- Use only suitable audio sources and data media.
- Pair a mobile phone to use phone management through the Infotainment system.
- Use up-to-date maps for navigation.
- Register with CUPRA to execute the corresponding services.

Current documentation attached

For using infotainment and its components, take into account the following documentation, together with this instruction manual:

- Supplements to your vehicle's on-board documentation.
- Instruction Manual of the mobile phone device or audio sources.
- Operating instructions for data media and external players.
- Manuals for the Infotainment accessories subsequently installed or used additionally.
- Description of services when running CUPRA services.

Safety instructions

Some function areas may include links to third-party websites. CUPRA is not the owner of the third-party websites accessible through the links, and assumes no liability for their content.

Some function areas may include outside information from third-party providers. CUPRA is not responsible for such information being correct, up-to-date or complete, or for ensuring it does not infringe the rights of third parties.

Radio stations and owners of data media and audio sources are responsible for the information they transmit.

Bear in mind that car parks, tunnels, tall buildings, mountains or the operation of other electrical devices, such as chargers, can also interfere with the reception of the radio signal.

Foils or adhesives with metallic layers on the antenna and on the window panes can interfere with radio reception.

⚠ WARNING

The infotainment central computer is interconnected with the control units mounted on the vehicle. Therefore, there is a serious danger of accident and injury if the central computer is repaired or disassembled and reassembled incorrectly.

- **Never replace the central computer with another one that is used, recycled or from another vehicle at the end of its useful life.**
- **The central computer should only be repaired or disassembled and reassembled at specialised workshops. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.**

⚠ WARNING

Any distraction affecting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries. Reading the information on the screen and managing the infotainment system can distract your attention from traffic and cause an accident.

- **Always drive with attention to traffic and in a responsible manner.**

⚠ WARNING

Connecting, inserting or removing an audio source or data media while driving can distract your attention from the traffic and cause an accident.

⚠ WARNING

Select volume settings that allow you to easily hear signals from outside the vehicle at all times (e.g. emergency services sirens).

- Hearing may be impaired if using too high a volume setting, even if only for short periods of time.

⚠ WARNING

The following circumstances may result in an emergency call, phone call or data transmission not being made or being interrupted:

- When in areas with zero or insufficient mobile telephony or GPS signal. Also in tunnels, confined areas between very tall buildings, garages, underpasses, mountains and valleys.
- When in areas with sufficient mobile phone or GPS signal, the telephony network of the telecommunications provider has interference or is not available.
- When the vehicle components necessary to make emergency calls, phone calls and to transmit data are damaged, do not work or do not have sufficient electrical power.
- When the battery of the mobile phone device is discharged or its charge level is insufficient.

⚠ WARNING

In some countries and some telephone networks it is only possible to make an emergency call, if a mobile telephone device is connected to the telephone interface of the vehicle, inside which there is an “unlocked” SIM card with sufficient balance to make calls and with sufficient network signal coverage.

⚠ WARNING

Read and observe the operating instructions provided by the manufacturer in question when using mobile phone devices, data media, external devices, external audio and multimedia sources.

⚠ WARNING

Changing or connecting an audio or multimedia source may cause sudden changes in the volume.

- Lower the volume before connecting or switching to audio or multimedia sources.

⚠ WARNING

If mobile phone and radiocommunication devices are used without connection to an external antenna, the maximum electromagnetic radiation levels inside the vehicle might be surpassed, thus posing a risk to the health of the driver and passengers. This is also the case if the external antenna has not been correctly installed.

- Keep a distance of at least 20 centimetres between the antennas of the mobile phone device and an active medical device, such as a pacemaker, as mobile phones might alter the functioning of these devices.
- Do not carry a switched-on mobile phone too close or directly on top of an active medical device, for instance in a chest pocket.
- Immediately turn off the mobile phone if you suspect it is causing interferences in an active medical device or any other medical device.

⚠ WARNING

Mobile phones, external devices and accessories that are loose or not properly secured could move around the vehicle interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident and cause damage or injury.

- Place mobile phone devices, external devices and their accessories outside the airbag deployment areas or store them securely.

- Position the connection cables of the audio sources and external devices so that they do not interfere with the driver.

⚠ WARNING

The centre armrest may obstruct the driver's arm movements, which could cause an accident and severe injuries.

- Keep the storage compartments of the centre armrest closed at all times while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

If the light conditions are not good and the screen is damaged or dirty, the indications and information displayed on the screen may not be read or be read incorrectly.

- The indications and information displayed on the screen should never induce you to take any risk that compromises safety. The screen is not a replacement for driver awareness.

⚠ WARNING

Radio stations can transmit disaster or hazard announcements. The following conditions prevent such notices from being received or issued:

- When you are in areas with insufficient or no radio-signal reception. Also in tunnels, confined areas between very tall buildings, garages, underpasses, mountains and valleys.
- When the frequency bands of the radio station have interference or are not available in areas with sufficient radio signal reception.
- When the speakers and the vehicle components necessary for radio reception are damaged, do not work or do not have sufficient electrical power.

⚠ WARNING

Switch off mobile phone devices in areas with a risk of explosion!

⚠ WARNING

The driving recommendations and traffic indications shown on the navigation system may differ from the current traffic situation.

- Road signs, signalling systems, traffic regulations and local circumstances prevail over driving recommendations and navigation system indications.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Certain circumstances can significantly lengthen both the initially planned duration of the trip and the route to the destination, or even temporarily prevent navigation to it, for example, if a road is closed to traffic.

ⓘ NOTICE

In areas where special regulations apply or the use of mobile phones is forbidden, the mobile device in question must be switched off at all times. The radiation produced by a mobile phone device when switched on may interfere with sensitive technical and medical equipment, possibly resulting in malfunction or damage to the equipment.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the playback volume is excessive or distorted, the speakers may be damaged.

Overview and controls

Connect System

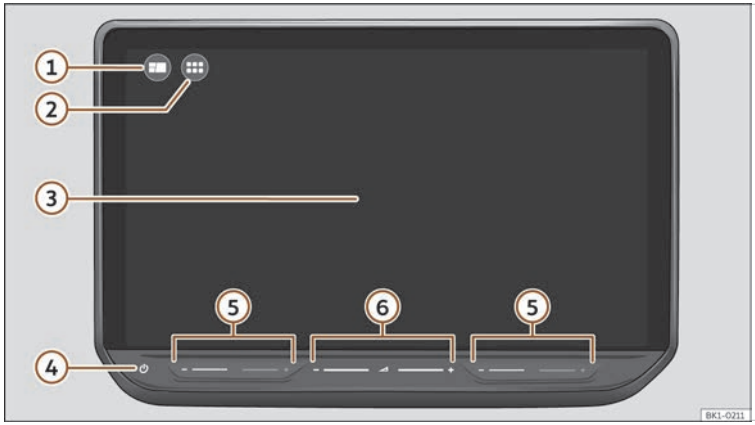


Fig. 180 Overview: control unit

1. HOME button : main menu with widget views.
2. MENU button : main menu in tile mode.
3. Touch screen. The infotainment functions can be used through the screen.
4. On/Off touchpad (to turn the infotainment system on/off).
5. Touch zones (to raise and lower the air conditioning temperature).
6. Touch zones (to raise and lower the volume).

General instructions for use

Operating indications

- The infotainment system needs a few seconds to start up completely and during that time it does not react to inputs. Only the image of the rear view camera system can be displayed during system start-up.
- The display of all indications and the execution of functions only takes place once the infotainment system has finished booting. The duration of the system boot depends on the number of infotainment functions and may take longer than normal in the event of very high or very low temperatures.
- When using the infotainment system and corresponding accessories, e.g., headphones, bear in mind country-specific regulations and legal provisions.
- Some functions of the infotainment system require an active CUPRA CONNECT user account and an Internet connection for the vehicle. Data transmission must not be limited for functions to be performed.
- To use the infotainment system, simply lightly press a button or touch the screen.
- For the correct operation of the infotainment system it is important that it is switched on and that, if necessary, the time and date of the vehicle are set correctly.
- If a function button is missing on the screen, it is not a device defect, but corresponds to the specific equipment of the country or version.
- Some infotainment functions can only be selected when the vehicle is at a standstill. In some countries the parking lock must also be enabled (button **P**) or the selector control must be in the neutral position **N**. This is not a malfunction, but is due to compliance with legislation.
- Restrictions on the use of devices using Bluetooth® technology may apply in some countries. For further information, contact the local authorities.
- If you disconnect the 12-volt battery, turn on the ignition before restarting the infotainment system.
- If the setup is changed, this may change the display on the screen and in some cases, the infotainment system may behave in a manner different to that described in this instruction manual.
- In some countries, the infotainment system automatically shuts off when the engine is switched off and the vehicle's 12-volt battery charge level is low.
- Ensure that any repairs or modifications that need to be carried out on the infotainment system are carried out by a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.
- Using a mobile phone device inside the vehicle may cause noise in the speakers.
- On vehicles with park assist, the audio source volume is automatically lowered when reverse gear is selected. The volume reduction can be adjusted.
- Information about the included software and the license conditions can be found in **Settings > Information > Copyright**.
- When selling or lending the vehicle, make sure that all saved data, files and settings have been deleted and, if necessary, external audio sources and data media have been removed.

Note

You can find more information and tips for using the infotainment system in the Help menu.

Home screen

If an icon is missing on the screen, it is not a device defect, but corresponds to the specific equipment of the country or version.

The following menus can be included as an icon:

Main menus

Vehicle >>> page 38

Navigation >>> page 297

Radio >>> page 290, Media >>> page 294

Telephone >>> page 304

Full Link >>> page 273

Load >>> page 91

Drive Profile >>> page 190

Seats >>> page 154

CUPRA Assistant >>> page 287

Stationary air conditioning >>> page 161

Vehicle lights >>> page 140

Settings >>> page 284

Sound

Users

Store

Legal.

Help

Managing the infotainment system

Execute the functions and settings with the infotainment controls.

Depending on the equipment, the infotainment system has different controls:

- Touch screen.
- Touch zones outside the screen, for example, Volume (+ -).

Open the Quick Guide

More information and operating tips can be found in the Infotainment Quick Guide.

- Press **MENU** > **Help**.

Connecting and disconnecting the infotainment system

The infotainment system turns on when the ignition is switched on, unless it has been manually turned off beforehand.

The infotainment system starts-up with the last set volume, provided that this does not exceed the preset maximum start-up volume.

The infotainment system automatically turns off when the driver's door is opened, provided the ignition has been switched off beforehand.

Moving objects and adjusting volume

Move objects on the screen to adapt settings, for example, with scrollable buttons or to move the areas of a menu.

Depending on the equipment, menus and displays can be customised.

Zooming into and out of images or map sizes

Tip: use your thumb and index finger.

- Press on the map with both fingers at the same time and leave them on the screen.
- To enlarge views, slowly separate one finger from the other. To reduce views, slowly bring one finger towards the other.

Note

If you turn on the infotainment system manually with the ignition off, it will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

Note

As with most state-of-the-art computer and electronic equipment, in certain cases the system may need to be rebooted to make sure that it operates correctly. To do this, if appropriate, press and hold the On/Off button of the infotainment system (**>>> page 281****) for approx. 15 seconds until the CUPRA logo appears on the display.**

Customising the infotainment system

Customise the top menu or the HOME ››› Fig. 180 ① view to quickly access your favourite or most frequently used functions.

The main menu contains function buttons for accessing all of the Infotainment apps.

Configuring customised menus

At the top of the screen you will find shortcuts to customisable system functions. Use the settings to delete or replace them, or change their order.

- Press and hold one of the icons (or press on the icon of an empty position) to display an additional window.
- Select one of the icons from the apps bar.
- Click on the three dots and then **Delete favourite** to delete an icon.
- Click on an icon in the additional window to replace the value.
- To close the edit mode, press **Finish** in the additional window.

Settings (system and sound)

The selection of possible settings varies depending on the country, the equipment in question and the equipment of the vehicle.

Modifying settings

The meaning of the following symbols are valid for all system and sound settings.

All changes are automatically applied when the menus are closed.

☑ / ◉	The setting is selected and activated or connected.
☐ / ○	The setting is not selected and disabled or disconnected.
▼	Open a drop-down list.
+	Increase a setting value.
–	Reduce a setting value.
<	Go back step by step.
>	Go forward step by step.
⊙	Change a setting value with the scrollable button without adjusting.

Sound settings

- Access the sound settings: ⊞ > 🔊.

In the sound settings there may be the following functions, information and setting options:

- Equaliser.
- Position.
- Settings.

System settings

- Access the system settings: ⊞ > ⚙.

In the system settings there may be the following functions, information and setting options:

- Screen.
- Time and date.
- Language.
- Additional keypad languages.
- Units.
- Voice control.
- Wi-Fi.
- Data connection.
- Manage mobile devices.
- Restore factory settings.
- System information.
- Copyright.
- Configuration wizard.

Adjust the volume of external audio sources

If you need to increase the playback volume for the external audio source, first lower the volume on the infotainment system.

If the sound from the connected audio source is **very low**, increase the **output volume** on the external audio source. If this is not enough, change the **input volume** to **medium** or **high**.

If the sound from the connected external audio source is **too loud or distorted**, lower the **output volume** on the external audio source. If this is not enough, change the **input volume** to **medium** or **low**.

Clean the screen

Remove persistent dirt carefully and without using aggressive cleaning products. To clean the screen we recommend that:

- The infotainment system is switched off.
- Use a clean, soft cloth dampened with water ››› page 395.
- In case of stubborn dirt: moisten with a little water and then wipe off carefully with a clean, soft cloth.

NOTICE

Cleaning the display dry or with unsuitable cleaning agents may damage it.

- **When cleaning, only press lightly.**
- **Do not use cleaning products that are aggressive or contain solvents. Such products may damage the equipment and darken the screen.**

Trademarks, licenses and copyrights

Registered trademarks and licenses

Certain terms in this manual bear the symbol ® or ™. These symbols indicate that they are trademarks or registered trademarks. The absence of this symbol, however, does not necessarily mean that the term in question can be used freely.

Other product names are registered trademarks of the respective rights holders.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

- Android Auto™ is a trademark of Google Inc.
- Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.
- iPod®, iPad®, and iPhone® are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.
- MPEG-4 HE-AAC audio coding technology and patents are licensed by Fraunhofer IIS.
- This product is protected by certain Microsoft Corporation industrial and intellectual property rights. The use or commercialization of technology of this type outside the configuration of this product, without a licence from Microsoft or an authorised Microsoft branch is prohibited.

Copyright

As a general rule, audio and video files stored on data media and audio sources are subject to intellectual property protection in accordance with the national and international provisions applicable in each case. Please bear in mind all legal provisions!

Technical data

Central computer with control and display unit[1)]

The factory-mounted central computer in the vehicle includes country-specific components and software for connectivity and for the execution of vehicle, comfort and infotainment functions.

The corresponding indications are shown on the control and display unit screen and partly on the instrument cluster.

[1)] Equipment name: Connect System

- Capacitive colour screen
- Using the equipment with:
  - Touch zones. Touch operation.
  - Buttons on the multifunction steering wheel.
  - Approach sensors.

  HOME > ⚙ Settings > Display.

Vehicle and comfort functions

- Assistants system settings.
- Heating and air conditioning settings.
- Lights and visibility function settings.
- Vehicle comfort settings.
- Parking and manoeuvring settings.

Note

Setting navigation routes and other functions requiring the vehicle's location will be more efficient if you activate the privacy settings to share your location **››› page 271** **and if you give your consent in the App on your mobile device for it to share your location data.**

Sound system (basic equipment):

The factory-fitted entertainment system is equipped as follows:

- Speakers in different locations and with different power levels (watts).
- Internal amplifier depending on the system:
  - 7 speakers (with *Online connectivity unit*).

  6 speakers (without *Online connectivity unit*).

Setting options:

- Equaliser, depending on the system:
  - 5 frequency bands and default settings.
- Sound distribution, depending on the system:
  - Balance + Fader (left / right / front / rear).
- Sound optimisation by zones:
  - Manual (Driver and All).
  - Automatic depending on the seats occupied.

Optional sound system

The infotainment system can be extended with an optional sound system as follows:

- 12 speakers in different locations and with different power levels (watts).
- External amplifier (390 W Ethernet), which processes the audible signals sent by the central computer.
- Excitation of speaker channels through class AB final stages.
- Audio signal processing in digital internal signal processor (DSP).
- Independent subwoofer in the luggage compartment.

Setting options:

- Equaliser: 3 preset sound modes and 1 user-customisable 6-band equaliser. With “Immersion®” surround sound control in any of the modes.
- Sound distribution: Balance (left / right) + Fader (front / rear).
- Sound optimisation by zones:
  - Manual (Driver, Front and All).
  - Automatic depending on the seats occupied.
- Subwoofer volume.

Wi-Fi

- Wi-Fi compliant with IEEE 802.11b/g/n/ax and IEEE 802.11a/n/ac/ax.
- Transfer at 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz.
- Apple CarPlay™ and Android Auto™ over Wi-Fi.
- Simultaneous connection of up to 8 Wi-Fi devices.
- Two Wi-Fi modes at the same time:
  - Access point.
- Internet connection through Wi-Fi:
  - Tethering through the customer's phone.
  - Customer access point (clients) in the vehicle.
- Pairing process simplified with QR code.

Bluetooth® profiles

There can be a maximum of two mobile devices connected to the Bluetooth® hands-free and a third device connected to the Bluetooth® as a music player.

When a mobile phone is connected to the telephone management system, a data exchange takes place via one of the Bluetooth® profiles.

- **Hands-free telephone profile (HFP):** the HFP can be used to manage calls through the infotainment system.
- **Audio profile (A2DP):** This profile allows audio to be transmitted with stereo quality. Other profiles may need to be connected for managing and controlling playback.
- **Phone book access profile (PBAP):** Allows phone book contents to be downloaded from the mobile telephone.
- **Messaging profile (MAP):** It allows short messages (SMS) and emails to be downloaded and synchronised.

CUPRA Assistant

Introduction

Note

The CUPRA Assistant function is not available in all markets.

The CUPRA Assistant works both *online*[1] and *offline*, taking into account the aspects indicated in the section "**Languages available depending on the market**".

In *offline* mode the catalogue of voice controls is limited. For a better user experience, it is advisable to use the *online* mode by activating the *online* voice assistant via the My CUPRA App, which provides the user with a wider range of voice controls. In addition, ChatGPT is also available to answer questions.

The CUPRA Assistant understands questions and expressions without having to learn commands. Commands can be freely formulated and can be colloquial. For better system operation, it is recommended to always include a verb in the voice control. Command proposals can be found in the infotainment system, for example in the **MENU** ⊞ **> CUPRA Assistant > Tips** menu.

Loud noises inside or outside the vehicle can cause malfunctions, as well as confusing phrases and answers.

Seat-dependent speech recognition

Thanks to additional microphones, the CUPRA Assistant can recognise whether the person speaking is the driver or the passenger. Therefore, in the case of the available languages, you can access functions for a specific seat, such as switching on the seat heating.

Languages available depending on the market

- *Online and offline:* German, American English, British English, French, Italian, Spanish, Mexican Spanish, Czech, Dutch, Polish, Portuguese, Swedish, Danish, Norwegian, Finnish, Greek, Russian and Turkish. These languages have advanced functions such as online commands, climate control, natural interaction, etc.
- *Offline:* Bulgarian.

The other infotainment system languages have **no** natural interaction.

Requirements

- *Offline:* voice control with the corresponding infotainment installed in the vehicle.
- *Online and offline:* voice control with the corresponding infotainment system installed in the vehicle and an active CUPRA CONNECT contract.

Note

- **The CUPRA Assistant only recognises commands in the language set in the infotainment system.**
- **Test the CUPRA Assistant while the vehicle is stopped, before moving off, to familiarise yourself with its operation.**

[1] Not available in all markets.

- **The CUPRA Assistant can only control functions that are available as part of the vehicle's equipment.**

Activation word and commands

Activation word for the CUPRA Assistant

The CUPRA Assistant starts when the infotainment recognises the activation word.

If you have started the CUPRA Assistant via the activation word, the activated infotainment will play an audible tone as it is listening to you and display the avatar next to the teleprompter.

- **OR:** after the wake word, say the desired command, for example: "*Hello CUPRA*" and then "*Switch on heating*".

The system scans the words spoken in the vehicle after the activation work and displays them on the screen.

Activate and deactivate the activation word

- Tap **MENU > CUPRA Assistant > Activation**.

Activation word:

Spanish	Hola CUPRA
Bulgarian	Здравей CUPRA
Czech	Ahoj CUPRA
German	Hallo CUPRA
Danish	Hej CUPRA
French	Bonjour CUPRA
Finnish	Hei CUPRA
English	Hey CUPRA
Greek	Γεια σου CUPRA
Italian	Ciao CUPRA
Norwegian	Hallo CUPRA
Dutch	Hallo CUPRA
Portuguese	Olá CUPRA
Polish	Cześć CUPRA
Russian	Привет CUPRA
Swedish	Hej CUPRA
Turkish	Merhaba CUPRA

The activation word can be personalised by the user via the microphone or keypad.

Commands

To help the voice control recognise commands reliably:

- Pronounce clearly. Confusing commands are not recognised. Speak in a normal tone of voice. Speak a little louder if you are driving at high speed.
- Avoid outside noises. Open windows and doors can interfere with voice control.
- Avoid other secondary noises, such as conversations in the vehicle. Do not direct the air flow from the outlets towards the microphone or the interior lining of the roof.
- Do not make long pauses.

	Voice control is active and recognises the words pronounced.

Open the command proposals

- Tap **MENU > CUPRA Assistant**.

Note

- **If the activation word is switched off, the CUPRA Assistant cannot be activated via the activation word. The CUPRA Assistant is still available via the button on the multifunction steering wheel. You can deactivate the activation word in MENU > CUPRA Assistant > Activation.**
- **Availability depends on country and equipment.**

Starting and ending the CUPRA Assistant

Depending on the equipment, you can start voice control in different ways.

Starting the CUPRA Assistant

- *Activating the CUPRA Assistant:* say the word that activates the CUPRA Assistant.
- *Multifunction steering wheel:* press the voice control button .

In some cases you can also start the voice assistant of the connected mobile device by pressing and holding down the voice control button.

Ending the CUPRA Assistant manually

The CUPRA Assistant can be cancelled using the command **Cancel**.

- *Multifunction steering wheel:* tap the voice control button once to end the assistant.

CUPRA Assistant is automatically terminated if you use infotainment functions, if the parking system is activated, if there is an incoming call or a long pause or silence.

Radio mode

Introduction

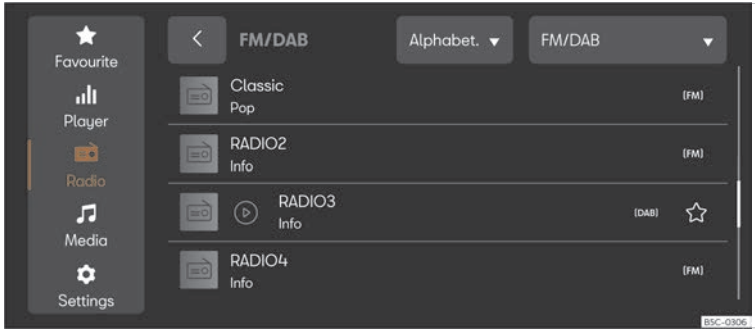


Fig. 181 Schematic representation: Radio view.

In Radio mode you can tune in the available radio stations in different frequency bands and save your favourites on the preset buttons to access them quickly.

The types of reception and frequency bands available depend on the equipment and the country. In certain countries, frequency bands may stop broadcasting or may no longer be available.

Access the RADIO menu

- Press **MENU** > ▷ > ⊟ ››› **Fig. 181**.

Access the settings

- Press **MENU** > ▷ > ⚙.

Online functions in Radio mode[1)]

Online functions in Radio mode are only available under the following conditions:

- CUPRA CONNECT equipment.
- You have an active CUPRA CONNECT user account.
- The vehicle is assigned to your user account.
- You have a corresponding data plan purchased from the webshop of CUPRA's official data supplier, or you have a volume of data for your own mobile device via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Note

- **Radio stations are responsible for the content of the information they transmit. Electrical equipment connected to the vehicle may also cause interference in radio signal reception and noise in the loudspeakers.**

1) Not available in all markets.

- **Foil or metal-coated stickers attached to the windows may affect reception on vehicles with a window aerial.**

Radio equipment and symbols

The functions, as well as the types of reception and frequency bands available depend on the equipment and the country.

- AM tuner.
- Dual FM receiver (diversity antenna).
- Summarised FM station list.
- Merger of DAB and FM stations into one list.
- Merger of all stations stored in preset buttons into one list. Maximum 36 favourite stations.
- Station logos.
- DAB presentation (slideshow). Images that are emitted sequentially.
- Internet Radio: over 10,000 stations and podcasts from around the world, included with CUPRA CONNECT.

Universal symbols in Radio mode

AM To select the desired AM frequency band[1].

FM/DAB To select the desired FM/DAB frequency band.

Internet radio To select the type of Internet radio reception.

TP Next to the name of the station, monitoring of active traffic information stations (TP).

Symbols on the FM/DAB frequency band

To display the frequency band for manual selection of the FM frequency. Only the FM band should be selected in the Radio context.

DAB not available.

DAB stations support presentations (slideshow).

Symbols on the AM frequency band[1]

Manually updating the station list.

To display the frequency band for manual selection of the AM frequency.

Menus in Internet radio mode[1]

Show station selection.

Open text search.

Show the last online radio stations heard.

TOP 100 Show the 100 most played radio stations and podcasts.

Show available online radio podcasts.

Show online radio stations, grouped by country.

Show online radio stations by the desired language.

Show online radio stations whose programme has the the desired musical genre.

Selecting, tuning and saving a station

Select the frequency band

Before selecting a station you have to select a frequency band or a type of reception. Different stations are available depending on the frequency band selected or the type of reception.

The types of reception and frequency bands available depend on the equipment and the country.

- Select the frequency band or type of reception: AM, FM/DAB, FM (for devices that do not have DAB), Internet radio.

Search and select a station

You can select radio stations in different ways. The options vary depending on the frequency band and the type of reception.

[1] Not available in all markets.

Select via the frequency band (AM and FM)

1. Activate the frequency band.
2. Click on the cursor, scroll through the frequency band and release it when you reach the frequency band you want.

   OR: press on a point on the frequency band. The cursor will automatically jump to the corresponding frequency.

The station of the set frequency is tuned.

Select from the station list (AM and FM/DAB)

The station list shows the stations that are currently tunable. In the AM frequency band, you may have to update the station list if you are no longer in the area where you last accessed the station list. In the FM/DAB frequency band, the station list is automatically updated.

1. Open the station list
2. Press the station you want.

The selected station is tuned. In the case of FM/DAB and if the station is available, the best quality reception is automatically selected.

Search and filter stations (Internet radio)

In Online Radio mode, stations can be filtered by categories and can be searched by text.

1. Open the station list.
2. Select the category by which the stations are to be filtered.

   OR: press 🔍 to start the text search. The input field is displayed.
3. Enter the name of the station you want. The list of the stations found is updated while entering the text.
4. Press the station you want.

The selected station is tuned.

Save stations on the preset keys

You can store up to 36 stations of different frequency bands and reception types as favourites using the preset buttons.

1. Tune the station you want.
2. Access the preset buttons.
3. Press the preset button and hold it down until the station is stored.

   OR: press the station on the station list and hold it down. The preset buttons are displayed.
4. Press the preset button.

The station is stored in the selected preset button.

If a station was already stored in the preset button, it is overwritten with the new station.

Special functions in Radio mode

Traffic information (TP)

The TP function monitors the announcements of a station with traffic information and automatically plays them in the Radio mode or in the multimedia playback that is active. To do this, you have to be able to tune into a station with traffic information.

Some stations without their own traffic information support the TP function by broadcasting traffic information from other stations (EON).

In the FM frequency band or in the Multimedia mode, a station with traffic information in the background is automatically tuned while it is possible to tune into a station with traffic information.

If no station with traffic information can be tuned in, the device automatically searches for stations with tunable traffic information.

Stations with traffic information are not available in all countries.

Activating and deactivating the TP function

- In Radio mode or Multimedia mode, press ⚙ > **Traffic programme (TP)**.

Presentations (SlideShow) in DAB

The slideshow function (SLS) is a feature of digital radio (DAB) stations, allowing a slideshow of images, e.g. the station's logo, to be displayed to the user.

Activating and deactivating the SLS function

It is possible to deactivate the slideshow function on DAB radio stations:

- Menu ⚙ > **Slide Show** (switch on/off).

Online radio.[1)]

Online radio is a type of reception for Internet radio stations and podcasts that are independent of AM, FM and DAB. Thanks to Internet transmission, reception is not limited to the region.

Internet radio is only available with CUPRA CONNECT online services activated and online mode active. The use of online radio may not be free of charge due to the transmission of data from the Internet.

- In Online radio mode, press and set the audio quality to high or low to tune the online radio.

Station logos

In the case of some frequency bands, station logos may already be pre-installed in the infotainment system.

If in the FM/DAB frequency band settings the **automatic selection of station logos** is activated, station logos are automatically assigned to the stations.

In the Online radio mode, the infotainment system accesses the station logos of the online database and automatically assigns them to the stations.

Assign station logos manually

1. In FM/DAB mode, press **Station logos**.
2. Press on the ✎ icon and then select the station to which a station logo is to be assigned.
3. Select the station logo. If desired, repeat the same process with other stations.
4. **OR:** via the menu ⚙ > **Station logos**.

Additional DAB warnings

The DAB announcement function monitors possible notifications from DAB radio stations and plays them automatically in Radio mode.

Activate and deactivate additional DAB warnings:

- **Menu > Additional DAB announcements** (Activate/deactivate).

Radio text

The radio text function provides information related to the selected radio station.

Activate and deactivate Radio text:

- **Menu > Radio Text** (Activate/deactivate).

[1)] Not available in all markets.

Media Mode

Introduction

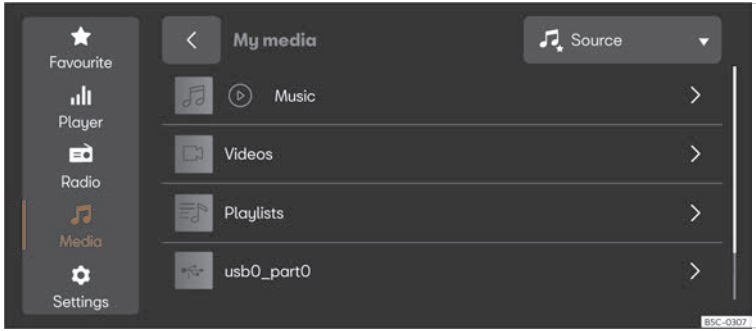


Fig. 182 Schematic representation: Media view

In Media mode you can play multimedia files from data media through the infotainment system.

Depending on the equipment, the following data media can be used:

- USB storage support (for example, a USB stick, a mobile phone connected via USB).
- Bluetooth® device (for example, a mobile phone or a tablet).

Depending on the equipment, the following types of multimedia files can be played:

- Audio files.
- Video files (depends on the system).

Access the MEDIA menu

- Press **MENU** > ⊙ > ♫ >>> **Fig. 182**.

Access the settings

- Press **MENU** > ⊙ > ⚙.

Data media limitations and indications

Data media may not work if they have been exposed to high temperatures or have been damaged. Please bear in mind the manufacturer's indications.

Quality differences between data media produced by different manufacturers can cause multimedia playback malfunctions.

Incorrect data media configuration may make it unreadable.

Playlists only specify a playback order and refer to the storage location of the multimedia files within the folder structure. No multimedia files are saved in a playlist. To play a playlist, multimedia files have to be found in the storage places of the data media to which the playlist refers.

Note

CUPRA assumes no liability for any deterioration or loss of files on data storage devices.

Equipment features and media symbols

Audio, multimedia and connectivity:

- Media playback and control via Bluetooth®.
- Audio playback in these formats: AAC, APE, ALAC, FLAC, MP2, MP3, MP4, Vorbis, OPUS, WMA, WAV.
- Video playback in these formats:
  - MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 (.mpg, .mpeg, .mkv, .avi).
  - ISO MPEG-4 ASP; Xvid (.mp4, .m4v, .mov, .mkv, .avi).
  - ISO MPEG-4 AVC / H.264 (.mp4, .m4v, .mov, .mkv, .avi).
  - Windows Media Video 9 (.wmv, .asf, .mkv, .avi).
- Playlists on any type of device.
- Multimedia search.

Universal symbols in Media mode

- ▶ Start playback.
- ❚❚ Pause playback.
- ⏮ Change to the previous track.
- ⏭ Change to the next track.
- Repeat the track that is playing.
- Repeat all titles.
- Activate the shuffle playback order.
- ★ Display a list of favourites.
- ⊕ Add a media file as favourite.
- ▼ Top right: select media source.
- ⚙ Access the settings.
- 🔍 Open the search.
- < Return to the top folder of the media source.

Select and play a multimedia source

Select multimedia source

Before playing multimedia files you must first connect a multimedia source.

- Connect an external multimedia source.
- Select the connected media source to be used for playback.

Playing audio and video files

You can search and play multimedia files from an available multimedia source in different ways.

Search in the folder structure

Multimedia files can be catalogued by categories (for example, album, artist, title). In **My media** this category view is always displayed. The classic folder structure of individual USB data media is also found in **My media**.

1. Activate the folder structure.

   The folder structure of the selected multimedia source is displayed. When **My media** is selected, the categories (music, videos, playlists) and connected multimedia sources are displayed first.
2. Search for the title you want in the folder structure.

   OR: press 🔍 to start a text search The input field is displayed.
3. Enter the name of the desired title. The list of the titles found is updated while entering the text.
4. Press the desired title.

   If at the beginning of the playback your selection is in a folder of a multimedia source, the multimedia files that are in it are also added to the playback.

   If a playlist is played, all available titles in the playlist are added to the playback.
5. Close your selection with ✕.

Select favourites

In favourites you can save titles, music genres, artists and albums individually for playback.

- Access favourites ★.
- Press the favourite you want.

Depending on your selection, all the titles belonging to the favourite are added to the playback.

Save favourites

Only multimedia files in **My media** of the infotainment system can be saved as favourites. You can save up to a maximum of 36 titles, albums, artists and music genres individually as favourites.

1. Start playback.
2. Access favourites.
3. Tap a favourite that is not assigned.

   OR: press and hold on an existing favourite for approx. 3 seconds.
4. Select from the selection list: Title, Album, Artist, Genres, Playlist.

The selection is saved instead of the previously selected favourite. If the favourite was already assigned, the previously saved favourite is overwritten.

The selectable options in the selection list depend on the data attached to the multimedia file. If the music genre is not indicated in the music files, for example, you cannot save the music genre as favourite.

If a video file is playing, only that video can be saved as favourite.

Playing entertainment content in the infotainment system

Depending on the infotainment system, videos can be played.

Video mode

When in Video mode, a video stored on data media, in **My media** can be played on the infotainment display. In this case, the video sound is played through the vehicle's speakers.

The image is only displayed if the vehicle is stopped. When the vehicle is in motion, the infotainment screen turns off. The sound of the video can still be heard.

Navigation

Introduction

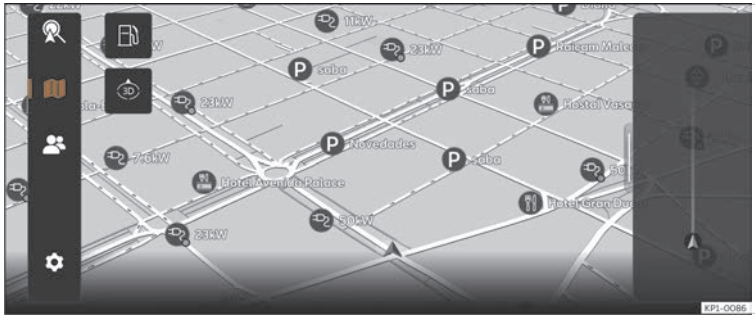


Fig. 183 Schematic representation: Navigation view.

Note

The "Navigation" function is not available in all markets.

A global satellite system determines the current position of the vehicle and the sensors mounted on the vehicle analyse the routes taken. All measured values and possible traffic events are compared with the available maps to allow optimal navigation to the destination.

Navigation announcements and graphic representations will guide you to your destination.

Navigation is managed on the screen.

Depending on the country, some functions of the infotainment system will not be available on the screen when travelling above a certain speed. It is not a malfunction, but is due to compliance with legislation.

Navigation announcements

Navigation announcements audible indications for driving relating to the current route.

The type and frequency of navigation announcements depend on the driving situation, for example, starting the guide to the destination, driving on the motorway or on a roundabout and the settings.

If the exact destination cannot be reached because, for example, it is in a non-digitised area, indications relating to the address and the distance to the destination are displayed on the screen.

During dynamic route guidance, you will receive information about reported traffic congestion on the route. An additional navigation announcement is given if the route is recalculated due to traffic congestion.

While a navigation announcement is playing, its volume can be adjusted. Subsequent navigation announcements will be played with the newly adjusted volume.

Limitations during navigation

If the infotainment system cannot receive data from GPS satellites, for example, in a tunnel or in an underground garage, navigation continues using the vehicle's sensors.

In areas that are not digitised or are only partially digitised in the infotainment's memory, the infotainment system will still attempt to provide route guidance.

In the case of missing or incomplete navigation data, it may not be possible to determine the exact position of the vehicle. This may mean that navigation is not as precise as usual.

Roads and streets are subject to constant change (e.g. new roads, road works, roads closed to traffic, changes to street names and building numbers). If the navigation data is obsolete, this may lead to errors or inaccuracies during route guidance.

Managing the navigation map

For optimal viewing, you can also manage the navigation map with additional finger movements.

Moving the map

Tip: use your index finger

- Move the map with your finger.

Zooming into or out of the view

Tip: use your index finger

- Press twice on the map and keep your finger pressed on the screen.
- To zoom out the map view, move your finger upwards. To zoom into the map view, move your finger downwards.

Change the 2D / 3D view

Tip: use your index and middle fingers

- Press on the map with both fingers at the same time and keep them pressed.
- For 2D view scroll your fingers down, for 3D view scroll your fingers up.

Rotate the map

Tip: use your thumb and index finger

- Press on the map with both fingers at the same time and keep them pressed.
- To rotate the map view, turn your fingers clockwise or anticlockwise.

Saved data

The infotainment system saves certain data, for example, frequent routes and position data, to make it easier to enter the destination and to optimise route guidance.

Delete saved data

- Press **Settings > Basic function settings > Delete** and then **Accept**.

⚠ WARNING

Select the settings, enter the destination and the modifications for navigation only with the vehicle at a standstill.

Note

- **If a detour is passed during route guidance, navigation may recalculate the route.**
- **The quality of the navigation recommendations given by the Infotainment system depends on the navigation data available and any reported traffic congestions.**
- **Navigation announcements are not emitted if the sound is muted in the infotainment system.**

Navigation functions and symbols

Navigation

Navigation functions depend on the equipment and country.

All navigation functions require the activation of CUPRA CONNECT PLUS online services.

Functions

- Entering the destination and route calculation (offline and online.[1])
- Display of two navigation maps at the same time (screen and instrument cluster).
- Update of online maps.[1]
- Predictive navigation.
- 3D urban maps.
- Online traffic information.[1]
- Dynamic POIs (points of interest).

Symbols on the map

The buttons and indications depend on the settings and the current driving situation.

Symbols for traffic events and points of interest (POIs) are displayed on the map, for example, petrol stations, train stations or interesting stopovers, provided navigation has such data >>> page 302.

- Current position.
- Search for destinations.
- Destinations along the route.
- Final destination.
- Home address.
- Work address.
- Favourite destinations.
- Additional window with route options.

[1] Not available in all markets.

- Centre the map on the current position.
- Change view: 2D oriented to the north, or 2D oriented to the direction of travel, or 3D to the direction of travel.
- Information about the current route guidance.
- Map scale.

Other symbols

- Entering the detailed destination for an address.
- Search for destinations.
- Back

Symbols in the route details

- Current position.
- Destination of the current guidance.

POI symbols (points of interest)

POIs (points of interest) are shown on the map, provided the navigation has said data.

Click on the desired POI (point of interest) to start route guidance >>> page 300.

- Petrol station.
- Car park.
- Tourist information offices.
- Train station.
- Restaurant.

Traffic information.

POIs (points of interest) are shown on the map, provided the navigation has said data >>> page 302.

Click on a traffic event to open an additional window with further details >>> page 302.

- Slow traffic.
- Traffic jam.
- Accident.
- Broken down vehicle.
- Slippery surface (ice or snow).
- Road closed to traffic.
- Slippery road hazard.
- Danger.
- Road works.
- Strong wind.

Reduced visibility.

Navigation data

The Infotainment system is equipped with a built-in navigation data memory. Depending on the country, the necessary navigation data may already be pre-installed.

To provide correct route guidance and make the most of the functions offered, the infotainment system should be updated on a regular basis.

Using obsolete data may lead to errors during navigation. Current routes cannot be traced or the route guidances will lead to mistaken destinations.

Ensure navigation data is updated at all times.

Online updating of navigation data[1)]

The navigation data of the regions through which you travel frequently is automatically updated in the background if the Internet connection is established and the privacy settings are valid.

- With the ignition switched on, the navigation data is updated automatically.

Manual update of navigation data

Current navigation data for large regions, for example Western Europe, can be downloaded from www.seat.com and stored on USB data devices.

- Download the navigation data to a USB data device.
- Turn on the ignition of the vehicle.
- Connect the USB data device to the infotainment system. Navigation data is automatically updated in the background.

The map version is displayed in **HOME** > ⚙ > **System information**.

Note

Automatic update of the navigation data is subject to the privacy settings. No update is made in incognito mode.

Start route guidance

Depending on the country and equipment, different functions are available to enter destinations.

The different functions for entering destinations are found in the navigation main menu.

Opening the Navigation main menu

- Press **MENU** > ⌖.

Select the destination and start navigation

1. Press 🔍.
2. Select the desired destination. You can choose from **Suggestions, Recent destinations or Favourite destinations.**

   OR: press 🔍 and enter the address in the input screen.

   OR: detailed address.
3. Press **Start**.

Suggestions

The destination synopsis uses recorded data to propose possible destinations.

Select the destination and start navigation:

1. Tap 🔍 and then **Suggestions**.
2. Select the desired destination. The route guidance starts automatically.

Quick start: for a quick start, press and hold the desired destination for a few seconds.

Recent destinations

Navigation saves the recent destinations to make them available for route guidance.

[1)] Not available in all markets.

Select the destination and start navigation:

1. Tap and then **Recent destinations**.
2. Press the desired destination.
3. Press **Start**.

Quick start: for a quick start, press and hold the desired destination for a few seconds.

Favourite destinations

Save up to 20 destinations as favourites.

To save a destination as a favourite press ☆ in the split screen when entering the destination.

Select the destination and start navigation:

1. Tap and then **Favourites**.
2. Press the desired destination.
3. Press **Start**.

Note

Enter the destination as accurately as possible. If you enter a destination incorrectly, the route guidance will not be able to start or it will guide you to an incorrect destination.

Start route guidance by selecting from the map

The navigation map includes active areas at many points that are suitable for entering the destination. To do this, press the desired position or place on the map. If there is map data at this point, you can start route guidance.

Whether it is possible to enter the destination through the navigation map depends on the state of the data and it is not possible for all positions.

To start "offroad navigation", press an empty area without position data.

Start navigation:

1. Press .
2. Move the view on the map until the desired position can be selected. The navigation map can be used by means of additional finger movements ››› page 297.
3. Press the desired destination on the map.
4. A pop-up window will appear where you can tap on the corresponding icon:
   - ☆: favourite destination.
   - : new route.
   - **Start**: starts the route to the destination.

Offroad navigation

"Offroad navigation" calculates routes to selected destination points using unknown data. When a destination point is outside the known roads or position data, navigation finds the route to the closest point on a known road and completes the path to the next destination point with a direct connection.

Start navigation:

1. Move the view on the map until the desired position can be selected. The navigation map can be used by means of additional finger movements ››› page 297.
2. Press on any point on the map without position data.
3. A pop-up window will appear where you can tap on the corresponding icon:
   - ☆: favourite destination.
   - : new route.
   - **Start**: starts the route to the destination.

Start route guidance using contact details

Start route guidance with the saved address data of a contact. Contacts saved without address data cannot be used for route guidance.

Start navigation:

1. Press .
2. Press on the contact you want.
3. A pop-up window will appear where you can tap on the corresponding icon:
   - ☆: favourite destination.
   - : new route.
   - **Start**: starts the route to the destination.

Note

If the address details of a contact are obsolete, the route guidance will nevertheless take you to the registered address. Check that the contact address is updated.

Traffic information

The infotainment system receives detailed traffic information automatically[1] if the Internet connection is established. This information is displayed using symbols and by highlighting the road network in colour on the map.

Traffic incidents

Traffic incidents, for example, traffic jams or congested traffic, are shown on the navigation map using symbols.

With active route guidance, traffic incidents that are on the current route are shown in the route details. Such traffic incidents can be avoided >>> page 302, *Function descriptions*.

Traffic flow indication

The navigation map shows traffic flow according to current traffic events, highlighting the road network in colour.

- **Yellow:** Slow traffic.
- **Red:** Traffic jam.

[1] Not available in all markets.

Note

Traffic information receipt is subject to the privacy settings. In maximum Privacy mode, no traffic information is received. The Tracking or Location level must be set up.

Function descriptions

Route details

The route details contain information on all incidents, for example, the starting point, stopovers, traffic events, POIs and destination, provided the navigation has such data.

If you press on an incident, an additional window opens providing more options. The available options depend on the incident and the current settings.

Open and close the route details

- To open them, press | or swipe it.
- To close them, press | or swipe it.

Edit route guidance

To edit the route guidance, move the stopovers to the destination in the TripView view.

- Hold the desired destination pressed until it is visibly highlighted.
- Move the destination to the desired position.
- Remove your finger from the screen. The route will recalculate.

Avoid traffic incidents

The details of the route show the current traffic incidents if the navigation has such data. Avoid traffic incidents by editing route details >>> page 302.

- Press on a traffic event.
- Press on **Avoid**. The route will recalculate.

Split screen

When handling navigation functions, an additional window with other options may open. Possible options depend on the function being used.

Close the additional screen

- Press on an empty area outside the additional window.
- **OR:** press ✕.
- **OR:** press **Accept**.

Functions in the additional window:	
Show on map	Show what is selected on the map.

Functions in the additional window:	
Add stopover destination	Add a stopover to the route guidance.
Direct route	Starts direct route guidance.
Delete	Delete a stopover from the route guidance.
Avoid	Avoid traffic jam. The route will recalculate.
Stop route guidance	Ends the current route guidance.
×	Close the additional window.
☆	Add a destination to favourites.

Learn usage pattern

When the vehicle is in motion, navigation saves routes and destinations used to automatically generate destination proposals. Destinations are learned based on the time of day and the day of the week.

Navigation can propose up to 5 routes at the same time. The proposed routes may be different from the routes of the normal route guidance.

If one of the proposed destinations is selected, the guide to that destination is started.

The route guidance follows the selected route until the vehicle deviates from it. In that case, the route is recalculated and takes you back along the most direct path to the initially selected destination.

Important traffic jams are taken into account in the route guidance, and are avoided if alternative routes are available, provided navigation has such data.

You can activate and deactivate the function whenever you want.

Enable and disable learning usage pattern

The setting is in the corresponding navigation menu ⚙ > **Basic function settings**.

- To activate the function, activate **Learn usage pattern**.
- To disable the function, disable **Learn usage pattern**.
- To delete saved data, press **Delete usage pattern**.

360° electric operating range display

Valid for: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The 360° electric operating range display shows the possible range with the current charge level of the high voltage battery.

- To deactivate the 360° range display, select: **Navigation Settings > Show range on map**.

Note

- **If the battery charge level is very low, the range indicator is automatically hidden. When the battery is recharged, the range indicator is displayed again.**
- **If necessary, adapt the map view to display the full range on the map.**

Telephone interface

Introduction

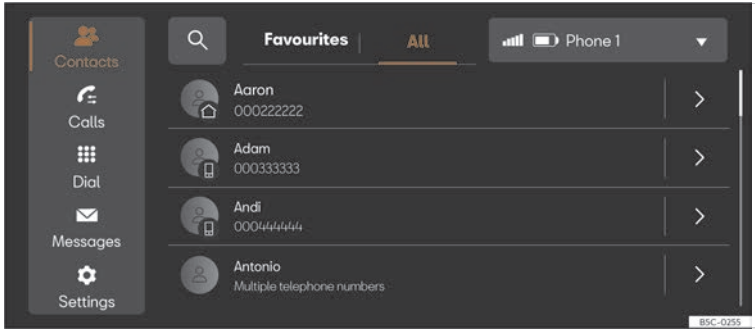


Fig. 184 Schematic representation: Phone view.

You can use the telephone interface to connect your mobile to the infotainment system and operate phone functions through it. The sound is played through the vehicle's speakers.

You can connect up to two mobile phone devices simultaneously to the infotainment system.

High speeds, poor weather or road conditions and a noisy ambience (even outside of the vehicle), as well as the quality of reception can all affect the quality of a telephone conversation in the vehicle.

Note

- **As a general rule, pairing a device (for example, a mobile phone device) is only necessary once. You can restore the device connection via Bluetooth® or Wi-Fi with the infotainment system whenever you want without having to pair the device again.**
- **The availability of certain telephony functions will depend on the features of the mobile connected to the infotainment system, such as the operating system, mobile network, or phone company.**

Telephone interface equipment and symbols

Equipment features

- Hands-free function.
- Use up to two phones at the same time.
- Phone book with a maximum of 5,000 contacts.
- SMS functions via Bluetooth®: SMS reading, SMS writing (templates included), SMS playback, message history.
- Email functions via Bluetooth®: reading email, writing email.

- Connection to wireless charging option.
- Connection to the microphone mounted on the vehicle.

Symbols in the main menu

- Contacts.
- List of incoming and outgoing calls.
- Enter telephone number.
- Text messages (SMS and emails).
- Telephone interface settings.

Symbols for calls

The symbols may be different depending on the infotainment system.

- Start a call or bring it to the foreground.
- End or reject a call.
- Open contact list or Start conference call.
- Enter telephone number.
- Mute the sound of the hands-free
- Hold call.
- Continue call.
- Switch call to private mode.
- SOS Make an emergency call.
- Voice mail.
- Reject call with SMS Template.
- Ignore an incoming call.
- Switch the call to handsfree mode.
- Go to the CarPlay context.
- Remove a person from the conference call.
- Go to the contacts list.
- Make a breakdown call.
- Make a customer care call.

Call list symbols

- To open the call lists, press .
- Incoming call.
- Outgoing call.
- Missed call.
- Telephone number (company).
- Telephone number (private).
- Mobile telephone number (company).
- Mobile telephone number (private).
- Fax (private).
- Fax.

Symbols for text messages

The symbols may be different depending on the infotainment system.

- To open the text messages, press .
- Activate voice control input >>> page 287.
- Templates for text messages.

Places with special regulations

Switch off the mobile telephone and the telephone interface in places with a risk of explosion. These places are not always clearly marked. They include, for example:

- The vicinity of chemical pipelines and tanks.
- The lower decks of boats and ferries.
- In the proximity of vehicles that run on liquefied gas (such as propane or butane).
- Places where the air is laden with chemicals or particles such as flour, dust or metal powder.
- All other places where the engine or telephone must be switched off.

WARNING

Switch off the mobile phone in areas with a risk of explosion!

Note

In areas where special regulations apply or the use of mobile phones is forbidden, it must be switched off at all times. The radiation produced by the mobile phone when switched on may interfere with sensitive technical and medical equipment, possibly resulting in malfunction or damage to the equipment.

Pairing, connecting and managing

Pairing requirements:

- Bluetooth® is activated on the mobile phone device.
- Bluetooth® is activated on the infotainment system.
- Depending on the mobile device, it will be necessary to have the Bluetooth® menu open or activate the **Visibility** option so that the device is visible from the infotainment system.
- The vehicle must be stopped or someone must be detected in the front passenger seat to perform the pairing.

Pair a mobile phone device suitable for telephony with the infotainment system to use the telephone interface functions. When making the first connection, the mobile phone device is paired with the infotainment system. Doing so saves a user profile.

The pairing can take a few minutes. The functions available depend on the mobile phone device used and its operating system.

Pair a mobile phone device

To use the phone interface with the desired mobile device, establish an active connection to the infotainment system.

1. Accessing the mobile-devices menu:

   Open the **Mobile devices** connections menu in the infotainment system. To find this menu follow either of the following two steps:

   Menu ⁞⁞⁞ > Settings > Network > Mobile Devices

   Menu ⁞⁞⁞ > Phone > Settings > Select mobile telephone
2. Start Bluetooth pairing®:

   On the mobile device, open the list of available Bluetooth® devices and select the infotainment system name to connect.

   Alternatively, select the mobile-device name in the list of available Bluetooth® devices in the infotainment system's connections menu.
3. Confirm the pairing:

   Confirm the prompts on the mobile device and on the infotainment system to connect. If pairing is successful, the mobile phone data are stored in the user profile.

   After pairing, the phone interface is displayed automatically showing the active connection with the mobile device.

Note

For a full experience, approve the prompts on the mobile device that grant access to contacts and messaging.

Pairing multiple mobile devices

You can pair additional mobile devices with the infotainment system using the same procedure. Paired devices will be saved as "known devices", even if they do not have an active connection at the time.

The **phone interface** allows up to two simultaneous hands-free connections. To connect a new device, repeat the procedure above and confirm data-transfer permissions on that device.

Connecting a known mobile device

Requirement: the mobile device must have been previously paired and appear as a "known device" in both the infotainment system and the device itself.

To connect automatically:

1. Bluetooth® is activated on the mobile phone device.
2. The infotainment system will connect automatically if the device is within range.

Managing mobile devices. Active and passive connection

Although two mobile devices can be connected simultaneously, the phone interface displays information from only one device at a time, referred to as the active device.

Difference between active and passive connection:

Active The mobile device is connected and is the primary device.
Functions such as contacts, call history, favourites, messaging and keypad are available for this device.
Outgoing calls made from the infotainment system are routed through this device.
The name of the active mobile device is displayed at all times at the top of the phone interface.

Passive The mobile device is connected and is secondary.
It can receive or handle calls, but detailed information is not shown, and calls cannot be initiated through the system while it is secondary.

Switching the active connection

If two mobile devices are connected to the infotainment system, you can switch which one is active. To do so:

1. In the phone interface, tap the drop-down with the name of the current mobile device.
2. Select the device you wish to activate.

   The phone interface will update to show information from the newly active mobile device. The other connected devices will automatically become passive connections.

Voice control with Android Auto™ or Apple Carplay™ technologies active

The voice control functions for phones may not be available on all mobile devices, so pressing and holding the voice control activation button on the multifunction steering wheel can be used to activate the mobile device's voice assistant.

⚠ WARNING

If you perform the pairing while driving, it could cause an accident or injury.

- **Perform pairing only with the vehicle at a standstill.**

Note

- **While the infotainment system is in the Known mobile phones menu, the wireless charging function is disabled. When you exit this menu, the wireless charging function is activated again.**
- **When pairing some mobile phone devices, a PIN number is shown on the screen of the mobile phone device. Enter or accept that number in the infotainment system to complete the pairing.**

Basic and Comfort Telephony

Depending on the equipment, two types of telephone interface can be used:

- Basic telephone interface.
- Comfort telephone interface.

Basic telephone interface

The Basic telephone interface uses the Bluetooth® HFP profile for transmission. This interface allows the use of telephone functions through the infotainment system and playback through the vehicle's speakers.

Comfort telephone interface

Like the Basic telephone interface, the Comfort telephone interface also uses the Bluetooth® HFP profile.

The Comfort phone interface can be equipped with the wireless charging function >>> page 309.

In order to use the functions of the wireless charging function, you have to place a suitable mobile phone device correctly in the storage compartment. The mobile phone device will then connect to the vehicle antenna. This improves the reception and sound quality of calls.

Calling and sending messages

Open the telephone interface

- Press **MENU** > .

Make a call

Select a phone number to start a call. Different functions are available for selecting a phone number:

Contacts

If a contact has several registered phone numbers you have to select one.

- Press and press a number on the list to start the call.

OR: press and enter the contact name in the input field to search for it. Press on the contact to start the call.

OR: press a favourite in the telephone interface main menu to start the call.

Calls

The telephone interface shows the call list of the mobile telephone device. Start a call from the call list.

- Press **> All** and press a number on the list to start the call.

OR: press and filter the call list entries (for example, missed calls or dialled numbers). In the filtered list, press a number to start the call.

Dial number

Manually enter a phone number to start a call. While entering the phone number, contacts that match that number are shown on the infotainment screen.

- Press and enter the telephone number.

Press to start the call.

The last call is dialled by pressing and holding the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Send messages

Depending on the mobile phone device and the infotainment system used, you can send and receive SMS and e-mails through the telephone interface.

Send an SMS:

1. Press **> Text message > Enter new message** and enter the message on the screen.
2. Enter the contact you want in the search bar.
3. To send the message press **OK**.

> **Note**
>
> **For messaging to be available, permissions to share messages must be accepted in the mobile device settings.**

Send an email:

- Press **> E-mail > Enter new message** and enter the message on the screen.
- Enter the contact you want in the search bar.
- To send the message press **OK**.

> **Note**
>
> **The availability of the E-mail function depends on the connected mobile telephone device and the e-mail apps that are used.**

Phone book, favourites and speed dial buttons

When a telephone is first connected to the infotainment system, the phone book is saved in the infotainment system. Data transmission may have to be confirmed and permissions for sharing contacts on the telephone may have to be accepted.

Each time the phone is reconnected, the phone book is updated.

If conference calls are supported, calls with up to six participants can be made by accessing the phone book during a call. If there is a saved image for a contact, it can be displayed in the list next to the entry.

Favourites

A speed dial button can be assigned to a a maximum of six phone book favourites. If there is a registered photo saved for the contact, it is shown on the speed dial button.

The dialling buttons have to be edited manually.

Assign the speed dial button

- In the **Favourites** menu, press the **+** button, then open the phone book to select a contact as a favourite. If the contact has several phone numbers, press on the number in the list.

Edit the speed dial button

- To edit or delete a favourite contact press the icon ✎ in the **Favourites** menu screen. You can delete one or more favourites.

Call a favourite

- Press the assigned speed dial button.

Note

Favourites are not updated automatically. If you change a contact's phone number, you have to reassign the speed dial button.

Connectivity Box

Fig. 185 On the centre console: pad for the mobile phone connection.

The Connectivity Box includes different functions that will help to use your mobile device. These are:

- *Wireless Charger*[1].
- *Mobile Signal Amplifier*.

Wireless charger

If your mobile device is equipped with induction charging (Qi) technology, it can be charged wirelessly.

To charge your mobile phone wirelessly:

- Place your mobile device in the middle of the pad with the screen facing up ››› **Fig. 185** , ››› ⚠.

Make sure there are no objects between the pad and the mobile phone.

The mobile phone will start charging automatically. For further information about whether your mobile device supports Qi technology, check your phone's user manual or visit the CUPRA website.

Mobile Signal Amplifier

This reduces radiation in the vehicle and gives you better reception.

For safety reasons, it is recommended that you pair the system and the mobile using Bluetooth® and place it on the Connectivity Box pad, for the best reception without having to handle the mobile phone.

For connection to the vehicle's external antenna:

- Place your mobile device in the middle of the pad with the screen facing up ››› **Fig. 185** , ››› ⚠.

Make sure there are no objects between the pad and the mobile phone.

Your mobile phone will automatically be able to use the external antenna function.

[1] It only includes the wireless charge functionality.

⚠ WARNING

Notifications on the screen of the mobile device can distract the driver's attention and increase the risk of a serious accident.

- Only place one suitable mobile device, with Qi compatibility if applicable. To ensure that it operates properly, place it without the protective case and ensure that it has maximum dimensions (width x length) of 80 x 140 mm (3.15 x 5.512 inches) on the base of the Connectivity Box as indicated.
- If the mobile device is not placed on the base of the Connectivity Box, in the correct position, or if its dimensions exceed those specified, it may not be recognised or may not charge correctly. Under certain circumstances, the infotainment system indicates that there is a foreign object in the storage compartment. Using a suitable mobile phone device and correcting its position can eliminate the fault.

⚠ WARNING

- The mobile phone may become warm due to wireless charging. Think about this before you pick it up, and take care when removing it.
- There must be no metallic or other objects between the mobile phone and the housing, to prevent the functionality of the Connectivity Box from being affected.

NOTICE

Do not leave the key near the *Wireless Charger* area as this may cause interference.

NOTICE

A active NFC function on your mobile device may prevent its wireless charging from working properly. CUPRA recommends that you deactivate the NFC function on your mobile device when charging.

NOTICE

The base of the Connectivity Box is not removable.

Note

- Your mobile device must support the Qi inductive charging interface standard for proper operation.
- Charging time and temperature vary depending on the device that is used.
- To improve the cooling of your mobile device during charging, the Connectivity Box is fitted with a ventilation channel to allow air to pass through. Keep the base area as clear as possible of objects to promote cooling.
- The maximum charging capacity is 15W.
- Qi technology does not allow simultaneous charging of more than one mobile device.
- No improvement in reception can be guaranteed if there is more than one mobile phone on the pad.
- You are advised to keep the engine running to guarantee proper wireless charging.
- When a telephone with Qi technology is connected by USB, it will be charged by the means specified by the manufacturer.

Storing objects

Positioning the luggage and cargo

General information

Placing luggage inside the vehicle safely

It is possible to carry objects and luggage in the vehicle, in a trailer ››› page 319 and on the roof ››› page 317. When doing so, please consider all legal provisions.

- Distribute the load in the vehicle as evenly as possible.
- Always place luggage and heavy objects as far forwards as possible in the luggage compartment ››› ⚠.
- Take into account the maximum authorised weight per axle, as well as the maximum authorised weight of the vehicle ››› page 412.
- Secure the objects to the fastening rings of the luggage compartment using appropriate chains or belts ››› page 314.
- Also place small objects safely.
- In vehicles with dynamic headlight range control, the lights adapt automatically.
- Adapt tyre pressure to the load. Take into account the pressure sticker of the tyres ››› page 377.
- In vehicles equipped with a tyre pressure control system, adjust to the new load status if necessary ››› page 386.

⚠ WARNING

Loose or unsecured objects can cause serious injury in case of sudden manoeuvring or braking or in case of an accident. This is particularly the case if the airbag impacts them when deploying and they are thrown across the inside of the vehicle. Please observe the following rules to minimise the risk of injury:

- **Place all objects inside the vehicle safely.**
- **Secure all objects, small and large.**
- **Place the objects in the vehicle interior in such a way that they can never move into the airbag deployment areas while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Keep the storage compartments closed at all times while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Place the objects in such a way that they never force any occupant of the vehicle to sit in an incorrect position.**
- **When transporting objects that take up a seat, never let anyone use that seat.**
- **Never leave hard, sharp or heavy objects loose in open storage compartment of the vehicle, on the cover behind the rear seat or on the dash panel.**
- **Remove all hard, sharp or heavy objects from the fabrics and bags in the vehicle interior and store them safely.**

⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy objects changes vehicle handling and increases braking distance. Heavy objects that are not properly placed or secured may cause loss of control of the vehicle and thus severe injuries.

- **Never put too much load in the vehicle. Both the carrying capacity as well as the distribution of the load in the vehicle have effects on the driving behaviour and braking ability.**
- **When transporting heavy objects, the driving behaviour of the vehicle varies due to the displacement of the centre of gravity.**
- **Always distribute the load in the vehicle as evenly and horizontally as possible.**
- **Always place heavy objects in the luggage compartment in front of the rear axle and as far away from it as possible.**
- **Objects in the luggage compartment that are unsecured could move suddenly and modify the handling of the vehicle.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Accelerate with particular care and caution.**
- **Avoid sharp braking and sudden manoeuvres.**
- **Brake earlier than usual.**

NOTICE

Electrical wires or, depending on the features, the antenna embedded into the rear windows could be damaged, even irreparably, if they are in contact with objects.

Note

Straps for securing the load to the fastening rings are commercially available from accessory shops.

Luggage compartment

Luggage compartment shelf

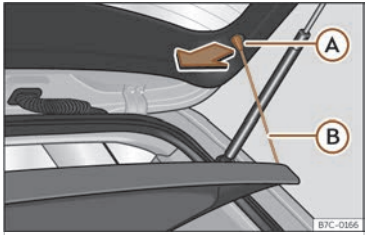


Fig. 186 In the luggage compartment: removing and installing the shelf.

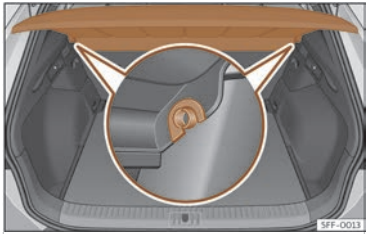


Fig. 187 In the luggage compartment: removing and installing the shelf.

Removing

- Detach the cord loops ››› **Fig. 186** Ⓑ from their hooks Ⓐ.
- Remove the rear shelf from the side supports ››› **Fig. 187** by pulling it upwards and then take it out.

If necessary, the rear shelf can be stored under the luggage compartment double floor ››› **page 313**.

Fitting

- Insert the cover horizontally so that the "recess" slots over the support fittings ››› **Fig. 187** and press down until it engages.
- Attach the securing straps ››› **Fig. 186** Ⓑ onto the rear lid.

WARNING

Animals, loose or unsecured or objects carried on the rear shelf can cause serious injury in case of sudden manoeuvring or braking or in case of an accident.

- **Do not leave hard, sharp or heavy objects loose or in bags on the rear shelf.**
- **Never transport animals on the rear shelf.**

NOTICE

- **Before closing the rear lid, ensure that the rear shelf is correctly fitted.**
- **An overloaded luggage compartment could mean that the rear shelf is not correctly seated and it may be bent or damaged.**
- **If the luggage compartment is overloaded, remove the rear shelf.**

Note

Ensure that, when placing items of clothing on the rear shelf, rear visibility is not reduced.

Store the rear shelf

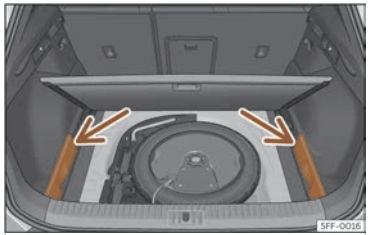


Fig. 188 In the boot: covers for storing the rear shelf.

Fig. 189 In the boot: fitting the rear shelf.

Depending on the equipment, once the luggage compartment shelf has been removed, it can be stored under the boot floor.

- Remove the left and right covers ››› **Fig. 188**.
- Place the rear shelf in the corresponding housing ››› **Fig. 189**.
- Put the left and right covers in their original position.

Variable luggage compartment floor

Variable floor in high position

Fig. 190 Variable luggage compartment floor: high position.

- To move from the low position to the high position, lift the floor using the handle ››› **Fig. 190** ①, and pull it back until the front of the floor has fully passed the supports ››› **Fig. 191** ②.
- Move the floor forward over the supports as far as the rear seat backrest and then lower the floor with the handle ①.

Variable floor in low position

Fig. 191 Variable luggage compartment floor: low position.

- To move from the high position to the low position, lift the floor using the handle ››› **Fig. 190** ①, and pull it back until the front of the floor has fully passed the supports ››› **Fig. 191** ②.
- Now let the front part fall to the floor and slide the floor forwards as far as the rear seat backrest; lower the floor at the same time with the handle ①.

Note

CUPRA recommends returning the variable floor to the high position ››› Fig. 190 when additional space is no longer required.

Variable floor in the tilted position

Fig. 192 Variable luggage compartment floor: tilted position.

When the variable floor is tilted you can access the spare wheel or tyre mobility system area.

- Lift the variable floor to the high position using handle ››› **Fig. 190** ①, pull it up and push it towards the backrest of the rear seats until it folds along the hinge line and the movable part of the floor is resting on itself.
- Rest the floor on its housings ››› **Fig. 192** (arrows).

⚠ WARNING

- **Always secure objects, even when the luggage compartment floor is properly lifted.**
- **Only objects that do not protrude more than 2/3 the height of the floor may be carried between the rear seat and the raised luggage compartment floor.**
- **Only objects that do not weigh more than approximately 7.5 kg may be carried between the rear seat and the raised luggage compartment floor.**

ⓘ NOTICE

- **The maximum weight that can be loaded on the luggage compartment variable floor in the top position is 100 kg.**
- **Do not let the luggage compartment floor fall when closing it. Always carefully guide it downwards in a controlled manner. Otherwise, the lining and the floor of the luggage compartment could be damaged.**

Luggage compartment equipment

Fastening rings

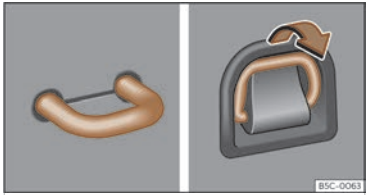


Fig. 193 In the luggage compartment: fastening rings.

There are fastening rings ››› **Fig. 193** on the front and rear of the luggage compartment to secure loose objects and luggage with fastening belts and cords.

⚠ WARNING

If unsuitable or damaged belts or retaining straps are used, they could break in the event of braking or an accident. Objects could then be thrown across the vehicle interior and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- **Always use belts or straps that are suitable and in good condition.**
- **Tighten the belts and straps in a cross layout over the load placed on the luggage compartment floor and secure them to the fastening rings safely.**
- **Never exceed the maximum tensile load of the fastening rings when securing objects.**
- **Make sure that, particularly for flat objects, the upper edge of the load is higher than the fastening rings.**
- **Depending on the features, take into account the instruction panels on the luggage compartment on how to place the load.**
- **Never secure a child seat to the fastening rings.**

Note

- **The maximum tensile load that the fastening rings can support is approx. 3.5 kN.**
- **Appropriate belts, straps and securing systems for the load can be purchased from specialised dealerships. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.**

Net bag

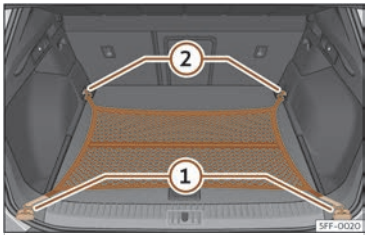


Fig. 194 In the boot: net bag hooked up at floor level.

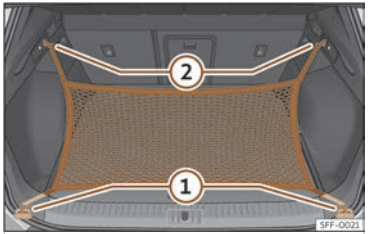


Fig. 195 In the luggage compartment: rings ① and hooks ② for attaching the net bag.

The luggage compartment prevents light luggage from moving. The net bag has a zip and can be used to store small objects.

The net bag can be hooked up to the luggage compartment in different ways.

Hooking the net bag into the luggage compartment floor

If necessary, the front eyes must be unfolded first ››› page 314.

- Secure the net hooks to the fastening rings ››› **Fig. 194** ① and ② ››› ⚠. The bag zip should be facing upwards.

Hook the net bag next to the load threshold

- Secure the short net hooks to the fastening rings ››› **Fig. 195** ① ››› ⚠. The bag zip should be facing upwards.
- Secure the straps in the bag hooks ②.

Removing the net bag

The hooked up net bag is taut ››› ⚠.

- Release the net bag from the fastening rings.
- Store the net bag in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

To secure the elastic net bag on the fastening rings of the boot it must be stretched out. Once hooked up it is taut. If the net bag is hooked up or unhooked incorrectly the hooks could cause injuries.

- **Always secure the bag hooks properly so that they do not suddenly release from the fastening rings when hooking or unhooking them.**
- **On hooking or unhooking them, protect your eyes and face in case the hooks are released suddenly.**
- **Always hook up the net bag hooks in the described order. Unfastening a hook suddenly can cause injuries.**

Bag hooks

Fig. 196 In the luggage compartment: bag hooks.

There may be hooks for hanging bags on both sides of the luggage compartment ››› **Fig. 196**.

The bag hooks have been designed to secure light shopping bags.

⚠ WARNING

Never use the hooks to hang luggage or other objects. In case of sudden braking or an accident, the hooks could break.

Trapdoor for transporting long objects

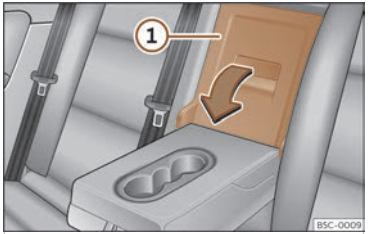


Fig. 197 On the rear seat backrest: opening the trapdoor.

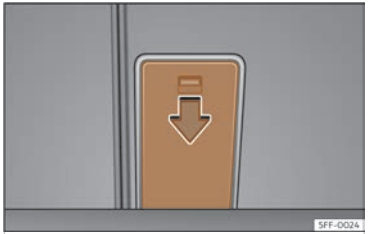


Fig. 198 In the luggage compartment: opening the trapdoor.

On the rear seat, behind the central armrest, there is a trapdoor for transporting long items in the interior, such as skis.

Opening the trapdoor

- Lower the centre armrest.
- Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow and fold the trapdoor cover ››› **Fig. 197** (1) down and forwards.
- Open the rear lid.
- Insert the long objects through the gap from the luggage compartment.
- Secure the objects with the seat belt.
- Close the rear lid.

Closing the trapdoor

- Lift the trapdoor cover until it engages. The red mark on the luggage compartment side should never be visible.
- Close the rear lid.
- Lift the centre armrest if necessary.

WARNING

The presence of objects in the central airbag deployment area can prevent it from operating properly and can cause serious injury.

- **Do not leave any objects in the central airbag deployment zone** >>> page 58.

WARNING

- **When the armrest is down, nobody should travel in the centre seat of the rear bench.**
- **Do not use the hatch while driving.**
- **When lowering or raising the hatch, take particular care with your hands and do not trap or damage the seatbelt.**

Note

The trapdoor can also be opened from the luggage compartment. To do so, press the release lever down, in the direction of the arrow, and the cover upwards >>> Fig. 198.

Roof carrier

Introduction

The vehicle roof has been designed to optimise aerodynamics. For this reason, cross bars or conventional roof carrier systems cannot be secured to the roof water drains.

As the roof water drains are integrated in the roof to reduce air resistance, only CUPRA-approved cross bars and roof carrier systems can be used.

Cases in which cross bars and the roof carrier system should be disassembled.

- When they are not used.
- When the vehicle is washed in a car wash.
- When the vehicle height exceeds the maximum height, for example, in some garages.

WARNING

- **Always secure the load properly using belts or retaining straps that are suitable and in a good condition.**
- **Bulky, heavy, long or flat loads have a negative effect on aerodynamics, the centre of gravity and driving performance.**
- **Avoid sudden braking and manoeuvres.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**

NOTICE

- **Remove the cross bars and the roof carrier system before entering a car wash.**
- **Vehicle height is increased by the installation of cross bars or a roof carrier system and the load secured on them. For this purpose, check that your vehicle's height does not surpass the headspace limit, for example, for underpasses or for entering garage doors.**
- **Cross bars, the roof carrier system and the load secured on them should not interfere with the roof aerial or hamper the path of the panoramic sun roof and the rear lid.**
- **On opening the rear lid make sure that it does not knock into the roof load.**

For the sake of the environment

When cross bars and a roof carrier system are installed, the increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more fuel.

Securing the crossbars and the roof carrier system

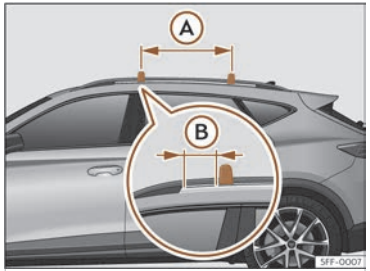


Fig. 199 Attachment points for the crossbars for the roof carrier.

The crossbars are the basis of a series of special roof carrier systems. For safety reasons, special fixtures must be used to safely transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surf boards or boats on the roof. The appropriate accessories can be purchased at specialised CUPRA dealers or any SEAT dealership.

Always secure the crossbars and the roof carrier system properly. Always take the assembly instructions that come with the crossbars and the roof carrier system in question into account.

Installing the bars

The crossbars are assembled on the roof railings. The distance between crossbars ››› **Fig. 199** Ⓐ should be between 70 and 90 cm and the distance between the crossbars and the brackets of the roof railings Ⓑ must be 9 cm.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect attachment and use of the crossbars and the roof carrier system may cause the whole system to detach from the roof and cause an accident and injuries.

- **Always take the manufacturer assembly instructions into account.**
- **Check threaded joints and attachments before moving off and if necessary tighten them after you have travelled a short distance. When making long trips, check the threaded joints whenever you stop for a rest.**
- **Do not modify or repair the crossbars or roof carrier system.**

Note

Always read the assembly instructions that come with the crossbars and the roof carrier system carefully and keep them in the vehicle.

Loading the roof carrier system

The load can only be secured if the crossbars and the roof carrier system are properly installed ››› ⚠.

Maximum authorised cargo on the roof

The maximum permissible roof load is **75 kg**. This figure comes from the combined weight of the roof carrier, the cross bars and the load itself on the roof ››› ⚠.

Always check the weight of the roof carrier system (roof box, bicycle carrier, ski rack, etc.), of the cross bars and of the load to be transported and weigh them if necessary. Never exceed the maximum authorised roof load.

If you are using cross bars and a roof carrier with a lower weight rating, you will not be able to carry the maximum authorised roof load. In this case, do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the roof carrier which is listed in the fitting instructions.

Distributing a load

Distribute loads uniformly and secure them correctly ››› ⚠.

Check attachments

Once the cross bars and roof carrier system have been installed, check the bolted connections and attachments after a short journey and every so often afterwards (approx. every 200 km).

⚠ WARNING

- **Never exceed the maximum authorised load on the roof and on the axles or the vehicle's maximum authorised weight.**
- **Never exceed the load capacity of the cross bars and the roof carrier system, even if the maximum authorised roof load has not been reached.**
- **Secure heavy items as far forward as possible and distribute the vehicle load uniformly.**

⚠ WARNING

If the load is loose or not secured, it could fall from the roof carrier system or cause accidents and injuries.

- **Always use belts or retaining straps that are suitable and in a good condition.**

Trailer mode

Introduction

Take into account country-specific regulations about driving with a trailer and the use of a towing bracket.

The vehicle has been developed primarily for carrying people, although it can also be used to tow a trailer if fitted with the corresponding technical equipment. This additional load has an effect on the useful life, fuel consumption and vehicle performance and in some cases can reduce the service intervals.

Driving with a trailer requires more force from the vehicle, and thus more concentration from the driver.

In winter, winter tyres should be fitted on both the vehicle **and** the trailer.

Maximum vertical load technically permitted on the coupling device

The *maximum* vertical load technically permitted from the trailer draw bar on the towing bracket's tow ball is **80 kg**.

Vehicles with the Start-Stop system

If the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing bracket or one that is retrofitted by CUPRA, the Start-Stop system operates as normal. No special characteristics need to be taken into account.

If the system does not recognise the trailer or the trailer bracket has not been retrofitted by CUPRA, the Start-Stop system must be disconnected by pressing the corresponding button in the lower part of the centre console before driving with the trailer, and it should remain off for the rest of the journey ››› ⚠.

Vehicles with drive profile selection

If you are going to be towing a trailer, the use of the **Eco** drive profile is not recommended. You are advised to select another of the available drive profiles before beginning to drive with a trailer.

Trailer weight/drawbar load

Never exceed the authorised trailer weight. If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you will be able to drive up steeper slopes.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for **altitudes** up to 1000 m above sea level. Since higher altitude decreases engine performance and the ability to climb slopes, the tow load decreases proportionally. The weight of the vehicle and trailer combination must be reduced by 10% for every 1000 m of altitude. When possible, operate the trailer with the maximum **authorised drawbar load** on the ball joint of the towing bracket, but **do not exceed** the specified limit.

⚠ DANGER

Never use the trailer to transport people. This endangers their lives and is also prohibited.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket may cause injury and accidents.

- Only use the towing bracket if it is in a perfect state of repair and is properly secured.
- Never modify or repair the towing bracket in any way.
- In order to reduce the danger of injury in the event of rear-end collisions and to avoid injury to pedestrians and cyclists when parking the vehicle, cover or remove the tow hook when you are not using a trailer.
- According to EU regulation 2021_535 it is not permitted to install a towing device that completely or partially covers the rear number plate.
- Never fit a towing bracket "with weight distribution" or "load compensation". The vehicle has not been designed for this type of towing bracket. The towing bracket could fail and the trailer could be released from the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with a trailer and transporting heavy or large objects can affect driving properties and even cause an accident.

- Always secure the load properly using belts or straps that are suitable and in good condition.
- Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity are more likely to overturn than those with a low one.
- Avoid sudden braking and manoeuvres.
- Take great care when overtaking.
- Reduce speed immediately if you notice that the trailer is swaying, however slightly.
- Never drive at more than 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing a trailer (or at more than 100 km/h (60 mph) in exceptional circumstances). This also applies in countries where driving at higher speeds is permitted. Take into account the speed limit for vehicles with trailers in the corresponding country, as it could be less than the speed limit for vehicles without a trailer.
- Never attempt to "straighten" the towing vehicle and trailer by accelerating.

⚠ WARNING

If the towing bracket has been retrofitted by a non-CUPRA workshop, the Start-Stop system must be disconnected manually whenever driving with a trailer. Otherwise the brake system could be damaged and could consequently cause a serious accident or injury.

- Always disconnect the Start-Stop system manually when using a towing bracket that has not been fitted by a CUPRA workshop.

Note

- Before hitching or unhitching a trailer, always deactivate the anti-theft alarm >>> page 108. Otherwise, the tilt sensor could cause the alarm to go off.
- Do not drive with a trailer for the engine's first 1000 km >>> page 167.
- CUPRA recommends that, if possible, the tow hook be removed or covered when it is not going to be used. In the event of a rear-end collision, the damage to the vehicle could be greater if the tow hook is fitted.
- Some retrofitted towing brackets cover the rear towing eye. In these cases, the towing eye should not be used for tow-starting or for towing other vehicles. For this reason, if the vehicle has been retrofitted with a towing bracket, always keep the tow hook in the vehicle when you remove it.

Technical requirements

Vehicles that are **factory**-equipped with a towing bracket meet all the technical and legal requirements for driving with a trailer.

If the **vehicle is retrofitted with a tow bracket**, only a bracket that is authorised for the maximum authorised load of the trailer that is to be towed may be fitted. The towing bracket must be suitable for the vehicle and the trailer and must be properly secured to the vehicle's chassis. Only use a towing bracket that has been authorised by CUPRA for this vehicle. Always check and take into account the towing bracket manufacturer's instructions.

Towing bracket fitted on the bumper

Never fit a towing bracket to the bumper or to the area where the bumper is mounted. The towing bracket should not impair the bumper's function. Do not make modifications or repairs to the exhaust system or the brake system. Make regular checks to ensure that the towing bracket is secure.

Engine cooling system

Driving with a trailer increases the load on the engine and cooling system. The cooling system should have sufficient coolant and be prepared for the additional effort involved in driving with a trailer.

Trailer brakes

If the trailer has its own brake system, please take the relevant legal requirements into account. Never connect the trailer's brake system to the vehicle's brake system.

Tow cable

Always fit a cable between the vehicle and the trailer ››› page 322.

Trailer tail lights

The trailer's tail lights should comply with the statutory safety regulations ››› page 322.

Never connect the trailer's tail lights directly to the vehicle's electric system. If you are not sure that the trailer's electrical connection is correct, have it checked by a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

Exterior mirrors

If you cannot see the area behind the trailer with the exterior mirrors of the towing vehicle, additional mirrors will have to be installed in accordance with the regulations of the country in question. The exterior mirrors should be adjusted before you start driving and must provide a sufficient field of vision at the rear.

⚠ WARNING

If the towing bracket is fitted incorrectly or is not the right one, the trailer could become detached from the vehicle and cause serious injury.

ⓘ NOTICE

- **If the tail lights of the trailer are not correctly connected, the vehicle's electronic system may be damaged.**
- **If the trailer absorbs excessive electric current, the vehicle's electronic system may be damaged.**
- **Never connect the trailer's electric system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or any other power sources. Only use the connections intended for providing electric current to the trailer.**

Hitching and connecting a trailer

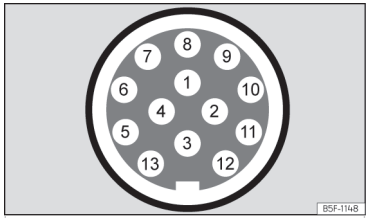


Fig. 200 Diagram: assignment of the pins of the trailer's electrical socket.

Pin	Meaning
1	Left turn signal
2	Rear fog light
3	Earth for pins 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8
4	Right turn signal
5	Rear light, right
6	Brake lights
7	Rear light, left
8	Reverse lights
9	Permanent live
10	Live charge cable
11	Earth for pin 10
12	Unassigned
13	Earth for pin 9

Power socket for trailer

The vehicle is fitted with a 13-pole power socket for the connection between the trailer and the vehicle. With the engine running, electrical devices on the trailer receive power from the electrical connection (pin 9 and pin 10 of the trailer power socket).

If the system detects that a trailer has been connected, the consumers on the trailer will receive electricity through this connection (pins 9 and 10). Pin 9 has a permanent live. This powers, for example, the trailer's interior lighting. Electrical devices such as a fridge in a caravan **only** receive electrical power if the engine is running (through pin 10).

To avoid overloading the electrical system, you cannot connect the ground wires of pin 3, pin 11 or pin 13.

If the trailer has a **7-contact connector**, you will need to use an adapter cable. In this case the function corresponding to pin 10 will not be available.

Tow cable

The tow rope must always be securely fixed to the towing vehicle and loose enough so that the vehicle can handle turns smoothly. However, make sure that the cable does not rub on the ground while driving.

Trailer tail lights

Always check the trailer's rear lights to ensure they are working correctly and that they comply with the relevant safety regulations. If you connect the trailer to the factory-mounted system, when you turn on the rear fog lamp, the fog lamp of the towing vehicle will turn off to turn on the trailer fog lamp.

Include in the anti-theft alarm

The trailer is included in the anti-theft system if the following conditions are met:

- If the vehicle is factory-equipped with an anti-theft alarm.
- If the vehicle is factory-equipped with a tow bracket.
- If the trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle through the trailer power socket.
- If the electrical systems of the vehicle and trailer are in perfect condition and have no faults or damage.
- If the vehicle is locked with the key and the anti-theft alarm is activated.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is triggered if the electrical connection with the trailer is cut off.

Before hitching or unhitching a trailer, always turn off the anti-theft alarm. Otherwise, the tilt sensor could cause the alarm to go off.

Trailers with LED tail lights

For technical reasons, trailers fitted with LED rear lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm does not go off when the electrical connection with the trailer is cut if it has rear lights with light-emitting diodes.

⚠ WARNING

If the cables are improperly or incorrectly connected, it may lead to an excessive amount of current supplied to the trailer, which can cause abnormalities in the entire vehicle electronic system, as well as accidents and serious injuries.

- **Ensure that any repairs that need to be carried out on the electrical system are carried out by a specialised workshop.**
- **Never connect the trailer's electric system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or any other power sources.**

⚠ WARNING

Contact between the pins of the trailer power socket can cause short circuits, overloading of the electrical system or failure of the lighting system, and consequently can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never connect the pins of the trailer power socket to each other.**
- **Make sure any work on bent pins is carried out by a specialised workshop.**

NOTICE

Do not leave the trailer connected to the vehicle when parked; place it on its support wheel or its supports. If the vehicle rises or falls due, for example, to a variation of the load or a burst tyre, increased pressure will be placed on the towing bracket and the trailer, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.

Note

- **In case of anomalies in the electrical systems of the vehicle or trailer, as well as in the anti-theft alarm system, have them inspected by a specialised workshop.**
- **If the trailer accessories consume energy through the power socket to the trailer and the engine is turned off, the battery will discharge.**
- **If the vehicle battery is running low, the electrical connection with the trailer will be automatically cut.**

Trailer loading

Technically permissible maximum trailer weight and vertical load on the coupling device

The technically permissible maximum trailer weight is the weight that the vehicle can tow >>> ⚠. The vertical load on the coupling is exerted vertically from above on the ball of the towing bracket.

The information on the maximum trailer weight and vertical load on the coupling device contained in the type plate of the towing bracket are experimental values only. The correct figures for your specific model, which may be lower than these figures, are given in the vehicle documentation. The information in the vehicle documentation takes precedence at all times.

To promote safety while driving, CUPRA recommends making the most of the maximum technically permitted vertical load on the coupling device >>> page 319. An insufficient vertical load has a negative influence on the behaviour of both the vehicle and trailer.

The vertical load increases the weight on the rear axle, reducing the vehicle's carrying capacity.

Gross combination weight of the towing vehicle and trailer

The gross combination weight is the actual weight of the loaded vehicle plus the actual weight of the loaded trailer.

In some countries trailers are classified into different categories. CUPRA recommends obtaining information from a specialised workshop regarding which type of trailer is most suitable for your vehicle.

Trailer loading

The weight of the towing vehicle and trailer must be balanced. In order to do this, the load must be as close as possible to the maximum technically permitted vertical load on the coupling point, and it must be evenly distributed between the back and front of the trailer:

- Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible or above it.
- Secure the trailer load properly.

Tyre pressure

Set the tyre pressure of the trailer tyres in accordance with the trailer manufacturer's recommendations.

When towing a trailer, inflate the tyres of the towing vehicle to the maximum allowable pressure >>> page 377.

⚠ WARNING

If the maximum permissible axle weight, the maximum load technically permissible on the coupling point, the maximum authorised vehicle weight or the gross combination weight of the towing vehicle and trailer are exceeded, accidents and serious injuries may occur.

- **Never exceed the indicated values.**
- **The actual weight on the front and rear axles must never exceed the maximum permissible axle weight. The weight on the front and rear axles must never exceed the maximum permissible weight.**

⚠ WARNING

A shift in weight could jeopardize the stability and safety of the towing vehicle and trailer, which could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Always load the trailer correctly.**
- **Always secure the load properly using belts or straps that are suitable and in good condition.**

Driving with a trailer

Adjusting the headlights

The front part of the vehicle may be raised when the trailer is connected and the light may dazzle the rest of the traffic.

Specific features of driving with a trailer

- If your trailer has an **overrun brake**, brake *gently at first* and then rapidly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the locking of trailer wheels.
- Due to the gross combination weight of the towing vehicle and trailer, the braking distance increases.
- Use engine braking when descending hills. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat and even fail.
  - *Vehicles with an automatic gearbox:* In Tiptronic mode, select a lower gear.
  - *Vehicles with a manual gearbox:* Shift down.
- The trailer weight, as well as the gross combination weight of the towing vehicle and trailer, change the centre of gravity and the properties of the vehicle.
- If the towing vehicle is empty and the trailer is loaded, then the load distribution is incorrect. Under these conditions, drive slowly and with extra caution.

Hill starts with a trailer

Depending on the slope of the hill and the combination weight of the towing vehicle and trailer, the vehicle might start rolling backwards slightly when you first start up.

For hill starts with a trailer hitched:

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Press the button to disconnect the electronic parking brake >>> page 234.
- *Manual gearbox:* Depress the clutch pedal fully and engage 1st gear.

Automatic gearbox: Move the selector lever to the **D/S** position.

- Pull out the button and hold it in that position to stop the towing vehicle and trailer with the electronic parking brake.
- Release the brake pedal.
- Move off slowly.

Manual transmission: release the clutch pedal slowly.

- Do not release the button until the engine has sufficient power to start driving.

⚠ WARNING

If a trailer is pulled incorrectly, this may lead to loss of control of the vehicle and serious injury.

- **Driving with a trailer and transporting heavy or large objects will change the vehicle handling and braking distances.**
- **Always drive cautiously and carefully. Brake earlier than usual.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Slow down, especially when driving down hills or slopes.**
- **Accelerate with particular care and caution. Avoid sudden braking and manoeuvres.**
- **Take great care when overtaking. Reduce speed immediately if you notice that the trailer is swaying, however slightly.**
- **Never attempt to "straighten" the towing vehicle and trailer while accelerating.**
- **Take into account the speed limit for vehicles with a trailer, as it could be lower than for vehicles without a trailer.**

Stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer combination

The stabilisation of the vehicle and trailer combination is an additional function of the electronic stability control (ESC).

If the system detects that the trailer is weaving, it intervenes to reduce the swaying of the trailer.

Vehicle and trailer combination stabilisation requirements

- The vehicle is factory-equipped with a towing bracket or has been retrofitted with a compatible towing bracket.
- The ESC and TCS are active. The control lamp or is not lit up on the instrument cluster.
- The trailer is connected to the towing vehicle through the trailer power socket.
- The vehicle is travelling at over 60 km/h (approx. 37 mph).
- The maximum technically permitted vertical load is not being exceeded on the coupling device.
- The trailer has a rigid draw bar.
- If the trailer has brakes, it must be equipped with a mechanical overrun brake.

⚠ WARNING

The enhanced safety provided by the electric stability control of the vehicle and trailer should not lead you to take any risks that could compromise your safety.

- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Accelerate with caution when the road is slippery.**
- **When adjusting any settings, stop accelerating.**

⚠ WARNING

The electric stability control for the vehicle and trailer may not correctly detect all driving conditions.

- **When the ESC is switched off, the stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer is also switched off.**

- **The stability system does not always detect light trailers, so it may not stabilise these correctly.**
- **When driving on surfaces with poor grip, the trailer can even interfere with the stability system.**
- **Trailers with a high centre of gravity can tip over even before they start weaving.**
- **If a trailer is not attached, but a connector is plugged into the power socket (e.g. installation of a bicycle rack with lights), repeated automatic braking may occur in extreme driving conditions.**

Electrically unlocking trailer hook

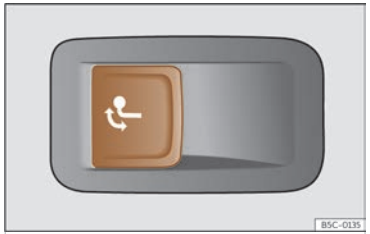


Fig. 201 Left side of the luggage compartment: button to unlock the tow hitch.

The hook of the towing device is located in the bumper and cannot be removed[1].

There should be no person, animal or object in the path of the tow hook ››› ⚠.

Unlocking the tow hook and removing it

- Stop the vehicle and apply the electronic parking brake ››› page 234.
- Switch off the engine.
- Open the rear lid.
- Pull the ››› **Fig. 201** button briefly. The tow hook unlocks electrically and automatically turns outwards. The button's control lamp flashes.
- Finish removing the tow hook by hand until you feel and hear that it has engaged and the control lamp on the button stays on.
- Close the rear lid.
- Hitching and connecting a trailer ››› page 322.

Retracting the tow hook

- Stop the vehicle and apply the electronic parking brake.
- Switch off the engine.
- Unhook the trailer and disconnect the electrical connection between it and the vehicle. If you are using an adapter, remove it from the trailer's power socket.
- Open the rear lid.
- Pull the ››› **Fig. 201** button briefly. The tow hook unlocks electrically.
- Turn the tow hook under the bumper with your hand until you feel and hear that it engages and the control lamp on the button remains on continuously.
- Close the rear lid.

The button's control lamp

- *Flashing:*
  This means that the tow hook has not yet engaged correctly or is damaged ››› ⚠.
- *Remains on:*
  If it remains on while the rear lid is open, the tow hook is correctly in place both when extracted and when covered.

The button's indicator lamp switches off approximately 1 minute after closing the rear lid.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket may cause injury and accidents.

- **Only use the tow hook if it is properly engaged.**
- **Always ensure that no person, animal or object is to be found in the path of the tow hook.**

[1] Not available in all markets.

- Never use a tool or instrument while the tow hook is moving.
- Never press the button ››› Fig. 201 when there is a trailer hooked to the vehicle or when a carrier system or other accessories are mounted on the tow hook.
- If the tow hook is not attached properly, do not use it. Instead, go to a specialised workshop and have the towing bracket checked.
- If you detect any fault in the electrical system or in the towing bracket, contact a specialised workshop and ask them to check it.
- If the ball has a diameter of less than 49 mm at any one point, do not use the towing bracket under any circumstances.

NOTICE

If you clean the vehicle with high-pressure or steam devices, do not point the jet directly towards the retractable tow hook or the trailer power socket, as this may damage the joints or remove the grease necessary for lubrication.

Note

At extremely low temperatures, the tow hook may be impossible to operate. In this case, place the vehicle in a warmer location (for example, a garage).

Installing a rear carrier system or a bicycle rack on the trailer hitch

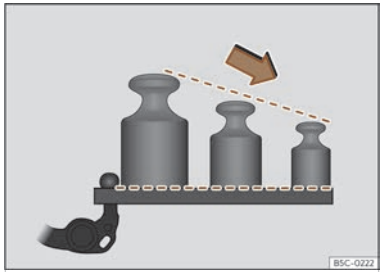


Fig. 202 Recommended weight distribution on the rear carrier system.

Examples of rear carrier systems are bicycle racks or multi-purpose boxes that are installed on the trailer hitch.

Only use rear carrier systems that have been specified by the respective manufacturer for the vehicle model, model year and version of the vehicle in question ››› ⚠.

CUPRA recommends the use of genuine CUPRA spare parts and accessories, which can be purchased from the brand's dealers. Install the rear carrier system according to the manufacturer's installation instructions.

The load capacity is the result of the weight of the rear carrier system and the weight of the load carried on it.

The recommended maximum load capacity of the rear carrier system installed on the trailer hitch may be different from the maximum vertical load on the specific vehicle coupling.

However, it is not permitted to exceed the maximum permitted vertical load on the tow hitch (which depends on the model).

The load capacity is reduced due to the lever effect that occurs the further the carrier system is from the ball head.

Place heavy objects as close as possible to the trailer hitch ››› Fig. 202.

Maximum load capacity depending on the vehicle

To find out the recommended load capacity for your vehicle, check the maximum vertical load on its coupling ››› page 412. Please refer to the following table for the load capacity.

In accordance with the UN-R-55 guideline, CUPRA recommends not carrying more bicycles than recommended on the rear rack system.

Maximum vertical load on the vehicle's specific coupling	Maximum load capacity	Number of bicycles
50 kg	50 kg	2
55 kg	55 kg	2
From 75 kg	75 kg	3

Maximum load overhang of the rear carrier system

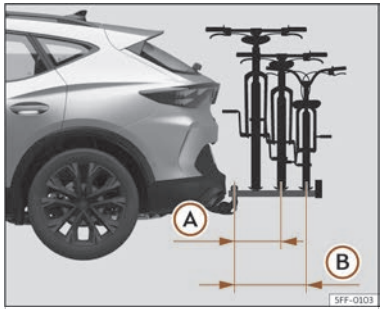


Fig. 203 Schematic representation of the maximum load overhang of a bicycle rack for two or three bicycles.

Ⓐ With up to 55 kg load capacity: 500 mm (approx. 19.7 in)

Ⓑ With 75 kg load capacity: 700 mm (approx. 27.6 in)

The maximum overhang shall not exceed 500 mm from the centre of the ball head to the centre of the rail of the last support ››› **Fig. 203** Ⓐ for two-bicycle racks. In the case of three-bicycle racks, the overhang must not exceed 700 mm ››› **Fig. 203** Ⓑ.

⚠ WARNING

The incorrect use of a rear carrier system installed on the tow hook can cause accidents and injury.

- **Make sure that the carrier system is suitable for your vehicle.**
- **Read and observe the installation instructions of the rear carrier system manufacturer.**
- **Never attach a rear carrier system below the ball head of the trailer hitch. The system could slip due to the shape of the hitch.**

Note

Before setting off, CUPRA recommends removing, to the extent possible, all accessories from the load attached to the carrier system. Examples of these accessories are baskets and panniers, child seats or batteries. This improves the aerodynamics and centre of gravity of the rear carrier system.

Retrofitting a towing bracket

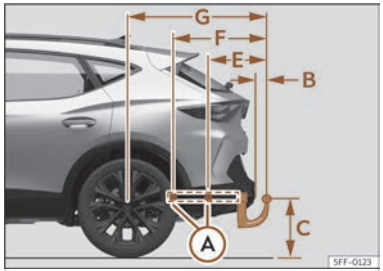


Fig. 204 Towing device: dimensions and attachment points.

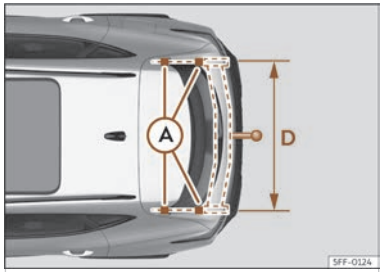


Fig. 205 Towing device: dimensions and attachment points.

Distance measurements (measurements can vary depending on the different chassis combinations):

Ⓐ Mounting points on the vehicle

Ⓑ 65 mm (minimum)

Ⓒ 350 mm to 420 mm (fully laden vehicle)

Ⓓ 1043 mm

Ⓔ 414 mm

Ⓕ 634 mm

Ⓖ 959 mm

CUPRA recommends that towing brackets be retrofitted at a specialised workshop. For example, it may be necessary to adjust the cooling system or mount thermal protection plates. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the distance specifications should always be kept in mind.

The distance between the centre of the ball head and the road ››› **Fig. 204** Ⓒ must never be less than that indicated. This also applies when the vehicle is fully loaded, including the technically permissible maximum vertical load on the coupling device.

⚠ WARNING

If the cables are improperly or incorrectly connected, this may lead to malfunctions in the entire vehicle electronic system, as well as to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never connect the trailer's electric system to the electrical connections of the tail lights or any other unsuitable power sources. Only use suitable connectors to connect the trailer.**
- **The towing bracket should be retrofitted only at a specialised workshop.**

⚠ WARNING

If the towing bracket is badly fitted or unsuitable, the trailer may separate from the vehicle while driving. This could cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

Note

- **According to regulation EU2021_535 it is not permitted to install a towing device that cannot be removed or retracted.**
- **Only use towing brackets that have been approved by CUPRA for the model in question.**
- **In some versions, the fitting of a conventional towing hook solution is not recommended. Please consult your Technical Service.**

Fuel and exhaust gas cleaning

Refuelling

Safety warnings regarding fuel handling

⚠ WARNING

Fuel is highly flammable and can cause serious burns and other injuries.

- Before refuelling, disconnect the auxiliary heater ›››› page 158, ›››› page 158.
- When refuelling, turn off the engine and turn off the ignition for safety reasons.
- The fuel system of PHEV models is pressurized to prevent petrol vapours from escaping into the atmosphere.
- Do not smoke when filling the fuel tank or a canister. Naked flames are forbidden in the vicinity due to the risk of explosion.
- Observe legislation governing the use, storage and carrying of a spare fuel canister in the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

For safety reasons we do not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. In an accident the canister could be damaged and could leak. If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following points:

- Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister if it is inside or on top of the vehicle. This could cause an explosion. Always place the canister on the ground to fill it.
- Insert the filling nozzle as far as possible into the spare fuel canister.
- If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filling nozzle must be in contact with the canister during filling. This helps prevent an electrostatic charge building up.
- Never spill fuel in the vehicle or in the luggage compartment. Fuel vapour is explosive. Risk of fatal accident!

NOTICE

- If any fuel is spilt onto the vehicle, it should be removed immediately. It could otherwise damage the paintwork.
- Never run the tank completely dry. The catalytic converter can be damaged.
- When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry on a vehicle with a diesel engine, the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds before starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) to start firing.

For the sake of the environment

Do not overfill the fuel tank, it may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.

Note

There is no emergency mechanism for the manual release of the fuel tank flap. If necessary, request assistance from specialised personnel.

Note

Diesel vehicles are fitted with a protective device that prevents the insertion of the wrong fuel hose[1]. It is only possible to refuel with Diesel nozzles.

- If the pump nozzle is worn, damaged, or if it is very small, it is possible that it will not be able to open the protective device. Before trying to insert the pump nozzle by turning it, try a different pump or request specialist help.
- If you fill the tank from a reserve fuel canister, the protective device will not open. One way to resolve this is to pour the fuel in very slowly.

[1] Depending on the country.

Refuelling

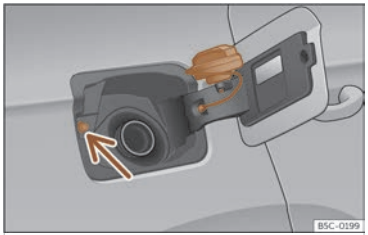


Fig. 206 Fuel tank flap with tank cap attached.

The fuel tank flap is on the rear right of the vehicle.

- The tank flap is unlocked when the car is unlocked using the central locking remote control ››› page 104.

Hybrid vehicles: Use the button on the driver's door to release the tank flap ››› page 331.

- Open the fuel tank flap by pressing on the retainer zone.
- Unscrew the cap by turning it to the left.
- Place it in the space on the hinge of the open flap ››› Fig. 206.
- Start refuelling. The tank is full as soon as the pump's automatic nozzle cuts off the fuel supply. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank.
- Unscrew the cap by turning it to the right as far as it will go.
- Close the lid.

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap. Further notes on fuel can be found at ››› page 332.

The capacity of your vehicle's fuel tank is given in ››› page 412.

Hybrid vehicles

Every 6 months it is necessary to run on petrol until the control lamp switches off and then the tank must be refilled. This is necessary to ensure that the system works properly, as well as the fuel quality required for driving with petrol.

Purging the fuel tank

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles.

Fig. 207 Driver's door: tank flap release.

Before refuelling the fuel system must be depressurised ››› ⚠ in *Safety warnings regarding fuel handling* on page 330. To do this, press the button on the driver's door.

An audible sound will be played and a warning will be displayed on the instrument cluster display.

After a few seconds the fuel tank flap will unlock and remain unlocked for a few minutes. If you have not refuelled after this time, you must press the button again before refuelling.

Avoid touching the fuel tank flap lock button ››› Fig. 206 (arrow). The system will interpret that you have finished and cannot continue refuelling. Press the button on the driver's door again to continue.

Fuel types

Identification of fuels

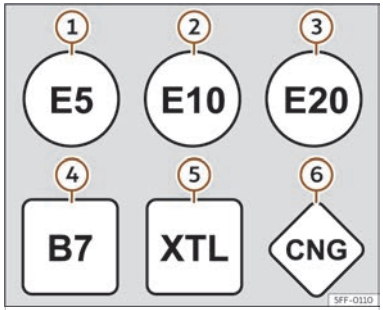


Fig. 208 Identification of fuels according to European Union (EU) Directive 2014/94/

Fuels are identified by different **symbols on the pump and on your vehicle's tank flap** (country dependent). This identification avoids confusion when selecting the fuel

① Means **petrol** with a maximum of 5% **E**thanol.

② Means **petrol** with a maximum of 10% **E**thanol.

③ Means **petrol** with a maximum of 20% **E**thanol.

④ **Diesel** according to EN590 standard. The number indicates the maximum percentage of Biodiesel in the fuel. "B7" means a maximum of 7% Biodiesel.

⑤ Synthetic **diesel** according to the EN15940 standard.

⑥ **Natural gas**: "CNG" means **C**ompressed **N**atural **G**as

Type of petrol

The correct grade of petrol is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. The petrol must comply with the standard EN 228 and be **sulphur-free**. Follow the regulations of the country you are driving in. The types of petrol are differentiated by using the **octane numbers (RON)** or via the **anti-knock index (AKI)**.

Super unleaded petrol 95 octane petrol or normal 91 octane petrol at least

We recommend refuelling with super 95 octane petrol (91 AKI). If not available, normal 91 octane petrol (87 AKI) (with a slight power loss) may be used.

Super unleaded petrol, 95 octanes at least

You should use super 95 octane petrol (91 AKI) at least.

If super petrol is not available, if necessary, use normal 91 octane petrol (87 AKI). In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Refuel with super as soon as possible.

Unleaded super plus 98 octane petrol or super 95 octane petrol at least

We recommend refuelling with super plus 98 octane petrol (93 AKI). If not available: super 95 octane petrol (91 AKI) (with a slight power loss).

If super petrol is not available, if necessary, use normal 91 octane petrol (87 AKI). In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Refuel with super as soon as possible.

NOTICE

- **Fuels with a high percentage of ethanol, e.g. E30 - E100 button must not be used. The fuel system would be damaged.**
- **A single refuelling with leaded fuel or other metal additives entails a permanent deterioration of the effectiveness of the catalytic converter.**
- **Only petrol additives that have been approved by SEAT S.A. should be used. Products containing substances to increase the octane rating or decrease knocking may contain metal additives that damage the engine and catalytic converter. These type of products must not be used.**

- **Do not use fuels shown in the pump as containing metals. LRP (*lead replacement petrol*) fuels contain high concentrations of metal additives. Risk of engine damage!**
- **High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.**

Note

- **Fuel with an octane rating higher than the one required by the engine can be used.**
- **In countries in which there is no sulphur-free fuel, fuel with a low sulphur content may also be used.**

Diesel

✓ Valid for: vehicles with diesel engines

Please note the information on the inside of the fuel tank flap.

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, thus affecting the start or operation of the engine. Ask your service station attendant if their diesel is suitable for winter use.

Water in the fuel filter[1)]

If your vehicle has a diesel engine and is equipped with a **fuel filter with a water separator**, the instrument cluster may display the following warning:

Water in the fuel filter.

If this is the case, take the vehicle to a specialised workshop so that they can drain the fuel filter.

NOTICE

- **Never use of FAME (biodiesel that does not meet the EN590 standard), petrol, heating oil, other fuels or thinning agents as they can cause severely damage the fuel system and the engine.**
- **If the wrong fuel has been filled, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Risk of damaging the fuel system and the engine! Seek professional assistance.**

AdBlue®

Information about AdBlue®

AdBlue® consumption depends on your personal driving style, the temperature of the system and the outdoor temperature when the vehicle is used.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures of -11 °C (+13°F). The system has heating elements that guarantee its operation even at low temperatures.

When the **range is less than 2,000 or 2,400 km (1,200 or 1,500 miles)**, depending on the version, a message appears on the instrument cluster display requesting AdBlue refuelling®.

If this message is ignored, the yellow indicator light will come on once the **range is less than 1,000 km (600 miles)** . The indication that in XXX km (XXX miles) it will no longer be possible to restart the engine will appear on the instrument cluster display.

If the yellow indicator lamp is ignored, when a **remaining range of 0 km (0 miles)** is displayed, it will no longer be possible to restart the engine. The red warning light will come on .

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the German Association of the Automotive Industry (VDA) and is also known as AUS32 or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

NOTICE

Overfilling with AdBlue® can cause damage to the tank system.

[1)] Depending on the country.

Fill AdBlue®

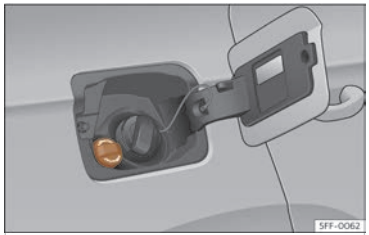


Fig. 209 AdBlue tank cap®.

Operations prior to refilling

Park the vehicle on a flat surface and turn off the ignition. If the vehicle is on a slope or on a kerb, the level indicator may not detect the refill properly.

If an AdBlue® warning message is shown on the instrument cluster display, **fill with at least the minimum required amount (approx. 5 litres)**. Only after adding this amount will the system detect that AdBlue® has been added and you will be able to start the engine again.

Fill with a refill bottle

Only use AdBlue® that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard.

- Only use original containers.
- Open the tank flap >>> **Fig. 209**.
- Unscrew the tank cap by turning it in an anti-clockwise direction.
- Please observe the manufacturer's instructions, indicated on the refill bottle.
- Check the expiry date.
- Remove the cap of the refill bottle.
- Insert the neck of the bottle in the tank filler neck vertically and screw the bottle on by hand, by turning it in a clockwise direction.
- Press the refill bottle in the direction of the filler neck and hold it in this position.
- Wait until the contents of the refill bottle have been poured into the AdBlue® tank. Do not compress or break the bottle!
- Turn the bottle in a counter-clockwise direction and gently pull it upwards >>> **page 334**.
- The AdBlue® tank is full when no more liquid comes out of the bottle.
- Screw on the tank cap in a clockwise direction until it is tightly closed.
- Close the fuel tank flap.

Refilling AdBlue® at the dispenser

Valid for vehicles with selective catalytic reduction.

- Open the tank cap.
- Turn the SCR tank cap anti-clockwise >>> **Fig. 209**.
- Fill with AdBlue® until the nozzle stops for the first time.
- Close the SCR tube by turning it clockwise until you hear a click.

Operations before driving

- After refilling the tank, only switch on the ignition.
- Leave the ignition on for at least 30 seconds for the system to detect the fluid load.
- Make sure you wait for at least 30 seconds before starting the engine!

⚠ WARNING

AdBlue® should only be stored in its original container, which should be tightly closed and kept in a safe place.

ⓘ NOTICE

- **When refilling, the nozzle grip should be aligned downward. Otherwise the nozzle will not connect automatically.**
- **Do not try to add any more additive after the nozzle has stopped for the first time. The AdBlue® tank could overflow and AdBlue® could spill out.**
- **Only use AdBlue® that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Only use original containers.**

- Never mix AdBlue® with water, fuel or additives. Any type of damage caused by such a mixture will not be covered by the warranty.
- Never pour AdBlue® into the fuel tank! This could result in engine damage.
- Do not carry the refill bottle inside the vehicle. If there is a leak (due to temperature changes or damage to the bottle), the AdBlue® may damage the vehicle's interior.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the refill bottle in an environment-friendly manner.

Note

Suitable AdBlue® refill bottles can be purchased at specialised CUPRA dealers or any SEAT dealership.

Troubleshooting

AdBlue® level too low

The indicator lamp lights up red. **The engine cannot be restarted!**

Stop the vehicle in a suitable, safe and flat area then top up with the minimum required quantity of AdBlue® >>> page 334.

together with : Fault in the AdBlue system®

The control lamps light up red. **The engine cannot be restarted!**

Go to a specialised workshop and get the system checked.

The AdBlue® reserve is low

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Top up AdBlue® within the number of kilometres (or miles) that are indicated >>> page 334.

together with : Fault in the AdBlue® system.

The control lamps light up yellow. There is a fault in the AdBlue® system or non-conforming AdBlue® fluid has been added. Go to a specialised workshop and get the system checked.

Engine management and emissions control system

Introduction

WARNING

Due to the high temperatures reached by the exhaust gas scrubbing system, you should not park your vehicle near a surface that can catch fire easily. Fire hazard!

WARNING

Do not apply wax underneath the vehicle around the area of the exhaust system: Fire hazard!

Catalytic converter

To maintain the useful life of the catalytic converter

- Only use unleaded petrol with petrol engines.
- Never run the fuel tank dry.
- When changing or adding engine oil, do not exceed the necessary amount >>> page 363, *Checking and topping up the engine oil level*.
- Never tow the vehicle to start it, use jump leads if necessary >>> page 341.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the car is moving, have the vehicle inspected by a specialised workshop. In general, the emissions warning lamp will light up when any of these symptoms occur. If this happens, any unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.

NOTICE

Never run the fuel tank completely dry because an irregular fuel supply can cause ignition faults. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the emission control system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the gases on occasions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel used. This can quite often be avoided by changing to another brand of fuel.

Particulate filter

Valid for: vehicles with petrol or diesel particulate filters

The particulate filter eliminates most of the soot from the exhaust gas system. Under normal driving conditions the filter cleans itself. If the filter does not clean itself (e.g. if short journeys are made continuously), it becomes blocked with soot and the following indication is displayed to the driver:

Particulate filter: cleaned while the vehicle is moving. See Manual.

The particulate filter needs cleaning (regeneration).

Diesel particulate-filter regeneration

Requirements for the regeneration journey: the engine must be at operating temperature.

- Drive at a speed of between 50-120 km/h (31-75 mph). This increases the temperature and burns the soot in the filter ››› page 336.
- Consider the legal speed limits as well as the recommended gears.
- End the regeneration journey once the control warning lamp has gone out.

If the warning lamp stays on after 30 minutes of running in regeneration mode, have a specialised workshop repair the fault.

Petrol particulate-filter regeneration

Requirements for the regeneration journey: the engine must be at operating temperature.

- Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h ››› page 336.
- Completely remove your foot from the accelerator pedal for a few seconds to let the vehicle roll with the gear engaged.
- Consider the legal speed limits as well as the recommended gears.
- Repeat this procedure (accelerate and let roll) until the control lamp turns off.

This procedure involves an autonomous particulate filter cleaning process and may take some time.

If the warning lamp **does not turn off**, go immediately to a specialised workshop to repair the fault.

WARNING

Always adjust your speed to suit the weather conditions, roads, braking distance and traffic if the particulate filter is in its regeneration phase. Route recommendations should never make you disregard each country's specific traffic regulations.

Note

If during the particulate filter regeneration process you also get a fuel reserve warning , the process may be interrupted. Refuel and continue with the particulate filter regeneration process.

NOTICE

- **When the exhaust system detects that the particulate filter is close to saturation, the self-cleaning function of this system recommends optimal driving for this function.**
- **Due to the high temperatures caused by the regeneration of the particulate filter, it is possible that the radiator fan will activate after stopping the engine, even it its operating temperature has not been reached.**
- **Noise, smells and high idle speeds can occur during regeneration.**

- **Always use the correct engine oil and the correct fuel to make sure the useful life of the particulate filter is not affected. Also avoid making short trips all the time.**

Troubleshooting

Fault in the emission control system.

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest specialised workshop to have the engine checked.

Combustion failures that can damage the catalytic converter.

The control lamp flashes yellow.

Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest specialised workshop to have the engine checked.

Particulate filter blocked

The indicator lamp lights up yellow
››› page 336..

Petrol engine management fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Have the engine checked as soon as possible by a specialised workshop.

When the ignition is switched on, the lamp lights up and should go off once the engine has started.

Diesel engine preheating system

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The engine can be started straight away when the lamp switches off.

Fault in the diesel engine management

The control lamp flashes yellow.

Have the engine checked as soon as possible by a specialised workshop.

NOTICE

While the control lamps , , or are on, there might be faults in the engine, fuel consumption may go up and the engine might lose power.

Miscellaneous situations

Vehicle tool kit

On-board toolkit

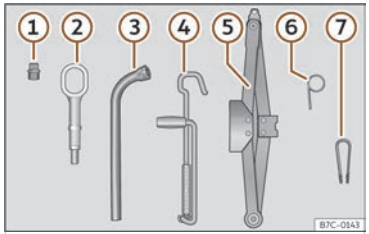


Fig. 210 Underneath the floor panel of the luggage compartment: on-board tools.

The vehicle tool kit is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment. To access the on-board tools ››› page 313.

The tool kit includes:

1. Adapter for the anti-theft bolt
2. Towing eye, removable
3. Wheel wrench
4. Crank handle for jack
5. Jack
6. Hook for extracting the central wheel trims
7. Clip for removing the wheel nut caps

Some of the items listed are only provided in certain model versions, or are optional extras.

⚠ WARNING

When the vehicle tool kit, tyre mobility set and spare wheel are loose in the interior they can be violently thrown in case of a sudden manoeuvre or braking and especially in accidents, causing serious injury.

- **Ensure that the vehicle tool kit, the tyre mobility set and the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel are safely secured in the luggage compartment.**

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged vehicle tools can cause injury or accidents.

- **Never work with inappropriate or damaged tools.**

Note

The jack does not generally require any maintenance. If required, it should be greased using universal type grease.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

Wiper service position

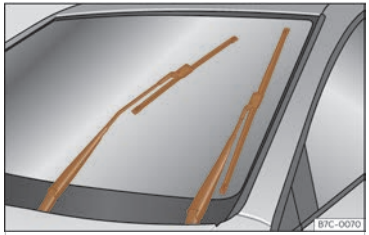


Fig. 211 Wipers in service position.

Ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen.

With the wipers in their service position, it is possible to the fold the wiper arms ››› Fig. 211.

- Close the bonnet ››› page 352.
- Switch the ignition on and off.
- Briefly press the wiper lever downwards.

Before driving, always lower the wiper arms. Use the wiper lever to return the wiper arms to their initial position.

NOTICE

- **The wiper arms can be moved into the replacement position when the front bonnet is fully closed.**
- **You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.**

Changing the wiper rear wiper blades

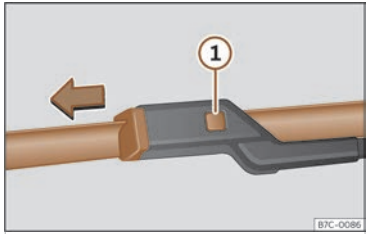


Fig. 212 Changing the windscreen wiper blades

The windscreen wiper blades are supplied as standard with a layer of graphite. This layer is responsible for ensuring that the wipe is silent. If the graphite layer is damaged, the noise of the water as it is wiped across the windscreen will be louder.

Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly. **If the wipers scrape across the glass**, they should be changed if they are damaged, or cleaned if they are dirty ››› ⓘ.

If this does not produce the desired results, the setting angle of the windscreen wiper arms might be incorrect. They should be checked by a specialised workshop and corrected if necessary.

Damaged windscreen wiper blades should be replaced immediately. These are available from qualified workshops.

Raising and lowering windscreen wiper arms

- Place the windscreen wipers in the service position ››› **page 338**.
- Grip the wiper arms **only** by the blade's attachment point.

Cleaning the windscreen wiper blades

- Raise the wiper arms.
- Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the windscreen wiper blades.
- If the blades are very dirty, a sponge or damp cloth may be used ››› ⓘ.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

- Lift and unfold the wiper arms.
- Press and hold release button ››› **Fig. 212** ① and pull gently on the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.
- Fit a new wiper blade of the **same length and design** on to the wiper arm and hook it into place.
- Rest the wiper arms back onto the windscreen.

Changing the rear window wiper blade

- Separate the wiper arm from the rear window.
- Remove the blade from the holder below the centre. During this operation, hold the wiper arm firmly.
- Fit the new blade (of the same length and type) into the housing of the wiper arm by pressing it in place. When doing so, hold the wiper arm by the upper end.
- Fold the wiper arm and rest it on the window.

WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accident and serious injury.

- **Always replace damaged or worn windscreen wiper blades or blades that no longer clean the windscreen properly.**

NOTICE

- Damaged or dirty windscreen wipers could scratch the glass.
- If products containing solvents, rough sponges or sharp objects are used to clean the blades, the graphite layer will be damaged.
- Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows.
- In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers. In cold weather, it may help to leave the vehicle parked with the wipers in their service position >>> page 338.

NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the bonnet and the wiper arms, only leave them in the service position.
- Before driving, always lower the wiper arms.

Jump start

Introduction

Due to technical reasons, tow starting the vehicle is not allowed.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged 12-volt battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

Jump leads complying with the **DIN 72553 standard** are needed for starting (see cable manufacturer's instructions). The lead cross section must be at least 25 mm² for petrol engines and at least 35 mm² for diesel engines. Ensure the cable has fully insulated clamps and that the insulation is free of defects.

CAUTION

To avoid considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system, take careful note of the following:

- If the jump leads are connected incorrectly, a short circuit may occur.
- Use only jump leads with fully insulated clamps.
- Do not allow the vehicles to come into contact with each other, otherwise current may start to flow as soon as the positive poles are connected.

NOTICE

The hybrid-vehicle system is not designed to provide a jump start to another vehicle. This may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

In vehicles with the 12 volt battery inside the passenger compartment or luggage compartment, jump leads must always be connected to the connection points in the engine bay.

Jump lead connection point

Connection points provided in the engine compartment for jump starting:

Jump start connection point, positive (only for PHEV hybrids)

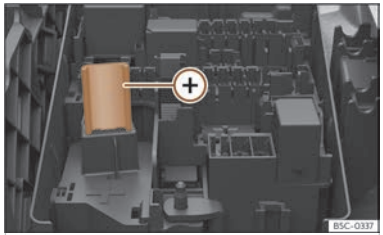


Fig. 213 In the engine compartment under the fuse box cover: positive connection point.

Jump start connection point, positive (only for VZ5 vehicles)

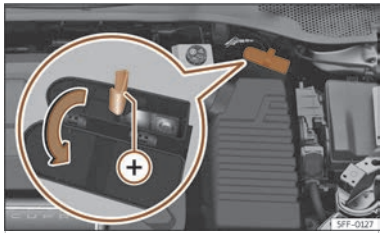


Fig. 214 In the engine compartment, right-hand side, next to the water box: positive connection point.

⊕ The jump start connection point (positive terminal) is used for connecting the red jump lead .

Jump start connection point, negative

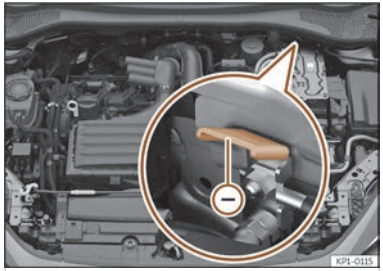


Fig. 215 In the engine compartment, right-hand side, next to the water box: negative connection point.

⊖ The jump start connection point (ground) is used to connect the black jump cable.

Jump start: description

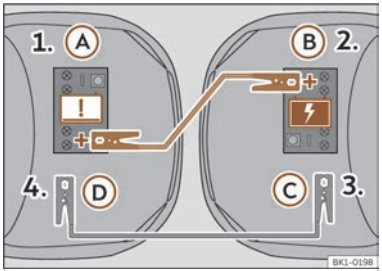


Fig. 216 Jump lead connection diagram.

Ⓐ Positive terminal of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
For vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment, use the connection point provided in the engine bay.

Ⓑ Positive terminal of the vehicle supplying the current.

Ⓒ Suitable earth point of the vehicle providing the jump start.

Ⓓ Earth point of the vehicle receiving the jump start.

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the on-board network.

Make sure that the clamps have sufficient metal contact when connecting them to the poles.

Gloves and eye protection are recommended before starting work on the 12-volt battery.

If the discharged 12-volt battery is equipped with a sight glass“”) ››› page 367, *Check the electrolyte level*.

Jump lead terminal connections

The jump leads should only be connected in the order **1 > 2 > 3 > 4**››› **Fig. 216**.

1. Switch off the ignition of both vehicles ››› ⚠.
2. Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal or connection point **+** of the vehicle with the discharged battery Ⓐ.
3. Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal **+** in the vehicle providing the jump start Ⓑ.
4. Connect one end of the *black* jump lead Ⓒ to a suitable ground terminal, to a solid piece of metal in the engine block, or to the engine block itself.
5. Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead Ⓓ to a suitable ground terminal, a solid metal component bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself of the vehicle with the flat battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery.
6. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any rotating part in the engine compartment.

Starting

1. Start the engine of the vehicle supplying the current and leave it running at idle.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle with a discharged battery and wait 2 to 3 minutes until the engine runs.

Disconnecting the jump leads

1. Before disconnecting the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlight if it is on.
2. Turn on the heating fan and the vehicle's heated rear window when the battery is discharged to reduce the voltage peaks that occur while disconnecting the battery.
3. While the engines are still running, disconnect the cables in the reverse order in which they were connected.

If the engine does not start after 10 seconds, wait for approximately 1 minute and then try again.

⚠ WARNING

- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment** **››› page 352.**
- **The battery supplying the current must have the same voltage (12 V) and a similar capacity to the discharged battery. Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Keep any sources of ignition (flames, cigarettes, etc.) far enough away from the batteries. They may cause an explosion.**
- **Observe the usage instructions of the jump lead manufacturer.**
- **On the other vehicle, do not connect the negative cable directly to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. Any sparks could ignite the igniter gas coming out of the battery and could cause an explosion.**
- **The negative wire must never be connected to fuel system components or brake lines on the other vehicle.**
- **Do not touch uninsulated parts of the pole clamps. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle, this can cause a short circuit.**
- **Jump leads must be placed in such a way that they cannot be caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not rest your body on the batteries, as this could cause burns.**
- **Take into account the instruction manual of the jump lead manufacturer and the instruction manual of the other vehicle.**
- **Before starting work on the 12 volt battery, discharge any static electricity to avoid sparks that could ignite battery gases.**

⚠ CAUTION

Never use jump leads when one of the batteries is frozen. Danger of explosion! Even once thawed, electrolyte leaks can cause burns. Replace the battery if it is frozen.

ⓘ NOTICE

Immediately go to a specialist workshop and have the 12 volt battery checked.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

It takes practice to tow a vehicle, especially when using a tow cable. Both drivers should be well informed of the special features of towing. Inexperienced drivers should refrain from towing.

During towing, make sure at all times that no inadmissible pulling forces or jolts are caused. On roads without a firm surface there is always the danger of overloading the attachment parts.

Take into account the legal provisions regarding tow starting and towing.

Tow start

Tow starting means starting a vehicle's engine while another puts it in motion by pulling it.

The vehicle can be tow started with a tow bar or cable.

Towing

Towing means a vehicle pulling another vehicle that is not in a condition to drive.

The vehicle can be towed with a tow bar or cable.

- The speed limit is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- The maximum permitted distance is 50 km (30 miles).

Tow cable and tow bar

It is safer for the vehicle to be towed using a tow bar, avoiding damage to the vehicle. The tow cable should only be used if a tow bar is not available.

A tow rope should be slightly elastic to avoid damage to both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Towing with a tow truck

If a breakdown lorry is used, vehicles with automatic transmission are only allowed to be towed with the front wheels suspended.

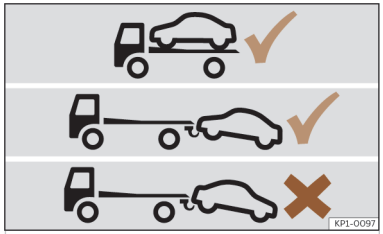


Fig. 217 Transport with a tow truck: vehicles with an automatic gearbox and front wheel drive.

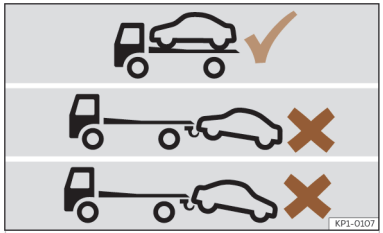


Fig. 218 Transport with a tow truck: vehicles with automatic transmission and 4Drive.

Towing vehicles with four-wheel drive (4Drive)

Four-wheel drive vehicles (4Drive) can be towed using a tow bar or tow rope. It is not permitted to suspend the front or rear axle while towing. This could damage the transmission.

Deactivate roll-away protection (vehicles with automatic transmission) ››› page 234

If necessary, to release the parking brake so that the vehicle can be pushed or towed:

- Keep the brake pedal pressed down and select the **N** position on the gear selector. Next, confirm **Deactivate roll-away protection** in the Infotainment System.
- **OR:** open the vehicle settings in the infotainment system > **Vehicle** > **Brakes** > **Deactivate the** "***Roll-away protection function***".

⚠ WARNING

When towing a vehicle, the driving behaviour and braking capacity change considerably.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow the vehicle to be towed if it has no power.

- **When towing, never remove the key from the ignition or disconnect the ignition with the ignition and start button. Otherwise, the electronic lock of the steering column could suddenly get blocked and it would be impossible to steer the vehicle. This could cause an accident, serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle runs out of power during towing, stop the process immediately and seek the assistance of specialised personnel.**

NOTICE

Towing the vehicle with a tow cable or a tow bar can cause damage to the vehicle.

- **If the vehicle is towed with a tow cable or tow bar, special care must be taken.**
- **If possible, have the vehicle transported on a tow truck.**

NOTICE

If the vehicle is pushed by hand, the tail light units, the side spoilers of the rear window and large sheet metal surfaces may be damaged. In addition, the rear spoiler could be detached.

- **If the vehicle is pushed by hand, the tail light units, the side spoilers of the rear window, large sheet metal surfaces or the rear spoiler.**

NOTICE

Removing and attaching the cover and the towing eye may cause damage to the vehicle, for example, on the paintwork.

- **To avoid damaging the vehicle, remove and replace the cover and the towing eye carefully.**

NOTICE

Using a towing eye that is not suitable for the vehicle can damage it.

- **When towing, always use the vehicle's towing eye, which forms part of the on-board tools, or an appropriate eye for towing.**

Instructions for tow-starting and towing

During towing, the change of direction can be signalled on the towed vehicle even when the hazard warning lights are on. To do so, at the same time, the turn signal lever must be operated with ignition switched on. During this time the hazard warning lights remain disconnected. When the turn signal lever is returned to the neutral position, the hazard warning lights will be automatically reactivated.

Cases where tow starting and towing the vehicle are not permitted

Do not allow the vehicle to be towed in the following situations:

- The vehicle's gearbox is damaged or has no lubricant.
- The 12-volt battery is discharged. In vehicles with the "Keyless Access" locking and ignition system the steering remains locked and the parking brake cannot be deactivated and the steering column lock cannot be released if they are connected.
- If a distance above 50 km needs to be travelled.
- There is no guarantee that the wheels will turn smoothly or that the steering will work after an accident.

If the vehicle cannot be towed on its wheels for any of the reasons mentioned above, request assistance from specialised personnel and, if necessary, have the vehicle transported without the wheels touching the ground.

Tow start

Steps to be taken prior to tow starting

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox: Due to technical reasons, tow starting the vehicle is not allowed. Attempt to start the engine using the starting aid ››› page 340.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox: In general, it is not recommended to tow start the vehicle. If the engine does not start, try the starting aid first ››› page 340. Please note that, in the case of petrol engines, the maximum permitted distance for tow starting is 50 m.

- Secure the tow cable or tow bar using only the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights.
- Engage 2nd or 3rd gear while the vehicle is stopped.
- Press the clutch and hold it down.
- When both vehicles are in motion, release the clutch pedal.
- As soon as the engine starts, depress the clutch and disengage the gear to avoid colliding with the towing vehicle.

NOTICE

When tow-starting, unburnt fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.

Towing

Preliminary steps

- Secure the tow cable or tow bar using only the attachment points provided for this purpose ››› ⚠. Depending on the equipment, these points may be a towing device or a towing eye.
- Make sure the tow cable is not twisted. Otherwise the towing eye could unscrew during towing.
- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights of both vehicles. If necessary, take into account other different provisions that may exist in this regard.
- Take into account the instructions on towing provided in the instruction manual of the other vehicle.

Towing vehicle (lead)

- Do not actually start driving until the cable is tight.
- Accelerate with particular care.
- Avoid sharp braking and sudden manoeuvres.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox:

- When starting to drive, use the clutch very gently.

Towed vehicle (following)

- Make sure the ignition is switched on so that the steering wheel does not lock and so that, if necessary, you can use the turn signals and the windscreen wiper.
- The brake servo and power steering only work when the engine is running. Otherwise, you will have to depress the brake pedal considerably harder and more force will be needed to turn the steering wheel.
- Release the electronic parking brake >>> page 234, *Using the electronic parking brake*.
- Make sure the tow cable is always taut.
- Disengage the gear or place the gear selector in the **N** position.

⚠ WARNING

Never attach the tow rope or tow bar to axle or running gear components. They could be damaged, resulting in an accident and serious injury.

- **Seek specialist assistance and, if applicable, have the vehicle transported on a tow truck.**

ⓘ NOTICE

The vehicle can only be towed if the state of charge of the 12-volt battery is sufficient to disengage the electronic parking brake and the steering column lock. If the vehicle has no power supply or there is an electric system fault, the engine must be jump-started to release the electronic parking brake and deactivate the electronic lock of the steering column.

Front towing eye

Fig. 219 Front bumper on right: remove the lid.

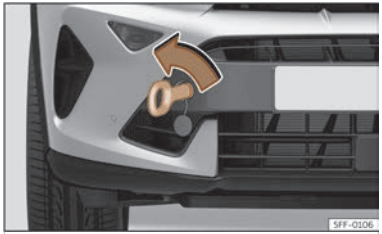


Fig. 220 Right side of the front bumper: towing eye screwed in.

The housing of the removable towing eye is on the right side of the front bumper underneath a cover >>> **Fig. 219**.

The towing eye should always be kept in the vehicle.

Bear in mind the instructions for towing >>> page 345.

Fitting the towing eye

1. Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment >>> page 338.
2. Remove the cover by pressing down on its base and leave it hanging from the vehicle >>> **Fig. 219**.

3. Screw the towing eye into the housing by turning it **anticlockwise** >>> **Fig. 220** , >>> ⓘ as far as it will go. Use a suitable object that can completely and securely tighten the towing eye in its housing.
4. After towing, unscrew the towing eye **clockwise** with a suitable object.
5. Replace the cover and push it in until it clicks into place.
6. Clean the towing eye if necessary and then store it in the luggage compartment along with the other vehicle tools.

ⓘ NOTICE

The towing eye must always be completely and firmly tightened. Otherwise, it could jump out of the housing during towing.

Rear towing eye

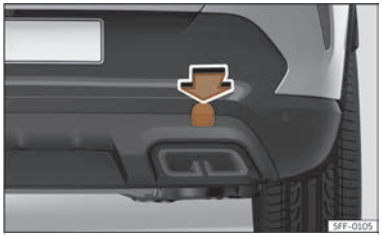


Fig. 221 Rear bumper on right: remove the lid.

Fig. 222 Right side of the rear bumper: towing eye screwed in.

The housing of the screw towing eye is on the right side of the rear bumper behind a lid >>> **Fig. 221**.

Vehicles fitted as standard with a towing bracket **do not** have any housing for the screw towing eye behind the lid. In this case, the tow hitch needs to be extracted or installed and used for towing >>> **page 319** , >>> ⓘ .

Bear in mind the instructions for towing >>> **page 345**.

Assemble the rear towing eye (cars without a factory-equipped towing bracket)

- Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment >>> **page 338**.
- Press the upper side of the lid >>> **Fig. 221** to unclip it.
- Remove the lid and let it hang from the vehicle.
- Screw the towing eye into the housing by turning it **anticlockwise** >>> **Fig. 222** , >>> ⓘ as far as it will go. Use a suitable object that can completely and securely tighten the towing eye in its housing.
- After towing, unscrew the towing eye **clockwise** with a suitable object.
- Replace the cover and press until the tab snaps into the bumper.
- Clean the towing eye if necessary and then store it in the luggage compartment along with the other vehicle tools.

NOTICE

- **The towing eye must always be completely and firmly tightened. Otherwise, it could be released while towing and tow-starting.**
- **If the vehicle is factory-equipped with a towing bracket, it is only permitted to tow with a tow bar if this has been specially designed to be installed with a tow hitch. If an unsuitable tow bar is used, both the tow hitch and the vehicle may be damaged. Instead, a tow rope should be used.**

Fuses

Introduction

In general, a fuse can be assigned to various electrical components. Likewise, an electrical component can be protected by several fuses.

Only replace fuses when the cause of the problem has been solved. If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, you must have the electrical system checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

WARNING

The high voltages in the electrical system can give serious electrical shocks, causing burns and even death!

- **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
- **Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.**

WARNING

Using unsuitable fuses, repairing fuses or fitting jumpers on a live circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injury.

- **Never use a fuse with a higher value. Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.**
- **Never replace a fuse with a metal strip, staple or similar.**

NOTICE

- **To prevent damage to the vehicle's electrical system, before replacing a fuse always turn off the ignition, the lights and all electrical components.**
- **Protect the fuse boxes when open to prevent the entry of dust or humidity as they can damage the electrical system.**

Note

In the vehicle, there are more fuses than those indicated in this chapter. These should only be replaced by a specialist workshop.

Fuses inside the vehicle

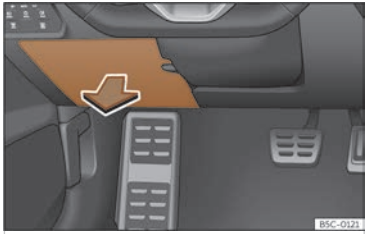


Fig. 223 On the dash panel on the driver side: fuse box cover.

Opening and closing the fuse box located below the dash panel

- *Open:* fold the cover down ››› **Fig. 223**.
- *Close:* push back the cover it in until it clicks into place.

Identifying fuses below the dash panel by colours

Colour	Current intensity in amps
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40
Red	50

NOTICE

- **Always carefully remove the fuse box covers and refit them correctly to avoid problems with your vehicle.**
- **Protect the fuse boxes when open to avoid the entry of dust or humidity. Dirt and humidity inside fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.**

Fuses in the engine compartment

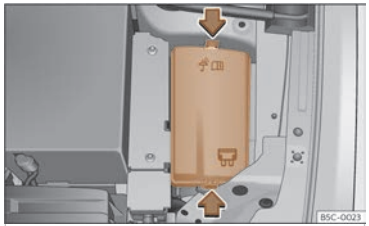


Fig. 224 In the engine compartment: lid of the fuse box.

To open the engine compartment fuse box

- Raise the bonnet ››› ⚠ on page 352.
- Press the locking tabs to unlock the fuse box cover ››› Fig. 224.
- Then lift the cover out.
- To **fit** the cover, place it on the fuse box. Push the locking tabs down until they click audibly into place.

Replace a blown fuse

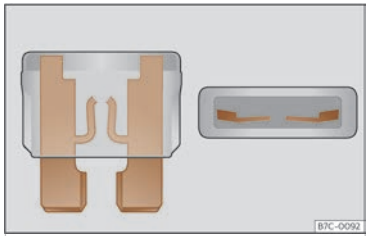


Fig. 225 Image of a blown fuse.

Preparations

- Switch off the ignition, lights and all electrical equipment.
- Open the corresponding fuse box ››› page 348, ››› page 349.

Recognise a blown fuse

A blown fuse can be recognised if the metal strip is melted ››› Fig. 225.

- Point a torch at the fuse to see if it has blown.

To replace a fuse

- Remove the fuse.
- Replace the blown fuse with one with an *identical* amperage rating (same colour and markings) and *identical* size.
- Replace the cover again or close the fuse box lid.

Fuse placement

Fuses in the vehicle interior

No.	Consumers/Amps	
3	Trailer	25
4	SCR, Adblue®	30
5	Automatic gearbox lever	25
6	Interior light	30
8	Sunroof	20
7	Heated seats	30
9	Left door	30
11	Trailer	15
12	Right lights	40
13	Central locking	40
14	External Ethernet Amplifier	30
16	Airbag	7.5
18	KESSY	7.5
19	Instrument cluster	7.5

No.	Consumers/Amps	
20	Connectivity Box	7.5
21	Rear camera, IPA	7.5
22	Radar, front camera and multifunction front camera	7.5
24	4x4 Haldex Control Unit	15
25	Front seat belts RGS+EBSS left	25
26	Right door	30
27	Rear seat belts RGS+EBSS right	25
28	PHEV. Switching off the high voltage system for rescue tasks. Identified by a yellow label	15
29	Trailer	15
30	Radio	30
31	Trailer	25
34	230V socket	30
35	Left lights	40
36	Air conditioner fan	40
37	Electric rear lid	30
39	Heated steering wheel	10
40	Alarm horn	7.5
41	Gateway	7.5

No.	Consumers/Amps	
42	Automatic gearbox lever	7.5
43	Air conditioning and heating control panel, rear window heating, AA compressor	10
44	Diagnosis, handbrake switch, light switch, reverse light, interior lighting, lit-up door sill	7.5
45	Steering column	7.5
46	Radio display	7.5
47	Driving mode	10
48	USB	7.5
52	12V socket	20
58	Parking sensors, park distance control unit, front camera, radar	7.5
59	Reverse switch, clima sensor, electrochromic mirror	7.5
60	Diagnosis	7.5
61	Starter motor; clutch sensor	7.5
66	Rear window wiper	15
67	Heated rear window	30

In-line fuse/Amps	
Electric driver's seat	15
Electric passenger seat	15

Fuse arrangement in engine compartment

No.	Consumers/Amps	
2	Engine control unit	7.5
3	Fuel pump control unit	10/20
	Version VZ5: Ignition coils	30
4	Left headlight	15/30
5	Right headlight	15/30
7	Automatic gearbox pump	30
9	Horn	15
10	Front windscreen washer	30
11	PHEV Climate	7.5
12	Automatic gearbox control unit	15/30
	Version VZ5: Automatic gearbox control unit	15
13	ESP control unit	25
14	PHEV	7.5
15	ESP control unit	40
16	PHEV, Automatic gearbox unit	50
17	PTC	40
18	PTC	40
20	Front electronic differential	15
21	Engine control unit	7.5

No.	Consumers/Amps	
22	Starter motor	30
23	Engine control unit (diesel/petrol)	15
24	Engine sensors	7.5/10/15
	Version VZ5: Engine relay, electric fan	7.5
25	Engine sensors	10
	Version VZ5: Engine sensors	15
26	Engine power supply	7.5/10/15
	Version VZ5: Engine power supply	7.5
27	Lambda probe	10
	Version VZ5: Lambda probe	15
28	Engine	10/20
29	Fuel pump control unit	15/20/30
30	Pressure pump 1.0	10
31	*Version VZ5:* Injection valve for cylinders 1-4	10
33	PTC	40

Note

- **In the vehicle, there are more fuses than those indicated in this chapter. These should only be changed by a specialised workshop.**
- **Positions not containing a fuse do not appear in the tables.**
- **Some of the equipment listed in the tables pertain only to certain versions of the model or are optional extras.**
- **Please note that the above lists, while correct at the time of printing, are subject to change.**

Changing bulbs

Change a bulb

LED technology lights

Full-LED headlights handle all light functions (daylight, side light, turn signal, dipped beam and full beam) with light emitting diodes (LEDs) as a light source.

The outdoor lighting system's LED lighting does not require a maintenance service. If any component fails, go to an authorised service to have it replaced.

The fog lights, tail lights, number plate light, side turn signals and additional brake light are all LED bulbs. With this in mind, they should be replaced by a technical service.

Checking and refilling levels

Engine compartment

Working in the engine compartment

The engine compartment of the vehicle is a dangerous area. You should only perform works in the engine compartment if you have good knowledge of the necessary operations and the general safety measures, and if you have adequate tools, means and operating fluids. Works performed inadequately could lead to serious injuries ››› ⚠. In this case, get a specialised workshop to perform all the works. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

Before performing any work in the engine compartment, always park the vehicle on level and firm ground, taking all necessary safety precautions.

⚠ WARNING

Any accidental movement of the vehicle during maintenance work could cause serious injuries.

- Never perform works underneath the vehicle without having first immobilised it to prevent it from moving. When working under the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, the vehicle must be on a level surface and the wheels must be locked.
- If work must be performed underneath the vehicle, take the extra precaution of supporting it safely using a suitable support assembly. The jack is not suitable for this purpose and may not provide support, which could lead to serious injuries.
- The Start-Stop system must be switched off manually.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of any vehicle is a dangerous area in which serious injuries can be caused!

- When performing any type of work, always ensure you are extremely cautious, and bear in mind the general safety measures. Never put yourself at risk.
- Never perform works in the engine compartment if you do not have solid knowledge of the necessary operations. If you are unsure of what needs to be done, seek a specialised workshop to perform the works. Works performed inadequately could lead to serious injuries.
- Never open or close the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Steam or hot coolant can cause severe burns. Always wait until you stop hearing or seeing the steam or coolant discharging from the engine compartment.
- Before opening the bonnet, always wait for the engine to cool down.
- Touching hot engine or exhaust system components could result in skin burns.
- Turn off the ignition and keep the vehicle key in a safe place at a safe distance from the vehicle to prevent the ignition from being turned on and the combustion engine started by mistake.
- Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave them unsupervised.
- When the engine is hot, its cooling system is pressurised. Do not open the expansion tank cap. Hot coolant may splash out and cause severe burns and other injuries.
  - Turn the coolant expansion tank cap slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while pressing it down slightly.
  - Always protect your face, hands and arms from the hot coolant and steam with a large thick cloth.

- When refilling operating fluids, ensure they do not spill onto the components of the engine or onto the exhaust system. These liquids could cause a fire.

⚠ WARNING

The electrical system is under high voltage and can cause electrical shocks, burns, serious injuries and even death!

- Never short circuit the electrical system. The 12-volt battery could explode.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and serious injury, never touch the electrical wires of the ignition system while the engine is running or when starting.

⚠ WARNING

There are rotating parts in the engine compartment which could cause serious injury.

- Never insert your hand into the radiator fan or around that area. All the rotor blades can cause serious injuries. The fan activates depending on the temperature and can switch on automatically, even if the ignition is off.
- If any work has to be done during engine start-up or when it is running, take into account that the rotating parts (e.g. the poly-V belt, alternator and the radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition system pose a fatal hazard. Always act with extreme care.
  - Ensure that no part of your body, or any jewellery or tie, loose clothing, loose long hair can become trapped in the rotating parts. Before performing works in the engine compartment, remove any jewellery or tie you may be wearing, tie up your hair if it is long and gather any loose clothing.
  - Do not press the accelerator pedal while not paying attention. Always do so with extreme care. The vehicle could start moving even when the electronic parking brake is engaged.
- Do not leave objects in the engine compartment, e.g. rags or tools.

⚠ WARNING

The operating fluids and some materials of the engine compartment are highly flammable and could cause a fire and serious injuries!

- Never smoke in the vicinity of the engine compartment.
- Never perform works close to unprotected flames or sparks.
- When you must perform works on the on-board 12 volt electrical system, bear in mind the following:
  - Always disconnect the 12 volt battery. Ensure the vehicle is unlocked when disconnecting the 12-volt battery, otherwise the anti-theft alarm will trigger.
  - Never perform works in the vicinity of heating elements, water boilers or unprotected flames.
- Always have a fire extinguisher close-by. Make sure it is operational and has been inspected.

NOTICE

When refilling or changing the operating fluids, ensure you pour the correct fluids into their corresponding filler caps. Using the wrong operating fluids can lead to serious malfunctions and engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Operating fluids that overflow from the vehicle contaminate the environment. Therefore, check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis. If there are marks on the ground left by operating fluids, consult a specialised workshop and request the vehicle be checked. If any operating fluid leaks out, dispose of it in the correct manner.

Preparing the vehicle for work in the engine compartment

Before performing works in the engine compartment, always perform the following operations in the order indicated ››› ⚠:

1. Place the vehicle on level and firm ground, taking all necessary safety precautions.
2. Press the brake pedal and hold it down until the ignition is switched off.
3. Apply the electronic parking brake.
4. *Manual transmission:* place the gear lever in neutral.

   Automatic transmission: press the parking lock button **P**.
5. Switch the ignition off ››› page 169.
6. Remove the vehicle key from the vehicle and store it outside to avoid inadvertently starting the engine.
7. Wait for the engine to cool down sufficiently.
8. Always keep other people away from the engine compartment.
9. Immobilize the vehicle so that it cannot move.

⚠ WARNING

For your own safety, do not ignore this important check list, otherwise accidents and serious injuries could be caused.

- **Always follow the indications on the check list and always bear in mind the general safety measures.**

Opening and closing the bonnet

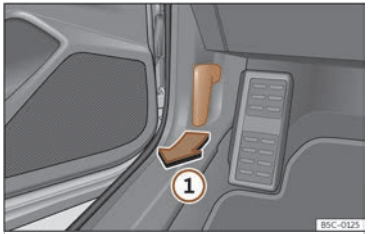


Fig. 226 Release lever in the driver's footwell area.

Fig. 227 Lever under the bonnet.

Opening the bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.

Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are in place against the windscreen.

- Open the door and pull the lever that is underneath the dash panel ››› **Fig. 226** ①.
- To lift the bonnet, press towards the left on the lever located under the bonnet, in the centre ››› **Fig. 227** ②. The fastening hooks are unlocked.
- The bonnet can be opened. Release the bonnet prop and secure it in the fixture designed for this in the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet

- Slightly lift the bonnet.
- Release the bonnet prop and replace it in its support.
- At a height of approximately 20 cm let it fall so it locks.

If the bonnet does not close, do not press downwards. Open it again and let it fall as mentioned above.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the bonnet is properly closed. If it opens when driving, it can cause an accident.

ⓘ NOTICE

In certain weather conditions, ice or snow may build up between the bonnet and windscreen; do not force the bonnet open until you are sure that there is no ice or snow, especially in the hinge area.

ⓘ NOTICE

To avoid damage to the bonnet and to the windscreen wiper arms, only open it when the windscreen wipers are in place against the windscreen.

Fluids and consumables

Introduction

All fluids and consumables, such as engine coolant or vehicle batteries, are subject to continuous development. For this reason, whenever a fluid or consumable needs to be replaced, please contact a specialist workshop.

⚠ WARNING

If unsuitable fluids and consumables are used or used improperly, accidents, injuries, burns and severe poisoning can occur.

- **Only store operating fluids in their original containers, tightly closed.**
- **Never store operating fluids in empty food cans, bottles or other empty containers, as they could be ingested by somebody.**
- **Keep all fluids and consumables out of reach of children.**
- **Always read and observe the information and warnings given on containers of operating fluids.**
- **When using products that emit harmful vapours, always work outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Use only appropriate operating fluids. Never confuse operating fluids. This could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage!

For the sake of the environment

Leakages of operating fluids can contaminate the environment. If any operating fluid leaks, collect it in an appropriate container and dispose of it properly and in an environmentally friendly manner.

Cooling system

Introduction

Only carry out work on the engine cooling system yourself if you are familiar with the necessary operations and the generally applicable safety measures, and if you have the appropriate tools, equipment and operating fluids. Works performed inadequately could lead to serious injuries . In this case, get a specialised workshop to perform all the works. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

⚠ WARNING

Engine coolant is toxic! Contact with coolant, especially ingestion, can cause serious or fatal injury.

- **If you swallow coolant, seek medical assistance immediately.**
- **If your health is affected after working with coolant, seek medical assistance immediately.**
- **Only store coolant in its original container, tightly closed and in a safe place.**
- **Never store motor coolant in empty food cans, bottles or other empty containers, as it could be ingested by another person.**
- **Always keep motor coolant out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid frequent contact with coolant to prevent skin damage.**
- **Protect your skin, face and especially your eyes when working with coolant.**
- **Do not eat, drink or smoke when working with coolant.**
- **Wash your skin with soap and water after working with coolant.**

For the sake of the environment

Coolants and additives can contaminate the environment. If any operating fluid leaks out, collect it and dispose of it properly and in an environmentally friendly manner.

Coolant specifications

The factory fitted engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of specially treated water and at least 40% coolant additive G12evo (TL-VW 774 L).

Get information from a specialist workshop about which coolant is suitable for your vehicle. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

To protect the engine cooling system, the additive percentage should **always** be at least 40%. If more antifreeze protection is required for climatic reasons, the additive proportion can be increased. However, it should only be increased up to a maximum of 55 %, otherwise the antifreeze protection would be reduced and the cooling effect would be impaired.

The G12evo (TL-VW 774 L) can be recognised by its lilac colouring. This mixture of water and additive not only provides antifreeze protection down to -25°C (-13°F), but also protects the light alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion, prevents limescale build-up and considerably raises the boiling point of the coolant.

When topping up the coolant, a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40% of the appropriate coolant additive should be used for optimum corrosion protection >>> page 357.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle's cooling system does not have sufficient antifreeze protection, the engine could fail and this could result in serious injury.

- **Ensure that the coolant fluid additive percentage is correct, taking into account the lowest ambient temperature expected in the location where the vehicle is to be used.**
- **When the outside temperature is very low, the coolant could freeze and the vehicle could be immobilised. In this case, the heating would not work either and inadequately dressed passengers could die of cold.**

NOTICE

Never mix G12evo coolant (TL-VW 774 L) with engine coolants not approved by CUPRA.

- **If the fluid in the expansion tank does not have a pink colour (resulting from mixing the lilac additive with distilled water), but is, for example, brown, the suitable coolant may have been mixed with another unsuitable one. The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case! Otherwise serious malfunctions or damage to the engine and the cooling system could occur!**

For the sake of the environment

Motor coolant and its additives can pollute the environment. If any operating fluid leaks out, collect it and dispose of it properly and in an environmentally friendly manner.

Coolant tank

✓ Valid for: hybrid vehicles.

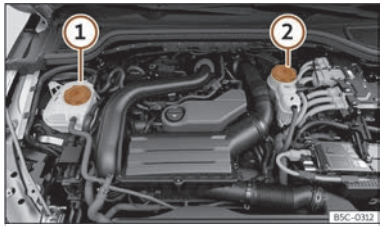


Fig. 228 Engine compartment: Coolant tanks

Hybrid vehicles have 2 independent coolant expansion tanks.

››› **Fig. 228**

① Coolant expansion tank for the combustion engine ››› **Fig. 229**.

② Coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system ››› **Fig. 230**.

Check and refill the coolant

Engine cooling fluid

Fig. 229 In the front compartment: coolant expansion tank.

Preliminary steps

- Park the vehicle on a firm, flat surface.
- Wait until the engine has fully cooled ››› ⚠.
- Open the front bonnet ››› **page 352**.
- The engine coolant expansion tank can be recognised by the symbol on the cap ››› **Fig. 229**.

Check the level

When the vehicle is delivered (new vehicles), the coolant may be above the marked area. This is normal. It is not necessary to suck the coolant out.

1. When the engine is cold, check the coolant level using the side marking on the expansion tank ››› **Fig. 229**. The coolant level should be between the marks.
2. If the level is below the minimum level mark (**min**) on the tank, top up with coolant. When the engine is warm, the coolant level may be slightly above the upper mark.
3. Do not add coolant if there is no more coolant visible in the coolant expansion tank ››› ⓘ.

The coolant level cannot be checked accurately on all models as the visibility of the fluid level in the coolant expansion tank may be obstructed. If the coolant level cannot be read accurately, contact a qualified workshop.

When the motor coolant level is too low, the coolant warning light comes on. In this case, immediately seek assistance from specialist personnel.

Topping up the fluid

If the coolant level is too low and there is no workshop nearby, note the following:

1. Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam by placing a suitable cloth over the cap of the motor coolant expansion tank.
2. Carefully unscrew the cap.
3. Only top up with **fresh** coolant according to specifications ››› page 356.

   Only top up with coolant if there is still some coolant left in the expansion tank; otherwise the engine could be damaged! If you do not see any coolant in the expansion tank, **do not continue driving** and seek specialist assistance.
4. If there is still some coolant left in the expansion tank, top up with coolant up to the tank's upper mark and check the level the next day. If the level drops **again**, go to a workshop and request a check of the cooling system.

   The coolant level must be between the marks on the expansion tank ››› Fig. 229. **Never exceed the top edge of the marked area** .
5. Screw the cap on tightly.

If engine coolant with the recommended specifications is not available in an emergency, do not use any other coolant additive! In this case, top up with **distilled water**only. Next, ensure that the recommended additive is topped up as soon as possible in the correct proportion ››› page 356.

High voltage system coolant (valid for hybrid vehicles)

Fig. 230 In the front compartment: coolant expansion tank.

Preliminary steps

- Park the vehicle on a firm, flat surface.
- Wait for the high voltage system to cool down ››› ⚠.
- Open the front bonnet ››› page 352.
- The high voltage system's coolant expansion tank can be recognised by the symbol on the cap ››› **Fig. 230**.

Check the level

When the vehicle is delivered (new vehicles), the coolant may be above the marked area. This is normal. It is not necessary to suck the coolant out.

1. Check the coolant level on the side marks of the expansion tank when the coolant is cold ››› **Fig. 230**. The coolant level should be between the marks.
2. If the level is below the minimum level mark (min) on the tank, top up with coolant. When the coolant is hot, the coolant level may be slightly above the upper mark.
3. Do not add coolant if no coolant at all is visible in the high voltage system ››› ⓘ coolant expansion tank.

The coolant level cannot be checked accurately on all models as the visibility of the fluid level in the coolant expansion tank may be obstructed. If the coolant level cannot be read accurately, contact a qualified workshop.

Topping up the fluid

If the coolant level is too low and there is no workshop nearby, note the following:

1. Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot liquid coolant or steam by placing a suitable cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap.
2. Carefully unscrew the cap ››› ⚠.

3. Add only fresh coolant according to the manufacturer's specification up to the upper level mark. After adding the coolant, the coolant level must be between the marks on the high voltage system coolant expansion tank ››› Fig. 230.
4. Close the cap tightly.
5. The next day, check the high voltage system coolant level. If the level in the coolant expansion tank has fallen below the mark min, have the cooling system checked by a specialist workshop.

If in an emergency you do not have access to coolant with the required specifications, only add distilled water in the first instance. Afterwards, take the vehicle to a specialist workshop as soon as possible to have the correct coolant additive mixture restored.

⚠ WARNING

Steam and hot engine coolant can cause severe burns.

- **Never open the front bonnet if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the front compartment. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping. Touching hot parts can result in skin burns.**

⚠ WARNING

Before opening the front bonnet, please note the following:

- **Apply the electronic parking brake.**
- **Always keep children away from the front compartment and never leave them unattended.**

⚠ WARNING

When the engine is hot, its cooling system is pressurised. Do not open the expansion tank cap. Hot coolant may splash out and cause severe burns and other injuries.

- **Turn the cap slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while pressing it down slightly.**
- **Always protect your face, hands and arms from the hot coolant and steam with a large thick cloth.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Only use distilled water! Other types of water contain chemical substances that could cause significant corrosion damage. If you have added non-distilled water, have all of the engine cooling system fluid changed immediately by a specialist workshop.

- **When heated, the coolant expands. If coolant is filled above the marked area, excess liquid may overflow and damage the vehicle.**
- **When adding coolant, do not fill above the upper edge of the marked area ››› Fig. 229, ››› Fig. 230. Otherwise, when the temperature rises the excess fluid will be expelled from the engine cooling system and could cause damage.**
- **If the system leaks a lot of coolant, only refill once the motor has *cooled down completely*. If there is a significant loss of coolant, there may be leaks in the cooling system. Immediately go to a specialist workshop to have the system checked. This could result in engine damage.**
- **Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is completely empty! Air may have got into the cooling system. Do not continue driving and seek assistance from specialist personnel. This could result in engine damage.**
- **When changing the operating fluids, make sure that you pour the correct fluids into the correct filler necks. Using the wrong operating fluids can lead to serious malfunctions and engine damage.**

Brake fluid

Check and refill the brake fluid

Fig. 231 Front compartment: brake fluid reservoir cap.

Checking the brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings.

However, if the brake fluid level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the MIN mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. Seek specialist assistance. A warning light on the instrument cluster display monitors the brake fluid level.

Brake fluid level

The control lamp lights up red.

Brake fluid level is too low.

- **Stop driving!**
- Check the brake fluid level.
- If the brake fluid level is too low, seek specialist assistance.

Changing brake fluid

We recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by a Technical Service.

WARNING

If the brake fluid level is low or unsuitable/old brake fluid is used, the brake system may fail or braking power may be reduced.

- **Check the brake system and the brake fluid level regularly!**
- **When the brake fluid is used and brakes are subjected to extreme braking forces, bubbles of vapour form in the brake system. These bubbles can significantly reduce braking power, notably increasing braking distance, and could result in the total failure of the brake system.**
- **Be sure to always use the correct brake fluid. Only use brake fluid that expressly meets the VW 501 14 standard.**
- **You can buy VW 501 14 standard brake fluid at a specialised CUPRA service or at a SEAT Official Service. If none is available, use only high-quality brake fluid that meets DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 standards, or USA Standards FMVSS 116 DOT 4.**
- **The replacement brake fluid must be new.**
- **Brake fluid should be stored in the closed original container in a safe place out of reach of children. Risk of poisoning!**

NOTICE

Brake fluid should not come into contact with the vehicle paintwork, as it is abrasive.

Note

Brake fluid is an environmental pollutant. Collect any spilt service fluids get a professional to dispose of them.

Windscreen washer reservoir

Checking the level of the windscreen washer reservoir and refilling it

Fig. 232 In the front compartment: blue cap of the windscreen washer reservoir.

Check the water level in the windscreen washer reservoir regularly and top up as required.

The windscreen washer reservoir contains liquid detergent for the windscreen and rear window.

There is a sieve in the filler neck of the washer fluid tank. When filling the tank, this sieve retains large dirt particles so that they do not reach the nozzles. Do not remove the sieve except for cleaning. If the sieve is damaged or not fitted, these dirt particles could enter the system during filling and clog the windscreen washer nozzles.

- Raise the bonnet ››› ⚠ on page 352.
- The windscreen washer reservoir is marked with the symbol on the cap.
- Check if there is enough fluid in the tank.

Plain water is not enough to clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend that you always add a product to the windscreen washer fluid.

The capacity of the windscreen washer reservoir is approximately 3 litres.

NOTICE

If the water from the windscreen washer does not contain enough antifreeze, it may freeze on the windscreen and rear window, reducing forward and rear visibility.

- **In winter, ensure the windscreen washer contains enough antifreeze.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the windscreen wiper system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the ventilation system. The antifreeze could freeze on the windscreen and reduce visibility.**

NOTICE

Never mix an unsuitable antifreeze or other similar additives with the windscreen washer water. A greasy layer may be formed on the windscreen which will impair visibility.

- **Use clean water with a window cleaner recommended by CUPRA.**
- **If necessary, add a suitable antifreeze to the water in the reservoir.**

NOTICE

- **Do not mix cleaning products recommended by CUPRA with other products. This could lead to flocculation and may block the windscreen washer jets.**
- **When topping up service fluids, make absolutely certain that you fill the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Using the wrong fluids could cause serious malfunctions.**
- **Lack of window washer fluid causes the view through the windscreen to be obscured.**

Engine oil

General notes

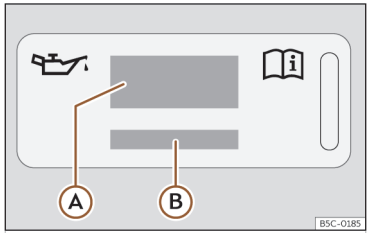


Fig. 233 In the engine compartment: engine oil label

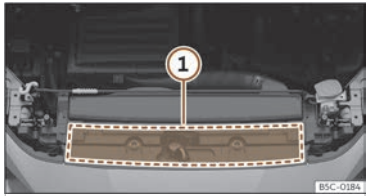


Fig. 234 In the engine compartment: area where the engine oil label is located

Key to ››› **Fig. 233**:

Ⓐ Information about the engine oil standard.

Ⓑ Information about engine oil viscosity.

The engine comes with a special, multi-grade oil that can be used all year round.

Because the use of high-quality oil is essential for the correct operation of the engine and its long useful life, when topping up or changing oil, use only those oils that comply with VW standards.

For vehicles with an engine oil label

If the engine oil has to be topped up, use one of the oils shown on the label ››› **Fig. 233**. The label with the prescribed standard is located at the front of the engine compartment ››› **Fig. 234** ①. If you use the recommended engine oil, you can top up the oil as often as necessary.

For vehicles without an engine oil label

Go to a specialised workshop, a specialised CUPRA dealer or SEAT Official Service to get information on the corresponding standard.

If the engine oil level is too low

If the recommended engine oil is not available, **in the event of an emergency** you can change the oil **once** with a maximum of 0.5 l of the next oil until the next oil change:

- *Petrol engines:* standard VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API SN or IL-SAC GF-6A.
- *Diesel engines:* standard VW 507 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4 or API CK-4.

CUPRA recommends changing the oil at a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service.

NOTICE

CUPRA recommends the use of engine oils approved according to the appropriate VW standard. Use of engine oils that do not meet these quality requirements can cause engine damage.

CUPRA recommends the use of Original SEAT Spare Part engine oils.

Engine oil additives

No type of additive should be mixed with the engine oil. The deterioration caused by these additives is not covered by the warranty.

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. For this reason the engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when filling the tank and before a journey.

NOTICE

0.5 l of engine oil of one of the indicated engine oil standards may be used, only in the event of an emergency and in exceptional cases.

NOTICE

Take the following into account if you have refilled with an engine oil different to those specified in the aforementioned standards, or by your SEAT technical service centre:

- There is no way of completely avoiding the danger of causing damage to the engine and particulate filter.
- You can continue driving with the vehicle if the refill was no more than 0.5 l of engine oil. Go to a specialised workshop as soon as possible and request an oil change. Otherwise, there is a danger of engine damage.
- If you have topped up more than 0.5 l of engine oil, drive with the engine at low load levels and within the medium RPM range as a maximum. Do not drive at more than 80 km/h and do not travel more than 300 km (approximately). Go to a specialised workshop as soon as possible and request an oil change. Otherwise, there is a danger of engine damage.
- You are responsible for the risk of possible damage to the vehicle (engine, exhaust system). If in doubt, do not start the engine and request assistance from the technical service centre.
- Do not start the engine if you have topped up with a fluid other than engine oil. Request assistance from the technical service centre. Danger of engine damage!

Note

Before a long trip, we recommend finding an engine oil that conforms to the corresponding VW specifications and recommend keeping it in the vehicle. This way, the correct engine oil will always be available for a top-up if needed.

- If the label showing the engine oil specifications is missing >>> Fig. 233, please contact a specialist workshop.

Checking and topping up the engine oil level

Checking the oil level in vehicles with a dipstick

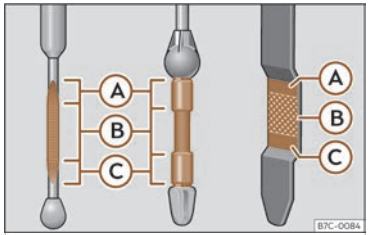


Fig. 235 Engine oil dipstick.

Ⓐ Do not top up oil in any case.

Ⓑ You can add oil but keep the level in that zone.

Ⓒ The oil level is too low. Add oil up to zone Ⓑ.

Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings >>> page 352, *Working in the engine compartment*.

The engine oil dipstick indicates the level of the oil.

- Park the vehicle in a horizontal position.
- Briefly run the engine at idle speed until the operating temperature is reached and then stop.
- Wait for about two minutes.
- Locate the oil level dipstick. It can be recognized by its coloured upper end.
- Pull out the dipstick. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.
- Then pull it out again and check the oil level >>> Fig. 235. Top up with engine oil if necessary.

The oil should leave a mark between the areas Ⓐ and Ⓒ. It must never exceed zone Ⓐ.

Checking the oil level on the digital display on vehicles without a dipstick

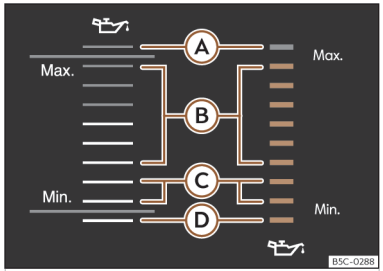


Fig. 236 On the infotainment system screen: possible engine oil level indicator displays.

Ⓐ Do not top up engine oil

Ⓑ Engine oil level in normal range.

Ⓒ Engine oil level low, engine oil must be topped up.

Ⓓ Engine oil level very low, engine oil needs to be topped up.

To check the oil level on the information screen, the following steps must be followed:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Select the menu: **Vehicle > Status > Oil level**.

Possible actions after reading the oil level on the information screen >>> Fig. 236:

Ⓐ Do not top up engine oil, do not start the engine and seek professional assistance.

Ⓑ Oil level correct.

Ⓒ Oil level low, engine oil must be topped up.

Ⓓ Oil level below minimum, engine oil must be topped up.

If the oil level is in the lower area of Ⓑ or in the area Ⓒ, it can be topped up to half of the area Ⓑ (approx. 0.5 l). Or follow the instructions on the information screen.

Topping up engine oil

Fig. 237 Oil filler cap cover in the engine compartment.

- Locate the engine oil filler cap. It can be recognized by the symbol on the cover >>> Fig. 237.
- Unscrew cap from the oil filler mouth >>> Fig. 237.
- Carefully add oil in small quantities (no more than 0.5 l).
- To avoid adding too much oil, whenever you add a certain amount, wait about 2 minutes and recheck the oil level >>> page 363.
- If necessary, add some more oil.
- When the oil level reaches at least zone >>> Fig. 235 Ⓑ, carefully screw on the engine oil filler cap >>> ⓘ.

Engine oil specification >>> page 362.

⚠ WARNING

Any work carried out in the engine compartment or on the engine must be carried out cautiously.

- **When working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety warnings** **>>> page 352**.

⚠ WARNING

Oil is highly inflammable! Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the oil level is above zone Ⓐ, do not start the engine. This could result in damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Contact a Technical Service.

For the sake of the environment

Under no circumstances should the oil level be above zone Ⓐ. Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and leak into the atmosphere via the exhaust system.

Note

Before a long trip, we recommend finding an engine oil that conforms to the corresponding VW specifications and recommend keeping it in the vehicle. This way, the correct engine oil will always be available for a top-up if needed.

Engine oil change

We recommend that you have the engine oil changed by a Technical Service.

WARNING

Only change the engine oil yourself if you have the specialist knowledge required!

- Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings >>> page 352.
- Wait for the engine to cool down. Hot oil may cause burn injuries.
- Wear eye protection to avoid injuries, such as acid burns, caused by splashes of oil.
- When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, keep your arm horizontal to help prevent oil from running down your arm.
- Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous! Used oil must be stored in a safe place out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

No additives should be used with engine oil. This could result in engine damage. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

For the sake of the environment

- We recommend that you change the engine oil and the filter at a technical service centre.
- Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
- Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It must be large enough to hold all the engine oil.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low.

The indicator lamp lights up red.

Do not carry on driving! Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level.

- If this warning lamp starts to flash, and is accompanied by **three audible warnings**, switch off the engine and check the oil level. If necessary, add more oil >>> page 363.
- If the warning lamp flashes although the oil level is correct, **stop driving**. Do not even run the engine at idle speed! Seek professional assistance.

Engine oil level very low.

The warning lamp flashes red and a message is shown on the dash panel: “ Add engine oil now”

Do not carry on driving! This could result in engine damage.

1. Safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible.
2. Stop the engine.
3. Check the oil level >>> page 363.
4. If necessary, add engine oil gradually in small quantities, do not exceed a total of 0.5 l and observe the filling indications on the instrument cluster display.

If the warning lamp is lit up even if the oil level is correct, do not continue driving. Engine damage may occur. Seek assistance from the technical service.

Engine oil level too low

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

- Check the engine oil level as soon as possible >>> page 363.
- Change the oil as soon as you have the opportunity to do so.

Engine oil level too high

The warning lamp lights up yellow and a message is shown on the dash panel.

- Safely stop the vehicle as soon as possible.
- Stop the engine.
- Check the oil level >>> page 363.
- If the oil level is too high, do not continue driving or leave the engine running. Engine damage may occur. Seek assistance from the technical service.

Oil level sensor fault

The control lamp flashes yellow.

- Have the check done by a specialised workshop.
- Until then it is advisable to check the oil level every time you refuel.

12-volt battery

Introduction

The 12 volt battery is located in the engine compartment or in the luggage compartment (PHEV[1]) hybrid vehicles). The 12 volt battery is checked and, if necessary, replaced as part of maintenance work.

All work on batteries requires specialist knowledge. Please refer to a specialised CUPRA Service, SEAT Official Service or a workshop specialising in batteries: risk of burns or exploding battery!

The battery must not be opened! Never try to change the fluid level of the battery. Otherwise explosive gas is released from the battery that could cause an explosion.

Battery warning indications

Wear protective goggles.

Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Wear protective gloves and eye protection. Rinse any splashes of electrolyte with plenty of water.

Fires, sparks, open flames and smoking are prohibited.

The battery should only be charged in a well-ventilated zone. Risk of explosion!

Keep children away from acid and the battery.

Always follow the instruction manual.

Automatic shutdown for electrical consumers

After the vehicle's drive system is deactivated, the 12 volt battery may reach a low charge state if the vehicle stands for a long time, electrical consumers are used or the outside temperature is very low.

To ensure the drive system can be activated, the smart energy-management system may automatically apply the following measures when battery charge is low:

- The output of the largest electrical consumers is limited, or switched off completely if necessary, and online functions will no longer be available.
- Power supply to the 12 volt socket may be briefly interrupted when the drive system is started.

[1] And version VZ5.

⚠ WARNING

Working on the 12-volt battery and electrical system can cause severe burns, fire and electric shock. Always read and observe the following warnings and safety precautions before working on the battery:

- Before working on the 12-volt battery, switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.
- Always keep children away from the 12-volt battery electrolyte and the battery itself.
- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- The battery electrolyte is very corrosive. It can cause skin burns and blindness. When handling the 12-volt battery, protect your hands, arms and face in particular from acid splashes
- Do not smoke while working and never work in the vicinity of naked flames or sparks.
- Avoid sparks caused by electrostatic discharges, such as when handling electric cables and devices.
- Never short the battery terminals.
- Never use damaged 12-volt batteries. They could explode. If the 12-volt battery is damaged, replace it immediately.
- Never use a frozen 12 volt battery. When the battery is discharged, it may freeze at temperatures close to 0°C (+32 °F). If the 12-volt battery is frozen, replace it immediately.

NOTICE

Do not expose the 12-volt battery to direct sunlight for a prolonged period of time.

- Ultraviolet rays can damage the battery casing.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is not to be used for a long period of time, protect the 12-volt battery from frost.

- The battery may freeze and, as a result, suffer irreparable damage.

Note

After starting the engine with a deeply discharged or newly replaced 12-volt battery, or after a jump start, some system settings (time, date, personalised comfort settings and programs) may be incorrectly set or deleted. Check and correct these settings once the battery is sufficiently charged.

Note

During the winter, the starting power may be reduced, and if necessary, the battery should be charged.

Check the electrolyte level

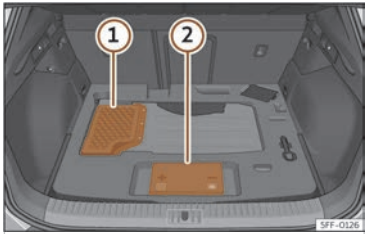


Fig. 238 Location of the battery in the luggage compartment.

① Location of the battery in hybrid vehicles (PHEV).

② Location of the battery in version VZ5.

Access to the 12 volt battery

The 12 volt battery is in the engine compartment (conventional vehicles) or beneath the luggage-compartment floor (PHEV hybrids and VZ5 versions).

Valid for conventional and Mild Hybrid vehicles:

- Raise the bonnet ››› ⚠ in *Working in the engine compartment* on page 352.
- Lift the cover that protects the front of the battery.

Valid for hybrid vehicles (PHEV) and VZ5 versions:

- Open the luggage compartment.
- Raise the floor of the luggage compartment >>> page 313 to gain access to the 12 volt battery.
- You must use a suitable tool to open and close the battery cover (1).

Check the level

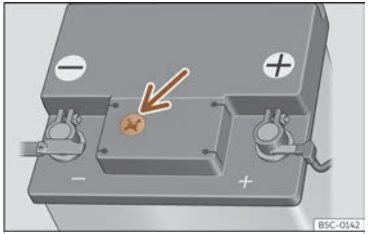


Fig. 239 Sight glass on the top of the 12 volt battery (schematic representation).

The electrolyte level should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older batteries.

- Check the colour display in the sight glass on the top of the battery >>> **Fig. 239**.
- If there are air bubbles in the window, tap the window gently until they disperse.

The "magic eye" indicator, located on the top of the battery changes colour, depending on the charge state and electrolyte level of the battery.

There are two different colours:

Yellow or colourless: The battery's electrolyte level is too low. Go to a specialised workshop to have the battery checked and replaced if necessary.

Black: The battery's electrolyte level is correct.

Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the 12-volt battery

If you suspect that the 12-volt battery is damaged or defective, have it checked by a qualified specialist workshop.

Charging the 12-volt battery

Contact a specialist workshop for charging the 12-volt battery, as the battery model fitted in the vehicle in the factory uses a technology that requires limited voltage charging >>> ⚠. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

Replacing the 12-volt battery

The 12-volt vehicle battery has been designed to suit its location and has special safety features. If a 12-volt battery needs to be replaced, the replacement battery must be installed by a qualified technician. CUPRA recommends that you visit a CUPRA dealer. Component information regarding size, maintenance, power and safety characteristics to be met can be obtained from a qualified technician, who should have the necessary documentation and technical equipment. CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

The degassing hole of the 12-volt battery must always be on side of the negative pole. The degassing hole on the side of the positive pole must always be sealed.

Only use maintenance-free 12-volt batteries that comply with the TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 standards. These standards must be dated October 2014 or later.

The 12-volt battery must always be replaced by a qualified technician, as the vehicle's electronic system must also be adjusted as part of the replacement. In addition, the battery parameters relating to operational safety can only be determined with the original battery. Only a qualified technician has both access to the right technology to make the adjustment and the correct replacement batteries.

NOTICE

The use of batteries that do not meet CUPRA's quality specifications, or with a capacity lower than that fitted as standard, could, depending on the local legislation in each country, lead to the loss of approval or the corresponding administrative permits for the vehicle. In addition, it may pose a serious safety risk.

Vehicles with Start-Stop functions (>>> page 179) are fitted with a special battery. Therefore, it must only be replaced with a battery of the same specifications.

Disconnecting the 12-volt battery

If the 12-volt battery is to be disconnected from the vehicle's electrical system, please note the following:

- Switch off all electrical consumers.
- Before disconnecting the battery, unlock the vehicle, otherwise the alarm will be triggered.
- First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable >>> ⚠.

Connecting the 12-volt battery

- Switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
- First reconnect the positive cable and then the negative one >>> ⚠.

After connecting the 12-volt battery and switching on the ignition, several control lamps may light up. These lamps go out after a short distance at a speed of approx. 15 to 20 km/h (10 to 12 mph). If the warning lights do not go out, visit a specialist workshop and have the vehicle checked.

If the 12-volt battery has been disconnected for a long period of time, it is likely that the next service will not be correctly indicated or calculated >>> page 16 . In this case it will be necessary to take into account the maximum permitted maintenance intervals >>> page 392.

Vehicles with a "Keyless Access" system >>> page 101: If the ignition cannot be switched on after connecting the 12-volt battery, lock and unlock the vehicle from the outside. Then try to switch on the ignition again. If the ignition does not work, seek professional assistance.

WARNING

Attaching the 12-volt battery incorrectly or using unsuitable batteries may result in short circuits, fire and serious injury.

- **Use only maintenance-free 12 volt batteries with an anti-spill system with the same properties, specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted battery.**

WARNING

Charging the 12-volt battery creates a highly explosive mixture of detonating gases.

- **Only charge the 12-volt battery in a well-ventilated place.**
- **Never charge a 12-volt battery that is frozen or has thawed. When the battery is discharged, it may freeze at temperatures close to 0°C (+32°F).**
- **If the 12-volt battery has frozen, have it replaced without fail.**
- **A short circuit may occur if the wires are incorrectly connected to the poles. First connect the positive cable and then the negative one.**

NOTICE

- **Never connect or disconnect the 12-volt battery when the ignition is switched on or the engine is running. Also, never use a 12-volt battery that does not meet the vehicle's battery specifications. The electrical system or certain electronic components could be damaged and electrical malfunctions could occur.**
- **Never connect accessories that supply power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to the 12-volt socket or cigarette lighter, to charge the 12-volt battery. This could damage the vehicle's electrical system.**

For the sake of the environment

- **The battery may contain toxic substances, such as sulphuric acid and lead. Dispose of the 12-volt battery in accordance with the applicable regulations.**
- **Electrolyte can contaminate the environment. If any operating fluid leaks out, collect it and dispose of it properly.**

Troubleshooting

12-volt battery

The control lamp lights up in **RED**.

The following message is displayed:

Error: 12-V power supply. Park safely! Please refer to the instruction manual.

Stop driving! Stop the vehicle at the first opportunity and in a safe place. The 12-volt battery is not recharging while the vehicle is in motion and has a critical charge level, or there is a fault in the on-board 12-volt network.

- Switch off the ignition and any electrical consumers that are not required.
- Contact a specialised workshop.
- Request a check of the electrical system.

12-volt battery

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**.

The following message is displayed:

The 12-V battery is not charged. You may only continue driving with limitations.

The vehicle battery stops charging while driving As the battery gradually discharges, switch off all electrical devices that are not essential.

Due to this fault, you will only be able to drive for a limited period of time. Once this time has elapsed, a red warning lamp will be displayed. Drive with caution.

- Have the electrical system checked by a qualified workshop.

12-volt battery

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

Error: 12 V battery. Restart impossible. Go to the workshop.

There is a fault in the connection between the on-board network and the 12-volt battery.

If the drive system is switched off in this situation, it cannot be switched on again. If necessary, use the jump leads >>> page 340 or seek assistance from qualified personnel.

- Contact a specialised workshop.
- Request a check of the electrical system.

12-volt battery

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

12-V battery charge low. Please refer to the instruction manual.

Starting capability may be limited and may not be able to start the drive system. If the drive system can be started, charge while driving. If this driver message goes out after a certain amount of time, the vehicle's battery has recharged while driving and reached a sufficient level. If the driver message does not go out, take the vehicle to a specialized workshop.

12-volt battery

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

12-V power supply limited. Drive with extra caution.

The 12-volt power supply is limited because the 12V battery is discharged or not working at full performance, for example due to very cold outside temperatures. The 12-volt battery can be charged while driving. Until the warning disappears, you should drive with care.

12-volt battery

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. One of the following messages is displayed:

Error: 12-V supply. Please visit workshop.

Error: 12-V battery. Please visit workshop.

There is a fault in the 12-volt power supply:

- Contact a specialised workshop.
- Have the electrical system checked.

12-volt battery

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

The 12V battery is being discharged. Switch on the engine.

With the engine off, this message may appear a few seconds after turning on the ignition. However, this is normal. It simply alerts you that the 12-volt battery is discharging. As soon as the engine is started, the lamp will switch off.

48-volt battery

General information

✓ Valid for: Mild Hybrid vehicles (MHEV)

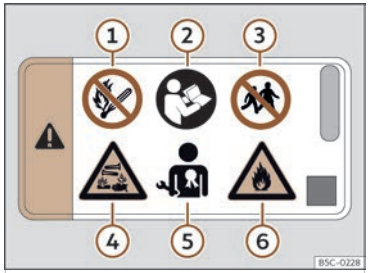


Fig. 240 48-volt battery: hazard warning

1. Never expose the 48 volt battery to sources of fire, sparks or unprotected flames.
2. The instruction manual and the workshop documentation contain further information and warnings in this regard.
3. Always keep children away from the 48 volt battery.
4. If the 48-volt battery is damaged, fluid can leak and very corrosive acids can form. The battery should only be handled by qualified personnel.
5. All maintenance works involving the 48 volt battery should only be performed by duly qualified and trained technical staff .
6. Take care when handling flammable substances.

In addition to a 12-volt battery, the vehicle may be fitted with a 48-volt battery located underneath the front passenger seat.

The works that are to be carried out on the 48 volt battery should be performed exclusively by a specialised workshop with duly qualified technical staff, trained according to CUPRA guidelines.

Overview of the 48 volt system

The 48 volt system consists of the following components, among others:

- 48-volt battery
- 12V/48V voltage converter
- 48 volt alternator/starter motor
- Purple 48 volt cables

48 volt battery warnings

There is a hazard warning sign on the 48 volt battery ››› **Fig. 240**.

⚠ WARNING

Inappropriate handling of the 48 volt battery can cause serious injuries or death.

- **All maintenance works involving the 48 volt battery should only be performed by duly qualified and trained technical staff .**
- **Never make any changes to the 48 volt battery.**

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the 48 volt battery does not come into contact with water or other fluids.

- **Liquids may cause short circuits, electrical shocks and burns.**

Troubleshooting

✓ Valid for: Mild Hybrid vehicles

Control lamps and driver messages on the instrument cluster display or infotainment system:

48-volt battery

The indicator lamp lights up **red**. The following message is displayed:

Battery: Risk of fire! Stop safely and get out quickly. Call the emergency services.

The 48V battery temperature is too high ⚠.

If this message is displayed on the instrument cluster, follow the steps below:

- STOP **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle immediately, taking into account the traffic situation.
- Choose a safe place outdoors, away from buildings or vehicles, canopies, covered car parks or similar places.
- If possible, switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure it is immobilised (parking brake, parking lock **P**).
- Switch off the ignition and leave the ignition key on the dash panel or in a visible place so that the emergency services can use it (for example to recover the vehicle from a hazardous area).
- Exit the vehicle and make sure that there are no other people or animals left inside.
- Make sure that you leave the danger zone together with all other vehicle occupants and that everyone remains in an area that is protected from traffic (e.g. behind the guard rail).
- Notify the emergency services.

48-volt battery

The indicator lamp lights up **red** while driving. The following message is displayed:

Error: 48V power supply. Stop safely! Please refer to the instruction manual.

There is a error in the 48V power supply.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Stop the engine and turn off the ignition.
3. Wait for a few seconds.
4. Switch ignition back on.
5. Start the engine.

If the lamp remains on, seek professional assistance. CUPRA recommends going to a CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this.

48-volt battery

When the vehicle is stopped, the warning lamp lights up **yellow** and the following message is displayed:

Error: 48V power supply. Do not start driving. Please refer to the instruction manual.

There is a error in the 48V power supply.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Stop the engine and turn off the ignition.
3. Wait for a few seconds.
4. Switch ignition back on.
5. Start the engine.

If the lamp remains on, seek professional assistance. CUPRA recommends going to a CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this.

48-volt battery

When the vehicle is stopped, the warning lamp lights up **yellow** and the following message is displayed:

48V battery charge low. Start the engine or refer to the owner's manual.

48V Battery state of charge warning.

1. Start the engine.
2. Stand in a safe place and leave the engine running for a few minutes.

If the lamp remains on, seek professional assistance. CUPRA recommends going to a CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this.

If the engine cannot be started:

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Use the **Jump start** ››› page 340.

If the vehicle still won't start, seek professional assistance. CUPRA recommends going to a CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this.

Energy management

Optimisation of the starting capacity

Energy management controls the electrical power distribution so that there is always enough electrical power to start the engine.

If a vehicle with a conventional energy system remains stationary for a long period of time, the electrical devices, for example in the electronic ignition lock, discharge the battery. Under certain circumstances, this can lead to a lack of electrical power to start the engine.

In your vehicle, a smart energy management system is responsible for distributing the electrical energy. This clearly improves the starting performance and service life of the battery.

The main functions incorporated in the power management system are **battery diagnosis**, **residual current management** and a **dynamic power management system**.

Battery diagnostics

Battery diagnostics determine the status of the battery on an ongoing basis. The battery voltage, current and temperature are monitored for this purpose. This is used to determine the battery's charge level and efficiency.

Residual current management system

The residual current management reduces energy consumption while the vehicle is stationary. When the ignition is switched off, it manages the power supply to the various electrical devices. In doing so, it takes into account the battery diagnostic data.

With the ignition on and depending on the battery's charge level, it disconnects electrical devices one after the other to avoid over-discharging the battery and to maintain starting capacity.

Dynamic energy management system

Energy generated while driving is distributed by the dynamic energy management system to the electrical devices according to their energy requirements. It also ensures that no more energy is consumed than is generated, thus ensuring an optimal battery charge level.

Note

- **The energy management system cannot override the limits imposed by the laws of physics. Please note that the capacity and service life of the battery are limited.**
- **When there is a risk that the vehicle will not start, the low battery charge level warning lamp will be shown** ››› page 370.

Discharged battery

Maintaining starting capacity has top priority. Battery strain is considerable on short journeys, city driving and in the cold season of the year.

In these situations, a lot of energy is required but very little is generated. If the engine is stopped and at the same time the electrical devices are switched on, the battery can become discharged to a critical point. In this case energy is consumed without being generated at the same time.

In these situations you will notice that the energy regulation system performs active energy distribution adjustments.

Vehicle stationary for a long period of time

If you do not drive the vehicle for a few days or weeks, adjustments will be made to reduce consumption or the electrical devices will be deactivated one by one. This reduces energy consumption and the starting capacity is maintained for longer. Some convenience functions may not be available under certain circumstances. The convenience functions will be available again when the ignition is switched on and the engine is started.

With the engine stopped

If you listen to the radio, for example, while the engine is stopped, the battery will be discharged.

If the energy consumption means there is a risk that the engine will not start, a text will be displayed in vehicles with a driver information system.

This driver message indicates that the engine must be started to recharge the battery.

With the engine running

The battery may discharge despite the fact that energy is being generated while the vehicle is in motion. This is particularly the case if too little energy is generated and too much is consumed at a time while the battery's level of charge is not optimal.

To restore the energy balance, the devices that consume the most energy are either temporarily adjusted or deactivated. Heating systems, in particular, consume a lot of energy. If you notice, for instance, that the seat heating or the rear window heater is not working, they may have been temporarily switched off or regulated to a lower heat output. These systems can be used again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.

If necessary, you may also notice a slight idling speed boost. However, this is normal and should not cause you any concern. Boosting the idling speed generates additional energy and charges the battery.

Wheels and tyres

Important information about wheels and tyres

General notes

- When driving with **new tyres**, be especially careful during the first 600 km (300 miles).
- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the obstacle.
- Check from time to time if the tyres are damaged (punctures, cuts, cracks or dents). Remove any foreign objects embedded in the treads.
- Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately.
- Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- Replace any missing valve caps as soon as possible.
- Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when put back.
- When removed, the wheels or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

Low profile tyres

Low profile tyres have a wider tread, a larger wheel diameter and a lower sidewall height. This results in more agile driving behaviour.

Low profile tyres may deteriorate more quickly than standard tyres, for instance due to heavy impacts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. Correct tyre pressure is very important ››› page 377.

To avoid damage to tyres and wheels, drive with special care when driving on roads in poor condition.

Visually check your wheels every 3000 km.

If the tyres or rims have received a heavy impact or have been damaged, have a specialised workshop check whether or not it is necessary to change the tyre.

Low profile tyres may deteriorate more quickly than standard tyres.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual **vibration** or the car **pulling to one side**, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce speed immediately if there is any reason to suspect that damage may have occurred. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialised workshop and have the car inspected.

Foreign objects inserted in the tyre

- Do not remove foreign bodies if they have penetrated through the tyre wall!
- If the vehicle comes with a tyre mobility system, where necessary seal the damaged tyre as shown in section ››› page 389.

Use a specialised workshop for repair or replacement. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

The sealant inside the tyre tread wraps around the foreign body and provisionally seals the tyre.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the rotation direction on directional tyres. Always note the rotation direction indicated when mounting the wheel. This makes sure that optimal use is made of tyre properties in terms of aquaplaning, grip, excessive noise and wear.

Retrofitting of accessories

If you wish to change or fit wheels, rims or wheel trims, we recommend that you consult with a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service centre for advice regarding current technical recommendations.

Speed symbols

The speed rating indicates the maximum speed permitted for the tyres.

P	max. 150 km/h (93 mph)
Q	max. 160 km/h (99 mph)
R	max. 170 km/h (106 mph)
S	max. 180 km/h (112 mph)
T	max. 190 km/h (118 mph)
U	max. 200 km/h (124 mph)
H	max. 210 km/h (130 mph)
V	max. 240 km/h (149 mph)
Z	max. 240 km/h (149 mph)
W	max. 270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	max. 300 km/h (186 mph)

⚠ WARNING

- **New tyres do not have maximum grip during the first 600 km. Drive particularly carefully to avoid possible accidents.**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **If you notice unusual vibrations or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and check the tyres.**
- **Never use old tyres or those with an unknown history of use.**

New wheels and tyres

It is best to have all wheels and tyres serviced by a specialised workshop. There they have the required knowledge, the special tools and the corresponding spare parts.

- Even winter tyres lose their grip on ice. If you have installed new tyres, drive the first 600 km carefully and at a moderate speed.
- All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and, if possible, tread pattern.
- When changing tyres, do not change just one; change at least two on the same axle.
- If you want to equip your vehicle with a combination of tyres and rims that are different to those fitted in the factory, inform your specialised workshop before purchasing them

The sizes of the rims and tyres approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle documentation (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document). The vehicle documentation varies depending on the country of residence.

If the type of spare wheel is different form the normal wheels — e.g. in the case of winter tyres or particularly wide tyres — the spare wheel should only be used temporarily in the event of a puncture, and the vehicle should be driven with care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as possible.

In vehicles with four-wheel drive, the 4 wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same brand, type and tread so that the traction system is not damaged by a difference in the number of turns of the wheels. Therefore, in the event of a puncture, only a spare wheel with the same perimeter as normal tyres should be used.

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tyre sidewall (or on the inside face of the wheel):

DOT ... 2220 ...

this means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 22nd week of 2020.

⚠ WARNING

- **Use only combinations of tyres and rims, as well as suitable wheel nuts, approved by CUPRA. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged, causing an accident.**
- **For technical reasons it is not possible to use wheels of other vehicles; in some cases not even wheels from the same vehicle model should be used.**
- **Always ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre, since the nominal tyre size can differ significantly depending on the manufacturer. Lack of clearance can damage the tyres or the vehicle and, as a result, endanger road safety. Accident hazard!**

- Only use tyres that are over 6 years old in an emergency, and drive with due care.
- The fitting of tyres with run-flat properties is not permitted on your vehicle! Prohibited use can cause accidents or can damage your vehicle.
- If decorative hubcaps are retrofitted, make sure that they allow enough air in to cool the braking system. Accident hazard!
- Models with aerodynamic wheel rims and/or with bolt-on plastic elements (more enclosed design) increase the likelihood of ice and snow accumulating on the inside. This should be taken into account, depending on the driving situations, as snow or ice accumulated in the wheels can cause vibration in the vehicle when it drives at over 40 km/h. It is advisable to remove ice and snow from the inside of the wheels using hot water.
- If you drive on dirt or gravel tracks, the likelihood of stones becoming trapped inside wheel rims with plastic elements increases when driving at high speed or in a sporty manner. If you see that there are stones trapped between the aluminium wheel rim and the insert, you can attempt to remove them using pressurised water.

For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of according to each country's laws.

Note

- A CUPRA Service Centre should be consulted to find out whether wheels or tyres of different sizes to those originally fitted by CUPRA can be fitted, and to find out about the combinations allowed between the front axle (axle 1) and the rear axle (axle 2).
- Never mount used tyres if you are not sure of their "previous history".

Tyre life

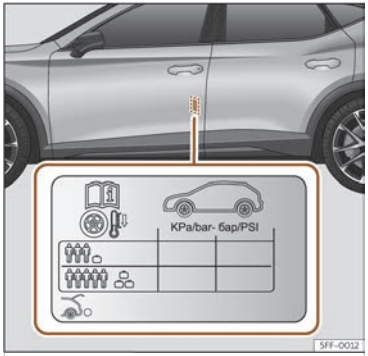


Fig. 241 Location of the tyre pressure sticker.

Correct inflation pressures and sensible driving habits will increase the useful life of your tyres.

- Check tyre pressure at least once a month, and also prior to any long trip.
- The tyre pressure should only be checked when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the pressure of warm tyres.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the load being carried by the vehicle ››› **Fig. 241**.
- In vehicles with a tyre pressure indicator, save the modified tyre pressure ››› **page 386**.
- Avoid fast cornering and hard acceleration.
- Inspect the tyres for irregular wear from time to time.

Tyre pressure

The tyre pressure values are shown on the sticker located on the rear frame of the front left door ››› **Fig. 241**.

Insufficient or excessive pressure greatly reduces the useful life of the tyres and adversely affects vehicle performance and ride. Correct inflation pressures are very important, especially at **high speeds**.

The tyre pressure must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying. If the vehicle is going to be fully loaded, increase the tyre pressure to the maximum load value shown on the sticker ››› **Fig. 241**.

Do not forget the spare wheel when checking the tyre pressures: Keep this spare wheel inflated to the highest pressure required for the road wheels.

In the case of a minimised temporary spare wheel (125/70 R16 or 125/70 R18) inflate to a pressure of 4.2 bar as indicated on the tyre pressure label >>> Fig. 241.

Driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking (squealing tyres) all increase tyre wear.

Wheel balance

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, certain circumstances may lead to imbalance (run-out), which is detected as vibrations in the steering wheel.

Unbalanced wheels should be rebalanced, as they otherwise cause excessive wear on steering, suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted or if a tyre is repaired.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect running gear alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If you notice excessive tyre wear, you should check wheel alignment at a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable handling of the wheels and tyres may lead to sudden tyre pressure losses, tread separation or even a blow-out.

- **The driver is responsible for ensuring that all of the vehicle tyres are correctly inflated to the right pressure. The recommended tyre pressure is indicated on the label >>> Fig. 241.**
- **Check tyre pressures regularly and ensure they are kept at the indicated pressures. Tyre pressure that is too low could cause overheating, resulting in tread detachment or even burst tyres.**
- **Tyre pressure should be as indicated on the label when the tyres are cold at all times >>> Fig. 241.**
- **Regularly check the cold inflation pressure of the tyres. If necessary, change the tyre pressure of the vehicle tyres while they are cold.**
- **Regularly check your tyres for damage and wear.**
- **Never exceed the speed limit or loads specified for the type of tyre fitted on your vehicle.**

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption.

Tread wear indicators

Fig. 242 Tyre profile: tread wear indicators.

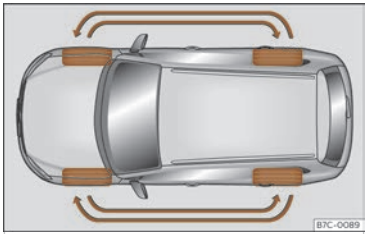


Fig. 243 Swapping tyres.

Wear indicators around 1.6 mm high can be found on the base of the original tyre treads, ordered at regular intervals and running across the tread >>> Fig. 242. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the sidewall of the tyre mark the position of the wear indicators.

The minimum permitted profile depth [1] have been reached when the tyres have worn down to the wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ››› ⚠.

With a sporty driving style, check the tread depth every 5,000 / 10,000 km (3,000 / 6,000 mi). When checking the tread depth, check the wear indicators in all the tyre grooves.

Changing wheels around

In order to wear the wheels in a uniform manner, it is recommended to swap them regularly according to the diagram ››› **Fig. 243**. The useful life of all the tyres will then be about the same time.

⚠ WARNING

The tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident.

- **Particularly in difficult driving conditions such as wet or icy roads. It is important that the tyre tread be as deep as possible and be approximately the same on the tyres of both the front and the rear axles.**
- **Lower driving safety due to insufficient tread depth is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of "aquaplaning" in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners, and braking is also adversely affected.**
- **The speed has to be adapted accordingly, otherwise there is a risk of losing control over the vehicle.**

Wheel nuts

The **wheel nuts** and rims have been designed to be part of an assembly. When installing different wheels (for instance alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres) it is important to use the correct wheel nuts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

The wheel nuts must be clean and turn easily.

A special adapter is required to turn the anti-theft wheel nuts ››› **page 383**.

⚠ WARNING

Wheel nuts should never be greased or oiled.

- **Use only wheel nuts which belong to the wheel.**
- **If the required torque of the wheel nuts is too low, they could loosen whilst the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel nuts and threads can be damaged.**

NOTICE

See ››› page 385 to find out the recommended tightening torque for wheel nuts for alloy rims.

Winter tyres

- Winter tyres must be fitted **on all four** wheels.
- Only use winter tyres that are approved for your vehicle.
- Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres.
- Also note that winter tyres are no longer effective when the **tread** is worn down.
- After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures. When doing so, take into account the correct tyre pressures listed on the rear of the front left door frame ››› **page 377**.

In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve vehicle handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow. This applies particularly to vehicles equipped with **wide section tyres** or with **high speed tyres** (code letters H, V or Y on the sidewall).

[1] Follow the regulations of the country you are driving in.

Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle. The sizes of these tyres are specified in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC[1]). The vehicle documentation varies depending on the country of residence.

Winter tyres lose a great deal of their properties when the **tread** is worn down to a depth of 4 mm.

The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by **ageing**, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

A code letter indicating the speed limit is stamped on all winter tyres ››› page 375.

In the infotainment system's **Vehicle settings** menu, a speed warning can be set in the **Tyres** menu.

Vehicles capable of exceeding these speeds must have an appropriate **sticker** attached so that it is visible to the driver. Suitable stickers are available at specialised CUPRA Services, SEAT Official Service centres and specialised workshops. Please note the regulations to this effect in your country.

"All-weather" tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres.

Using winter tyres with a V-rating

Please note that the generally applicable 240 km/h (149 mph) speed for winter tyres with the letter V is subject to **technical restrictions; the maximum permissible speed for your vehicle may be significantly lower**. The maximum speed limit for these tyres depends directly on the maximum axle weights for your car and on the listed weight rating of the tyres being used.

It is best to contact a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service to check the maximum speed which is permissible for the V-rated tyres fitted on your car on the basis of this information.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum speed permitted for the winter tyres fitted on your car can cause tyre failure, resulting in a loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident.

For the sake of the environment

When winter is over, change back to summer tyres at an appropriate moment. In temperatures above +7°C (+45°F), performance will be improved if summer tyres are used. Rolling noise, wear and energy consumption will all be reduced.

Snow chains

Snow chains **are only permitted on the front wheels**, even on **4-wheel drive** vehicles.

- Check that they are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; correct the position if necessary, in accordance with the manufacturer's fitting instructions.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h (30 mph).
- If there is a danger of being trapped despite having fitted the chains, it is best to disable the traction control (TCS) in the ESC ››› page 196.

Snow chains will improve *braking ability* as well as *traction* in winter conditions.

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains is only permitted on the following rim and tyre combinations:

Tyres	Wheel rim	Chains
215/55 R17	7.5Jx17 ET40	Max. link 15 mm
225/55 R17	7.5Jx17 ET40	Max. link 9 mm
225/50 R18	8x18 ET40	
245/45 R18	8x18 ET40	
245/40 R19	8x19 ET40	
Other dimensions do not allow chains		

[1] COC = *certificate of conformity.*

Remove any central wheel trims before fitting snow chains.

⚠ WARNING

The use of unsuitable or incorrectly fitted chains could lead to serious accidents and damage.

- **Always use appropriate snow chains.**
- **Observe the fitting instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.**
- **Never exceed the speed limits when driving with snow chains.**
- **Before fitting the chains, check that the wheel/tyre combination on the table is the one installed on your vehicle. The combination can also be found on the technical data-sheet.**

ⓘ NOTICE

- **Remove the snow chains to drive on roads without snow. Otherwise they will impair vehicle handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.**
- **Wheel rims may be damaged or scratched if the chains come into direct contact with them. CUPRA recommends the use of coated snow chains.**

Changing a wheel

Introduction

Only change a wheel yourself if you are familiar with the necessary operations and safety measures, if you have the necessary tools and if the vehicle is parked safely.

Preliminary actions

- Stop the vehicle on a level surface and in a safe place, as far away from road traffic as possible.
- Apply the electronic parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- *Manual transmission:* engage 1st gear.
- *Automatic transmission:* switch on the parking lock **P**.
- If towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- Lay out the on-board tools ››› page 338 and the wheel to be changed.
- Follow the legal provisions of each country (reflective vest, warning triangles, light beacon, etc.).
- Get all occupants out of the vehicle and keep them out of the danger zone (e.g. behind the guard rail).

⚠ WARNING

- **Always observe the above steps and protect yourself and other road users.**
- **If you change the wheel on a slope, block the wheel on the opposite side of the car with a stone or similar to prevent the vehicle from moving.**

Location and use of the temporary spare wheel

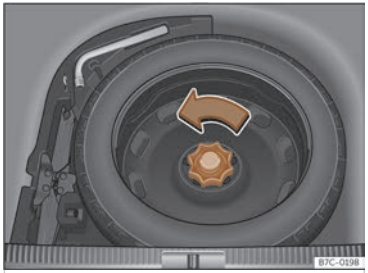


Fig. 244 In the luggage compartment: load floor raised.

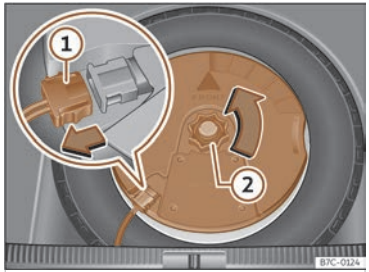


Fig. 245 In the luggage compartment: remove the subwoofer.

The temporary spare wheel is stored under the floor panel in the luggage compartment and is attached by a thumbnut.

The temporary spare wheel has been designed to be used for short periods of time. Have the tyre checked and replaced as soon as possible at a specialised CUPRA Service, SEAT Official Service or at a specialised workshop.

The spare wheel must not be switched for a spare wheel from another vehicle.

Removing the temporary spare wheel

- Lift and hold up the floor panel to remove the temporary spare wheel ››› page 313.
- Turn the thumb wheel anticlockwise ››› Fig. 244.
- Take out the temporary spare wheel.

Getting the spare wheel out of vehicles fitted with the optional sound system (with subwoofer)

To remove the spare wheel, you must first remove the subwoofer.

- *Vehicles without a variable floor in the luggage compartment:* pull the floor of the luggage compartment (carpet) upwards to get it out.
- *Vehicles with a variable luggage compartment floor:* lift and secure the floor storage compartment as explained in ››› page 313.
- Disconnect the subwoofer's speaker cable ››› Fig. 245 ①.
- Turn the securing wheel anti-clockwise ››› Fig. 245 ②.
- Remove the subwoofer speaker and the spare wheel.
- When re-mounting the spare tyre, place the subwoofer on the base of the wheel rim with care. When doing so, the tip of the "FRONT" arrow on the subwoofer should point forward.
- Reconnect the speaker cable and firmly rotate the securing wheel clockwise so that the subwoofer system and wheel are firmly in place.

Chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the temporary spare wheel.

If you have a puncture on one of the front wheels when using snow chains, fit the temporary spare wheel in place of one of the rear wheels. Fit the snow chains on the rear wheel that you have removed and replace the punctured front wheel with this wheel.

⚠ WARNING

- **After fitting the temporary spare wheel, check the tyre pressures as soon as possible. Failure to do so may cause an accident. The tyre pressure is listed on the back of the left front door frame ››› page 377.**
- **Do not drive at over 80 km/h (50 mph) when the temporary spare wheel is fitted on the vehicle: Accident risk!**
- **Never travel more than 200 km using a temporary spare wheel.**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering: Accident risk!**
- **Never use more than one temporary spare wheel at the same time, risk of accident.**
- **No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyre) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel rim.**
- **If you are driving using the spare wheel, the ACC system could automatically switch off during the journey. Switch off the system when starting off.**

Wheel nut caps

Fig. 246 Wheel: wheel nuts with caps.

Removal

- Fit the plastic clip (vehicle tools ››› **Fig. 210**) over the cap until it clicks into place ››› **Fig. 246**.
- Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

The caps protect the wheel nuts and should be remounted after changing the tyre.

The **anti-theft wheel locking bolt** has a special cap. This only fits on anti-theft locking bolts and is not for use with standard wheel nuts.

Anti-theft wheel nuts

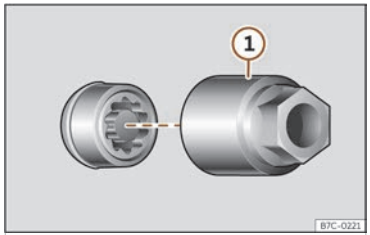


Fig. 247 Anti-theft wheel nut with cap and adapter.

Loosening the anti-theft wheel nut

- Remove the wheel trim or hub cap.
- Insert the special adapter ››› **Fig. 247** ① (vehicle tools ››› **page 338**) onto the anti-theft wheel nut and push it on as far as it will go.
- Insert the wheel wrench (vehicle tools) onto the adapter as far as it will go.
- Remove the wheel nut ››› **page 383**.

Note

Make a note of the code number of the anti-theft wheel nut and keep it in a safe place, but not in your vehicle. If you need a new adapter, you can obtain it from the specialised CUPRA service or the SEAT Official Service, by giving the code number.

Loosening wheel nuts

Fig. 248 Tyre change: loosen the wheel nuts.

Use only the wheel wrench belonging to the car to loosen the wheel nuts.

Loosen the wheel nuts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.

If the wheel nut is very tight, carefully push on the end of the wheel wrench with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip during this operation.

Loosening wheel nuts

- Fit the box spanner into the bolt as far as it will go ››› **Fig. 248**.
- Hold the wrench at the end and rotate the bolt approximately *one* turn anticlockwise ››› ⚠.

Important information about wheel nuts

Factory-fitted rims and wheel nuts are specially matched during construction. Therefore, if different rims are fitted, the correct wheel nuts with the right length and heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you should not even use wheel nuts from vehicles of the same model.

⚠ WARNING

If the wheel nuts are not properly tightened, they could come loose while driving and cause an accident, serious injury and loss of vehicle control.

- **Use only wheel nuts which correspond to the rim in question.**
- **Never use different wheel nuts.**
- **Wheel nuts and threads should be clean, free of oil and grease, and it should be possible to screw them easily.**
- **To loosen and tighten wheel nuts, only use the wheel wrench that came with the car from the factory.**
- **The wheel nuts should only be loosened slightly (about one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack. Risk of accident!**
- **Never apply grease or oil to wheel nuts or to the wheel hub threads. Even if the bolts have been tightened to the required torque, they could come loose while driving.**
- **Never loosen the screwed joints of wheel rims with bolted ring trims.**
- **If wheel nuts are tightened below the required torque, the bolts and rims could come loose while driving. If tightening torque is too high, the wheel nuts or threads can be damaged.**

Raise the vehicle

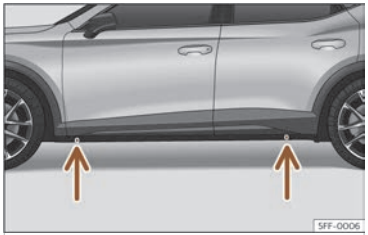


Fig. 249 Jack position points.

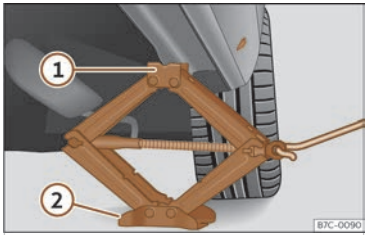


Fig. 250 Crossbar: mounting the jack on the vehicle.

- Rest the jack (vehicles tools) on firm ground. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. If the surface is slippery (for example tiles) place the jack on a rubber mat or similar to prevent it from slipping ››› ⚠.
- Look on the crossbar for the mark of the jack support point (sunken area) closest to the wheel to be changed ››› **Fig. 249**.
- Turn the jack crank handle, located below the crossbar support point, to raise it until the tab ① ››› **Fig. 250** is below the housing that is provided.
- Align the jack so that the tab ① "grips" onto the housing provided on the cross member and the mobile base ② is resting on the ground. The base plate ② should fall vertically with respect to the support point ①.
- Continue turning the jack until the wheel is slightly lifted off the ground.

⚠ WARNING

The factory-supplied jack is only designed for changing wheels on this model. On no account attempt to use it for lifting heavier vehicles or other loads. Risk of injury.

- **Make sure the jack remains stable. If the surface is slippery or soft, the jack could slip or sink, respectively, with the consequent risk of causing injuries.**
- **Lift the vehicle using only the jack supplied from the factory. Other jacks, even those approved for other CUPRA models could slip, with the consequent risk of injury.**
- **Place the jack only at the support points provided on the crossbar and align it. Otherwise, the jack could slip because it does not have sufficient grip on the vehicle. Risk of injury!**
- **You should never place a body limb such as an arm or leg under a raised vehicle that is solely supported by the jack.**
- **If you have to work underneath the vehicle, you must use suitable stands additionally to support the vehicle. Accident risk!.**
- **Never raise the vehicle if it is tilting to one side or the engine is running.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised. The vehicle may come loose from the jack due to the engine vibrations.**

ⓘ NOTICE

- **The vehicle must not be raised on the crossbar. Place the jack only at the support points provided on the crossbar and align it. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.**
- **Any type of load or weight applied to the external trim/door (treading on it, fitting the jack, resting heavy objects, etc.) can cause damage to it. CUPRA accepts no responsibility for any damages caused by improper use of the external trim or body.**

Removing and installing a wheel

Change the wheel after loosening the wheel nuts and raising the vehicle with the jack.

When removing/fitting the wheel, the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. Therefore, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Taking off the wheel

- Unscrew the nuts with the wheel wrench and place them on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

Putting on the spare wheel

Check the rotation direction of the tyre ››› page 386.

- Place the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel into position.
- Screw in the wheel nuts and tighten them a little with the wheel wrench.
- Use the appropriate adapter to tighten the anti-theft wheel nuts.
- Carefully lower the vehicle using the jack.
- Use the wheel wrench to tighten all of the wheel nuts clockwise. Tighten the bolts in diagonal pairs (not in a circle).
- Put the caps, trim or full hubcap back on.

Fitting the minimised spare wheel (depending on the version)

For technical reasons (brake disc size), it may not be possible to fit the minimised spare wheel on the front axle.

In the event of a puncture or damage to a front tyre, follow the instructions below:

1. Remove the rear wheel **on the same side** as the damaged front wheel.
2. Fit the minimised spare wheel on the rear axle.
3. Replace the damaged front wheel with the removed rear wheel.

If necessary, check that the tyre pressures are correct as soon as possible.

Tightening torque of the wheel nuts

The required tightening torque for wheel nuts for alloy rims is **140 Nm**.

After changing a wheel, have the tightening torque checked immediately with a torque wrench that is working perfectly.

The wheel nuts should be clean and turn easily. Before fitting the spare wheel, inspect the wheel condition and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before fitting the wheel.

Before checking the tightening torque, have any rusty wheel nuts that are difficult to screw replaced and clean the wheel hub threads.

Never apply grease or oil to wheel nuts or to the wheel hub threads. Even if the bolts have been tightened to the required torque, they could come loose while driving.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been designed to operate best when rotating in only one direction. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the rotation direction on tyres with directional tread. Always observe the indicated rotation direction in order to guarantee optimum grip and help avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If the tyre is mounted in the opposite rotation direction, drive with extreme caution, as the tyre is no longer being used correctly. This is of particular importance when the road surface is wet. Change the tyre as soon as possible or remount it with the correct rotation direction.

Works after changing a wheel

- Replace the hub caps or wheel nut caps (depending on equipment).
- Return all tools to their proper storage location.
- If the replaced wheel does not fit in the spare wheel housing, store it safely in the luggage compartment ››› page 311.
- Check the tyre pressure of the newly mounted tyre as soon as possible.
- In vehicles fitted with a tyre pressure indicator, adjust the pressure and store it in the memory ››› page 386.
- Have the tightening torque of the wheel nuts checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ››› page 385. Meanwhile, drive carefully.
- Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Tyre pressure monitor system

Tyre pressure monitor indicator

Fig. 251 Instrument cluster: warning of loss of tyre pressure.

The tyre pressure monitoring system compares the individual speeds of each wheel and thus the dynamic radius with the help of the ABS sensors.

If the rolling circumference of one or more wheels has changed, the tyre pressure monitoring indicator will indicate this on the instrument cluster through a warning lamp and a warning to the driver ››› Fig. 251. If only one tyre is affected, its position on the vehicle will be indicated.

(!) Loss of pressure: Check left tyre pressure!

Change in wheel diameter

The wheel diameter changes when:

- Tyre pressure is changed manually.
- The tyre pressure is insufficient.
- The tyre's structure is damaged.
- The vehicle is not level due to a load.
- The wheels on an axle are subject to a heavier load (e.g. with a heavy load).
- The vehicle is fitted with snow chains.
- The temporary spare wheel has been fitted.
- One wheel has been changed on an axle.

There may be a delay in the reaction of the tyre pressure monitoring indicator (!) or it may not indicate anything under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty driving, snow-covered or unpaved roads, or when driving with snow chains).

Calibrate the tyre pressure monitoring indicator

After changing the tyre pressure or replacing one or more wheels, the tyre pressure monitoring indicator must be recalibrated. This should also be done, for example, when swapping the front and rear tyres.

It should be calibrated with the vehicle stopped and its tyres cold. If calibrated while the tyres are hot, the pressure check and calibration procedure should be repeated when cold before the next trip.

- Switch the ignition on.
- Save the new inflation pressure in the infotainment system: function button (⊞) > 🚗 **Vehicle > Exterior > Tyres** ››› page 40.
- **OR:** (⊞) > 🚗 **Vehicle > Status > Tyres**.

After storing the new inflation pressure, a confirmation message will be displayed, the warning light in the instrument cluster will flash briefly and a driver alert tone will be played.

The tyre pressure loss indicator uses the ABS sensors to compare the turns of each wheel and, therefore, their tread circumferences, among other aspects. The set values are collected and monitored after a long journey at different speeds.

For example, if the wheels are under very heavy loads, the tyre pressure must be increased to the total recommended tyre pressure before calibration ››› Fig. 251.

⚠ WARNING

If the tyres are inflated to different pressures, or to a pressure that is too low, a tyre may be damaged and control of the vehicle may be lost. This could lead to a serious or even fatal accident.

- **If the lamp (!) lights up, reduce speed immediately and avoid any sudden turning or braking manoeuvres. Stop as soon as possible, and check the pressure and status of all tyres.**
- **The tyre pressure loss indicator only works correctly if all the tyres are at the correct pressure when cold, and it is subsequently calibrated according to the described procedure.**
- **If the tyres have no punctures and do not need to be replaced immediately, drive to the nearest specialist workshop at low speed and have the tyre pressure checked and corrected.**

Note

- **When driving for the first time with new tyres at high speeds, the tyres may expand slightly, which may result in an air pressure warning.**
- **If a low tyre pressure is detected when the ignition is switched on, an audible warning will sound. If the system fails, an audible signal sounds.**
- **Driving on unpaved roads for a long period of time, or sporty driving, may temporarily deactivate the system. The warning lamp shows a fault, but disappears when road conditions or driving behaviour change.**
- **Do not only rely on the tyre pressure monitoring system. Check the tyres regularly to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct and that the tyres are free of damage such as punctures, cuts, gouges and dents. Remove any non-puncturing objects from the tyres.**

- The tyre pressure monitoring indicator does not function when there is a fault in the ESC or ABS >>> page 194.

Troubleshooting

Tyre pressure low

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

The inflation pressure of one or more wheels is much lower than the value set by the driver, or the tyre has structural damage. In addition, a audible warning sounds and a text message is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- **Stop the vehicle!** Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe place.
- Check all tyres and pressures.
- Replace any damaged tyres.

Fault in the tyre pressure loss indicator

The control lamp flashes for approximately 1 minute and then lights up permanently in yellow.

- If the tyre is inflated correctly, switch the ignition off and on again.
- Re-calibrate the tyre pressure monitoring system >>> page 386
- If the fault continues, go to a specialised workshop.

Tyre repair

TMS (Tyre Mobility System) puncture repair kit

The puncture repair kit (Tyre Mobility System) will reliably seal punctures caused by the penetration of a foreign body of up to about **4 mm** in diameter. **Do not remove foreign objects, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.**

After inserting the sealant residue in the tyre, you must recheck the tyre pressure about 10 minutes after starting the engine.

You should only use the tyre mobility set if the vehicle is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the procedure and you have the necessary tyre mobility set. Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.

Tyre sealant must not be used in the following cases:

- If the wheel rim has been damaged.
- In outside temperatures below -20°C (-4°F).
- If the cut or punctures in the tyres are larger than 4 mm.
- If the tyre has been driven on with very low inflation pressure or no tyre pressure.
- If the expiry date of the sealant bottle has passed.

⚠ WARNING

Using the puncture repair kit can be dangerous, particularly when filling the tyre on the roadside. To reduce the risk of serious injury, consider the following:

- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe place. Park it at a safe distance from road traffic to fill the tyres.**
- **Make sure the ground is flat and firm.**
- **All occupants, especially children, should stay a safe distance away from the work area.**
- **Turn on the hazard lights to warn other road users.**
- **Always switch off the engine and activate the electronic parking brake to reduce the risk of accidental vehicle movement.**
  - ***Vehicles with automatic transmission:* switch on the parking lock P.**
  - ***Vehicles with manual transmission:* engage a gear.**
- **Use the puncture repair kit only if you are familiar with the necessary operations. Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.**
- **The puncture repair kit should only be used in an emergency, to reach the nearest garage.**
- **Replace tyres repaired with the puncture kit as soon as possible.**

⚠ WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant does not have the same driving properties as a conventional tyre.

- **Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).**
- **Avoid full throttle, braking heavily and cornering at high speeds.**
- **Drive for only 10 minutes at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) and then check the tyre.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **The sealant is harmful to health and must be cleaned off immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.**
- **Always keep the puncture repair kit out of the reach of children.**

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of used or expired tyre sealant in accordance with the relevant legal requirements.

Note

You can purchase new bottles of tyre sealant from CUPRA specialist dealers or any SEAT network dealer.

Note

Take into account the separate instruction manual provided by the tyre mobility system manufacturer.

Tyre mobility system contents

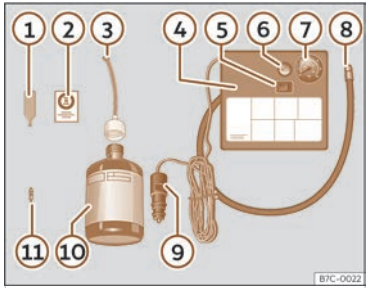


Fig. 252 Standard display: contents of the tyre mobility system.

The tyre mobility system is located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. Includes the following components ››› **Fig. 252**:

1. Valve insert remover
2. A sticker to be stuck to the instrument cluster, in the driver's field of view, as a reminder of the advisable maximum speed “max. 80 km/h” or “max. 50 mph”
3. Filler tube with cap
4. Air compressor (depending on the version, the model may vary).
5. ON/OFF switch
6. Air bleed screw (it can also be integrated in the inflator tube).
7. Warning provided by tyre pressure monitoring system (it can also be integrated in the inflator tube).
8. Tube for inflating tyres
9. 12 volt connector
10. Bottle of sealant
11. Spare tyre valve

The **valve insert remover** (1) has a gap at the lower end for a valve insert. The valve insert can only be screwed or unscrewed in this way. This also applies to its replacement part (11).

Sealing and inflating a tyre

Sealing the tyre

- Unscrew the tyre valve cap and insert. Use the device ››› **Fig. 252** (1) to remove the valve cap. Place it on a clean surface.
- Shake the tyre sealant bottle vigorously ››› **Fig. 252** (10) .
- Screw the tyre inflation hose ››› **Fig. 252** (3) into the tyre sealant bottle. The bottle's seal will break automatically.

- Remove the filler cap ››› Fig. 252 ③ and screw the open end of the tube into the tyre valve.
- With the bottle upside down, empty **all** of the contents into the tyre.
- Remove the bottle from the valve.
- Replace the valve insert with the device ››› Fig. 252 ① onto the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyre

- Screw the tyre inflation tube of the compressor ››› Fig. 252 ⑧ onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the air evacuation screw is closed ››› Fig. 252 ⑥.
- Start the engine and leave it running.
- Attach the connector ››› Fig. 252 ⑨ to the vehicle's 12 volt power outlet ››› page 261.
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON/OFF switch ››› Fig. 252 ⑤.
- Keep the air compressor running until it reaches a pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar (29-36 psi/ 200-250 kPa). **A maximum of 8 minutes**.
- Disconnect the air compressor.
- If it does not reach the indicated pressure, unscrew the tyre inflater tube from the valve.
- Move the vehicle 10m so that the sealant is distributed throughout the tyre.
- Screw the compressor tyre inflator into the valve.
- Repeat the inflation process.
- If it still does not come up to pressure, the tyre is too badly damaged. Stop and seek assistance from authorised personnel.
- Disconnect the air compressor. Unscrew the tyre inflation tube from the tyre valve.
- When the tyre pressure is between 2.5 and 2.0 bars, continue driving without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Attach the sticker ››› Fig. 252 ② to the instrument cluster display, within the driver's field of vision.
- Check the pressure again after 10 minutes ››› page 390.

⚠ WARNING

When inflating the wheel, the air compressor and the inflator tube may become hot.

- **Protect hands and skin from hot parts.**
- **Do not place the hot flexible inflator tube or hot air compressor on flammable material.**
- **Allow them to cool before storing the device.**
- **If it is not possible to inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bars (29 psi / 200 kPa), the tyre is too badly damaged. The sealant is not in a good condition to seal the tyre. Do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Switch off the air compressor after a maximum of 8 minutes of operation to avoid overheating! Before switching on the air compressor again, let it cool for several minutes.

Check after 10 minutes of driving

Screw in the inflator tube ››› Fig. 252 ⑧ again and check the pressure on the gauge ⑦.

1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) or lower:

- **Stop the vehicle!** The tyre cannot be sealed sufficiently with the tyre mobility set.
- You should obtain professional assistance ››› ⚠.

1.4 bar (20 psi/140 kPa) and higher:

- Set the tyre pressure to the correct value again.
- Carefully resume your journey until you reach the nearest specialised workshop without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Have the damaged tyre replaced.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with an unsealed tyre is dangerous and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Do not continue driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) or lower.
- Seek specialist assistance.

Maintenance

Service

Service work and the Digital Maintenance Plan

Log of services performed ("Digital Maintenance Plan")

Specialised CUPRA dealers, SEAT dealerships or a specialised workshop records Service receipts in a central system. Thanks to this comprehensive documentation of the service history, it is possible to view the services performed any time. CUPRA recommends requesting a Service receipt after every service carried out containing all the services on the system.

Whenever there is a new service the receipt is replaced with a current one.

The Digital Maintenance Plan is not available in some markets. In this case, your specialised CUPRA dealer or a SEAT dealership will inform you about the documentation of the service work.

Service works

In the Digital Maintenance Plan, your specialised CUPRA dealer, SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop will document the following information:

- When each one of the services was carried out.
- Whether a specific repair has been suggested, e.g. changing the brake pads in the near future.
- If you have expressed a special request for the maintenance. Your Service Advisor will write the work order.
- The components or fluids that were changed.
- The date of the next service.

The Long Life Mobility Warranty is valid until the next inspection. This information is documented in all checks performed.

The type and the volume of the service may vary from one vehicle to another. A specialised workshop will be able to provide specific information on the jobs for your vehicle.

WARNING

If the services are insufficient or not performed and if the service intervals are not observed, the vehicle may be immobilised in traffic, which can cause an accident and severe injuries.

- **Make sure that any repairs are carried out by a specialised CUPRA dealer, a SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop.**

NOTICE

CUPRA accepts no liability for any damage to the vehicle caused either by inadequate workshop service or damage resulting from the unavailability of spare parts.

Note

Regular services on the vehicle not only maintain its value, but also its correct operation and road safety. For this reason, conduct the services in accordance with CUPRA guidelines.

Set Service or Flexible Service Intervals

Services are classified as **oil change service** and **inspection**. The service interval indicator on the instrument cluster display serves as a reminder of the next service.

Depending on the features, the engine and the usage conditions of the car, either the **Fixed service** or the **Flexible service** will be applied for an oil change service.

How to know which type of service needs to his vehicle

The vehicle service type can be checked at a specialised workshop. Make sure that any repairs are carried out by a specialised CUPRA dealer, any SEAT network dealership or a specialised workshop.

Particular characteristics of the Flexible Service

Regarding the **Flexible Service** the oil change service only has to be performed when the vehicle needs it. To calculate when you have to carry out this service, take into account the individual usage conditions and personal driving style. A major component of the flexible service is the use of LongLife oil instead of conventional engine oil.

Bear in mind the information about the specifications of the engine oil according to the VW standard ››› page 362.

If you do not want to perform the flexible service you can select the fixed service. However, a fixed service may affect service costs. The Service Advisor will gladly advise you.

Service interval indicator

At CUPRA, the dates of the services are indicated by the service interval indicator on the instrument cluster ››› page 25 or in the **Vehicle settings** menu of the infotainment system ››› page 38.

The service interval indicator gives information for service dates that involve an engine oil change or an inspection. When the time for the corresponding service comes, additional work required, such as the change of brake fluid and the spark plugs, can be carried out.

Information about the terms of use

The service intervals and groups are usually based on **normal usage conditions**.

If, on the other hand, the vehicle is under **adverse usage conditions**, some of the work must be carried out before the next service period or even between service intervals.

Adverse usage conditions include:

- The use of fuel with a high sulphur content.
- Frequent short trips.
- Letting the engine idle for a long period of time, as in the case of taxis.
- Using the vehicle in areas with thick dust.
- Frequent driving with a trailer (depending on equipment).
- Using the vehicle mostly in situations with a lot of traffic and stops (e.g. in the city).
- Using the vehicle mostly in winter.

This applies especially for the following parts (depending on equipment):

- Dust and pollen filter
- Air Care allergen filter
- Air filter
- Toothed chain
- Particulate filter
- Engine oil

The Service Advisor of your specialised workshop will gladly inform you about the need to perform service work between normal service intervals, always considering the usage conditions of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If the services are insufficient or not performed and if the service intervals are not observed, the vehicle may be immobilised in traffic and cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Make sure that any repairs are carried out by a specialised CUPRA dealer, a SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop.**

NOTICE

CUPRA cannot be held liable for any damage to the vehicle due to insufficient work or lack of availability of spare parts.

Service packages

Service packages include all the **maintenance works** needed to ensure the safety and the smooth running of the vehicle (**depending on the usage conditions and the features of the vehicle**, such as the engine, gearbox, or operating fluids).

Maintenance services are divided into *inspection* and *review* services. Consult the details of the jobs required for your vehicle at:

- Your CUPRA dealer
- Your SEAT dealership
- Your specialised workshop

Due to technical reasons (continuous development of components) the service packages may vary. Your specialised CUPRA dealer, any SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop always receives updated information about any modifications that are made.

Additional service offers

Approved spare parts

Original SEAT Spare Parts have been designed for your vehicle and approved by SEAT, with a special emphasis on safety. These parts correspond exactly to the manufacturer's requirements in terms of design, accuracy of the measurements and materials. The original SEAT Spare Parts have been designed exclusively for your vehicle. For this reason, we always recommend the use of Original SEAT Spare Parts. SEAT cannot be held liable for the safety and suitability of parts from other manufacturers.

Approved spare parts

Approved spare parts, following the manufacturer's requirements, are an additional service to you, offering the possibility of replacing complete sets, such as: lightened engine, gearboxes, heads, control units, electrical components, etc.

These parts are, **approved parts**, and are the same as the factory parts, which are also approved spare parts.

Original accessories

We recommend you only use CUPRA Original Accessories and CUPRA approved accessories for your vehicle. The reliability, safety and suitability of these accessories have been inspected specifically for this type of vehicle. CUPRA cannot be held liable for the safety and suitability of parts from other manufacturers.

Service Mobility

As of the moment you purchase your CUPRA vehicle you will be able to enjoy the benefits and coverage of Service Mobility.

For the first two years after the purchase, your new CUPRA vehicle is automatically covered by Service Mobility at no additional cost.

If you wish to enjoy this service after this period, you can extend Service Mobility as long as you carry out the recommended Inspection and Maintenance Services at a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service.

If your CUPRA vehicle is immobilised due to a fault or an accident, our assistance services will help you keep moving.

Take into account that Service Mobility differs depending on the country where the vehicle was purchased. For further information, ask your specialised CUPRA dealer, any SEAT dealership or visit the CUPRA website in your country.

Vehicle upkeep and cleaning

Basic observations

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of your vehicle. In addition, it may become a prerequisite for a warranty claim in the event of corrosion damage and deficiencies in the paint coat of the bodywork.

Specialised workshops have the necessary care products. Please follow the application instructions on the packaging.

⚠ WARNING

- **Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can be damaging to your health if misused.**
- **Always keep care products in a safe place, out of the reach of children. Danger of poisoning!**

For the sake of the environment

- **When purchasing car care products, chose products that are compatible with the environment.**
- **The waste from car-care products should not be disposed of with ordinary household waste.**

Washing the vehicle

The longer you take to clean off deposits, e.g. remains of insects, bird excrements, tree resin or road salt adhered to your vehicle, the more damage it can cause to the surface. High temperatures, for instance strong sunlight, further intensify the damage.

Before washing the car, soften the dirt using plenty of water.

To remove encrusted dirt such as insects, bird droppings or tree resin, use a lot of water and a microfibre cloth.

Have the underside of the vehicle washed after the end of the road salts in winter.

High pressure cleaning equipment

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the distance between the water jet and the vehicle.

Do not aim the jet directly towards the side windows, doors, sunroof or covers; the same applies for the tyres, rubber hoses, damping material, radar sensors or camera lenses. Keep a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not remove snow and ice with a high-pressure cleaner.

Do not use a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream or one that has a rotating jet for forcing off dirt.

The water temperature must not exceed 60°C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle before starting the car wash.

Make sure that the windows and sunroof are closed and the wipers are deactivated. Bear in mind the instructions of the car wash tunnel operator, especially if your vehicle has detachable parts.

Use car washes without brushes if possible.

Washing by hand

Clean your vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or with a brush. Only use cleaning products that do not contain solvents.

Polishing

Polishing is only necessary when the vehicle's paintwork has lost its gloss and cannot be restored with care products.

Do not polish matt painted surfaces! If the paintwork is polished, the surface will be irreparably damaged.

Washing vehicles with matte paintwork

To wash the vehicle, it is best to use a special cleaner for matte paintwork. For further information, please contact an official service centre.

Apply the product by spraying it onto the bodywork. Work in one zone at a time and leave the product to act for at least 2 minutes. Wipe it with a microfibre cloth and **avoid placing excessive pressure** on the treated area until the dirt is removed. Once clean, repeat the application of the product area by area and spread it until a uniform finish is achieved.

If the vehicle is affected by mosquitoes or larger amounts of dirt, spray the product on the entire surface, leave it to act for 2 minutes and apply pressurised water until it is completely clean. Once dry, apply the product one zone at a time and spread it with microfibre, **avoiding excessive pressure,** to achieve a uniform finish.

In both cases, the final application cares for the vehicle in an optimal manner and provides a protective layer against dirt and water.

⚠ WARNING

- **Only wash the vehicle with the ignition switched off or according to the specifications of the car wash tunnel operator. Accident hazard!**
- **When cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel arches, protect yourself from sharp or pointy metal parts. Risk of cuts!**

- **After cleaning, the brakes could act more slowly due to moisture or, in winter, ice on the brake discs and pads. Accident hazard! In this case the brakes should be dried by pressing the brake pedal several times.**

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of high-pressure cleaning equipment can cause damage. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- **Never direct the jet of the high-pressure cleaning equipment directly at the orange high-voltage cables, the high-voltage system components or the 12-volt on-board network.**

ⓘ NOTICE

- **Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, the exterior mirrors should be folded in to prevent them from being damaged. The electric folding exterior mirrors should only be folded or unfolded electrically!**
- **Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Risk of damaging the paint job!**
- **Do not use sponges, abrasive household sponges or similar to clean insect remains. Risk of damaging the surface!**

- **Vehicle parts with matte paint:**
  - **Do not use polish or hard wax. Risk of damaging the surface!**
  - **Never select washing programmes that include the use of wax. This could damage the appearance of matte paint.**
  - **Do not put stickers or magnets on parts with matte paint, as removing them may damage the paint.**

For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. These places are designed to prevent oily water from getting into the public drains.

Cleaning the exterior

Below can be found some recommendations on the cleaning and upkeep of individual vehicle components.

Go to your specialised workshop if you have special questions or parts that are not listed.

Take the general considerations into account ››› page 398, *Take special care with....*

Windscreen wipers

- *Dirt:* Soft cloth with windscreen cleaner.

Headlights / Tail lights

- *Dirt:* Soft sponge with neutral soap solution[1].

Sensors / Camera lenses

- *Dirt:*
  - *Sensors*: soft cloth with a solvent-free cleaning product.
  - *Camera lenses*: soft cloth with an alcohol-free cleaning product.
- *Snow/ice:* Hand brush/Solvent-free anti-freeze spray

Wheels

- *Road salt:* Water.
- *Brake abrasion dust:* Special acid-free cleaning product.

Exhaust pipe ends

- *Road salt:* Water, if a fine steel cleaning product is required, or a non-abrasive and non-corrosive cleaning product.
- *Dirt on painted exhaust pipes:* Clean with a soft cloth dampened with water or a non-abrasive, non-corrosive cleaning product.

Covers / Trims

- *Dirt:* Neutral soap solution[1], if a fine steel cleaning product is required.

Paint

- *Paint flaws:* Check the paint's colour code at an authorised service and restore with a touch-up pencil.
- *Spilled fuel:* Immediately rinse with water.
- *Environmental rust deposit:* Apply rust remover and then apply hard wax. Go you your specialised workshop if you have any queries.
- *Corrosion:* Have your specialised workshop take care of this.
- *Water does not form droplets on the clean paint:* Maintain with hard wax (at least twice a year).
- *No shine despite maintenance/unattractive paint:* Treat with suitable wax and apply paint preservative afterwards if the wax used does not contain preservative ingredients.
- *Tanks, e.g. insect remains, bird droppings, tree sap, road salt:* Immediately soak with water and remove with a microfibre cloth.
- *Grease-based dirt, e.g. cosmetic products or sunscreen:* Remove immediately with a neutral soap solution[1] and a soft cloth.

Carbon fibre parts

- *Dirt:* Clean in the same way as painted parts ››› page 395.

Decorative laminates

- *Dirt:* Soft sponge with neutral soap solution[1].

Interior cleaning

Below can be found some recommendations on the cleaning and upkeep of individual vehicle components.

Go to your specialised workshop if you have special questions or parts that are not listed.

Take the general considerations into account ››› page 398, *Take special care with...*.

Windows

- *Dirt:* Apply windscreen cleaner and then dry with a cloth.

Covers / Trims

- *Dirt:* Neutral soap solution[1].

Plastic parts

- *Dirt:* Damp cloth.
- *Encrusted dirt:* Neutral soap solution[1], if possible a solvent-free plastic cleaning product.

Displays/instrument cluster

- *Dirt:* Soft cloth with a liquid crystal display cleaner.

---

[1] Neutral soap solution: maximum of two tablespoons in 1 l of water.

Control panels

- *Dirt:* Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a neutral soap solution[1].

Seat belts

- *Dirt:* Neutral soap solution[1], allowed to dry before retracting.

Fabrics, artificial, Alcantara leather

- *Particles of dirt stuck to surfaces:* Vacuum cleaner.
- *Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea, blood etc.:* Absorbent cloth and neutral soap solution[1].
- *Grease-based dirt, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.:* Apply a neutral soap solution[1]. Absorb the dissolved grease and paint particles by drying with an absorbent cloth, if you have to treat it with water afterwards.
- *Special dirt, e.g. pens, nail polish, spray paint, shoe polish, etc.:* Special stain remover: dry with an absorbent cloth, if applicable, apply neutral soap solution afterwards[1].

Natural leather

- *Recent dirt:* Cotton cloth with neutral soap solution[1].
- *Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea, blood etc.:*
  - *Recent stains:* absorbent cloth.
  - *Dry stains:* stain remover suitable for leather.
- *Grease-based dirt, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.:*
  - *Recent stains:* absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather.
  - *Dry stains:* grease solvent spray.
- *Special dirt, e.g. pens, nail polish, spray paint, shoe polish etc.:* Stain remover suitable for leather.
- *Care:* Apply preservative cream regularly to protect from sunlight. Use a coloured preservative if required.

Carbon fibre parts

- *Dirt:* Clean as with plastic parts.

Take special care with...

Headlights/tail lights

- Do not clean the headlights/tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
- Do not use cleaning products that contain alcohol. Risk of cracks!

Wheels

- Do not use paint wax or other abrasive products.
- If the protective coating on the paint of the rim has been damaged due to stone impacts, scratches, etc., the damage should be repaired immediately.

Camera lenses

- Do not use hot or warm water to remove ice or snow from the camera lenses. Risk of cracking the lens!
- To clean the camera lens, never use abrasive cleaning products or products with alcohol. Risk of scratches and cracks!

Radar sensors

- Avoid aiming the jet of pressurised water at the radar sensors.
- Paint the bumpers only with CUPRA approved paint.

Windows

- Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.

---

[1] Neutral soap solution: maximum of two tablespoons in 1 l of water.

- Never remove snow or ice from windows and rearview mirrors with warm or hot water. Risk of cracks on the windows!
- To prevent damage to the heating of the rear window, do not put stickers over the heating elements.

Covers/trims

- Do not use cleaning products or chrome based cleaning agents.

Paint

- The vehicle must be free from dirt and dust before applying wax or care products. Risk of scratches!
- Do not apply wax or care products if the vehicle is exposed to direct sunlight. Risk of damaging the paint job!
- Environmental rust deposits must not be removed by friction. Risk of damaging the paint job!
- Remove cosmetic products and suncream immediately. Risk of damaging the paint job!

Displays/instrument cluster

- The displays, the instrument cluster and the trim around it must not be cleaned dry. Risk of scratches!
- Make sure that the instrument cluster is switched off and cooled down before cleaning.
- Make sure that no liquid leaks between the instrument cluster and the trim. Risk of damage!

Control panels

- Make sure that no liquid leaks into the control panels. Risk of damage!

Seat belts

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Seat belts and their components must never be cleaned with chemical products, nor should they be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp objects. Risk of damaging the fabric!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, ask your specialised workshop to replace the belt in question.

Fabrics/artificial leather/microfibre

- Do not treat artificial leather/microfibre with leather cleaning products, solvents, wax polish, shoe polish, stain removers or similar products.
- If the stain is very hard to remove, take the vehicle to a specialised workshop to have it removed there. This will prevent damage.
- Do not use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. to clean.
- Do not turn on seat heating to dry the seats.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can damage the surface.
- Open Velcro, e.g. on clothes can damage the seat upholstery. Make sure that Velcro fasteners are closed.

Natural leather

- Never use solvents, wax polish, shoe polish, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can damage the surface.
- Do not use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. to clean.
- Do not turn on seat heating to dry the seats.
- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as humid weather, darkness or when the sun is in its lowest point, visibility may be impacted. Accident hazard! Such coatings can also cause the windscreen wiper blades to make noise.

Note

- **Remains of insects can be removed much more easily with previously treated paint.**
- **Regular car care treatments can prevent deposits of environmental rust.**

Taking your vehicle out of service

If you want to leave your vehicle stationary for a long period of time, contact a qualified workshop. They will gladly inform you about the necessary measures, such as anti-corrosion protection, Service and storage.

Also take into account the indications relating to the vehicle's battery ››› page 366 , ››› page 366, *Introduction*.

Accessories, spare parts and repair work

Introduction

Always ask your dealer or specialist retailer for advice before purchasing accessories and replacement parts.

Your vehicle is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety. For this reason, we recommend that you ask a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service for advice before fitting accessories or replacement parts. Your Official Service has the latest information from the manufacturer and can recommend accessories and replacement parts which are suitable for your requirements. They can also answer any questions you might have regarding official regulations.

We recommend only using **CUPRA accessories** and **Genuine CUPRA parts®**. Specialised CUPRA Services or SEAT Official Services have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that the parts are installed correctly and professionally.

Although CUPRA continuously monitors the market, it cannot judge whether products **not authorised by CUPRA** meet the vehicle's reliability, safety and suitability requirements. CUPRA therefore accepts no liability for these products, even if, in certain cases, they are authorised by an officially recognised technical inspection institute or official body.

Any **retrofitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven, such as a cruise control system **or electronically-controlled suspension**, must be approved for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorisation symbol).

If **any additional electrical devices** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself (for instance a refrigerator box, laptop or ventilator fan, etc.), they must bear the CE marking (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union).

⚠ WARNING

Accessories, for example telephone holders or drink holders, should never be fitted on the covers, or inside the operating range of the airbags. Otherwise, there is a danger of injury if the airbag is triggered in an accident.

Technical modifications

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctioning.

We request your understanding that your specialised CUPRA dealer or SEAT dealership cannot be held liable for any damage caused by modifications and/or work performed incorrectly in the vehicle.

We therefore recommend that all work should be performed by a specialised CUPRA Service or a SEAT Official Service using **genuine CUPRA parts®**.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly performed modifications or other work on your vehicle can lead to malfunctions and cause accidents.

Radio telephones and office equipment

Radio transmitters (fixed installation)

Any retrofit installations of radio transmitters in the vehicle require prior approval. CUPRA generally authorises in-vehicle installations of approved types of radio transmitters provided that:

- The antenna is installed correctly.
- The aerial is installed on the exterior of the vehicle (and shielded cables are used together with non-reflective aerial trimming).
- The effective transmitting power does not exceed 10 Watts at the aerial base.

A specialised CUPRA Service, SEAT Official Service or specialised workshop will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters with a higher transmitting power.

Mobile radio transmitters

Commercial mobile telephones or radio equipment might interfere with the electronics of your vehicle and cause malfunctions. This may be due to:

- No external aerial.
- External aerial incorrectly installed.
- Transmitting power more than 10 W.

Therefore you must not operate portable mobile telephones or radio equipment *inside the vehicle* without a properly installed external aerial ››› ⚠.

Please note also that the maximum range of the equipment can only be achieved with an *external* aerial.

Business equipment

Retrofit installation of business or private equipment in the vehicle is permitted, provided the equipment cannot interfere with the driver's immediate control of the vehicle and that any such equipment carries the CE mark. Any retrofit equipment that could influence the driver's control of the vehicle must have a type approval for your vehicle and must carry the **e** mark.

⚠ WARNING

Mobile telephones or radio equipment which is operated inside the vehicle without a properly installed external aerial can create excessive magnetic fields that could cause a health hazard.

Note

- **Retrofitting electric and electronic equipment in this vehicle affects its licence and could lead to the withdrawal of the vehicle registration document under certain circumstances.**
- **Please follow the mobile telephone/radio operating instructions.**

User information

Warranty

Fault-free operation warranty

Specialised CUPRA Services or SEAT Official Services ensure the perfect condition of new vehicles. Check the purchase agreement or complementary additional documentation provided by your Technical Service for the conditions and terms of the warranty. Get further information about this from your specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service.

Commercial warranty for high voltage batteries for electric and hybrid vehicles

To supplement the aforementioned warranties and guarantees, SEAT Official Services also offer a warranty for high voltage batteries existing in many countries.

Consult the details of this warranty in the sales contract or contact a SEAT Official Service.

Information stored by the control units

Storage of accident data (Event Data Recorder)

Your vehicle has an event data recorder (EDR).

The EDR's function is to record data in the event of a mild or serious accident. These data are used to support the analysis of how different vehicle systems behaved.

The EDR records, over a reduced time range (normally 10 seconds or less), dynamic driving data and data from the restraint systems, such as:

- How different vehicle systems worked.
- Whether the driver and the occupants were wearing their seat belts.
- How hard the accelerator or brake pedal was pressed.
- Vehicle speed.

These data will provide a better understanding of the circumstances of the accident.

Data from the driving assist systems are also recorded. This includes data such as whether the systems were inactive or active and if such action had an impact on the vehicle's dynamic behaviour, changing its path in the aforementioned situations, or accelerating or decelerating the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle equipment, this includes data from systems such as:

- the adaptive cruise control
- the lane assist system
- the park assist systems
- the emergency brake functions.

The EDR data are only recorded in specific accident situations. No data are recorded in normal driving conditions.

No audio or video data inside or around the vehicle are recorded. Under no circumstances are personal data such as name, age, or gender recorded. Nevertheless, third parties (such as criminal proceedings authorities) may relate the contents of the EDR data to other data sources and create a personal reference in the context of an accident investigation.

In order to read the EDR data it is necessary to access (if legally permitted to do so) the vehicle's ODB ("On-Board-Diagnose") interface while the vehicle is switched on.

In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties, such as judicial organisations with the appropriate tools, may be able to access the information if they have access to the vehicle or to the data recorded in the EDR.

CUPRA will not have access to EDR data unless the owner (or, in "Leasing" cases, the lessee or hirer) gives their consent. There may be exceptions to this, depending on legal or contractual provisions.

Due to legal requirements in safety-related products, CUPRA may use the EDR data for field research and in order to improve vehicle system quality. Any data used for research purposes will be treated anonymously (in other words, no reference will be made to the vehicle, its owner or the lessee/hirer).

Vehicle antennas

Infotainment system and antennas

The infotainment system's antennas are installed on different locations on the vehicle:

- On the roof.
- On the windscreen, between the layers of glass.
- On the rear and side windows with a printed antenna structure ››› ⓘ.

NOTICE

The printed antenna structure on the rear and side windows can be damaged by objects rubbing against it or by the use of corrosive products, or products containing acids.

- **Do not apply any stickers to the rear and side window areas.**
- **Never clean the antenna structure with corrosive or acidic products.**

Fluids in the air conditioning system

Refrigerant in the air conditioning system

The label in the front compartment provides information on the type and amount of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. The label is located at the front of the front compartment, near the refrigerant filling valves ››› ⚠.

Detailed information on the refrigerant used

If the type of refrigerant indicated on the label is R1234yf, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated gases.

If the type of refrigerant is R744, this gas does not contain fluorinated gases.

Pursuant to Regulation (EU) 2024/573 on fluorinated greenhouse gases, article 12 referring to labelling and product and equipment information, applicable from 1 January 2025 onwards.

Type of refrigerant	R1234yf
Refrigerant weight	450 g
	460 g
CO_2 equivalent	0.0002 t
	0.0002 t
Global warming potential	0.501

Refrigerant oil in the air conditioning

The air conditioning system is filled with a refrigerant oil. For information on the type and amount of refrigerant oil used, contact a qualified specialist company.

CUPRA recommends a CUPRA official service

Warning: Maintenance of the air conditioning system must be performed by qualified specialists.

Type of refrigerant.

Type of refrigerant oil

Refer to the workshop information (available only at CUPRA official services).

Maintenance of the air conditioning system must be performed by qualified specialists.

Flammable refrigerant.

Ensure all components are properly disposed of. Do not install components removed from end-of-life vehicles or recycled components in your vehicle.

⚠ DANGER

Maintenance of the air conditioning system by unqualified personnel can cause serious and fatal injuries.

- **For air conditioning system maintenance, contact qualified personnel trained according to the required country standards, such as the standard SAE J2845.**
- **Bear in mind the service intervals recommended by CUPRA. For this, contact a qualified specialist company. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA official service.**

⚠ DANGER

The refrigerant is flammable and can cause serious and fatal injuries if not properly maintained.

The refrigerant is under pressure and can explode when heated. This can cause serious and fatal injuries.

The refrigerant can form toxic vapours when it comes into contact with hot surfaces. If inhaled, they can cause poisoning or even death.

- **Have the air conditioning system repaired by qualified personnel.**
- **Keep the vehicle away from flames, sparks, or other sources of ignition.**

ⓘ NOTICE

Repair or replacement of the evaporator with spare parts from end-of-life vehicles or recycling can damage the air conditioning system.

- **Never have the evaporator repaired with spare parts from end-of-life vehicles or recycling.**

Information on the EU chemicals regulation REACH

In accordance with the European Chemicals Regulation REACH, SEAT, S.A. has information on the substances that may be contained in the vehicle.

You can ask for this information at your CUPRA Official Service or at any SEAT dealership.

Materials and recycling information

Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection is a top priority in the design, choice of materials and manufacture of your new CUPRA.

Constructive measures to encourage recycling

- Joints and connections designed for easy dismantling.
- Modular construction to facilitate dismantling.
- Increased use of single-grade materials.
- Plastic parts and elastomers are marked in accordance with ISO 1043, ISO 11469 and ISO 1629.

Choice of materials

- Use of recycled materials.
- Use of compatible plastics in the same part if its components are not easily separated.
- Use of recycled materials and/or materials originating from renewable sources.
- Reduction of volatile components, including odour, in plastic materials.
- Use of CFC-free coolants.

Ban on heavy metals, with the exceptions provided for by law (Annex II of ELV Directive 2000/53/EC): cadmium, lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium.

Manufacturing methods

- Reduction of the quantity of thinner in the protective wax for cavities.
- Use of plastic film as protection during vehicle transport.

- Use of solvent-free stickers.
- Use of CFC-free coolants in cooling systems.
- Recycling and energy recovery of waste (RDF).
- Improvement in the quality of waste water.
- Use of systems for the recovery of residual heat (thermal recovery, enthalpy wheels, etc.).
- The use of water-soluble paints.

Information on the European Regulation on batteries and accumulators

Technical data and documents relating to the requirements of Regulation (EU) 2023/1542 of the European Parliament and of the Council on batteries and waste batteries can be found at:

https://product-pass.online/vehicle?id_type=brand&id=S

Recycling of electrical or electronic devices

All electrical or electronic devices (EED) that are not permanently fitted in the vehicle must be marked with the following symbol:

This symbol indicates that EED must not be discarded as home waste but through selective waste collection.

Product recycling

✓ Valid for market: France

Fig. 253 Recycling notice for France.

Please note the recycling instructions in >>> **Fig. 253** for the following items:

- Vehicle keys
- Remote control of auxiliary heating and ventilation.
- Compressor.
- Charging cable.
- Mobile key card.

Fig. 254 Fire extinguisher recycling notice for France.

Please note the recycling instructions in >>> **Fig. 254** for the following items:

- Extinguishers.

Fig. 255 Recycling notice for France.

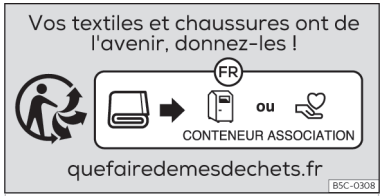


Fig. 256 Recycling notice for France.

Please observe the recycling instructions ››› **Fig. 255**, ››› **Fig. 256** for documentation and packaging or bags of the following items:

- Maintenance manual.
- First aid kit.
- Extinguishers.
- Compressor.
- Charging cable.
- Charging socket and watertight seal.
- Vehicle toolbox.
- Puncture repair spray.
- Jack.
- Warning triangle.
- High visibility jacket.
- Tool bag.

For the sake of the environment

The Triman logo and the Info-tri symbol contain important classification information for the end user.

Product recycling

✓ Valid for market: Italy

Environmental labelling

Legislative decree no. 116 (3 September 2020), which transposes EU Directive 2018/851 on waste, and EU Directive 2018/852 on packaging and packaging waste, states that all packaging must be properly labelled to facilitate the collection, reuse, recovery and recycling of packaging, and to give users correct information about the final destination of the packaging.

Information about the environmental labelling of packaging present in the vehicle can be accessed by scanning the following QR code, which links to a website where the information required by this regulation can be found:

Third-party copyright information

https://www.seat.com/company/softwareinfo.html

Some products installed in the vehicle include software components that require Open Source licenses.

A list of the Open Source software components used, including information on copyright laws, the respective Open Source license terms, and the text of the corresponding license, is available on the website mentioned above. The source code for certain Open Source software components can be requested from the vehicle manufacturer. The manufacturer will provide the source code in accordance with the respective license terms, and only the cost of making it available will be charged (e.g., costs for data storage devices, shipping, and packaging). The required information can be found on the website mentioned above.

Return and scrapping of end-of-life vehicles

End-of-life return

At the end of its useful life, your vehicle must be recycled and disposed of in an environmentally sound manner. For this reason, final vehicle owners in the EU and in many other countries are required by law to take their vehicle to an authorised collection point, vehicle return centre or authorised dismantling facility.

CUPRA has already made the necessary arrangements for this: an extensive network of vehicle return centres is available throughout the EU and in many other countries, where you can drop off your vehicle. If you meet the national legal requirements, you can return your end-of-life vehicle free of charge within the EU.

The vehicle return centre issues a recycling certificate which serves as proof that the end-of-life vehicle has been recycled correctly.

Information about the Vehicle Return Centres can be obtained from your CUPRA dealer.

Scrapping

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when scrapping the vehicle or its individual components, e.g. airbag system and seatbelt tensioners. Qualified workshops are already familiar with these requirements. CUPRA recommends using a CUPRA dealer.

Declaration of conformity

Commercialisation of finished products on the British market (England, Wales and Scotland):

UK CA The UKCA (UK Conformity Assessed) marking is a new British marking used for products commercialised in Great Britain (England, Wales and Scotland).

Importer:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.
Yeomans Drive, Blakelands
Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN
United Kingdom

Vehicles commercialised on the British market by the importer mentioned above may include complete products that comply with the following provisions:

- The Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations, 2016
- The Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations, 2016
- The Supply of Machinery (Safety) (Amendment) Regulations, 2011
- The Noise Emission in the Environment by Equipment for use Outdoors Regulations, 2001
- The Restriction of the Use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations, 2012
- The Medical Devices Regulations, 2002 (SISI 2002, no. 618, in its amended version) (UK MDR 2002)
- The Pressure Equipment (Safety) Regulations, 2016
- The Personal Protective Equipment (Enforcement) Regulations, 2018

Note

For medical devices, the CE marking will remain valid in the UK until 30 June, 2023.

In accordance with the aforementioned regulations, the importer has ensured that:

The manufacturer has performed the corresponding conformity assessment, has drawn up the technical documentation and meets the market requirements.

Note

Until 31 December 2025, the British market may be placed on a label that is affixed to the product or the attached documentation.

Radioelectrical equipment

Simplified declaration of conformity

Your vehicle has different radioelectrical devices. The manufacturers of these devices declare that they comply with Directive 2014/53/EU when legally required.

The full text of the EU compliance declaration is available online at the following website:

www.cupraofficial.com/owners/technical-support/declarations-of-conformity CE

United Kingdom

Your vehicle has different radioelectrical devices. The manufacturers of these devices declare that they comply with the UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 (SI 2017/1206) if required by law.

The full text of the declaration of conformity is available online at the following website:

www.cupraofficial.com/owners/technical-support/declarations-of-conformity

Ukraine

Your vehicle has different radioelectrical devices. The manufacturers of these devices declare that they comply with Ukraine Decree 355/2017 (TR Radio Equipment) where legally required.

The full text of the declaration of conformity is available online at the following website:

www.cupraofficial.com/owners/technical-support/declarations-of-conformity

Addresses of the manufacturers

The address of the manufacturers of components that, due to their size or nature, cannot include a sticker are listed below, as long as it is legally required:

Central control unit (BCM)

Robert Bosch GmbH/Braunschweig
Theodor-Heuss-Strasse 12
38122 - Braunschweig, Germany
Phone: 0049 53188890

Keyless Access system and key with radio remote control of the central locking system

HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA/Hamm
Roemerstr. 66
59075 - Hamm, Germany
Phone: 0049 23817980

Roof antenna

ASK Industries S.p.A
Via dell'Industria n.12/14/16
60037 Monte San Vito (AN), Italy
Phone: +3907174521
Website: www.askgroup.it

Mitsumi Electronics Europe GmbH
Siemensstrasse 32
63225 Langen, Germany
Phone: +49 (0) 6103913-0
Website: www.minebeamitsumi.co.jp

Molex CVS Hildesheim GmbH
Daimlerring 31
31135 Hildesheim, Germany
Phone: +49 3377 3160
Website: www.molex.com

Antenna amplifiers

ASK Industries S.p.A
Via dell'Industria n.12/14/16
60037 Monte San Vito (AN), Italy
Phone: +3907174521
Website: www.askgroup.it

Hirschmann Car Communication GmbH
Stuttgarter Strasse 45-51
72654 Neckartenzlingen, Germany
Phone: +49 7127 140
Website: www.te.com

KATHREIN Automotive GmbH
Römerring 1
31137 Hildesheim, Germany
Phone: +498031184-0
Website: www.kathrein.com

Molex CVS Hildesheim GmbH
Daimlerring 31
31135 Hildesheim, Germany
Phone: +49 3377 3160
Website: www.molex.com

Connectivity Box

Strona główna - BURY
ul. Wojska Polskiego 4
39-300 Mielec, Polska
info@bury.com
+48 17 78846-00

Optional infotainment system

LG Electronics Mlawa SP
LG Electronics 7
06 500, Mlawa

Radio remote control of the auxiliary heating

Digades GmbH Digitales Und Ana/Zittau
Äußere Weberstr. 20
02763 - Zittau, Germany
Phone: 0049 358357750

Instrument cluster

FPK (digital)
Continental Automotive GmbH
VDO-Strasse 1,
64832 Babenhausen, Germany

Panasonic Automotive Systems Europe GmbH
Robert Bosch Str. 27-29
63225 Langen, Germany

Panasonic Automotive Systems Czech, s.r.o.
U Panasonicu 266
530 06, Pardubice, Czech Republic

Digital Cockpit for Raval, Born, Tavascan
Europe - CE
LG Electronics Inc. Single Point of Contact
Krijgsman 1, 1186 DM Amstelveen,
The Netherlands

United Kingdom – UKCA
LG Electronics U.K. Ltd,
Velocity 2, Brooklands Drive,
Weybridge, KT13 0SL

Front radar sensors

MRR for Leon and Formentor
Robert Bosch GmbH
Markwiesenstrasse, 46
72770 Reutlingen (Kusterdingen) Germany

MRR for Ateca
Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH
Peter-Dornier-Strasse, 10
88131, Lindau, Germany

MRR for Terramar
Bosch Car Multimédia Portugal S.A.
4705-820 Braga (Celeirós) (PRT)
Rua Max Grundig, 35

Rear radar sensors

Hella GmbH & Co. KGaA
Rixbecker Straße 75
59552 Lippstadt (Germany)

Online Connectivity Unit

LG ELECTRONICS INC.
10, Magokjungang 10-ro,
Gangseo-gu, Seoul, Republic of Korea

Radio equipment, frequency band, maximum transmitting power

Below can be found details of the radio equipment[1] that may be fitted to the CUPRA models.

Frequency band	Max. station power
Key with radio-operated remote control (vehicle)	
433.05-434.78 MHz	10 mW (ERP)
433.05-434.79 MHz	10 mW
434.42 MHz	32 µW
Radio-operated remote control (auxiliary heater)	
868.7-869.2 MHz (869.0 MHz)	25 mW
Transmitter-Receiver (auxiliary heater)	
868.7-869.2 MHz (869.0 MHz)	23.5 mW
Bluetooth®	
2400-2483.5 MHz	16.63 dBm
Auxiliary antenna for Car2X	
5855-5925 MHz	2 W PIRE

[1] The commissioning or authorisation of radioelectrical technology may be restricted in some European countries, forbidden or only allowed with additional requirements.

Wireless hotspot	
2400-2483.5 MHz	16.63 dBm

Keyless Access	
434.42 MHz	32 µW
125 kHz	89 dBµA/m[a)]

[a)] *Valid for market: Ukraine*

Radar sensors for front assist systems	
76 GHz-77 GHz	30.49 dBm[a)]
	34.9 dBm[b)]
	31.66 dBm[c)]

[a)] *Valid for: Leon, Formentor, Terramar*
[b)] *Valid for: Ateca*
[c)] *Valid for: Raval, Born, Tavascan*

Radar sensors for rear assist systems	
24050-24250 MHz	20 dBm[a)]

[a)] *Valid for: Leon, Formentor, Ateca, Raval, Born, Tavascan*

Radar sensors for rear and side assist systems	
76-77 GHz	27.2 dBm[a)]

[a)] *Valid for: Terramar*

Wireless charging function	
110-128 kHz	5 W[a)]
110-128 kHz	15 W[b)]

[a)] *Valid for: Ateca*
[b)] *Valid for: Leon, Formentor, Terramar, Raval, Born, Tavascan*

Instrument cluster	
3-150 kHz	<66 dBµA/m

Online Connectivity Unit	
EGSM900: 880-915 MHz	33 dBm
DCS1800: 1710-1785 MHz	31 dBm
UMTS FDD 1: 1920-1980 MHz	24 dBm
UMTS FDD 3: 1710-1785 MHz	24 dBm
UMTS FDD 8: 880-915 MHz	24 dBm
E-UTRA FDD 1: 1920-1980 MHz	23.5 dBm
E-UTRA FDD 3: 1710-1785 MHz	23.0 dBm
E-UTRA FDD 7: 2500-2570 MHz	23.5 dBm
E-UTRA FDD 8: 880-915 MHz	23.0 dBm
E-UTRA FDD 20: 832-862 MHz	23.5 dBm
E-UTRA FDD 28: 703-748 MHz	23.0 dBm

Additional information for countries outside the European Union

Mexico

Your vehicle has different radioelectrical devices. The manufacturers of these devices declare that they comply with Directive RLVCOAR15-0008 when legally required. The full text of the declaration of conformity is available online at the following website.

www.seat.mx/servicio/mi-seat/manuales-seat

Certificate: RLVHERS17-0286. RS4 Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. short-range radar IFT:RLVHERS17-0286. The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

United Kingdom

The following applies to importers in the UK market:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.
Yeomans Drive, Blakelands
Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN
United Kingdom

Turkey

Telsiz Ekipmanları Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB)

Aracınızda çeşitli telsiz ekipmanları bulunmaktadır.

Telsiz Ekipmanlari Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB) açısından Türkiye pazarı için radyo ekipmanı ithalatçısı (bu bilgi sadece resmi temsilcimiz olan Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.'nin ithal ettiği ürünler için geçerlidir):

Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.
Şekerpınar Mahallesi, Anadolu Caddesi, No: 22 ve 45
41420 Çayırova/Kocaeli

Ukraine

Імпортер:
ТОВ «Порше Україна»
просп. Павла Тичини, 1В, офіс „В“, 4-й поверх
02152 Київ, Україна.

Importer:
Porsche Ukraine LLC
Pavla Tychyny ave. 1V, Office “B”, 4th floor
02152 Kyiv, Ukraine.

Technical data

Indications about the technical data

Vehicle identification data

The values indicated in the technical data may differ depending on optional equipment or version of the model, as well as in the case of special vehicles and equipment for certain countries.

The information in the official vehicle documentation takes precedence at all times.

Abbreviations used in the Technical Specifications section

kW	Kilowatt, engine power measurement.
kWh	Kilowatt-hour, battery capacity.
PS	Horsepower (not currently used), engine power measurement unit.
rpm, 1/min	Revolutions per minute – engine speed.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
CZ	Cetane number, indication of the diesel combustion power.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The vehicle ID number can be found in the following places:

- In the infotainment system using the function button **Vehicle > Status > Service**.
- Front, visible through the small window on the lower left side of the windscreen.
- On the vehicle's data label.
- To the right in the engine compartment.

Type plate

The type plate is located on the vehicle's right hand door frame. Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

Performance

The values apply only to optimal road and weather conditions.

The vehicle's performance has been calculated without any equipment that would affect it, e.g. accessories.

Fuel consumption

Approved consumption values are derived from measurements performed or supervised by certified EU laboratories, according to the legislation in force at the time (for more information, see the Publications Office of the European Union on the EUR-Lex website: © European Union, http://eur-lex.europa.eu/) for the specified vehicle characteristics.

The values relating to fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions can be found in the documentation provided to the purchaser of the vehicle at the time of purchase.

Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions depend on the equipment/features of each individual vehicle, as well as on the driving style, road conditions, traffic conditions, environmental conditions, load or number of passengers.

Tank level

Vehicles with front-wheel drive:	50 l, 7 l reserve
Vehicles with all-wheel drive	55 l, 8.5 l reserve
Plug-in hybrid vehicles (PHEV)	40 l, 8 l reserve

Adblue® tank volume
approx. 11 l[a]
approx. 12 l[a]

[a] The amount filled using a dispenser nozzle may be less. In conditions of extreme cold, the amount filled may be less. The values depend on the equipment.

High-voltage battery

Type and capacity	
Plug-in hybrid vehicles (PHEV)	Li-ion 25.8 kWh 353V

Weights

The kerb weight values apply to a vehicle that is ready to drive with a driver (75 kg), operating fluids and, if applicable, tools and the spare wheel. The kerb weight increases with optional equipment and retrofitting of accessories, which reduce the possible payload accordingly.

Load on the roof

The maximum authorised load on the roof of your vehicle is 75 kg.

Trailer weight

The maximum permitted drawbar load on the ball head of the towing bracket is **80 kg**.

⚠ WARNING

The values indicated for the maximum permitted weights must not be exceeded. There is a risk of accident and damage!

Engine specifications

Petrol engines	1.5 TSI Start-Stop PHEV	
TSI engine power in kW (hp) at 1/min	110 (150)/5,000-6,000	130 (177)/5,500-6,000
Electric motor power in kW (hp) at 1/min	85 (116)/2,250-4,500	85 (116)/2,250-4,500
TSI engine + electric motor power in kW (hp) at 1/min	150 (204)/4,000-6,000	200 (272)/4,750-6,500
TSI engine maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1,500-4,000	250/1,500-4,000
Electric motor maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	330/0-2,250	330/0-2,250
Maximum torque of TSI engine + electric motor (Nm at 1/min)	350/850-4,000	400/850-4,750
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1,498	4/1,498
Fuel	Super 95 / Normal 91 (with a slight power loss) ROZ	
Gearbox (no. of gears) / traction	DSG (6) / front	DSG (6) / front
Top speed (km/h) [gear]	210 [V]	220 [V]
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (s)	7.9	7.2
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	2,190	2,200

Engine specifications

Petrol engines	1.5 Start-Stop MHEV	1.5 TSI Start-Stop	2.0 TSI Start-Stop
Power output in kW (hp) at 1/min	110 (150)/5,000-6,000	110 (150)/5,000-6,000	140 (190)/4,180-6,000
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1,500-3,500	250/1,500-3,500	320/1,500-4,000
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1,498	4/1,498	4/1,984
Fuel	Super 95 / Normal 91 (with a slight power loss) ROZ		
Gearbox (no. of gears) / traction	DSG (7) / front	manual (6) / front	DSG (7) / front
Top speed (km/h) [gear]	205 [VI]	205 [V]	218 [V]
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (s)	9.0	9.0	7.5
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	2,000	1,960	2,010

Petrol engines	2.0 TSI Start-Stop	2.0 TSI Start-Stop
Power output in kW (hp) at 1/min	150 (204)/4,500-6,000	195 (265)/5,250-6,500
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	320/1,500-4,400	370/1,600-4,500
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1,984	4/1,984
Fuel	Super 95 / Normal 91 (with a slight power loss) ROZ	
Gearbox (no. of gears) / traction	DSG (7) 4Drive / total 4x4	DSG (7) / front
Top speed (km/h) [gear]	225 [V]	245 [V]
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (s)	6.8	6.5
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	[a]	2,060

[a] Data not available as this edition goes to print.

Petrol engines	2.0 TSI Start-Stop	2.5 TFSI Start-Stop
Power output in kW (hp) at 1/min	245 (333)/5,600-6,500	287 (390)/5,700-7,000
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	420/2,100-5,500	480/2,250-5,700
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1,984	5/2,480
Fuel	Super 98 / Super 95 (with a slight power loss) ROZ	Super 95 / Normal 91 (with a slight power loss) ROZ
Gearbox (no. of gears) / traction	DSG (7) 4Drive / total 4x4	DSG (7) 4Drive / total 4x4
Top speed (km/h) [gear]	250 [VI]	a)
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (s)	4.8	a)
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	2,160	a)

a) Data not available as this edition goes to print.

Diesel engines	2.0 TDI CR Start-Stop
Power output in kW (hp) at 1/min	110 (150)/3,000-4,200
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	360/1,600-2,750
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1,968
Fuel	EN 590 standard diesel, min. 51 CZ
Gearbox (no. of gears) / traction	DSG (6) / front
Top speed (km/h) [gear]	205 [VI]
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (s)	9.0
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	2,060

Dimensions.

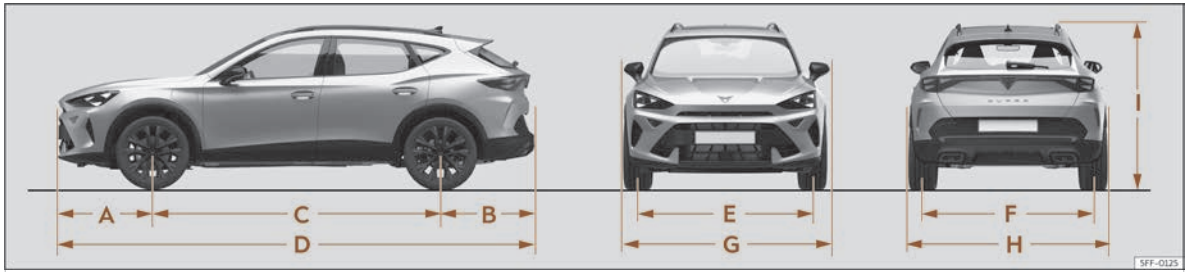


Fig. 257 Dimensions.

>>> Fig. 257		Formentor	Formentor 4Drive	Formentor PHEV	Formentor VZ5
A/B	Front and rear projection (mm)	898/874	898/876	898/877	908/895
C	Wheelbase (mm)	2,679	2,681	2,681	2,681
D	Length (mm)	4,451	4,455	4,455	4,484
E/F	Front/rear track width (mm)	1,583/1,555	1,587/1,561	1,585/1,558	1,587/1,561
G	Width from one exterior mirror to the other (mm)	1,992	1,992	1,992	1,992
H	Width (mm)	1,839	1,839	1,839	1,852
I	Height at kerb weight (mm)	1,537[a)]	1,522[a)]	1,525[a)]	1,522[a)]
	Turning radius (m)	11.4	11.4	11.4	11.4

[a)] Dimension to the roof bars.

Index

Numbers and Symbols

4Drive ... 168
12-volt battery ... 366
assisted start ... 340
charge level ... 373
charging ... 368
control lamps ... 370
disconnect and connect ... 368
electrolyte level ... 367
energy management ... 373
replacement ... 368
48-volt battery ... 371
control lamps ... 372

A

ACC ... 209
Accessories ... 400
Activating CUPRA CONNECT ... 268
Adapting the playback volume ... 284
Adaptive Cruise Control ... 209
control and warning lamp ... 214
malfunction ... 214
operation ... 210
special driving situations ... 212
status display ... 210
System limitations ... 213
AdBlue®
control and warning lamps ... 335
information ... 333
loading ... 334
minimum filling capacity ... 333
specification ... 334
tank capacity ... 333
Adjust
date and time ... 24
front seats ... 124
headrest ... 127
lights ... 137
seat with memory ... 129
seats ... 43
Adjusting the seat belt ... 49
Air conditioning ... 148
air recirculation ... 152
controls ... 150
parking ventilation ... 156
rear controls ... 152
refrigerant oil ... 403
setting the temperature ... 152
stationary air conditioning ... 161
troubleshooting ... 157
vehicle fluids ... 403
Air recirculation ... 152
Airbag system ... 53
activation ... 54
control lamp ... 55
deactivation of the front airbag ... 57
description ... 54
front airbags ... 56
how it works ... 54
Airbags ... 53
activating and deactivating ... 57
centre ... 58
description ... 54
for the head ... 60
for the knees ... 61
front ... 56
side ... 58
Android Auto™
disconnecting ... 276
establish connection ... 276
menu ... 275
requirements ... 275
special characteristics ... 276
Anti-lock system ... 194
Anti-theft alarm ... 108
interior monitoring and anti-tow system ... 109
trailer ... 322
Anti-theft alarm system ... 108
Anti-trap function
sunroof ... 120
windows ... 118
Antifreeze ... 355
Apple CarPlay
disconnecting ... 275
establish connection ... 275
menu ... 275
requirements ... 275
special characteristics ... 275
Applications (apps) ... 274
Approved spare parts ... 394
Area View system ... 203
Aspects to think about before starting the vehicle ... 42
Assistance call ... 73
Assistance systems
adaptive cruise control ... 209
area view system ... 203
Auto Hold function ... 236
connecting ... 199
cruise control ... 204
driver attention monitor ... 28
drowsiness monitor ... 26
Emergency Assist ... 228

emergency braking (Front Assist) 217
front camera 201
front radar 200
general notes 199
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 188
lane departure warning (Side Assist) 229
park assist Plus 239
peripheral view system (Top View Camera) . 251
PreCrash system 51
predictive speed adjustment 214
rear park assist 242
rear radar 202
road signs detection system 30
safety advice 199
side radars 200
speed limiter 205
speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment 207
switching off 199
system limits 199
Trailer assist 253
Travel Assist 223
tyre pressure monitor indicator 386
tyre pressure monitoring 388
ultrasound sensors 203
Assisted start 340
Audible warning
lights 133
unbuckled seat belt 46
Audio warning signals
warning and control lamps 11
Auto Hold 236
Auto Hold function 236
Auto Lock (central locking) 104
Auto Unlock 104
Automatic car wash 395
disconnecting the Auto Hold function 236
Automatic dipped beam headlight control ... 132
Automatic gearbox
control lamp 183
downhill assistant 188
driving tips 185
launch-control program 186
selector lever positions 183
steering wheel with shift paddles 184
tiptronic 184
Automatic parking system 243
angle parking 246
description 244
leaving a parking space (only when parallel parked) 247
parallel parking 246
parking conditions 246
stop early 245
Auxiliary heating
activate 160
connecting 158
electricity consumers 161
programming 160
radio-operated remote control 158, 159
special characteristics 161
switching off 158
usage instructions 161
Average fuel consumption 16

B

Background lighting 140
Backrest of the rear seat
folding 125
raise 125
Bag hooks 261, 316
Battery 100
Before starting the vehicle 42
Belt force limiter 50
Belt tightening 50
Bicycle carrier
fitting onto the coverable tow hook 327
max. load rating 327
Biodiesel 333
Blown bulbs
change a bulb 351
Bonnet
opening and closing 354
Brake fluid 360
Brakes 193
brake fluid 360
brake servo 193
braking assistant 194
electronic parking brake 234
new brake pads 193
Braking assistant 194
Braking system
warning lamp 194
Brands 285
Break recommendation
see Driver attention monitor 28
see Drowsiness monitor 26
Breathalyser 169

C

Camera
cleaning the vehicle 31
Catalytic converter 335
Central armrests 130
Central locking 104
anti-theft alarm 108
auto-locking due to involuntary opening .. 104

central locking button ... 106
emergency lock ... 111
Keyless Access system ... 101
remote control key ... 105
Cetane index (diesel fuel) ... 333
Change a bulb ... 351
Change the wiper blades ... 338
Changing a wheel ... 381
raise the vehicle ... 384
subsequent work ... 386
wheel nuts ... 383
Changing parts ... 400
Changing the battery
of the vehicle key ... 100
Charging cable
for charging stations (AC) ... 95
for sockets ... 96
Charging socket ... 83, 84
Charging the high-voltage battery
charging cable ... 95
charging limits ... 92
charging locations ... 93
charging modes ... 81
charging process display ... 86
emergency unlocking ... 89
programmed charging ... 93
socket (AC) ... 83
socket (DC) ... 84
troubleshooting ... 87
Check lists
requirements for Android Auto™ ... 275
requirements for Apple CarPlay ... 275
reverse assist (Rear View) ... 248
Child lock
power windows ... 116
Child seats
attachment systems ... 64
group classification ... 62
i-Size ... 65
ISOFIX ... 65
safety instructions ... 63
securing with the seat belt ... 71
Top Tether system ... 68, 69
Cleaning
high pressure cleaning equipment ... 395
special care ... 398
vehicle exterior ... 396
vehicle interior ... 397
washing the vehicle ... 395
Clocks
set the time ... 24
Closing ... 104
bonnet ... 354
rear lid ... 113
sunroof ... 119
windows ... 116
Clutch (lamp) ... 187
Coming Home ... 136
Connectivity
WLAN access point ... 272
Control and warning lamps
12-volt battery ... 370
ACC ... 214
adaptive cruise control ... 210
AdBlue® ... 335
air conditioning ... 157
airbag system ... 55
airbags ... 57
anti-lock brake system ABS ... 197
automatic gearbox ... 183
braking system ... 194
cruise control ... 205
cruise control (GRA) ... 204
drive system ... 178
electric mode ... 178
electromechanical steering ... 190
emissions control ... 337
engine coolant ... 20
engine management ... 337
engine oil ... 365
ESC ... 197
ESC in Sport mode ... 196
ESC off ... 196
fuel reserve ... 19
high-voltage battery ... 87
high-voltage system ... 87
hill descent control ... 189
Lane Assist ... 222, 223
lane departure warning (Side Assist) ... 230
lights ... 138
parking brake ... 235
particulate filter ... 336, 337
press on the brake ... 209
refuelling ... 19, 331
remote control (independent heating) 158, 159
seat belt ... 46
speed limiter ... 206
Start-Stop ... 179
steering column ... 190
TCS ... 197
tow hook ... 326
tyre pressure monitor system ... 388
wipers ... 143
Controls on the steering wheel ... 122
Convenience close function
sunroof ... 120

Convenience open function
sunroof 120
Cooling 148
Cooling system
check the coolant 357
refilling coolant 357
Copyright 285
Cornering light 132
Correct position 43
driver 43
passenger 44
Cruise control 204
Cruise control system 204
control lamps 205
operating 205
CUPRA Assistant 287
activation word 288
end 288
start 288
CUPRA CONNECT 266
activation 268
deactivate 269
faults 270
legal provisions 269
users 271
CUPRA ID 268
Current documentation attached 278

D

Dangers of not using the seat belt 47
Data label 412
Data transfer 266
Deactivating CUPRA CONNECT services 269
Deactivation of the front airbag 57
Diesel
refuelling 333
Digital Cockpit 16
Disposal
seat belt tensioners 51
Door cylinder 110
Door handle 110
Door lock 110
Door opening assist (Exit Warning) 257
Doors 109
child lock 111
Downhill assistance function 188
downhill assistant 188
Download
over-the-air updates 265
Drawers 260
Drink holder
bottle holder 260
front 260
in the rear central armrest 260
Drive profile 192
Drive Profile 190
Drive profiles 190
Drive Profiles
see Drive profile selection 190
Drive system
control lamps 178
Driver attention monitor. 28
settings 29
system limits 29
troubleshooting 30
warning levels 29
Driving
driving on flooded roads 167
economical 164
loaded vehicle 166
safe 42
trips abroad 137, 169
with the luggage compartment open 166
with trailer 324
Driving data display 23
Driving data. 23
Driving mode 192
Driving on flooded roads 167
Driving profiles
selecting a profile 191
Driving with a loaded vehicle 166
Driving with the luggage compartment open 166
Drowsiness monitor 26
settings 27
system limits 26
troubleshooting 28
warning levels 27
DSG 183
Duplicate keys 98
Dust and pollen filter 148
Dynamic headlight range control 137

E

e-Call 76
Easy Open
special characteristics 115
Eco Assist 208
Electric devices 261
Electric mode 176
control lamps 178
Electrolyte 367
Electronic differential lock 194
Electronic immobilizer 173
Electronic parking brake 234
control lamps 235
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 194

Emergencies 73
changing a wheel 381
changing the battery 368
emergency vehicle towing 343
hazard warning lights 72
jump leads 340
replace a blown fuse 349
tyre mobility system 388
vehicle tool kit 338
Emergency Assist 228
problems and solutions 229
see Emergency Assist 228
status display 228
Emergency brake assistance system (Front Assist) 200
activating and deactivating 220
dodge assist 218
junction assist 219
pedestrian and cyclist recognition 218
status display 217
system limitations 219
temporarily deactivating 221
turn-off assist 218
warnings 217
Emergency braking warning 72
Emergency call 73, 76
troubleshooting 77
Emergency call service 76
Emergency locking of the front passenger door 111
Emergency opening
driver's door 110
rear lid 116
Emergency operation
front passenger door 111
Emissions control system
AdBlue® 333
catalytic converter 335
control lamp 337
particulate filter 336
Energy management 373
Engine
noise 171
running in 167
start (driver instructions with the mechanical contact) 173
Start-Stop system 179
Engine and ignition
emergency start 173
preheat the engine 171
starting the engine 171
starting the engine with Press & Drive 171
switching off the engine 172
Engine compartment
battery 366
engine oil 363
opening and closing 354
safety instructions 352
Engine coolant 355
check the level 357
exterior 22
specifications 355
tank (hybrid vehicles) 357
temperature indicator 20
warning lamp 20
Engine failure
control lamp 337
Engine management 335
control lamp 337
Engine oil
change 362, 365
check the oil level 363
consumption 363
dipstick 363
inspection service 362
maintenance frequencies 362
refill 363
specifications 362
Engine oil pressure
control lamp 365
Engine specifications 414
Environment
ecological driving 164
environmental compatibility 404
recycling of electrical appliances 405
refuelling 330
Environmental tip
refuelling 330
ESC
connecting and disconnecting 196
electronic stability control (ESC) 194
Sport mode 196
Event Data Recorder 402
Exhaust gases 335
Exit Warning 257
Exiting a parking space
with the automatic parking system 247
Exterior lighting
change a bulb 351
Exterior mirrors
driving with a trailer 321
folding 145
heated 145
settings 145
External antenna 401

External audio sources
adapting the playback volume 284

F

Fabrics: clean 397
Factors that have a negative influence on safe driving 42
Fastening rings 314
Filling capacities
AdBlue® tank 333
window washer water 361
Filling the tank 331
Fire 73
Four-wheel drive 168
Frequency bands 291
Front bonnet 352
Front camera 201
Front compartment
brake fluid 360
coolant 355, 357
windscreen washer reservoir 361
Front passenger airbag
control lamp 55
Fuel
diesel 333
fuel gauge 19
identification 332
petrol 332
refuelling 331
saving 164
Fuel consumption
inertia disconnection 164
why does consumption increase? 337
Fuel gauge 19
control lamp 19
Fuel tank cap
opening and closing 331
Fuel tank flap
opening and closing 331
Full Link 273
applications 274
settings 274
symbols 274
Full-LED headlights 351
Fuses 348
colour coded 349
fuse box 348, 349
preparations for replacing fuses 349
recognise blown fuses 349
replace 349

G

Gear change
manual gearbox 182
Gear indication 164
Gear-change recommendation 164
Glass roof sun blind 121
Glove compartment 259

H

Hangers 261
Hazard warning lights 72
HDC
see Hill descent control (HDC) 189
Head-on collisions and the laws of physics 47
Headlight range control 137
Headlights
change a bulb 351
trips abroad 137
Headrest 126
adjust 127
removing 128
Heating 148
HHC
see Hill Hold Control (HHC) 188
High-voltage battery
care 80
charging limits 92
charging locations 93
charging settings in the infotainment system 89
general settings 92
safety instructions 78
warning lettering 79
High-voltage battery charging cable 94
Hill Descent Control (HDC)
control lamp 189
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 188
Hybrid drive
battery level indicator 19
electric mode 176
hybrid mode 176
operating modes 176
switching on the drive system 174
system power indicator 20
vehicle sound 178

I

i-Size 65
Identification of fuels 332
Indicator lamps
overview 11
Inertia mode 186
Information call 73

Infotainment 278
adapt menus 284
Android Auto™ 275
Apple CarPlay 275
assist systems and vehicle settings 38
before first use 278
clean 285
connecting and disconnecting 283
customise 284
customised menus 284
departure menu 41
drop-down menu 284
executing functions 283
function buttons 36
help 35
initial configuration 37
Internet access 273
Media mode 294
navigation 297
operating 283
overview and controls 281
Radio mode 290
safety instructions 278
share a WLAN connection 272
sound settings 284
system settings 284
technical data 285
telephone interface 304
tutorial 35
vehicle information 40
WLAN 272
Infotainment system
see Infotainment 35
Inspection 362, 392
Inspection reminder 25
Inspection service 362
Installing software
over-the-air updates 265
Instrument cluster 15
date and time 24
digital (Digital Cockpit) 16
service intervals display 25
status display 21
warning and information messages 24
Instrument cluster display 16, 21
Hybrid vehicles 16
instrument cluster lighting 138
Instrument panel
symbols 11
use with the multifunction steering wheel 34
warning and control lamps 11
Interior mirror
anti-dazzle 144
Interior monitoring and the anti-tow system
activation 109
ISOFIX 65
ISOFIX system 65

J

Jack 338
position points 384
Jump leads 340
Jump start 340
description 341
jump leads 340
jump start connection point 340

K

Key switch 57
Keyless Access
Press & Drive 169
starting the engine 171
troubleshooting 103
unlocking and locking the vehicle 101
Keys
changing the battery 100
instructions for the driver (mechanical contact) 173
pull out the key blade 99
remote control 98
spare key 98
synchronise 100
unlock and lock 105, 110
vehicle key 98

L

Lane Assist 221
control and warning lamp 222
control lamps 223
Lane Assist system 221
Lane change assist 226
Lane departure warning (Side Assist)
control lamp 230
driving situations 231
how it works 229
lane change Plus 230
light indication 230
system limitations 229
Launch-control (automatic transmission) 186
Leaving Home 136
Legal provisions 269
Licenses 285

Lift the vehicle ... 384
Light Assist ... 135
Lights
audible warnings ... 133
AUTO ... 132
background lighting ... 140
change a bulb ... 351
coming home ... 136
control lighting ... 138
control panel ... 132
cornering light ... 132
daytime running lights ... 133
fog light ... 132
headlight range control ... 137
instrument lighting ... 138
interior lights ... 138
leaving home ... 136
main beam assist ... 135
main beam headlight lever ... 134
reading lights ... 138
switching on and off ... 132
troubleshooting ... 138
turn signal lever ... 134
Loading the vehicle
fastening rings ... 314
general advice ... 311
luggage compartment ... 311
positioning the load ... 311
positioning the luggage ... 311
roof carrier system ... 318
trailer ... 323
trapdoor for transporting long objects ... 316
Lock and unlock ... 101
in the locking cylinder ... 110
with the central locking button ... 106
Luggage compartment ... 112, 311
electric opening and closing ... 113
emergency unlocking ... 116
enlarge ... 125
features of the electric rear lid ... 114
luggage compartment lighting ... 138
net bag ... 315
opening and closing controlled by sensors (Easy Open) ... 115
removing and fitting the shelf ... 312
store the rear shelf. ... 313
variable luggage compartment floor ... 313
Luggage compartment floor ... 313
Luggage net
luggage compartment ... 315
Lumbar support ... 124

M

Main beam assist ... 135
Main beam headlight lever ... 134
Maintenance frequencies ... 362
Malfunction
adaptive cruise control ... 214
clutch ... 187
PreCrash system ... 52
sunroof ... 119
towing device ... 322
Manual gearbox ... 182
Mats ... 164
Media Mode ... 294
equipment ... 295
symbols ... 295
Memory function ... 129
Microfiber: clean ... 397
MirrorLink®
settings ... 274
Mirrors ... 143
adjusting the exterior mirrors ... 145
anti-dazzle ... 144
Mobile phones ... 401
Mobility Service ... 394
Multimedia ... 276, 290
favourites ... 295
play ... 295
select source ... 295

N

Navigation ... 297, 300
decrease the navigation map ... 298
edit route ... 302
enter an address for a guide destination ... 300
favourite destinations ... 301
function: entering destination ... 300
functions ... 298
increase the navigation map ... 298
learn usage pattern ... 303
limitations ... 298
navigation announcements ... 297
operating the navigation map ... 298
recent destinations ... 300
route details ... 302
save destination ... 301
saved data ... 298
saved destinations ... 301
suggestions ... 300
symbols ... 298
traffic reports ... 302
updating navigation data ... 300
use contact details ... 301
Net bag
luggage compartment ... 315

Noise
auxiliary heating ... 161
brakes ... 193
parking brake ... 234
tyres ... 375
Number of seats ... 44

O

Octane (petrol) ... 332
Odometer ... 16
total ... 22
Oil change ... 365
On-board toolkit ... 338
One-touch signalling function ... 134
Online services ... 266
Opening ... 104
bonnet ... 354
rear lid ... 113
sunroof ... 119
tank cap ... 331
windows ... 116
Opening and closing ... 104
bonnet ... 354
by remote control ... 105
doors ... 109
in the locking cylinder ... 110
rear lid ... 112
rear lid with electric opening and closing ... 113
sunroof ... 119
sunshade blind ... 121
tank cap ... 331
windows ... 116
with the central locking button ... 106
Operation in winter
diesel ... 333
salt on the roads ... 143
snow chains ... 380
tyres ... 379
Original accessories ... 394
Over-the-air updates ... 264
download ... 265
installing software ... 265
requirements ... 265
Overview
of warning and control lamps ... 11
overview (left hand drive) ... 9
overview (right hand drive) ... 10
view of the vehicle from inside ... 8
view of the vehicle from the front ... 6
view of the vehicle from the rear ... 7
Ownership accreditation ... 268

P

Painting the vehicle
care ... 396
Park assist
fault ... 239
operating ... 241
park assist plus ... 239
rear park assist ... 242
see the Automatic Parking System ... 243
sensors and camera: clean ... 396
surroundings warning ... 239
visual indication ... 242
Parking ... 233
at an angle with the reverse assist ... 250
automatic gearbox ... 185
with the automatic parking system ... 246
Parking systems
automatic brake operation ... 237
reverse assist (Rear View Camera) ... 248
troubleshooting ... 238
Parking ventilation ... 156
Partial odometer ... 24
Particulate filter ... 336
Pedals ... 44, 164
Peripheral view system (Top View Camera) ... 251
menus ... 253
modes ... 253
special characteristics ... 252
usage instructions ... 253
Petrol
additives ... 332
particulate filter ... 336
refuelling ... 332
Places with risk of explosion ... 305
Places with special regulations ... 305
Power meter ... 20
Power sockets ... 261
trailer ... 322
Power windows ... 116
PreCrash system ... 51
Front Assist monitoring system ... 52
malfunction ... 52
selecting the drive profile ... 52
status display ... 52
Predictive speed adjustment ... 214
activation ... 215
driving ... 215
limitations ... 215
troubleshooting ... 216
Preheat the engine ... 171
Press & Drive
start button ... 169
starting the engine ... 171
Privacy ... 270
settings ... 271
Private emergency call service ... 73

R

Radar sensors 200
Radio 290
equipment 291
frequency bands 291
preset buttons 291
symbols 291
Traffic information (TP) 292
tune station 291
type of reception 291
Radio mode 290
Radio screen: clean 397
Radio telephones 401
Rain and light sensor 142
Rain sensor
function control 143
Raise the vehicle 384
Rear Cross Traffic Alert 256
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) 256
Rear lid 112, 116
Rear mounting
towing device 328
Rear park assist 242
Rear radar 202
Rear View Camera 248
Rear window wiper 141
Refuelling
control lamp 19
fuel gauge 19
opening the fuel tank flap. 331
safety warnings 330
Releasing the seat belt 48
Remote control (independent heating) . 158, 159
Remote control key
unlock and lock 105
Repair work 400
Requirements for Apple CarPlay 275
Rev counter 16, 18
Reverse assist 248
Reverse assist (Rear View) 248
angle parking 250
check list 248
connecting and disconnecting 249
cross traffic 250
requirements 248, 250
settings 250
shown on the display 249
usage instructions 250
Reverse assist system 248
Road signs
shown on the display 30
Road signs detection system 30
how it works 30
limited operation 31
settings 31
shown on the display 30
troubleshooting 33
warning levels 32
windscreen damage 31
Roof carrier 317
fix the crossbars 318
Roof carrier system 317
Roof rack 317
Rotation direction
tyres 386
Running in
new brake pads 193
new engine 167
new tyres 375

S

Safe 106, 173
Safe driving 42
Safe security system 106
troubleshooting 107
Safety
child safety 61
child seats 61
safe driving 42
Safety equipment 42
Safety instructions 278
central airbag 58
head-protection airbags 60
seat belt tensioners 51
side airbags 58
using child seats 63
using seat belts 46
Save fuel
inertia mode 186
Screen
clean 285
Seat belt tensioners 50
control lamp 55
Seat belts
adjusting the seat belt 49
adjustment 48
automatic retractor, tensioner and belt force limiter 50
control lamp 46
maintenance and disposal of seat belt tensioners 51
protective function 45
purpose 53
safety instructions 46
unfastened 47
Seat heating 154

Seats ... 124
adjusting the headrests ... 127
armrest ... 130
backrest of the rear seat ... 125
electric settings ... 125
fitting the headrest ... 128
heating ... 154
incorrect positions ... 44
manual adjustment ... 124
memory function ... 129
number of seats ... 44
removing the headrest ... 128
Selection of drive profile characteristics ... 190
Selective catalytic reduction ... 333
Selector lever (automatic transmission) positions ... 183
Selling the vehicle ... 269
Service
Digital Maintenance plan ... 392
inspection ... 392
proof of Service ... 392
service packages ... 394
service works ... 392
terms of use ... 393
Service interval indicator ... 24
Service intervals ... 25
Service Menu
service interval indicator ... 24
vehicle identification number ... 24
Service Mobility ... 394
Set of vehicle keys ... 98
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) ... 184
Snow chains ... 380
Sound settings ... 284
Spare parts ... 400
Spare wheel ... 381
Special characteristics
Android Auto™ ... 276
Apple CarPlay ... 275
high pressure cleaning equipment ... 326
peripheral view system (Top View Camera) ... 252
tow start ... 343
towing ... 343
trailer mode ... 324
Speed limiter ... 205
control lamps ... 206
indication on display ... 205
operating ... 206
Speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment ... 207
troubleshooting ... 208
Speed symbol ... 375
Stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer combination ... 325
Start button ... 169
Start the engine by towing ... 345
special characteristics ... 343
Start-Stop ... 179
Start-Stop system
disconnect and connect manually ... 181
driver indications ... 181
how it works ... 179
lamps ... 179
stopping and starting the engine ... 179
the engine does not turn off ... 179
the engine starts by itself ... 179
Stationary air conditioning ... 161
activate ... 162
connecting ... 162
programming ... 162
switching off ... 162
Status display
adaptive cruise control ... 210
date and time ... 24
doors, front bonnet and rear lid open ... 22
Drive Profile ... 190
Eco Assist ... 208
Emergency Assist ... 228
Emergency brake assistance system (Front Assist) ... 217
instrument cluster ... 21
odometer ... 22
outside temperature ... 22
PreCrash system ... 52
road signs ... 30
selector lever positions ... 183
service intervals ... 25
speed limiter ... 205
speed warning ... 22
Travel Assist ... 224
tyre pressure monitoring ... 386
warning and information messages ... 24
Steering
control lamp ... 190
electromechanical steering ... 189
steering assist ... 190
Steering assist ... 190
Steering wheel
adjust ... 123
controls ... 122
heating ... 156
shift paddles (automatic transmission) ... 184
Steering wheel heating ... 156
Storage compartment ... 259
drawers ... 260
glove compartment ... 259

on-board documentation 259
other object holders 261
Storage compartment accessories
see Storage 259
Storage of accident data 402
Storing objects 311
bag hooks 316
fastening rings 314
loading the trailer 323
net bag 315
positioning the load 311
positioning the luggage 311
roof carrier 317
roof carrier system 317, 318
trailer 319
trailer mode 324
trapdoor for transporting long objects 316
Sun blind 146
Sun protection 146
Sunroof 119
anti-trap function 120
convenience open/close function 120
malfunction 119
sunshade blind 121
Switching off
telephone 305
Symbols
see Warning and control lamps 11
System settings 284

T

Tail lights
change a bulb 351
Technical data
engine specifications 414
vehicle dimensions 417
vertical load on the tow hitch 319
weights 412
Technical modifications 400
Telephone
connecting 306
contacts 308
favourites 309
pairing a mobile phone 306
phone book 308
send messages 308
speed dial buttons 309
switching off 305
to call 307
Telephone interface 304
equipment 304
places with risk of explosion 305
symbols 304
Time
adjust 24
Tiptronic (automatic transmission) 184
Top Tether 68, 69
Top Tether System 68, 69
Top View Camera
see the Peripheral view system (Top View Camera) 251
Torque
wheel nuts 386
Touch screen 281
Touch zones 281
Tow cable 321, 322
Tow hook
control lamp 326
unlocking electrically 326
Towable loads
loading the trailer 323
Towing device
fitting a bicycle carrier 327
fitting later 328
malfunction 322
tow hook with electric unlocking 326
Towing the vehicle
emergency towing 345
front towing eye 346
prior steps 345
rear towing eye 347
special characteristics 343
tow bar 343
tow cable 343
towing prohibited 345
Traction control 194
Traffic information 302
Traffic information (TP) 292
Traffic programme
see TP (traffic information) 292
Trailer 319
adjusting the headlights 324
anti-theft alarm 322
connecting 322
exterior mirrors 321
hitching 322
LED tail lights 321, 322
loading 323
malfunction 322
power socket 322
retrofitting a towing bracket 328
stabilisation of the towing vehicle and trailer combination 325
tail lights 321, 322
technical requirements 321
tow cable 321, 322
towable loads 323

Trailer assist 253
trailer mode 324
unlocking the tow hook electrically 326
vertical load on the tow hitch 319, 323
Trailer Assist 253
automatic brake operation 254
check list 254
malfunction 253
operating 254
see Trailer Assist 253
troubleshooting 256
Trailer mode
see Trailer 319
Transportation of children 61
Trapdoor for transporting long objects 316
Travel Assist 223
connecting and disconnecting 225
lane change assist 226
problems and solutions 227
see Travel Assist 223
status display 224
Trips abroad 169
headlights 137
Troubleshooting
AdBlue® 335
DSG gearbox 187
Emergency Assist 229
Start-Stop system 181
Trailer assist 256
Travel Assist 227
Turn signal lever 134
Turning off the lights 132
Turning on the lights 132
Type mobility 388
Tyre mobility set 388
Tyre mobility system 388
check after 10 minutes 390
components 389
inflating the tyre 389
sealing the tyre 389
Tyre pressure 377
Tyre pressure monitor system 388
Tyre pressure monitor systems
tyre pressure monitor indicator 386
Tyre profile 378
Tyre repair 388
Tyre repair kit 388
Tyre tread depth 378
Tyre wear 378
Tyres 375
accessories 375
change 381
directional tread pattern 375, 386
for winter 379
foreign objects inserted 375
new tyres 376
snow chains 380
speed symbol 375
tread wear indicators 378
tyre pressure 377
useful life 377

U

Ultrasound sensors 203
Unlock and lock 101
by remote control 105
doors 109
with the central locking button 106
USB 276
USB port 276
User administration 271

V

Vanity mirror 146
Variable luggage compartment floor 313
Vehicle
data label 412
engine specifications 414
identification data 412
interior view 8
lending or selling 269
overview (left hand drive) 9
overview (right hand drive) 10
raise 384
unlocking and locking (Keyless Access) 101
vehicle ID number 412
view from behind 7
view from the front 6
Vehicle care
wiper blade service position 338
Vehicle conservation 395
Vehicle conservation products 395
Vehicle dimensions 417
Vehicle information 40
Vehicle location 269
Vehicle seats 44
Vehicle settings 38
Vehicle sound 178
Vehicle tool kit 338
Ventilation 148
Vertical load on the tow hitch 319
loading the trailer 323
Voice control
Android Auto™ 276
Siri™ (Apple CarPlay™) 275
Volume
set for external audio sources 284

W

Warning lamps
- overview ... 11

Warning triangle ... 72
Warranty ... 402
Washing the vehicle
- cleaning the exterior ... 396
- high pressure cleaning equipment ... 395
- interior cleaning ... 397
- special care ... 398
- special characteristics ... 115

Weights ... 412
Wheel balance ... 377
Wheel nuts ... 379
- anti-theft device ... 383
- caps ... 383
- loosen ... 383
- torque ... 386

Wheel wrench ... 338
Wheels
- change ... 381
- changing ... 378
- new wheels ... 376
- removing and attaching ... 385
- snow chains ... 380
- spare wheel ... 381
- wheel nuts ... 379

Window controls ... 116
Window washer system ... 361
Window washer water
- check ... 361
- filling quantities ... 361
- refill ... 361

Windows ... 116
- anti-trap function ... 118
- automatic opening/closing ... 117
- automatic operation ... 117

Windscreen washer ... 141
Windscreen wipers
- control lamps ... 143
- functions ... 142
- lift the blade ... 338
- rain and light sensor ... 142
- reposition the blade ... 338
- service position ... 338
- special characteristics ... 141
- wiper lever ... 141

Winter conditions
- sunroof ... 119
- trailer ... 319

Winter tyres ... 379
Wiper and rear window wiper blades
- cleaning the vehicle ... 339, 396
- replacement ... 339
- service position ... 338

WLAN ... 272

SEAT S.A. is permanently concerned about continuous development of its types and models. For this reason we ask you to understand, that at any given time, changes regarding shape, equipment and technique may take place on the car delivered. For this reason no right at all may derive based on the data, drawings and descriptions in this current handbook.

All texts, illustrations and standards in this handbook are based on the status of information at the time of printing. Except for error or omission, the information included in the current handbook is valid as of the date of closing print.

Re-printing, copying or translating, whether total or partial is not allowed unless SEAT allows it in written form.

SEAT reserves all rights in accordance with the “Copyright” Act.

All rights on changes are reserved.

This paper has been manufactured using bleached non-chlorine cellulose.

© SEAT S.A. - Reprint: 15.11.25

CUPRA FORMENTOR
English
Edition: 11.25
5FF012720BS
5FF012720BS